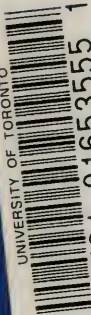


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01653555 1

HANDBOUND  
AT THE



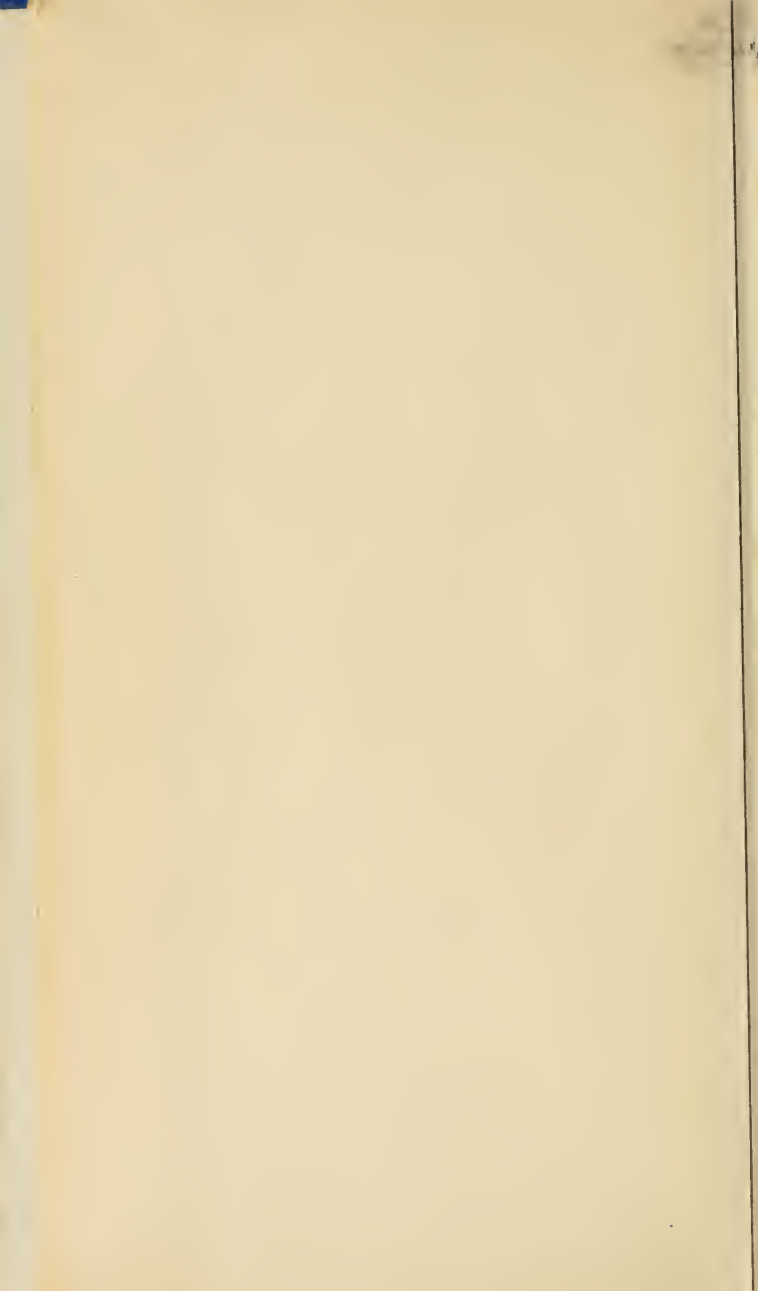
UNIVERSITY OF  
TORONTO PRESS







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



L.Gr.  
44967f.2

# FIRST LATIN BOOK

23

AND

# READER

WITH

THE NEPOS AND CAESAR SELECTIONS PRESCRIBED FOR MATRICULATION IN THE UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

BY

J. HENDERSON, M.A.,

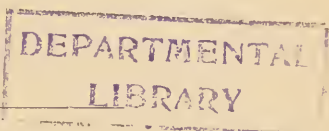
*Principal of St. Catharines Collegiate Institute*

AND

J. FLETCHER, M.A., LL.D.,

*Professor of Latin, University College, Toronto.*

182103  
6.7.23



Authorized by the Department of Education for Ontario

TORONTO:

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

1900.

---

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety-two, by THE COPP, CLARK Co., LIMITED, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

---

PA

2087

H46



# CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.—ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.

LESSONS.	PAGES.
I.—The Verb.....	1
II.—First Conjugation .....	2
III.—The Noun—First Declension .....	3
IV.—Subject and Object ... ..	5
V.—First Declension ( <i>Continued</i> ) .....	6
VI.—First Conjugation—Impf. and Fut.....	8
VII.—Second Declension.....	9
VIII.—Second Declension ( <i>Continued</i> ) .....	11
IX.— “ “ “ .....	13
X.—First Conjugation.—Perf., Plpf., Fut.-pf.....	14
XI.—Imperative of First Conjugation .....	17
XII.—Latin Gender .....	18
XIII.—Adjectives in <b>US</b> .....	19
XIV.—Adjectives in <b>ER</b> .....	22
XV.—Inflection of <b>Sum</b> .....	24
XVI.—Irregular Adjectives in <b>US</b> and <b>ER</b> ..	26
XVII.—Interrogative Sentences.....	28
XVIII.—Third Declension .....	30
XIX.—Third Declension ( <i>Continued</i> ) .....	33
XX.— “ “ “ .....	36
XXI.— “ “ “ .....	38
XXII.— “ “ “ .....	40
XXIII.— “ “ “ .....	42
XXIV.— “ “ “ .....	44
XXV.—Irregular Nouns of Third Declension.....	45
XXVI.—Gender of Nouns of Third Declension .....	47
XXVII.—Adjectives of Third Declension .....	49
XXVIII.— “ “ “ “ .....	52
XXIX.—Comparison of Adjectives .....	54
XXX.—Irregular Comparison .....	56
XXXI.— “ “ .....	59

LESSONS.	PAGES.
XXXII.—Adverbial Comparison .....	60
XXXIII.—Fourth Declension .....	62
XXXIV.—Fifth Declension .....	63
XXXV.—Numeral Adjectives and Adverbs .....	65
XXXVI.—Passive Voice of First Conjugation.....	70
XXXVII.— “ “ “ “ “ .....	72
XXXVIII.—Review of Passive Voice .....	74
XXXIX.—Adverbs .....	75
XL.—Second Conjugation .....	78
XLI.—Second Conjugation ( <i>Continued</i> ).....	81
XLII.—Third Conjugation. Rules for Place .....	83-85
XLIII.—Formation of Perf. Stems of Third Conjugation ...	87
XLIV.—Passive of Third Conjugation .....	89
XLV.—Fourth Conjugation .....	91
XLVI.—Passive of Fourth Conjugation .....	94
XLVII.—Cognate Accusative, Acc. with Prepositions in Com- position .....	95
XLVIII.—Verbs in IO of Third Conjugation .....	97
XLIX.—The Participle. ....	100
L.—Passive Participles. ....	101
LI.—Personal and Reflexive Pronouns .....	104
LII.—Infinitive .....	107
LIII.—Accusative with Infinitive.....	109
LIV.—Infinitive with Verbs of <i>Hoping</i> .....	110
LV.—Acc. with Infinitive ( <i>Continued</i> ) .....	111
LVI.—Deponents .....	113
LVII.—Deponents ( <i>Continued</i> ).....	116
LVIII.—Demonstrative Pronouns .....	117
LIX.—Dative with verbs compounded with Prepositions....	120
LX.—Is. Idem. Ipse. ....	122
LXI.—Genitive with <i>Sum</i> .....	124
LXII.—Relative Pronouns .....	125
LXIII.—Correlatives .....	127
LXIV.—Interrogative Pronouns. Genitive of Quality .....	129
LXV.—Indefinite Pronouns .....	132
LXVI.—Dative of Purpose .....	134
LXVII.—Review Exercise on Pronoun .....	135
LXVIII.—The Subjunctive. Subjunctive in Simple Sentences. ....	136
LXIX.—Subjunctive in Simple Sentences ( <i>Continued</i> ) .....	139
LXX.—Subjunctive Passive .....	140

LESSONS.	PAGES.
LXXI.—Compounds of <b>Sum</b> .....	142
LXXII.—Defective Verbs. <b>Memini. Coepi. Odi. Novi</b> .....	145
LXXIII.—Irregular Verbs. <b>Vōlo. Nōlo. Mālo.</b> .....	147
LXXIV.—Ablative of Price .....	150
LXXV.— <b>Fero</b> , <i>I carry</i> .....	152
LXXVI.— <b>Fio</b> , <i>I become</i> ....	155
LXXVII.— <b>Eo</b> , <i>I go</i> . Abl. of Separation .....	157
LXXVIII.— <b>Edo</b> , <i>I eat</i> .....	160
LXXIX.—Impersonal Verbs .....	161
LXXX.—Passive use of Verbs that Govern the Dat. ....	164
LXXXI.—Impersonal Verbs ( <i>Continued</i> ). <b>Miseret. Interest.</b>	165
LXXXII.—Verbs with Acc. and Gen.....	167
LXXXIII.—Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.....	168
LXXXIV.—Gerund and Gerundive .....	170
LXXXV.—Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.....	172
LXXXVI.—Active Periphrastic Conjugation. Supine.....	174
LXXXVII.—Classification of Clauses. Indirect Question .....	176
LXXXVIII.—Classification of Tenses. Sequence of Tenses.....	178
LXXXIX.—Noun-clause introduced by <b>Quod</b> or <b>Ut</b> .....	181
XC.—Final Clauses .....	183
XCI.— <b>Qui</b> Final. <b>Quominus</b> and <b>Quin.</b> <b>Nēve</b> .....	184
XCII.—Clauses of Result (Consecutive) .....	187
XCIII.—The Conditional Sentence.....	190
XCIV.—Classification of Conditional Sentences .....	192
XCV.—Comparative and Concessive Clauses .....	195
XCVI.—Causal Clauses .....	198
XCVII.—Temporal Clauses .....	200
XCVIII.—Syntax of <b>Quum</b> .....	203
XCIX.—Indirect Narration .....	205
C.—Summary of Rules for Indirect Narration ....	209
CI.—Passages in Direct and Indirect Narration.....	212
CII.—Notes on the Tenses .....	216
CIII.—Notes on the Participle—Translation of “ <i>Without</i> ”.	218
CIV.—The Preposition .....	221

## PART II.

	PAGE.
Declension of Nouns.....	229
Irregular Nouns.....	239
Adjectives.....	242
Pronouns.....	248
Tables of Regular Verbs.....	252
Tables of Irregular Verbs.....	260
Rules of Syntax.....	276
CORNELIUS NEPOS—	
Themistocles.....	309
Aristides.....	315
Hannibal.....	316
Caesar, De Bell. Gall., Book IV.....	325
Caesar, De Bell. Gall., Book V, 1-23.....	341
NOTES ON NEPOS—	
Themistocles.....	352
Aristides.....	357
Hannibal.....	358
NOTES ON CAESAR—	
Book IV.....	363
Book V.....	374
Exercises in Latin Prose, Based on Nepos and Caesar.....	379
Latin-English Vocabulary.....	413
English-Latin Vocabulary.....	483
Pronunciation of Latin—Roman Method.....	511

---

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

---

PART I.

ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.



# FIRST LATIN BOOK.

---

## LESSON I.

### THE VERB.

1. Latin verbs are divided into four classes, called *conjugations*.
2. The first conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ā* before the present infinitive ending *-re*: as, *āmā-rē, to love*.
3. The second conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ē* before the present infinitive ending *-re*: as, *mōnē-rē, to advise*.
4. The third conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ē* before the present infinitive ending *-re*: as, *rēgē-rē, to rule*.
5. The fourth conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ī* before the present infinitive ending *-re*: as, *audī-rē, to hear*.

### EXERCISE.

Learn the following verbs and state the conjugation to which each belongs :—

*āmā-re, to love.*  
*dēlē-re, to destroy.*  
*pūnī-re, to punish.*  
*tēgē-re, to cover.*  
*vēnī-re, to come.*  
*sērē-re, to sow.*

*vestī-re, to clothe.*  
*tēnē-re, to hold.*  
*quaerē-re, to ask.*  
*tīmē-re, to fear.*  
*laudā-re, to praise.*  
*dūcē-re, to lead.*

## LESSON II.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. The first conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ā* before the present infinitive ending *-re*: as, *amā-re*, *to love*.

2. The part of *amā-re* that is left after dropping the ending *-re*, is called the present stem. Thus: *amā-re*, *to love*; present stem, *amā-*.

3. The present indicative active of the first conjugation is as follows:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers., <i>amo</i> , <i>I love</i> .	1. Pers., <i>amā-mus</i> , <i>we love</i> .
2. “ <i>ama-s</i> , <i>thou lovest</i> .	2. “ <i>amā-tis</i> , <i>you love</i> .
3. “ <i>ama-t</i> , <i>he (she, it) loves</i> .	3. “ <i>ama-nt</i> , <i>they love</i> .

Note 1. The Latin verb expresses person and number by endings.\*

Note 2. The forms of the present indicative represent the indefinite, progressive, and emphatic forms of the English present. Thus: *amo* is either, *I love* (indefinite), *I am loving* (progressive), or, *I do love* (emphatic).

Note 3. *Ama-s*, is *you love* (sing.); *ama-tis*, *you love* (plural).

## EXERCISE.

Learn, and inflect like *amo*, the following verbs:—

*porto*, *portā-re*, *to carry*.

*laudo*, *laudā-re*, *to praise*.

*āro*, *ārā-re*, *to plough*.

*vōco*, *vōcā-re*, *to call*.

*dōno*, *dōnā-re*, *to give*.

*clāmo*, *clāmā-re*, *to shout*.

*pugno*, *pugnā-re*, *to fight*.

*spēro*, *spērā-re*, *to hope*.

---

\*These endings were perhaps originally pronouns. Thus:—*amo*=*ama-o-m*: *i. e.*, *ama*, pres. stem (*love*); *-o*, connecting-vowel; and *-m*, *I* (seen in Latin *me*, and English *me*).



Translate into English :—

1. Laudo. 2. Arant. 3. Vocātis. 4. Pugnamus. 5. Donas.  
6. Portat. 7. Pugnas. 8. Vocant. 9. Laudas. 10. Speratis. 11.  
Aramus. 12. Sperant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. I fight. 2. You plough. 3. They praise. 4. We are carry-  
ing. 5. He calls. 6. You give. 7. They hope. 8. We praise.  
9. He carries. 10. They give. 11. We plough. 12. He fights.  
13. You call (*sing.*)

---

## LESSON III.

### THE NOUN.

1. Latin nouns have two numbers and three persons. They have, however, six cases : the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

2. The Nominative case is the form the noun has when it is the subject of a sentence.

3. The Genitive is the form the noun has when it expresses the meaning of the English possessive or possessive with *of*.

4. The Dative is the form the noun has when it expresses the meaning of the English indirect object with the prepositions *to* or *for*.

5. The Accusative is the form the noun has when it is the direct object of a verb, or governed by a preposition which takes the accusative.

6. The Vocative is the form the noun has when it expresses the meaning of the English Nominative of address.

7. The Ablative is the form the noun has when it expresses the various relations indicated by the prepositions *with, by, from, or in*.

#### THE DECLENSIONS.—FIRST DECLENSION.

8. Latin nouns are divided into five classes, called *declensions*,

which are distinguished from each other by the ending of the genitive singular.

9. In the first declension the genitive singular ends in *-æ*; in the second declension in *-i*; in the third declension in *-īs*; in the fourth declension in *-ūs*; in the fifth declension in *-ēī*.

10. In the first declension the nominative ends in *-a*, *-e*, *-as*, or *-es*.

Note. Nouns in *-a* and *-e* are feminine; those in *-as* and *-es* are masculine. But words in *-a*, denoting male beings, are masculine: *as*, *nauta*, a sailor; *agricōla*, a farmer.

11. Nouns in *-a* of the first declension are thus declined:---

*Mensa*, a table.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>mensā</i> , a table.	<i>mens-æ</i> , tables.
GEN. <i>mens-æ</i> , of a table.	<i>mens-ārum</i> , of tables.
DAT. <i>mens-æ</i> , to or for a table.	<i>mens-īs</i> , to or for tables.
ACC. <i>mens-am</i> , a table.	<i>mens-as</i> , tables.
VOC. <i>mens-ā</i> , O table.	<i>mens-æ</i> , O tables.
ABL. <i>mens-ā</i> , with, by, from, or in a table.	<i>mens-īs</i> , with, by, from or in tables.

Note. Latin has no article; therefore, *mensa* may mean *table*, *a table*, or, *the table*.

12. Most nouns of the first declension end in the nominative singular in *-a*. These are all declined like *mensa*, by dropping the *-a* and adding the case-endings of *mensa*. Thus: *Umbra*, a shade; gen., *umbr-æ*; dat., *umbr-æ*, and so on.

### EXERCISE.

Learn the following nouns and decline each like *mensa* :

<i>āqua</i> (gen., <i>āqu-æ</i> ), water.	<i>rōsa</i> (gen., <i>rōs-æ</i> ), a rose.
<i>victōria</i> (gen., <i>victorī-æ</i> ), victory.	<i>lūna</i> (gen., <i>lūn-æ</i> ), the moon.
<i>pūella</i> (gen., <i>pūell-æ</i> ), a girl.	<i>nauta</i> (gen., <i>naut-æ</i> ), a sailor.
<i>umbrā</i> (gen., <i>umbr-æ</i> ), a shade.	<i>āgricōla</i> (gen., <i>āgricōl-æ</i> ), a farmer.
<i>insūla</i> (gen., <i>insūl-æ</i> ), an island.	<i>stella</i> (gen., <i>stell-æ</i> ), a star.

Translate into English :—

1. Stella. 2. Insulæ. 3. Lunarum. 4. Puellis. 5. Aquæ. 6. Nautarum. 7. Agricolis. 8. Umbrâ. 9. Victoriæ. 10. Puella. 11. Rosarum. 12. Lunas. 13. Agricolæ. 14. Nautæ.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Of stars. 2. With roses. 3. Of a sailor. 4. Of farmers. 5. With water. 6. Of girls. 7. For a farmer. 8. Of the moon. 9. With victories. 10. O girl. 11. To a rose. 12. With a rose. 13. Of a girl. 14. O star.

---

## LESSON IV.

### SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

1. The subject of a finite verb is put in the Nominative : as, *Agricōla arat, the farmer ploughs*. Here, *agricola* is the subject of the verb *arat* and is in the Nominative case.

2. The verb agrees with the subject Nominative in number and person : as, *Agricola arat, the farmer ploughs*; here, *agricola* is third person singular, and *arat* agrees with the subject *agricola*. *Agricolæ arant, the farmers plough*; *agricolæ* is third person plural, and *arant* agrees with *agricolæ*.

3. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative : as, *Puella rosam laudat, the girl praises the rose*; here, *rosam* is accusative singular governed by *laudat*. *Puella rosas laudat, the girl praises the roses*; here, *rosas* is accusative plural governed by *laudat*.

4. The indirect object of a transitive verb is put in the dative : as, *Puer epistolam puellæ donat, the boy gives a letter to the girl* (or *gives the girl a letter*); here, *puellæ* is the indirect object and is in the dative case.

### EXERCISE.

Learn and decline the following nouns ; learn, and inflect in the present, the following verbs :—

regīna, a queen.  
 , pūella, a girl.  
 epistōla, a letter.  
 pēcūniā, money.  
 terra, the earth, land.

patria, one's native land.  
 cant-o, āre, sing.  
 expect-o, āre, expect, look for.  
 orn-o, āre, adorn.  
 postūl-o, āre, demand.

Translate into English :—

1. Puella rosam laudat. 2. Agricolae pecuniam postulant. 3. Puellae epistolam expectant. 4. Regina umbram amat. 5. Puella pecuniam donat. 6. Puellae umbram amant. 7. Agricolae terram arant. 8. Nautae lunam expectant. 9. Aquam agricolis donāmus. 10. Nautae patriam amant. 11. Nautae victoriam expectant. 12. Puella reginae cantat. 13. Agricolae cantant. 14. Epistolas reginae laudant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. He is calling the farmer. 2. The farmer ploughs the land. 3. You are praising the victory of the sailors. 4. He gives a rose to the girl. 5. The queen praises the letter of the girl. 6. The farmers love the shade. 7. The sailors are demanding money. 8. We adorn the tables of the queen. 9. The farmer is expecting a letter. 10. The farmers are carrying water. 11. Girls love the shade. 12. The sailors give the girls a crown. 13. The girls praise the roses of the farmer. 14. They give the sailors money.

---

## LESSON V.

### FIRST DECLENSION.—(Continued.)

1. Nouns of the first declension in -e, -as, and -es are borrowed from the Greek. Their declension is given in the Appendix, and they may be learned at a later stage.

2. The following nouns in -a of the first declension have -ābus for -is in the dative and ablative plural:—Dea, a goddess; filia, a daughter; liberta, a freedwoman; mula, a she-mule: as, deābus, filiābus, libertābus, mulābus.

3. To, when it expresses motion to, is ad (with the acc.); and

for, when it means *in behalf of*, is *pro* (with the abl.): as, *Ad portam, to the gate*; *pro patriā, for one's country*.

## EXERCISE.

Learn the following words; decline and state the gender of all the nouns:—

*amicitiā, friendship.*

*cōpiā, abundance, fertility.*

*porta, a gate.*

*cōrōnā, a crown.*

*Rōmā, Rome.*

*pātriā, one's native land.*

*sapientīā, wisdom.*

*Galliā, Gaul, France.*

*pinna, feather.*

*spect-o, āre, gaze at, see.*

*ad, prep. (with acc.), to, towards.*

*e (or ex), prep. (with abl.), from, out of.*

*in, prep., with acc., meaning into; with abl., in.*

*prō, prep. (with abl.), before or for.*

Translate into English:—

1. Puella portas Romae laudat. 2. Agricola copiam terrae laudant. 3. Pinnas puellis donatis. 4. Epistolas reginae ad Galliam portamus. 5. Nautae stellas expectant. 6. Mensas reginae ad portam portat. 7. Nautae coronas puellis donant. 8. Amicitiam puellarum laudo. 9. Nautae coronam laudant. 10. Puellarum pinnas laudas. 11. Agricola puellarum coronas laudat. 12. In Galliam epistolas nautae portant. 13. Reginarum filiae amicitiam nautarum laudant. 14. Pro patriā nautae pugnant.

Translate into Latin:—

1. We fight for our (*omit*) native land. 2. The farmers give crowns to the girls. 3. The sailors are bearing crowns to the gates of the queen. 4. The daughters of the farmer are gazing at the stars. 5. The farmer praises the crown of his (*omit*) daughter. 6. The farmers give a feather to the girl. 7. The farmer ploughs the land. 8. The sailors praise the fertility of the land. 9. They give roses to the daughters. 10. The sailor praises the wisdom of the farmer. 11. I carry a crown to the gate of the farmer. 12. The girls are carrying water to the gate. 13. We praise the fertility of the earth. 14. He carries crowns from the gate of the queen.

## LESSON VI.

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF  
THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. The imperfect and the future of the indicative active of the first conjugation are formed by adding endings to the present stem. The imperfect indicative active of the first conjugation is inflected as follows :—

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL.

- |           |                                           |                                    |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | āmā-bam, <i>I was loving.</i>             | āmā-bāmus, <i>we were loving.</i>  |
| 2. “      | āmā-bas, <i>thou wast loving.</i>         | āmā-bātis, <i>you were loving.</i> |
| 3. “      | āmā-bat, <i>he, (she, it) was loving.</i> | āmā-bant, <i>they were loving.</i> |

2. The future indicative active of the first conjugation is inflected as follows :—

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |           |                                          |                                  |
|-----------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | āmā-bo, <i>I shall love.</i>             | āmā-bīmus, <i>we shall love.</i> |
| 2. “      | āmā-bis, <i>thou wilt love.</i>          | āmā-bītis, <i>you will love.</i> |
| 3. “      | āmā-bit, <i>he, (she, it) will love.</i> | āmā-bunt, <i>they will love.</i> |

3. *With*, when it expresses the instrument with which a thing is done, is expressed in Latin by the Ablative : as, *Nautam coronā ornat, he is adorning the sailor with a crown.*

## EXERCISE.

Learn the following words ; inflect the verbs and decline the nouns :—

ancilla, <i>maid-servant, hand-maiden.</i>	sto, āre, <i>stand.</i>
cōma, <i>hair.</i>	sēco, āre, <i>cut.</i>
āquīla, <i>an eagle.</i>	vōlo, āre, <i>fly.</i>
silva, <i>a wood.</i>	per, prep. (acc.), <i>through.</i>
vīa, <i>a way, road.</i>	trans, prep. (acc.), <i>across.</i>
ambūlo, āre, <i>walk.</i>	saepe, adverb, <i>often.</i>
dēcōro, āre, <i>adorn.</i>	semper, adverb, <i>always.</i>

Translate into English :—

1. Regina epistolam filiae donabat. 2. Agricola silvam secābit.

3. Puellae mensas reginae rosis saepe ornant. 4. Filiae agriculturalum per silvam ambulant. 5. Ancillae comam rosis decorābunt. 6. Aquila trans silvam volabat. 7. Nautae in aqua stant. 8. Agricolaē per silvam ambulābunt. 9. Filiae agriculturalum comam decorabunt. 10. Nautae lunam saepe spectabant. 11. Filiae reginae nautas ad mensam vocabunt. 12. Puellae agriculturalum rosas saepe laudabant. 13. Regina comam rosā saepe ornabat. 14. Ancilla reginae rosas ex silvā portabat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. You will adorn the table of the queen with roses. 2. The farmer will cut a rose in the wood. 3. The handmaid is adorning the hair of the queen with a rose. 4. The girls often adorn the table of the queen with roses. 5. The eagle flies across the woods. 6. The queen will give the letter to the daughter of the farmer. 7. The queen will always praise the handmaiden. 8. The daughters of the queen were praising the woods of the farmer. 9. The farmers often give roses to the handmaidens of the queen. 10. The handmaiden will adorn the table with roses. 11. I shall give the letter to the handmaiden of the queen. 12. We shall often walk through the wood. 13. The eagle was flying across the road. 14. Sailors often stand in the water.

## LESSON VII.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the second declension have the genitive singular in -ī. The nominative singular may end in -ūs, -ēr, -īr, or, -um. Nouns in -ūs, -ēr, and -īr are masculine ; those in -um are neuter.

2. Nouns in -us are declined as follows :—

*Dōmīnus, a lord, master.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>dōmīnus, a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-ī, lords.</i>
GEN. <i>dōmīn-ī, of a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-ōrum, of lords.</i>
DAT. <i>dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-īs, to or for lords.</i>
ACC. <i>dōmīn-um, a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-ōs, lords.</i>
VOC. <i>dōmīn-ē, O lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-ī, O lords.</i>
ABL. <i>dōmīn-ō, with, by, or from a lord.</i>	<i>dōmīn-īs, with, by, or from lords.</i>

## VOCABULARY.

(All words in the vocabularies should be learned by heart.)

servus, i, a slave.

amicus, i, a friend.

hortus, i, a garden.

oculus, i, an eye.

animus, i, the mind.

murus, i, a wall.

delecto, are, delight.

Italia, ae, Italy.

Roma, ae, Rome.

hodie, adv., to-day.

## EXERCISE.

Decline, like dominus, all nouns in -us in the above vocabulary.

Translate into English : —

1. Domini hortus oculos delectat.
2. Regina<sup>1</sup> domini hortos laudabit.
3. Dominus servum laudat.
4. Servi dominorum hortos semper laudant.
5. Domine, ancilla reginae mensam rosis decorat.
6. Horti reginae animum semper delectant.
7. Servi dominis epistolas donant.
8. Puella servo rosam donat.
9. Puellae amicis rosas donabunt.
10. Servi epistolas ad dominos portabunt.
11. Horti dominorum animos saepe delectant.
12. Domine, aquilae trans hortos reginae volant.
13. Servus rosas reginae donat.
14. Servi dominos saepe laudabunt.

<sup>1</sup> For words not given in the above list, see vocabulary at end of book.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The slaves often praise their (*omit*) lords.
2. The masters will praise the daughters of the slaves.
3. The slaves adorn the tables of their masters with roses.
4. The girls often praise the handmaidens of the queen.
5. The handmaidens often adorn the queen's table with roses.
6. The queen gives a letter to the slave.
7. The slaves of the master will walk to Italy.
8. They will adorn the walls of Rome with roses.
9. The slave gives a rose to the master.
10. The slaves give letters to-day to the masters.
11. The master's slaves call the friends to the table.
12. The queen gives the daughter's letter to a friend.
13. The slaves will often praise the garden of the master.
14. The master praises the walls of the garden.
15. The master expects friends to day.



## LESSON VIII.

## SECOND DECLENSION—(Continued).

1. Nouns in *-er* are declined as follows :—

*Magister, a master, teacher.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>māgister, a master.</i>	<i>māgistr-ī, masters.</i>
GEN. <i>māgistr-ī, of a master.</i>	<i>māgistr-ōrum, of masters.</i>
DAT. <i>māgistr-ō, to, or for a master.</i>	<i>māgistr-īs, to or for masters.</i>
ACC. <i>māgistr-um, a master.</i>	<i>māgistr-ōs, masters.</i>
VOC. <i>māgister, O master.</i>	<i>māgistr-ī, O masters.</i>
ABL. <i>māgistr-ō, with, by, or from a master.</i>	<i>māgistr-īs, with, by, or from masters.</i>

*Puer, a boy.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>pūer, a boy.</i>	<i>pūēr-ī, boys.</i>
GEN. <i>pūēr-ī, of a boy.</i>	<i>pūēr-ōrum, of boys.</i>
DAT. <i>pūēr-ō, to or for a boy.</i>	<i>pūēr-īs, to, or for boys.</i>
ACC. <i>pūēr-um, a boy.</i>	<i>pūēr-os, boys.</i>
VOC. <i>pūer, O boy.</i>	<i>pūēr-ī, O boys.</i>
ABL. <i>pūēr-ō, with, by, or from a boy.</i>	<i>pūēr-īs, with, by, or from boys.</i>

NOTE. In declining *māgister* the *-e* is dropped ; in declining *puer* the *-e* is retained. The following nouns in *-er* of the second decl. retain the *-e* : (a) Compounds of *-fer* and *-ger* : as *lūcifer light-bearer* (gen., *lūciferī*) ; *armiger, armour-bearer* (gen., *armigērī*) ; (b) *adulter, an adulterer* ; *gēner, son-in-law* ; *sōcer, father-in-law* ; *vesper, evening*.

2. Nouns in *-ir* are declined as follows :—

*Vīr, a man.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>vīr, a man.</i>	<i>vīrī, men.</i>
GEN. <i>vīrī, of a man.</i>	<i>vīrōrum, of men.</i>
DAT. <i>vīrō, to or for a man.</i>	<i>vīrīs, to or for men.</i>
ACC. <i>vīrum, a man.</i>	<i>vīrōs, men.</i>
VOC. <i>vīr, O man.</i>	<i>vīrī, O men.</i>
ABL. <i>vīrō, with, by or from a man.</i>	<i>vīrīs, with, by or from men.</i>

3. *With*, when it means *together with*, is expressed by the preposition *cum* with the ablative ; as, *cum puero, with a boy.*

## VOCABULARY.

fāber, fabrī, <i>a workman.</i>	cum, prep. (abl.), <i>with, in company with.</i>
āger, āgrī, <i>a field.</i>	inter, prep. (acc.), <i>between, in the midst of.</i>
fābūla, ae, <i>a story.</i>	vasto, āre, <i>destroy, devastate.</i>
lūdus, lūdī, <i>a game.</i>	narro, āre, <i>tell.</i>
pōpūlus, pōpūli, <i>the people.</i>	
campus, ī, <i>plain, field.</i>	
pōēta, ae, <i>a poet.</i>	

## EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each.

Translate into English :—

1. Agricola cum pueris agrum arābat. 2. Poeta pueris fabulas narrat. 3. Agricolae cum pueris campos arābunt. 4. Vir cum filiā ludos spectabat. 5. Poeta filiae fabulas narrābit. 6. Pueri agricolae inter silvam ambulabunt. 7. Pueri per campum ambulat. 8. Servus reginae pueros ad hortos vocabat. 9. Fabri cum pueris ludos spectabunt. 10. Puer fabro fabulam in horto narrabat. 11. Puellae cum magistro in campo ambulabant. 12. Pueri per agros ambulabunt. 13. Regina cum ancillis per campum ambulat. 14. Agricolae agros vastabunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The farmer was giving the money to the workman. 2. The man will praise the boy's letter. 3. You will plough the farmer's fields. 4. The master will call the slaves to the garden. 5. The poet will tell a story to the farmer's daughter. 6. The daughters of the farmer will walk through the wood. 7. The man will give a crown to the boy. 8. The farmer with the boys will plough the fields of the master. 9. The boys were giving money to the poet. 10. The girls will praise the poet's crown. 11. The master calls the servants to the field. 12. The fields delight the eye of the master. 13. You will give money to the poets. 14. The farmer's girls will adorn the table of the queen with roses.

---

## LESSON IX.

## SECOND DECLENSION.—(Continued.)

1. Nouns of the second declension in *-ius* and *-ium* often contract *-ii* in the genitive singular into *-i*; those in *-ius* contract *-ie* in the vocative singular also into *-i*: as, *Mercūrius*, (*Mercury*); gen., *Mercūri*; voc., *Mercūri*. *Ingēnium* (*talent*); gen., *ingēni*.

2. *Dēus*, a *god*, is thus declined: Nom., *dēus*; gen., *dēi*; dat., *dēō*; acc., *dēum*; voc., *dēus*; abl., *dēō*. Plural, nom., *dēi*, *dīi*, *dī*; gen., *dēōrum* or *dēūm*; dat., *dēis*, *dīs* or *dīs*; acc., *dēos*; voc., *dēi*, *dīi*, or *dī*; abl., *dēis*, *dīs* or *dīs*.

3. Nouns in *-um* are declined as follows:—

*Bellum*, war (neuter).

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>bellum</i> , a war	<i>bellā</i> , wars.
GEN. <i>belli</i> , of a war.	<i>bellōrum</i> , of wars.
DAT. <i>bellō</i> , to or for a war.	<i>bellis</i> , to or for wars.
ACC. <i>bellum</i> , a war.	<i>bellā</i> , wars.
VOC. <i>bellum</i> , O war.	<i>bellā</i> , O wars.
ABL. <i>bellō</i> , with, by, from, or in a war.	<i>bellis</i> , with, by, from, or in wars.

Note.—Neuter nouns, in *all* declensions, have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike, and in the plural these cases end in *-ā*.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>praemium</i> , <i>praemii</i> , a reward.	<i>oppidum</i> , <i>oppidii</i> , a town.
<i>dōnum</i> , <i>dōni</i> , a gift.	<i>lēgātus</i> , <i>lēgātī</i> , ambassador.
<i>arvum</i> , <i>arvī</i> , ploughed field.	<i>rāna</i> , <i>ae</i> , frog.
<i>ārātrum</i> , <i>ārātrī</i> , plough.	<i>cicōniā</i> , <i>ae</i> , stork.
<i>stagnum</i> , <i>stagnī</i> , pool.	<i>aula</i> , <i>ae</i> , a hall, court.
<i>aurum</i> , <i>aurī</i> , gold.	<i>dēvōro</i> , <i>āre</i> , devour.
<i>templum</i> , <i>templī</i> , temple.	<i>sēco</i> , <i>āre</i> , cut.
<i>lignum</i> , <i>lignī</i> , wood.	<i>aedifico</i> , <i>-āre</i> , build.

## EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each.

Translate into English :—

1. Amīcus amici arva hodie laudabit.
2. Domini praemium servorum animos delectat.
3. Ciconiae ranas in stagnis devorant.
4. Servi lignum ad oppidum ex silva portabant.
5. Agricolarum servi campum aratro arant.
6. Puellae lignum ad reginae aulam portabant.
7. Legati reginae templa laudabunt.
8. Hodie templa auro ornāmus.
9. Dona servorum animos delectant.
10. Agricolae terram aratro arabant.
11. Domini servos ad arva vocant.
12. Reginae legatus oppidi muros laudabit.
13. Regina legatos ad aulam vocabit.
14. Legati agricolarum arva laudabunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The ambassadors were praising the games of the boys.
2. The daughters of the ambassadors will praise the gold of the temples.
3. The farmers will plough the fields.
4. The gifts of masters delight the minds of slaves.
5. The lords will praise the walls of the town.
6. The slaves will build the wall of the town.
7. The men were cutting wood for the masters.
8. The queen's ambassador will often praise the ploughed field of the husbandman.
9. The ambassadors of the queen will call the slaves to the court.
10. The stork often devours frogs in the pool.
11. The queen will often praise the temples.
12. The ambassador was often calling his friend to the temple.
13. The master calls his friends to the hall of the queen to-day.
14. The daughter of the queen will carry wood to the hall.

---

## LESSON X.

### PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE—PERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. The stem of the perfect indicative active of the first conjugation is regularly formed by adding *-vi* to the present stem : ; *āmā-re, to love* ; present stem *āmā-* ; perfect stem *āmāvī-*,

2. The perfect indicative active of the first conjugation is inflected as follows :—

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |           |                                                    |                                                              |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | ămāvī, <i>I have loved or I loved,</i>             | ămāvī-mus, <i>we have loved or we loved.</i>                 |
| 2. “      | ămāvi-sti, <i>thou hast loved or thou lovedst.</i> | ămāvi-stis, <i>you have loved or you loved.</i>              |
| 3. “      | ămāvi-t, <i>he (she, it) has loved.</i>            | ămāvērunt, or ămāvēre, <i>they have loved or they loved.</i> |

3. The pluperfect indicative active of the first conjugation is formed by adding *-ram* to the perfect stem, and changing the final *i* to *-ē*. It is inflected as follows :—

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |          |                                            |                                    |
|----------|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers. | ămāvē-ram, <i>I had loved.</i>             | ămāvē-rāmus, <i>we had loved.</i>  |
| 2. “     | ămāvē-rās, <i>thou hadst loved.</i>        | ămāvē-rātis, <i>you had loved.</i> |
| 3. “     | ămāvē-rat, <i>he, (she, it) had loved.</i> | ămāvē-rant, <i>they had loved.</i> |

4. The future-perfect indicative active of the first conjugation is formed by adding *-ro* to the perfect stem and changing *-i* into *-ē*. It is inflected as follows :—

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |          |                                                  |                                          |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers. | ămāvē-ro, <i>I shall have loved.</i>             | ămāvē-rīmus, <i>we shall have loved.</i> |
| 2. “     | ămāvē-ris, <i>thou wilt have loved.</i>          | ămāvē-rītis, <i>you will have loved.</i> |
| 3. “     | ămāvē-rit, <i>he, (she, it) will have loved.</i> | ămāvē-rint, <i>they will have loved.</i> |

## VOCABULARY.

vasto, āre, *lay waste.*

hīemo, āre, *pass the winter.*

hābito, *to dwell.*

comporto, -āre, *collect, bring.*

occūpo, āre, *seize.*

ursus, -ī, *a bear.*

rīpa, -ae, *a bank.*

lōcus, -ī, *a place.*

Rōmānus, -i, *a Roman.*

cāvum, -i, *a cave.*

flūvīus, -i, *a river.*

castra, -ōrum, *a camp.*

tectum, -i, *a dwelling.*

frūmentum, -i, *corn.*

et, conjunction, *and.*

-que, conjunction, *and*, (written after word connected).

## EXERCISE.

Decline all the nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each. Give the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect of all verbs, and inflect them like *amo*.

Translate into English :—

1. Agricola frumentum ad tectum ex agris comportāvit. 2. Viri cum pueris per silvas ambulabunt. 3. Agricolae et filiae in agris ambulavērunt. 4. Romani agricularum agros vastabant. 5. Romani in castris hiemavērint. 6. Aquila trans ripam fluvii volavit. 7. Viri et pueri lignum ad oppidum portavērint. 8. Ursi in cavis saepe hiemaverant. 9. Romanorum pueri ludos ex castris spectabunt. 10. Regina puerorum animos donis delectavit. 11. Romani fluvii ripam occupavērant. 12. Agricolae pueri lignum ex silva ad tectum portavērint. 13. Regina ancillaeque per agros saepe ambulabant. 14. Bellum animos Romanorum semper delectavit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The Romans devastated the farmer's fields. 2. The eagle had flown across the stream. 3. The bear often passes the winter in a cave. 4. The boys will have praised the walls of the town. 5. The men will seize the camp of the Romans. 6. The masters of the slaves gave corn to the Romans. 7. The queen with her (*omit*) handmaid often walks in the fields. 8. Gifts often delight the mind of a boy. 9. The queen and her handmaids dwell in the town. 10. The letter of the slaves delighted the mind of the master. 11. The men will have passed the winter in the camp. 12. The daughters of the farmer were walking across the plain. 13. Boys had brought corn to the queen's gate. 14. The master will give crowns to the boys to-day.

---

## LESSON XI.

## IMPERATIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. The imperative mood is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties.

2. The second singular, present imperative active of the first conjugation has the same form as the present stem. Thus : *ămăre*, to love; present stem, *ămă*; pres. imperative, 2 sing., *ămă*.

3. The present imperative active of the first conjugation is inflected as follows :—

## SINGULAR.

2 pers., *ămă*, love or love thou.

## PLURAL.

2 pers., *ămă-te*, love ye or you.

4. *Ne* is used with the imperative for *not* : as, *Ne vöcâte*, pueri, do not call, boys.

## VOCABULARY.

*caelum*, heaven, sky.

*öra*, ae, shore, coast.

*ămicitia*, ae, friendship.

*diligentia*, ae, diligence.

*cëna*, ae, feast, dinner.

*filius*, a son.

*excito*, äre, *excitavi*, arouse.

*päro*, *päräre*, *pärävi*, *prepare*.

*näto*, äre, *nätävi*, *swim*.

*non*, adverb, *not*.

## EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each ; inflect all verbs in the indicative and imperative active.

Translate into English :—

1. Filii agricolarum, stellas spectäte.
2. Pueri, in fluvio natate.
3. Domine, Romános ad bellum excitä.
4. Puellae, rosas ad reginae aulam portate.
5. Aquila per caelum volavit.
6. Viri, ne fabulas pueris narrate.
7. Amice, in stagno nata.
8. Puer, lignum ad agricolae tectum porta.
9. Filios agricolarum ad agros vocate.
10. Puer, in silvis saepe ambula.
11. Magister, filiorum amicitiam

lauda. 12. Agricola, frumentum ex agris ad tectum porta. 13. Filia, ne cenam para.

Translate into Latin, putting the verb at end of sentence :—

1. O farmer, call the boy to the field. 2. O boy, do not carry water to the men. 3. Arouse, O Romans, the men to war. 4. The camp delights the minds of the Romans. 5. O queen, praise the diligence of the farmers' daughters. 6. Often praise, O master, the diligence of the boys. 7. Carry roses to the dwelling, girls. 8. Adorn, O farmer's daughter, the table of the queen with roses. 9. O sailor, praise the feast of the queen. 10. Call, O Romans, the sons of the sailors to the war. 11. Carry, O sons of the Romans, wood to the camp. 12. Call the farmer's sons to the feast. 13. Do not give a reward to the boy. 14. Delight the mind of the boy with a gift. 15. O girls, prepare a feast for the sailors.

---

## LESSON XII.

### LATIN GENDER.

1. Gender in Latin is determined (1) by the meaning of the noun (*natural gender*), (2) by the ending of the noun (*grammatical gender*).

2. General rules for determining the gender of a noun from the meaning are :—

(1). Names of male beings are masculine : as, *puer, a boy; vir, a man; ěquus, a horse; agricōla, a farmer.*

(2). Names of females are feminine : as, *puella, a girl.*

(3). Names of rivers, winds, and mountains are masculine : as, *Rhēnus, the Rhine; Eur<sup>us</sup>, the east wind; Olym<sup>pus</sup>, Mt. Olympus.*

(4). Names of countries, towns, islands, gems, and trees are feminine : as, *Aegyptus, Egypt; Cōrinthus, Corinth; Sāmus, Samos (an island); fāgus, a beech; margārita, a pearl.*

(5). Indeclinable nouns are neuter : as, *fas, right; nēfas, wrong; nīhil, nothing.*



## VOCABULARY.

auxīlium, i, *aid*.  
 fēmīna, ae, *wife*.  
 insūla, ae, *island*.  
 pōēta, ae, *a poet*.  
 tectum, i, *dwelling*.

libērī, ōrum, *children*.  
 liber, bri, *book*.  
 implōro, āre, āvi, *implore, ask*.  
 a or ab, prep. (abl.), *from, by*  
 [always ab before a vowel].

## EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list, and state the gender of each ; inflect all the verbs in the indicative and imperative present

Translate into English :—

1. Viri in tecta ligna portavērunt. 2. Agricolae puerorum animos delectābunt. 3. Pueri magistrique per agros ambulābant. 4. Saepe auxilium a Romanis imploravērant. 5. Agricolae cum feminis liberisque insulam habitant. 6. Agros aratro arāte. 7. Viris viam non monstrabunt. 8. Pueri magistro libros donant. 9. Aquilae trans fluvium volaverant. 10. Poetae in oppidum coronas portabant. 11. Ne vocate nautas ad oram. 12. Auxilium ab oppido implora.

Note.—The verb in Latin is usually at the end of the sentence.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They have called the sailors into the town. 2. They had walked with the boys in the fields. 3. You carried wood to the gates. 4. They will ask help from the children. 5. Do not call the girl to the gate. 6. The boy had implored aid from the master. 7. The men will plough the field with a plough. 8. They did not give the books to the master. 9. They dwell with their sons and daughters in the island. 10. Eagles have often flown over the river.

## LESSON XIII.

## ADJECTIVES in -US.

1. An adjective in Latin (whether attributive or predicative) agrees in gender, number, and case, with the noun it qualifies. Thus : Vir bōnus, *a good man* ; bōnus is nominative singular masculine, because vir is nominative singular masculine. Puella bōna,

*a good girl*; *bōna* is nominative singular feminine, agreeing with *puella*. So also in *Bellum longum*, *a long war*, *longum* is nominative singular neuter and agrees with *bellum*.

2. Many adjectives (called adjectives in *-us*), have three forms in the nominative for expressing gender,—one in *ūs*, (for the masculine), one in *-ā* (for the feminine), and one in *-um*, (for the neuter). Forms in *-us* are declined like *Domīnus*; forms in *-a*, like *Mensa*; and forms in *-um*, like *Bellum*. Thus:—

*Bōnus*, *good*.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>bōnus</i> ,	<i>bōnā</i> ,	<i>bōnum</i> .
GEN.	<i>bōnī</i> ,	<i>bōnae</i> ,	<i>bōnī</i> .
DAT.	<i>bōnō</i> ,	<i>bōnae</i> ,	<i>bōnō</i> .
ACC.	<i>bōnum</i> ,	<i>bōnam</i> ,	<i>bōnum</i> .
VOC.	<i>bōnē</i> ,	<i>bōnā</i> ,	<i>bōnum</i> .
ABL.	<i>bōnō</i> ,	<i>bōnā</i> ,	<i>bōnō</i> .

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>bōnī</i> ,	<i>bōnae</i> ,	<i>bōnā</i> .
GEN.	<i>bōnōrum</i> ,	<i>bōnārum</i> ,	<i>bōnōrum</i> .
DAT.	<i>bōnīs</i> ,	<i>bōnīs</i> ,	<i>bōnīs</i> .
ACC.	<i>bōnōs</i> ,	<i>bōnās</i> ,	<i>bōnā</i> .
VOC.	<i>bōnī</i> ,	<i>bōnae</i> ,	<i>bōnā</i> .
ABL.	<i>bōnīs</i> ,	<i>bōnīs</i> ,	<i>bōnīs</i> .

3. Decline together *puer cārus*, *a dear boy*:—

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

NOM.	<i>puer cārus</i> , <i>a dear boy</i> .	<i>pūērī cārī</i> , <i>dear boys</i> .
GEN.	<i>pūērī cārī</i> , <i>of a dear boy</i> .	<i>pūērōrum cārōrum</i> , <i>of dear boys</i> .
DAT.	<i>pūērō cārō</i> , <i>to or for a dear boy</i> .	<i>pūērīs cārīs</i> , <i>to or for dear boys</i> .
ACC.	<i>pūērūm cārūm</i> , <i>a dear boy</i> .	<i>pūērōs cārōs</i> , <i>dear boys</i> .
VOC.	<i>pūer cārē</i> , <i>O dear boy</i> .	<i>pūērī cārī</i> , <i>O dear boys</i> .
ABL.	<i>pūērō cārō</i> , <i>with, by or from a dear boy</i> .	<i>pūērīs cārīs</i> , <i>with, by or from dear boys</i> .

4. An adjective is often used with the noun understood: as, *Bōnus*, *a good man*; *bōna*, *a good woman*; *bōnum*, *a good thing*.

## VOCABULARY.

multus, -a, -um, *much, many.*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*

magnus, -a, -um, *great.*

rāpidus, -a, -um, *swift.*

densus, -a, -um, *thick.*

longus, -a, -um, *long.*

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright, distinguished.*

līber, lībri, *a book.*

saxum, -i, *a rock.*

discipūlus, -ī, *a pupil.*

schōla, -ae, *a school.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : pŭer bŏnus, vir magnus, pŭella cāra, mensa alta.

Translate into English :—

1. Agricolae campos magnos aravērunt. 2. Aquilae magnae trans fluvios altos volavērint. 3. Pueri multi libros non amant. 4. Pueri, libros virorum clarorum amāte. 5. Regīna cum filiā carā in silvā densā ambulābit. 6. Nautarum filii stellas claras spectavērant. 7. Vir pueros bonos semper laudabit. 8. Romani, in castris hiemabītis. 9. Ursi in silvis densis saepe hiemant. 10. Agricolae cum multis viris frumentum portabant. 11. Libri discipulorum animos saepe delectaverint. 12. Aquila ex silva alta in saxum volaverat. 13. Pueri, libros ad scholam portate. 14. Pueri multi libros viri clari laudavērunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. O boy, praise the diligence of the farmer's son. 2. The boys will have walked across high rocks to-day. 3. The farmer and his sons will gaze at the bright stars. 4. The boy is carrying many books to school. 5. Bears often pass the winter in a thick wood. 6. O masters, praise the diligence of the good boys. 7. The master will give a prize to the good boy. 8. O master, arouse the mind of the boy to diligence. 9. The boy walked across the swift stream. 10. The Romans often wintered in camp. 11. The good daughters of the farmer will give many roses to the queen to-day. 12. The sons of the farmer swam across the deep river.

## LESSON XIV.

## ADJECTIVES in -ER

## Of the First and Second Declensions.

1. Besides adjectives in -us, -a, -um, there are others in -er, a, um, belonging to the first and second declensions. These are inflected as follows :—

*Aeger, sick.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	aegēr,	aegrā,	aegrum.
GEN.	aegrī,	aegrae,	aegrī.
DAT.	aegrō,	aegrae,	aegrō.
ACC.	aegrum,	aegram,	aegrum.
VOC.	aegēr,	aegrā,	aegrum.
ABL.	aegrō,	aegrā,	aegrō.

## PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	aegrī,	aegrae.	aegrā.
GEN.	aegrōrum,	aegrārum,	aegrōrum.
DAT.	aegrīs,	aegrīs,	aegrīs.
ACC.	aegrōs,	aegrās,	aegrā.
VOC.	aegrī,	aegrae,	aegrā.
ABL.	aegrīs,	aegrīs,	aegrīs.

*Tēner, tender.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	tēner,	tēnērā,	tēnērum.
GEN.	tēnērī,	tēnērae,	tēnērī,
DAT.	tēnērō,	tēnērae,	tēnērō.
ACC.	tēnērum,	tēnēram,	tēnērum.
VOC.	tēnēr,	tēnērā,	tēnērum.
ABL.	tēnērō,	tēnērā,	tēnērō.

	PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	tĕnĕrĭ	tĕnĕrae,	tĕnĕrĕ.
GEN.	tĕnĕrōrum,	tĕnĕrārūm,	tĕnĕrōrum.
DAT.	tĕnĕrĭs,	tĕnĕrĭs,	tĕnĕrĭs.
ACC.	tĕnĕrōs,	tĕnĕrās,	tĕnĕrĕ.
VOC.	tĕnĕrĭ,	tĕnĕrae,	tĕnĕrĕ.
ABL.	tĕnĕrĭs,	tĕnĕrĭs,	tĕnĕrĭs.

NOTE.—Aeger is inflected in the masculine like magister; and, like magister, drops -e in the cases other than the nominative and vocative. Tener is inflected like puer, and retains the -e throughout. Both are inflected in the feminine like mensa, and in the neuter like bellum.

2. Most adjectives in -er drop -e in inflection, and are declined like aeger. The following retain the -e and are inflected like tener: miser, *wretched*; asper, *rough*; lacer, *torn*; liber, *free*; prosper, *fortunate*; and the compounds of -fer and -ger: as, aquilifer *eagle-bearing*; armiger, *armour-bearing*.

## VOCABULARY.

nĭger, -gra, -grum, <i>black</i> .	sŭus, -ĕ, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i> .
mĭser, -ĕrĕ, -ĕrum, <i>wretched</i> .	pulcher, -chrĕ, -chrum, <i>beautiful</i> .
noster, -trĕ, -trum, <i>our</i> .	confirmo, confirmĕre, confirm-
vester, -trĕ, -trum, <i>your (referring</i>	ĕ, <i>establish</i> .
<i>to more than one)</i> .	nunquam, adv., <i>never</i> .
mĕus, -ĕ, -um, (voc. sing. masc., mi),	tectum, -i, <i>a dwelling</i> .
<i>my</i> .	pĕricŭlum, -i, <i>danger</i> .
tŭus, -ĕ, -um, <i>thy, your (referring</i>	
<i>to one)</i> .	

## EXERCISE.

Decline together: puer tŭus, puella nostra, vir mĭser, dominus vester.

Translate into English:—

1. Puer magno cum periculo in fluvio alto natĕvit. 2. Magister filiarum suarum diligentiam saepe laudavĕrat. 3. Puella libros virorum clarorum hodie laudavĕrit. 4. Agricola puero aegro rosam nunquam donaverat. 5. Romani amicitiam cum servis hodie

confirmaverint. 6. Filius meus libros ad scholam portavit. 7. Legati tecta pulchra oppidi semper laudaverunt. 8. Serve, lignum ad legatorum tectum porta. 9. Amicus tuus cum filio suo stellas claras laudaverat. 10. Servorum diligentia dominorum animos saepe delectavit. 11. Domini, diligentiam servorum saepe laudate. 12. Servus mensas ad reginae aulam portaverat. 13. Aquila trans fluviorum ripas et per saxa alta volaverit. 14. Dominus in horto tuo rosas saepe laudat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The boys give a reward to the farmer's son. 2. The ambassadors of the Romans will have praised the farmers' dwellings. 3. O wretched man, do not carry wood to the queen's hall. 4. Your friends will not have praised the queen's daughters. 5. I shall praise the friendship of the good boys. 6. The beautiful queen will walk in the farmer's garden. 7. Farmers often bring wood from the forest to their dwellings. 8. Carry corn, O farmers, to the dwelling of the sick man. 9. Good pupils always delight the minds of the masters. 10. The good boys of the farmer were carrying wood to the sick man. 11. O Roman, adorn the temples of the gods with gold. 12. Gifts often delight the minds of good men. 13. The gold of the temples will delight the eyes of the ambassadors. 14. O farmer, always praise the diligence of your sons.

---

## LESSON XV.

### INFLECTION OF SUM, I AM.

1. The verb *sum*, *I am*, is inflected in the indicative and imperative as follows :—

#### INDICATIVE PRESENT.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	<i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i> .	<i>sūmus</i> , <i>we are</i> .
2. “	<i>ēs</i> , <i>thou art</i> .	<i>estis</i> , <i>you are</i> .
3. “	<i>est</i> , <i>he, (she or it) is</i> .	<i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i> .

IMPERFECT.

- |           |                                   |                          |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | ěram, <i>I was.</i>               | ěramus, <i>we were.</i>  |
| 2. “      | ěrās, <i>thou wast.</i>           | ěrātīs, <i>you were.</i> |
| 3. “      | ěrāt, <i>he, (she or it) was.</i> | ěrant, <i>they were.</i> |

FUTURE.

- |           |                                      |                             |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | ěro, <i>I shall be.</i>              | ěrimus, <i>we shall be.</i> |
| 2. “      | ěrīs, <i>thou wilt be.</i>           | ěrītīs, <i>you will be.</i> |
| 3. “      | ěrīt, <i>he (she or it) will be.</i> | ěrunt, <i>they will be.</i> |

PERFECT.

- |           |                                                   |                                                                                  |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | fūī, <i>I have been or I was.</i>                 | fūīmus, <i>we have been or we were.</i>                                          |
| 2. “      | fūīsti, <i>thou hast been or<br/>thou wast.</i>   | fūīstīs, <i>you have been or you were.<br/>fūērunt, or fūēre, they have been</i> |
| 3. “      | fūīt, <i>he, (she or it) has<br/>been or was.</i> | or they were.                                                                    |

PLUPERFECT.

- |           |                                             |                                |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | fūēram, <i>I had been.</i>                  | fūērāmus, <i>we had been.</i>  |
| 2. “      | fūērās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>             | fūērātīs, <i>you had been.</i> |
| 3. “      | fūērāt, <i>he (she or it) had<br/>been.</i> | fūērant, <i>they had been.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT.

- |           |                                                   |                                      |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | fūēro, <i>I shall have been.</i>                  | fūērīmus, <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. “      | fūērīs, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>               | fūērītīs, <i>you will have been.</i> |
| 3. “      | fūērīt, <i>he (she or it) will<br/>have been.</i> | fūērīnt, <i>they will have been.</i> |

IMPERATIVE-PRESENT.

- |           |                     |           |                            |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| 2. Pers., | ēs, <i>be thou.</i> | 2. Pers., | este, <i>be ye or you.</i> |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------|----------------------------|

2. An adjective used predicatively with the verb *sum*, agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers: as, *Puer est bonus, the boy is good; puella est bona, the girl is good.*

VOCABULARY.

bellīcōsus, -a -um, <i>warlike.</i>	Āriōvistus, -ī, <i>Ariovistus.</i>
cāsa, -ae, <i>a cottage.</i>	Rhēnus, ī, <i>Rhine.</i>
parv-us, -a, -um, <i>small.</i>	Rhōdānus, -ī, <i>Rhone.</i>
cōpīa, ae, <i>abundance, plenty</i> (in sing); <i>forces</i> (in plural).	proelium, -ī, <i>a battle.</i>
	Germānus, -ī, <i>a German</i>
	hērī, adv., <i>yesterday.</i>

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : casa parva, fluuius rapidus, populus bellicosus.

Translate into English :—

1. Agricolarum filii in silua ěrunt. 2. Reginae filiae erant pulchrae. 3. Agricolarum casae fuĕrunt paruae. 4. Pueri parui in Rheno natābant. 5. Romani bellicosi saepe fuerunt. 6. Ariovistus erat vir bellicosus. 7. Magnae erunt in provincia Romanorum copiae. 8. Agricolae filiae in siluis fuerunt. 9. Reginae filiae in Galliā fuĕrint. 10. In oppido heri fuīmus. 11. Frumenti copia in aruo erit magna. 12. Multi pueri reginae in agris hodie fuĕrunt. 13. Romani in proeliis multis prosperi erant. 14. Germani multi in silua fuĕrant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. We were in the fields yesterday. 2. You (sing.) were praising the walls of our town. 3. The farmer's son was in your garden. 4. The girls will be in the thick forest. 5. The good man had been in great danger. 6. I have often been in the beautiful garden. 7. The farmer's daughter was sick. 8. The good scholar will always delight the mind of the master. 9. Abundance of corn has always delighted the mind of the farmer. 10. The daughters of the queen are beautiful. 11. The man will praise the temple of the Romans. 12. You will be always good boys. 13. We shall be in the little temple to day. 14. The man and his daughter were in the forest yesterday.

## LESSON XVI.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES in -US and -ER.

1. The following adjectives in -us and -er have, in all genders, the genitive singular in -ius and the dative in -ī: *Ālius, āliā, āliud, other*; *altĕr, altĕra, altĕrum, other of two*; *tōtus, tōta, tōtum, whole*; *nullus, nulla, nullum, none*; *ullus, ulla, ullum, any*; *neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither*; *sōlus, sōla, sōlum, alone*; *ūnus, ūna,*



*ūnum, one; ūter, ūtra, ūtrum, which of two?* They are thus declined :—

Unus, *one.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>ūnūs,</i>	<i>ūnā,</i>	<i>ūnum.</i>
GEN.	<i>ūnius,</i>	<i>ūnius,</i>	<i>ūnius.</i>
DAT.	<i>ūnī,</i>	<i>ūnī,</i>	<i>ūnī.</i>
ACC.	<i>ūnum,</i>	<i>ūnam,</i>	<i>ūnum.</i>
ABL.	<i>ūnō,</i>	<i>ūnā,</i>	<i>ūnō.</i>

Uter, *which of two?*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>ūter,</i>	<i>ūtrā,</i>	<i>ūtrum.</i>
GEN.	<i>ūtrius,</i>	<i>ūtrius,</i>	<i>ūtrius.</i>
DAT.	<i>ūtrī,</i>	<i>ūtrī,</i>	<i>ūtrī.</i>
ACC.	<i>ūtrum,</i>	<i>ūtram,</i>	<i>ūtrum.</i>
ABL.	<i>ūtrō,</i>	<i>ūtrā,</i>	<i>ūtrō.</i>

Alius, *other.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>ālius,</i>	<i>āliā,</i>	<i>āliūd.</i>
GEN.	<i>ālius,</i>	<i>ālius,</i>	<i>ālius.</i>
DAT.	<i>āliī,</i>	<i>āliī,</i>	<i>āliī.</i>
ACC.	<i>ālium,</i>	<i>āliam,</i>	<i>āliūd.</i>
ABL.	<i>āliō,</i>	<i>āliā,</i>	<i>āliō.</i>

Alter, *other of two.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>altēr,</i>	<i>altērā,</i>	<i>altērum.</i>
GEN.	<i>altērius,</i>	<i>altērius,</i>	<i>altērius.</i>
DAT.	<i>altērī,</i>	<i>altērī,</i>	<i>altērī.</i>
ACC.	<i>altērum,</i>	<i>altēram,</i>	<i>altērum.</i>
ABL.	<i>altērō,</i>	<i>altērā,</i>	<i>altērō.</i>

2. The plural in every case is regular (*i.e.*, like the plural of *bōnus*).

NOTE.—Alter, *other of two*, makes *-ius*, and not *-iūs*, in the genitive.

## VOCABULARY.

*bellīcōsus, -a, -um, warlike.*

*mālus, -a, -um, bad.*

*crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, frequent.*

*mīser, mīsera, mīserum, wretched.*

*impēriūm, ī, power, sway.*

*doctrīna, learning.*

*formo, āre, āvi, mould, fashion.*

*convōco, āre, āvi, summon, assemble.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *alius vir, una terra, alterum bellum, ullum regnum, alter puer.*

Translate into English :—

1. Alter vir hodie in castris est.
2. Pueri unam stellam in caelo spectant.
3. Magister animos discipulorum saepe format.
4. Unus puer in scholā hodie non erat.
5. Per multas silvas hodie ambulavērunt.
6. Neuter puer librum tuum laudavērat.
7. Utrum puerum vocābo?
8. Ad Britannos frumentum saepe portābant.
9. Pueri doctrinam discipulorum saepe laudabunt.
10. Pueri dili-

gentiam amicorum vestrorum laudāte. 11. Puer solus in silva stellas claras spectavit. 12. Ne, pueri, miseros viros ad bellum excitate. 13. Viri imperium Romanum laudaverunt. 14. Puer alteram pinnam puellae donavit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The other son of the farmer will bring wood to the queen's dwelling. 2. An other boy will swim across the river. 3. Do not, O boy, praise bad men. 4. The warlike queens will assemble their forces. 5. The boys often praise the queen's horses. 6. The scholars of the school prepared a feast for their friends. 7. No boy was in the school to-day. 8. The man is alone in the forest. 9. An other queen will give prizes to the sailors. 10. The Romans pitched an other camp across the river. 11. The Romans built a temple between our camp and the banks of the river. 12. No horses are in the fields to-day. 13. Which of the two will carry the rose to the queen? 14. One man with his sons was walking in the fields.

---

## LESSON XVII.

### INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

#### NE, NONNE, NUM.

1. Interrogative sentences in Latin (when not headed by an interrogative pronoun or adverb) are usually distinguished by one of the interrogative particles, *-nē*, *nonnē*, *num*. The order of words does not, as in English, mark an interrogative sentence.

2. The particle *-nē* (which is written after the first word in the sentence), asks for information : as, *Amatnē?* *does he love?* The answer will be either, *amat*, *he loves* (i.e., *Yes*), or *non amat*, *he does not love* (i.e., *No*). The particle *-nē* is generally appended to the emphatic word (which is then put first) : as, *Filiusnē amat?* *does the son love?* (i. e. = *Is it the son that loves?*)

3. *Nonne* expects the answer *Yes* : as, *Nonne puer amat?* *does not the boy love?* The answer expected is, *amat*, *he loves* (i.e., *Yes*). *Nonne* is generally the first word in the sentence.

4. *Num* expects the answer *No*: as, *Num puer amat?* *does the boy love?* The answer expected is, *non amat*, *he does not love*, (i.e., *No*). *Num* is generally the first word in the sentence.

Note.—*Yes* and *No*, in answer to questions, have no single equivalent in common use. They are usually expressed by repeating the verb, as seen above.

## VOCABULARY.

mēdicīna, ae, *medicine*.

ēquus, -i, *a horse*.

arvum, -i, *a ploughed field*.

gēner, genēri, *a son-in-law*.

fōrum, -i, *a market-place*.

aedificium, -i, *a building*.

ira, ae, *anger*.

cur, adv. (interrog.) *why?*

mox, adv., *soon*.

uter (interrog. adj.), *which of two?*

## EXERCISE.

Decline all nouns in the above list and state the gender of each.

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne viri filios ad hortos vocant? 2. Puellane est aegra?
3. Num pueri dominorum iram excitābunt? 4. Agricolaene arva domini heri arābant?
5. Nonne reginae gener in aula mox erit?
6. Vir bonus medicinam puero aegro donābit.
7. Cur in schola heri non fuisti?
8. Nonne agricolae in silva heri erant?
9. Num magistri discipulorum diligentiam laudavērunt?
10. Nonne equi lignum ad oppidi forum portābant?
11. Cur vir puerorum iram hodie excitavit?
12. Discipline in schola beati erunt?
13. Puellaene in rēginae aula ambulābunt?
14. Num agricolae filius in horto magno fuerat?

Translate into Latin :—

1. Was not the boy in the school to-day? 2. Will the queen walk in the large garden?
3. Will the farmer praise the diligence of his sons? 4. Will the moon and the stars be bright?
5. Is not the daughter of the sailor good? 6. Does not the farmer plough his fields?
7. Will the farmer be in the market-place to-day? 8. Was not the man in great danger?
9. Did not the eagle fly across the stream?
10. Was the cottage of the farmer small? 11. O farmer, was not your son in the battle?
12. Will my daughter soon carry

the beautiful roses into the building? 13. Did the boy excite the anger of the slave? 14. Will not the master praise the diligence of the pupils? Yes.

---

## LESSON XVIII.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

1. In the third declension, the genitive singular ends in *-īs*: as, *princeps, a chief*; gen., *princip-īs*.

2. The third declension is harder than the 1st or 2nd, because it is harder to get the part of the noun to which the case-endings are to be added. Examples of the common types of declension are given under the usual classification; but, to beginners, no rule is of much value but the following: *Learn by heart the nom. and gen. of every noun of the 3rd decl. you meet.* If the nom. and gen. are known, the noun is easily declined.

3. Nouns of the 3rd decl. are divided into two wide classes, according as the stem (*i. e.* the part of the word to which the endings are added) ends in a consonant or in *-i*. Rules will be given below for recognizing *-i* stems; and when these are known, all others will, of course, be *consonant* stems.

### CONSONANT STEMS.

4. Consonant stems\* are divided into four classes:—

- (1) Labial stems (*i. e.*, stems ending in **p, b, m**).
- (2) Dental stems (*i. e.*, “ “ “ **t, d, s, n**).
- (3) Lingual stems (*i. e.*, “ “ “ **r, l**).
- (4) Guttural stems (*i. e.*, “ “ “ **c, g**).

---

\*The nominative of nouns of this class generally ends in *-s*, which, however, is dropped after **l, n, r, s**, or combines with the gutturals **c, g**, to form **x** (**cs** or **gs=x**): as, *regs=rex, king*; *arcs=arx, citadel*. **T** or **d** disappears before **s**: as, *milit+s=milits=milis*, or (with a change of vowel) *miles, soldier*. The nominative of neuter nouns is the same as the stem: as, *fulgur, gen., fulgūr-is, lightning*.

5. The first class of consonant stems includes stems ending in a labial (p, b, m).

Princeps (masc.), *chief, prince.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. princeps, <i>a chief.</i>	princĭp-ēs, <i>chiefs.</i>
GEN. princĭp-ĭs, <i>of a chief.</i>	princĭp-um, <i>of chiefs.</i>
DAT. princĭp-ĭ, <i>to, or for, a chief.</i>	princĭp-ĭbus, <i>to, or for, chiefs.</i>
ACC. princĭp-em, <i>a chief.</i>	princĭp-ēs, <i>chiefs.</i>
VOC. princeps, <i>O chief.</i>	princĭp-ēs, <i>O chiefs.</i>
ABL. princĭp-ē, <i>with, by, or from a chief.</i>	princĭp-ĭbus, <i>with, by, or from, chiefs.</i>

NOTE.—The nominative and vocative (singular and plural) are always alike in the 3rd declension.

Trabs (fem.), *a beam.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. trabs, <i>a beam.</i>	trāb-ēs, <i>beams.</i>
GEN. trāb-is, <i>of a beam.</i>	trāb-um, <i>of beams.</i>
DAT. trāb-ĭ, <i>to, or for, a beam.</i>	trāb-ĭbus, <i>to, or for beams.</i>
ACC. trāb-em, <i>a beam.</i>	trāb-ēs, <i>beams.</i>
VOC. trabs, <i>O beam.</i>	trāb-ēs, <i>O beams.</i>
ABL. trāb-ē, <i>with, by, from, or in a beam.</i>	trāb-ĭbus, <i>with, by, from, or in beams.</i>

Hiems (fem.), *winter.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. hĭems, <i>winter.</i>	hĭēm-ēs, <i>winters.</i>
GEN. hĭēm-is, <i>of winter.</i>	hĭēm-um, <i>of winters.</i>
DAT. hĭēm-ĭ, <i>to, or for winter.</i>	hĭēm-ĭbus, <i>to, or for winters.</i>
ACC. hĭēm-em, <i>winter.</i>	hĭēm-ēs, <i>winters.</i>
VOC. hĭems, <i>O winter.</i>	hĭēm-ēs, <i>O winters.</i>
ABL. hĭēm-ē, <i>with, by, from or in winter.</i>	hĭēm-ĭbus, <i>with, by, from, or in winters.</i>

NOTE.—Nouns of the 3rd declension are declined by dropping the -is of the genitive singular and adding to the part of the noun remaining the case-endings given above.

## VOCABULARY.

Gallus, i, a Gaul.

verbum, i, a word

săgittă, ae, an arrow.

lôco, lôcăre, lôcăvi, place, pitch.

păro, āre, āvi, prepare.

vulnĕro, vulnĕrăre, vulnĕrăvi,  
wound.contră, prep. (acc.), against, over  
against.circum, prep. (acc.), in the neigh-  
borhood of, around.

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : princeps magnus, hiems longa, trabs alta, sagitta una.

Translate into English :—

1. Puer, ne principem sagittă<sup>1</sup> vulneră. 2. Pueri cum principe contra Romam hiemăbunt. 3. Agricola trabs ex silvis ad principis aedificium portavĕrunt. 4. Galli bellum contra principes excităbunt. 5. Ne pecuniam principibus donă. 6. Viri, ne principum iram verbis<sup>1</sup> excitate. 7. Romani castra contra oppidum locavĕrunt. 8. Gallorum principes copias contra Romanos parăbunt. 9. Trabs multas ex silvis portate. 10. Pueri ursos sagittis<sup>1</sup> vulneravĕrunt. 11. Nonne agricolarum filii in silva ambulabunt? 12. Puerne principem sagittă vulnerăvit? 13. Num Romani castra circum oppidum locavĕrunt? 14. Agricola, trabem ad ripam fluvii portate.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Did the boy wound the chief with an arrow? 2. Will not the boys carry the beam to the farmer's dwelling? 3. The chiefs pitched their camp around the walls of the town. 4. Do not, O man, arouse the anger of the chief with words. 5. In Gaul the winters are clear. 6. We shall soon be in the town. 7. The queen and her handmaiden will praise the winters of Gaul. 8. O boy, call the farmer to the prince's hall. 9. The servants of the prince will have wintered around the walls of the town. 10. The princes of the Gauls will not carry beams for the Romans. 11. Will not the Romans carry corn to their chiefs? 12. The Gauls had seized a town of the Romans. 13. Did the prince's slave wound the eagle with an arrow? 14. The walls of Rome are beautiful.

<sup>1</sup> See p 8, 3.

## LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

## CONSONANT STEMS.

The second class of consonant stems includes stems ending in a dental (t, d, s, n).

Miles (masc.), *a soldier*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. miles, <i>a soldier</i> .	militēs, <i>soldiers</i> .
GEN. militīs, <i>of a soldier</i> .	militum, <i>of soldiers</i> .
DAT. militī, <i>to or for a soldier</i> .	militibus, <i>to or for soldiers</i> .
ACC. militem, <i>a soldier</i> .	militēs, <i>soldiers</i> .
VOC. miles, <i>O soldier</i> .	militēs, <i>O soldiers</i> .
ABL. militē, <i>with, by or from a soldier</i> .	militibus, <i>with, by or from, soldiers</i> .

Pēs (masc.), *a foot*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. pēs, <i>a foot</i> .	pēdēs, <i>feet</i> .
GEN. pēdīs, <i>of a foot</i> .	pēdum, <i>of feet</i> .
DAT. pēdī, <i>to or for a foot</i> .	pēdibus, <i>to or for feet</i> .
ACC. pēdem, <i>a foot</i> .	pēdēs, <i>feet</i> .
VOC. pēs, <i>O foot</i> .	pēdēs, <i>O feet</i> .
ABL. pēdē, <i>with, by or from a foot</i> .	pēdibus, <i>with, by or from feet</i> .

Note. The letters M., F., and N., will be used hereafter for masc., fem., and neuter, respectively.

Flos (M.), *a flower*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. flōs, <i>a flower</i> .	flōrēs, <i>flowers</i> .
GEN. flōris, <i>of a flower</i> .	flōrum, <i>of flowers</i> .
DAT. flōrī, <i>to, or for a flower</i> .	flōrībus, <i>to or for flowers</i> .
ACC. flōrem, <i>a flower</i> .	flōrēs, <i>flowers</i> .
VOC. flōs, <i>O flower</i> .	flōrēs, <i>O flowers</i> .
ABL. flōrē, <i>with, by, from, or in a flower</i> .	flōrībus, <i>with, by, from, or in flowers</i> .

## Opus (N.), a work.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>ōpūs, a work.</i>	<i>ōpērā, works.</i>
GEN. <i>ōpēris, of a work.</i>	<i>ōpērum, of works.</i>
DAT. <i>ōpērī, to, or for a work.</i>	<i>ōpērībus, to, or for works.</i>
ACC. <i>ōpūs, a work.</i>	<i>ōpērā, works.</i>
VOC. <i>ōpūs, O work.</i>	<i>ōpērā, O works.</i>
ABL. <i>ōpērē, with, by, from, or in a work.</i>	<i>ōpērībus, with, by, from, or in works.</i>

## Corpus (N.), a body.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>corpus, a body.</i>	<i>corpōrā, bodies</i>
GEN. <i>corpōris, of a body.</i>	<i>corpōrum, of bodies.</i>
DAT. <i>corpōrī, to, or for a body.</i>	<i>corpōrībus, to, or for bodies.</i>
ACC. <i>corpus, a body.</i>	<i>corpōrā, bodies.</i>
VOC. <i>corpus, O body.</i>	<i>corpōrā, O bodies.</i>
ABL. <i>corpōrē, with, by, from, or in a body.</i>	<i>corpōrībus, with, by, from, or in bodies.</i>

## Regio (F.), a district.

## Virgo (F.), a maiden.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
NOM.	<i>rēgīo,</i>	<i>rēgīōnēs.</i>	<i>virgo,</i>	<i>virgīnēs.</i>
GEN.	<i>rēgīōnis,</i>	<i>rēgīōnum.</i>	<i>virgīnis,</i>	<i>virgīnum.</i>
DAT.	<i>rēgīōnī,</i>	<i>rēgīōnībus.</i>	<i>virgīnī,</i>	<i>virgīnībus.</i>
ACC.	<i>rēgīōnem,</i>	<i>rēgīōnēs.</i>	<i>virgīnem,</i>	<i>virgīnēs.</i>
VOC.	<i>rēgīo,</i>	<i>rēgīōnēs.</i>	<i>virgo,</i>	<i>virgīnēs.</i>
ABL.	<i>rēgīōnē,</i>	<i>rēgīōnībus.</i>	<i>virgīnē,</i>	<i>virgīnībus.<sup>1</sup></i>

<sup>1</sup>The stems of the above nouns respectively are *pēs*-, *milit*-, *flōr*-, *ōpēr*-, *corpor*-, *rēgīōn*-, *virgīn*-.

The dentals -t and -d are dropped in the nominative before -s. Thus: *pēs* = *pēs*; *miles* = *militis* (with a change of vowel).

Between two vowels -s becomes -r. Thus: *hōnos* (later form *honor*) has the genitive *hōnōris* for *hōnōsis*; *corpōris* is for *corpōsis*.

The -s is sometimes dropped in the nominative and vocative, as in *rēgīo*, *virgo*. Nominatives in -o have also lost the final -n of the stem. Thus the stem of *rēgīo* is *rēgīōn*.



## VOCABULARY.

căput, capĭtis (N.), <i>head.</i>	fulgŭr, fulgŭris (N.), <i>lightning.</i>
flŭmen, flumĭnis (N.), <i>a river.</i>	causa, ae, <i>a cause, reason.</i>
virtŭs, virtŭtis (F.), <i>valor.</i>	tĕlum, i, <i>dart.</i>
gĕnŭs, gĕnĕris (N.), <i>a kind.</i>	rŏgo, rŏgāre, rŏgāvi, <i>ask.</i>
nŏmen, nŏmĭnis, (N.), <i>a name.</i>	

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : caput altum, flos tener, opus magnum, virtus magna, causa clara, virgo pulchra.

Translate into English :—

1. Milites virorum nomina saepe rogavĕrunt. 2. Agricola, fulgŭra in caelo spectāte. 3. Milites per alta flumina hodie ambulavĕrunt. 4. Nonne flos pulcher in horto meo est? 5. Romanine multos telis suis vulnerābant? 6. Hodie Romani militum suorum virtutem laudabant. 7. Princeps, militum tuorum virtutem spectā. 8. Nonne caput floris altum erat? 9. Reginae causa militum animis cara fuit. 10. Milites opera magna trans flumen altum aedificavĕrant. 11. Regio circum flumen erat pulchra. 12. Regina militum nomina rogavĕrit. 13. Virgines pulchrae in aula reginae erunt. 14. Nonne fulgŭra in caelo clara fuerunt?

Translate into Latin :—

1. The soldier will walk across deep rivers to-day. 2. Were not the cottages of the soldiers small? 3. Were the bodies of the Germans large? 4. Did not the queen praise the valor of the soldiers in the battle? 5. The soldiers will build a great work across the river. 6. Did you not ask the name of the flower? 7. Will not the boy praise the beautiful maiden? 8. Was the cause of the soldiers just? 9. The soldiers wounded many Romans with darts. 10. The boy had wounded his foot with a dart. 11. Were the flowers in the master's garden beautiful? 12. Was not the boy in school to-day? 13. O sailor, is not the lightning bright? 14. Did not the farmer praise the beautiful flowers in the thick wood?

## LESSON XX.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

## CONSONANT STEMS.

1. The third class of consonant stems includes stems ending in a lingual (-r or -l).

Victor (M.), *a conqueror*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM.	victor, <i>a conqueror</i> .	victōrēs, <i>conquerors</i> .
GEN.	victōris, <i>of a conqueror</i> .	victōrum, <i>of conquerors</i> .
DAT.	victōrī, <i>to, or for a conqueror</i> .	victōrībus, <i>to, or for conquerors</i> .
ACC.	victōrem, <i>a conqueror</i> .	victōrēs, <i>conquerors</i> .
VOC.	victor, <i>O conqueror</i> .	victōrēs, <i>O conquerors</i> .
ABL.	victōre, <i>with, by, or from a conqueror</i> .	victōrībus, <i>with, by, or from conquerors</i> .

Sol (M.), *sun*. Consul (M.), *consul*. Passer (M.), *sparrow*.  
Pater (M.), *father*.

	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	sol	consul	passer	pāter
GEN.	sōlis	consūlis	passēris	pātris
DAT.	sōlī	consūli	passērī	pātrī
ACC.	sōlem	consūlem	passērem	pātrēm
VOC.	sol	consul	passer	pāter
ABL.	sōlē	consūlē	passērē	pātrē
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	pātrēs
GEN.	sōlum	consūlum	passērum	pātrum
DAT.	sōlībus	consūlībus	passērībus	pātrībus
ACC.	sōles	consūlēs	passērēs	pātrēs
VOC.	sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	pātrēs
ABL.	sōlībus	consūlībus	passērībus	pātrībus

2. An appositive noun agrees in case with the noun to which it refers : as, Cicerōnem oratōrem necant, *they are killing the orator Cicero*.

## VOCABULARY.

impērātor, impērātōris (M.), a commander.	Cīcēro, ōnis (M.), <i>Cicero</i> .
lūmen, lūminis (N.), a <i>light</i> .	tīmor, tīmōris (M.), <i>fear</i> .
agger, aggēris (M.), a <i>mound</i> .	Britannus, -i, a <i>Briton</i> .
frāter, frātris (M.), a <i>brother</i> .	ōcēānus, -i, <i>ocean</i> .
Caesar, Caesāris (M.), <i>Caesar</i> .	sūpēro, sūpērāre, sūpērāvī, <i>sur-</i> <i>pass, overcome, conquer</i> .
sōror, sōrōris (F.), a <i>sister</i> .	contra, prep. (acc.), <i>against</i> .
ōrātiō, oratiōnis (F.), an <i>oration</i> .	cum, prep. (abl.), <i>with, along with</i> .
ōrātor, ōrātōris (M.), an <i>orator</i> .	

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : sol clārus, sōror cāra, consul noster, victor nullus, impērātor magnus.

Translate into English :—

1. Estne sol lumen clarum? 2. Nonne Cicero consul populi Romani fuit? 3. Pueri Ciceronis consulis orationes claras saepe laudavērunt. 4. Milites castrorum Romanorum aggeres hodie occupavērunt. 5. Caesar, Gallorum victor, in consulis castris mox erit. 6. Timorne militum magnus erat? 7. Num consulis sorores in horto magno fuērunt? 8. Caesar, Romanorum imperator, Britannos in proelio superāvit. 9. Nonne milites Romani aggerem altum circum oppidi muros aedificavērunt? 10. Pater, fili tui periculum magnum spectā. 11. Nonne consul Romanus copias magnas contra Germanos parāvit? 12. In oceāno erant multae insūlae. 13. Caesar Ariovistum, Germanorum imperatorem, in proelio superābit. 14. Nonne fulgur hodie erat clarum?

Translate into Latin :—

1. O boy, praise the diligence of Cicero, the Roman orator. 2. Caesar, the commander of the Romans, will soon seize the town of the Gauls. 3. The beautiful sister of the Roman commander praised the walls of the town. 4. The brothers of the Roman consul were in the battle. 5. The soldiers will conquer the forces of the Germans in battle to-day. 6. Were the sisters of the consul walking among the flowers? 7. Are there not many sparrows in the town? 8. The sun was bright to-day. 9. The sons of the farmer built a high mound around their father's garden. 10. The Britons conquered the commander of the Romans in many battles. 11. Cicero, the brother of the orator, was commander along with

Caesar. 12. Many men praise the orations of Cicero, the orator.  
13. Caesar was a distinguished commander of the Romans. 14. The soldiers will soon be in the camp.

---

## LESSON XXI.

### THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

#### CONSONANT STEMS.

The fourth class of consonant stems includes stems ending in a guttural (-c or -g).

*Iūdex, a judge.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>iūdex, a judge.</i>	<i>iūdīcēs, judges.</i>
GEN. <i>iūdīcis, of a judge.</i>	<i>iūdīcum, of judges.</i>
DAT. <i>iūdīcī, to, or for a judge.</i>	<i>iūdīcībus, to, or for judges.</i>
ACC. <i>iūdīcem, a judge.</i>	<i>iūdīcēs, judges.</i>
VOC. <i>iūdex, O judge.</i>	<i>iūdīcēs, O judges.</i>
ABL. <i>iūdīcē, with, from, or by a judge.</i>	<i>iūdīcībus, with, from, or by judges.</i>

*Rēx (M.), a king. Rādīx (F.), a root. Dux (M. or F.), a leader.  
Lex (F.), a law.*

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM. <i>rex</i>	<i>rādīx</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>lex</i>
GEN. <i>rēgis</i>	<i>rādīcis</i>	<i>dūcis</i>	<i>lēgis</i>
DAT. <i>rēgī</i>	<i>rādīcī</i>	<i>dūcī</i>	<i>lēgī</i>
ACC. <i>rēgem</i>	<i>rādīcem</i>	<i>dūcem</i>	<i>lēgem</i>
VOC. <i>rex</i>	<i>rādīx</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>lēx</i>
ABL. <i>rēgē</i>	<i>rādīcē</i>	<i>dūcē</i>	<i>lēgē</i>
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM. <i>rēgēs</i>	<i>rādīcēs</i>	<i>dūcēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
GEN. <i>rēgum</i>	<i>rādīcum</i>	<i>dūcum</i>	<i>lēgum</i>
DAT. <i>rēgībus</i>	<i>rādīcībus</i>	<i>dūcībus</i>	<i>lēgībus</i>
ACC. <i>rēgēs</i>	<i>rādīcēs</i>	<i>dūcēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
VOC. <i>rēgēs</i>	<i>rādīcēs</i>	<i>dūcēs</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>
ABL. <i>rēgībus</i>	<i>rādīcībus</i>	<i>dūcībus</i>	<i>lēgībus</i> <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The stems of these nouns are respectively : *iudīc-*, *rēg-*, *radīc-*, *dūc-*, and *lēg-*.

## VOCABULARY.

vox, vōcis (F.), <i>a voice.</i>	accūso, accūsāre, accūsāvi,
carmen, carmīnis (N.), <i>a song.</i>	<i>accuse.</i>
lēo, lēōnis (M.), <i>a lion.</i>	prōmulgo, prōmulgāre, prōmul-
arbor, arbōris (F.), <i>a tree.</i>	<i>gāvi, to enact.</i>
cōmes, cōmītis (M.), <i>a companion.</i>	lōco, āre, āvi, <i>to place.</i>
lēgiō, iōnis (F.), <i>a legion.</i>	

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : cōmes aeger, lex nulla, dux bōnus, rādix tēnēra, arbor altēra.

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne puellae carmina cantābant? 2. Num arbōres in horto parvo magnae erant? 3. Regisne comites fuērunt multi? 4. Arboris radīces in terra altae erant. 5. Num regis filii agricolam accūsavērunt? 6. Rex Romanus leges populo promulgāvit. 7. Nonne leo magnus in silvā densā erat? 8. Caesar Ariovistum, ducem Germanorum, in proelio superavit. 9. Nonne arbor magna inter Romanorum copias et flumen erat? 10. Poetaene carmina pueris hodie cantabant? 11. Magistri discipulī libros Ciceronis oratōris laudabant. 12. Romani iudīcis lēges saepe laudavērunt. 13. Nonne puer agricolae comitem accusavit? 14. Caesārem, Romanorum imperatorem, accusābas. 15. Ducis filii frumentum in reginae tectum portant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The sons of the king will place a high tree in the garden. 2. Will not the companions of the farmer praise the diligence of their sons? 3. The roots of the tree were long. 4. Did the kings of the Romans enact laws for the people? 5. Caesar, the distinguished commander of the Romans, often defeated the Britons in battle. 6. Were there large trees between the town and the camp of the Romans? 7. Will the daughters of the farmer sing songs to the consul's sons? 8. The river was deep around the walls of the town. 9. The boys often praised the voice of Caesar, the leader of the Romans. 10. Did not the father often blame the sons of the consul? 11. The poets will sing songs in the queen's hall to-day. 12. The Romans always praised the orations of Cicero, the Roman consul. 13. The laws of your judge were just. 14. The songs of the poet always delighted the mind of the farmer.

## LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

## I-STEMS.

The second great class of nouns of the third declension, consists of nouns whose stem ends in -i: as, *turris*, a tower; stem, *turri*. These are called i-stems and include:—

- (1) Nouns in -is or -es not increasing in the genitive (*i.e.*, with the same number of syllables in genitive and nominative).
- (2) Neuter nouns ending in -e, -al, or -ar.
- (3) Monosyllables with stems ending in two consonants: as, *urbs*, a city.
- (4) Most nouns ending in -ns, or -rs: as, *amans*, a lover.

They are thus declined:—

*Turris* (F.), a tower.

## SINGULAR.

NOM.	<i>turrīs</i> , a tower.
GEN.	<i>turrīs</i> , of a tower.
DAT.	<i>turri</i> , to or for a tower.
ACC.	<i>turrem</i> (or <i>turrim</i> ), a tower
VOC.	<i>turrīs</i> , O tower.
ABL.	<i>turrē</i> (or <i>turri</i> ), with, by, from, or in a tower.

## PLURAL.

<i>turrēs</i> , towers.
<i>turriūm</i> , of towers.
<i>turribus</i> , to or for towers.
<i>turrēs</i> (or <i>turrīs</i> ), towers.
<i>turrēs</i> , O towers.
<i>turribus</i> , with, by, from, or in towers.

NOTE.—Nouns of this class (i-stems) are declined like consonant stems (*i.e.*, by dropping the -is of the genitive, and adding the case-endings); but they show the -i of the stem in the genitive and accusative plural, and often in the accusative and ablative singular.

Ignis (M.), <i>fire.</i>	Hostis (M. or F.), <i>enemy.</i>	Nubēs (F.), <i>a cloud.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM. ignis	hostis	nubēs
GEN. ignis	hostis	nubīs
DAT. igni	hosti	nubi
ACC. ignem	hostem	nubem
VOC. ignis	hostis	nubēs
ABL. ignē (-i)	hostē	nubē
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM. ignēs	hostēs	nubēs
GEN. ignium	hostium	nubium
DAT. ignibus	hostibus	nubibus
ACC. ignēs (-is)	hostēs (is)	nubēs (is)
VOC. ignēs	hostēs	nubēs
ABL. ignibus	hostibus	nubibus

## VOCABULARY.

cānis, cānis (M. or F.), <i>a dog.</i>	latro, latrāre, latrāvi, <i>bark.</i>
hostis, hostis (M. or F.), <i>an enemy.</i>	servo, servāre, servāvi, <i>preserve,</i>
collis, collis (M.), <i>a hill.</i>	<i>keep.</i>
nāvis, nāvis (F.), <i>a ship.</i>	ante, prep. (acc.), <i>before.</i>
civis, civis (M.), <i>a citizen.</i>	contra, prep. (acc.), <i>against.</i>
lux, lūcis (F.), <i>light.</i>	inter, prep. (acc.), <i>between.</i>
nūmērus, -i, <i>number.</i>	pro, prep. (abl.), <i>before, for.</i>
fāber, bri, <i>a workman.</i>	fortiter, adv., <i>bravely.</i>

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : cānis magnus, collis altus, lux clāra, nūmērus ingens, civis bōnus, turris alta, ignis clārus.

Translate into English :—

1. Canis domini in aula latrat. 2. Nonne milites collem altum pro oppido occupavērunt? 3. Inter Romanorum castra et hostium erat flumen altum. 4. Milites pro patria fortiter pugnābant. 5. Nonne cives Romani pro Italia contra hostes pugnābunt? 6. In hostium numero semper fuērunt. 7. Caesar turrem altam pro oppidi portis locāvit. 8. Inter fines Gallorum et Germanorum est flumen Rhenus. 9. Nonne viri pro libertate pugnabant? 10. Viri, libertatem populi Romani servāte. 11. Hostes arva Gallorum vas-

tabunt. 12. Numerus magnus hostium in castris erit. 13. Lunae lumen clarum fuit. 14. Cives Romani ludos saepe spectabunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. O Romans, save the liberty of the people. 2. The soldiers often fought for their native land. 3. The Romans pitched their camp before the gate of the town. 4. The dogs bark in the dwelling of the farmer. 5. The light of the moon will be clear. 6. Between the hill and the plain the Romans pitched their camp. 7. The slaves of the king seized a high hill in-front-of (*pro + abl.*) the town. 8. The farmer's sons gazed-on the camp of the enemy from (*ex + abl.*) the high hill. 9. The citizens will often praise the valor of the boy in the battle. 10. The workmen of the Romans built many ships. 11. The camp of the enemy was between the town and the river Rhone. 12. The enemy will build many towers on (*in + abl.*) the high hills.

## LESSON XXIII.

### THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

#### I-STEMS.

Neuter nouns in -e, -al, -ar are declined as follows :—

Māre (N.), *a sea*. Ānīmal (N.), *an animal*. Calcar (N.), *spur*.

	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	māre	ānīmal	calcar
GEN.	māris	ānīmālis	calcāris
DAT.	mārī	ānīmālī	calcārī
ACC.	māre	ānīmal	calcar
VOC.	māre	ānīmal	calcar
ABL.	mārī	ānīmālī	calcārī
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	māria	ānīmālīa	calcārīa
GEN.	mārīum	ānīmālīum	calcārīum
DAT.	mārībus	ānīmālībus	calcārībus
ACC.	māria	ānīmālīa	calcārīa
VOC.	māria	ānīmālīa	calcārīa
ABL.	mārībus	ānīmālībus	calcārībus



Note.—Neuters in -e, -al and -ar have the ablative singular in -ī and the genitive plural in -īum.

## VOCABULARY.

tōlēro, tōlērāre, tōlērāvi, <i>bear,</i> <i>endure.</i>	rūpes, rūpis (F.), <i>a rock.</i> long-us, -a, -um, <i>long.</i>
crēmo, crēmāre, crēmāvi, <i>burn.</i>	æqu-us, -a, -um, <i>just.</i>
custos, custōdis (M.), <i>a guard.</i>	āpud, prep. (acc.), <i>near.</i>
iūs, iūris (N.), <i>right, law.</i>	Graecus, -i, <i>Greek.</i>
litus, litōris (N.), <i>shore.</i>	

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : Ius Graecum, ānīmāl tēnērum, rūpes alta, litus longum.

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne milites Romani aggērem altum in alto mari aedificābunt? 2. Consul in castris Romanis hodie erit. 3. Num agricolarum pueri lignum in forum portavērant? 4. Rupes in litore altae erant. 5. Iura Romana aequa erant. 6. Animalia magna in mari alto sunt. 7. Nonne pueri lignum in patris sui tecto cremavērunt? 8. Leo est rex animalium omnium. 9. Nautae frumentum multum in navibus ad Italiam portabunt. 10. Graeci regem hostium superaverunt. 11. Animālia multa per mare natant. 12. Custodes multos in rupe alta locavisti. 13. Solis lux est clara. 14. Multa animalia in silvis densis hiemant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Will the sailors endure the dangers of the sea? 2. The soldiers of the Romans will seize a part of the town. 3. The consul's sons were in the town to-day. 4. The king's brother stands on (*in + abl.*) the shore of the great sea. 5. The farmers will burn the wood before the gates of the town. 6. The rocks in the river were high. 7. The dwellings of the farmers will be large. 8. The guards of the Roman soldiers will keep the shore. 9. The sons of the farmer burnt the wood in the dwelling. 10. The winters are long in Gaul. 11. The Roman soldier endured the cold of the long winters. 12. Did the soldiers preserve the walls of the town?

## LESSON XXIV.

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*).

Many nouns in -s and -x (originally -i-stems) have in the singular the declension of consonant stems, and in the plural that of -i stems. They are chiefly monosyllables ending in two consonants, like *urbs, urbis, a city*; or nouns ending in -ns or -rs, like *amans, amantis, a lover*. They are declined as follows:—

	Urbs (F.), <i>a city.</i>	Nox (F.), <i>night.</i>	Amans, <i>lover.</i>
	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	urbs	nox	āmans
GEN.	urbis	noctis	āmantis
DAT.	urbī	noctī	āmanti
ACC.	urbem	noctem	āmantem
VOC.	urbs	nox	āmans
ABL.	urbē	noctē	āmantē (-or ī)
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	urbēs	noctēs	āmantēs
GEN.	urbium	noctium	āmantium
DAT.	urbibus	noctibus	āmantibus
ACC.	urbēs (īs)	noctēs (īs)	āmantēs (īs)
VOC.	urbēs	noctēs	āmantēs
ABL.	urbibus	noctibus	āmantibus

## VOCABULARY.

mons, montis (M.), <i>a mountain.</i>	āter, ātra, ātrum, <i>black.</i>
pars, partis (F.), <i>a part.</i>	· finitimus, -i, <i>neighbor.</i>
pax, pācis (F.), <i>peace.</i>	Rōmulus, -i, <i>Romulus.</i>
clar-us, -a, -um, <i>famous.</i>	musca, -ae, <i>a fly.</i>
sermo, sermōnis (M.), <i>discourse, speech.</i>	rēcito, rēcītāre, rēcītavi, <i>to read aloud.</i>
agmen, agmīnis (N.), <i>army (on the march.)</i>	compāro, āre, āvi, <i>collect.</i>
	prōpe, prep. (acc.), <i>near.</i>
	dē, prep. (abl.), <i>from, concerning.</i>

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : mons altus, pars magna, urbs pulchra, sermo longus, tectum altum, agmen longum.

Translate into English:—

- Romani pacem cum finitimis suis confirmaverunt.
- Romulus urbem prope fluminis ripas in colle alto aedificavit.
- Nonne

in caelo nubes atrae erant? 4. Cicero, orator clarus, litteras in foro recitavit. 5. Puer de monte in mare ambulat. 6. Prope urbem erat mons altus. 7. Milites Romani urbis partem hodie occupābunt. 8. Romulus hostium arces multas occupavit. 9. Fratres in maris litore cum sororibus ambulabunt. 10. Bellum contra finitimos in pace parāmus. 11. Milites hostium arcem hodie occupābunt. 12. Stellas in caelo ante solis lucem spectabāmus. 13. Milites consulem ad forum vocavērant.

Translate into Latin :

1. The Romans praised the speech of Cicero, the consul. 2. The enemy wounded many Roman soldiers in the battle. 3. The speeches of Cicero, the Roman consul, were famous. 4. The Roman consul burned many cities of the Gauls. 5. The arrows of the enemy wounded your king. 6. A sparrow was devouring a small fly. 7. In peace the Romans often collected large forces. 8. The Romans pitched their camp before the cave. 9. Did not the pupils praise the famous discourse of Cicero? 10. The commander will summon the soldiers to the citadel. 11. Will the man read the letter of the consul aloud to the soldiers? 12. The soldiers pitched their camp on (*in + ablative*) a high hill. 13. There was a dark cloud in the sky to-day. 14. The men will build a part of the town.

## LESSON XXV.

### IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The chief irregular nouns of the third declension are inflected as follows :

Bos (M.), *ox*. Vis (F.), *strength*. Sus (M. or F.), *swine*. Nix (F.), *snow*.

	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	bos	vis	sūs	nix
GEN.	bōvis	vis (rare)	sūis	nīvis
DAT.	bōvī	vi (rare)	sūī	nīvī
ACC.	bōvem	vim	sūem	nīvem
VOC.	bos	vis	sūs	nix
ABL.	bōvē	vi	sūē	nīvē

	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	bōvēs	vīrēs	sūēs	nīvēs
GEN.	{ bōvum bōum	virium	sūum	nivium
DAT.	{ bōbus būbus	viribus	{ sūibus sūbus	nivibus
ACC.	bōvēs	vīrēs	sūēs	nīvēs
VOC.	bōvēs	vīrēs	sūēs	nīvēs
ABL.	{ bōbus būbus	viribus	{ sūibus sūbus	nivibus

Sēnex (M.), *an old man.*Iūpiter (M.), *Jupiter.*Iter (N.), *journey*

	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
NOM.	sēnex	Iūpiter	iter
GEN.	sēnis	Iōvis	itineris
DAT.	sēnī	Iōvi	itinerī
ACC.	sēnem	Iōvem	iter
VOC.	sēnex	Iūpiter	iter
ABL.	sēnē	Iōvē	itinerē
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
NOM.	sēnēs		itinerā
GEN.	sēnum		itinerum
DAT.	sēnibus		itineribus
ACC.	sēnēs		itinerā
VOC.	sēnēs		itinerā
ABL.	sēnibus		itineribus

## VOCABULARY.

hōmo, hōmīnis (M.), *a man.*mūlier, mūliēris (F.), *a woman.*nāvis, nāvis (F.), *a ship.*frigus, frigōris (N.), *cold, frost.*lātus, lātēris (N.), *side.*sīnister, sīnīstra, sīnīstrum, *left.*dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right.*mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe.*grāt-us, -a, -um, *pleasing.*dēcīm-us, -a, -um, *tenth.*obseruo, āre, āvi, *watch.*appello, -āre, āvi, *call.*prōpēro, āre, āvi, *hasten.*ob, prep. (acc.), *on account of,*  
*owing to.*nam, conj., *for.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : pars dextra, hōmo magnus, mūlier pulchra,  
legiō dēcīma, nāvis longa.

Translate into English :—

1. Populus Romānus senem amicum appellābat. 2. Hostes cum navibus multis ad Caesarem, imperatorem Romanum, properavērunt. 3. Nam ob frīgōra frumentum in agris non erat maturum. 4. Romani Ariovistum, regem Germanorum, amīcum appellabant. 5. Caesar decimam legionem in parte agminis sinistrā locāvit. 6. Hostes nostrum iter observabant. 7. Caesar naves ad unum locum convocavit. 8. Regina hostium agros regis vastat. 9. Epistola hostium imperatori Romanorum non grata est. 10. Hostes cum parvis copiis agros Romanos vastābunt. 11. Frater meus multos boves reginae donat. 12. Rex nautis et militibus multa praemia donabit. 13. Pueri agricolae montes altos spectant. 14. Milites mei fili virtutem laudant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. In Gaul the corn was not ripe on-account-of the frost. 2. The Roman people often praised the man's strength. 3. Caesar often praises the valor of the enemy. 4. The soldiers of the Romans watched the ships of the enemy. 5. The woman gave a rose to the king's son. 6. On the right side, Caesar placed the soldiers of the tenth legion ; on the left, the forces of the allies. 7. He hastens to the city with all his friends. 8. The soldiers of the tenth legion were hastening to Caesar. 9. The Romans will not watch the camp of the enemy. 10. The ships of the Romans were not large. 11. The king of the Romans praised the valor of the Germans. 12. The snow is often deep in winter.

---

## LESSON XXVI.

### GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.\*

1. Most nouns of the third declension ending in -er, -or, -os, -es, (increasing in the genitive), -o (except -do, -go, -io) are *masculine*: as, *carcer Romanus, a Roman prison; honor magnus, a great honor;*

---

\*Exceptions to the rules will be found in the Appendix.

flos albus, a white flower; paries altus, a high wall; sermo Latinus, the Latin language.

2. Most nouns of the third declension which end in -do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, -x, -es (not increasing in the genitive), -s (preceded by a consonant), -ūs (in words of more than one syllable), are feminine: as, multitudo magna, a great multitude; imāgo cerēa, a wax image; orātio longa, a long speech; aestas callida, a warm summer; avis rara, a rare bird; laus parva, small praise; vox magna, a loud voice; clādes nostra, our defeat; plebs Romana, the Roman populace; virtūs divīna, divine valor.

3. Most nouns of the third declension which end in -c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ūs, ūs (in words of one syllable), are neuter: as, lac album white milk; pōēma longum, a long poem; cāput suum, his own head; māre magnum, a great sea; ānimal fērum, a wild animal; limen altum, a high threshold; calcar acūtum, a sharp spur; fulgur clārum, a bright flash; tempūs antīquum, ancient time; iūs magnum, a great right.

#### EXERCISE.

State the gender of all nouns in the following list, giving the rule for each:—

nāvis, nāvis, a ship.

nix, nīvis, snow,

lītus, lītōris, a shore

ōnus, ōnēris, a load.

fulgur, fulgūris, a flash.

frīgus, frīgōris, frost.

hiēms, hiēm̄is, winter.

cāput, cāpītis, a head.

ōrātio, ōrātīōnis, a speech.

carmen, carmīnis, a song.

vox, vōcis, a voice.

rādix, rādīcis, a root.

ānimal, ānīmāl̄is, an animal.

māre, mār̄is, sea.

rūs, rūris, country.

turr̄is, turr̄is, a tower.

plēbs, plēbis, the populace.

aedifīco, āre, āvi, to build.

curvus, a, um, winding.

āmoenus, a, um, beautiful (of scenery).

saevus, a, um, cruel.

Translate into English:—

1. Pueri in nive altā ambulābant.
2. Regis filii navem longam aedifīcant.
3. Meam pulchram orationem laudātis.
4. Boves per lītōra amoena errābunt.
5. Carmen gratum magnā voce cantabant.
6. Multae radīces in silva fuērunt.
7. Nonne fulgūra clara in caelo

hodie erant? 8. Magnum erat nomen plebis Romanae. 9. Multa animalia in mari alto sunt. 10. Saevum est frīgus hiemis nostrae. 11. Milites turres altas aedificaverunt. 12. Parvum ōnus in capite suo portat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The country was beautiful. 2. The cattle wandered along (per with acc.) the winding shore. 3. The cruel populace called him<sup>1</sup> with a loud voice to the gate. 4. They did not praise Cicero's long speech. 5. Do not walk through the deep snow. 6. Many bodies of men were in the thick wood. 7. Do they not build beautiful ships? 8. He wounded his head with an arrow. 9. Your ship will carry a great load. 10. They had placed the large beam on (*in*) the shore. 11. We will build a high tower on the road. 12. Many Roman legions were in camp.

<sup>1</sup>Omit.

## LESSON XXVII.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of the third declension are declined like nouns of the third declension. They are called adjectives of one, two, or three terminations respectively, according as they have one, two, or three forms in the nom. sing. for expressing gender.

2. Adjectives of the third declension in -er, are of three terminations, and are declined as follows :—

*Ācer, sharp, severe.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīā
GEN.	ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrīum	ācrīum	ācrīum
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrībūs	ācrībūs	ācrībūs
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācrē	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīā
VOC.	ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīā
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrībūs	ācrībūs	ācrībūs

Note.—All adjectives of the third declension in *-er* are declined like *acer*; all (except *cēler*, *cēlōris*, *swift*,) drop the *-e* before *-r* in the oblique cases (*i. e.*, in all but the nom. and voc.) They are all *-i*-stems, and, therefore, have the abl. sing. in *-ī*, the gen. plur. in *-īum*, and the nom. plur. neuter in *-īa*.

3. Adjectives of two terminations in *-is*, *-e* are declined as follows:—

*Mitis, mild.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	mītīs	mītē	mītēs	mītīā
GEN.	mītīs	mītīs	mītīum	mītīum
DAT.	mītī	mītī	mītibus	mītibus
ACC.	mītem	mītē	mītēs (-is)	mītīā
VOC.	mītīs	mītē	mītēs	mītīā
ABL.	mītī	mītī	mītībūs	mītībūs

Note.—Adjectives in *-is*, *-e*, have always *-ī* in the abl. sing., *-īum* in the gen. plur., and *-īa* in the nom. and acc. neuter plur.

4. The comparative degree of the Latin adjective (which regularly ends in *-ior* for the masc. and fem., and *-ius* for the neut.) is an adjective of two terminations. It is thus declined:—

*Mitior, milder*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	mitīor	mitīus	mitīōrēs	mitīōrā
GEN.	mitīōris	mitīōris	mitīōrum	mitīōrum
DAT.	mitīōrī	mitīōrī	mitīōrībus	mitīōrībus
ACC.	mitīōrem	mitīus	mitīōrēs (is)	mitīōrā
VOC.	mitīor	mitīus	mitīōrēs	mitīōrā
ABL.	mitīōrē (-ī)	mitīōrē (-ī)	mitīōrībus	mitīōrībus

Note.—All comparatives have the abl. sing. in *-ē* or *-ī*, the gen. plural in *-um*, and the neut. plur. nom. in *-a*. They are all inflected like *mitior*, except *plus*, *more*, which is inflected as follows:—



		Plus, more.			
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.			
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
NOM.	———	plūs	plūrēs	plūrā	plūrā
GEN.	———	plūris	plūrīum	plūrīum	plūrīum
DAT.	———	———	plūrībus	plūrībus	plūrībus
ACC.	———	plūs	plūrēs (īs)	plūrā	plūrā
VOC.	———	———	plūrēs	plūrā	plūrā
ABL.	———	plūrē	plūrībus	plūrībus	plūrībus

## VOCABULARY.

ēquester, ēquestris, ēquestrē,  
*cavalry.*

silvester, -tris, -trē, *woody.*

vōlūcer, -cris, -crē, *winged.*

ālācer, ālācris, ālācrē, *active,*  
*brisk.*

cēlēr, -is, -ē, *swift.*

nāvālis, nāvāle, *naval.*

ūtīlis, utilē, *useful.*

brēvis, -ē, *short.*

omnis, omnē, *all.*

immortālis, -ē, *immortal.*

fortis, -ē, *brave.*

Sīcīlia, -ae, *Sicily.*

āpud, prep. (acc.), *at, near.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together: frīgus ācre, terra silvestris, Gallīa omnis, tempus brēve, sēnex mītiōr, bos magnus.

Translate into English:—

1. Multi boves in locis silvestribus errābant. 2. Romani proelia navalia apud insulam Siciliam pugnāvērunt. 3. Breve, pueri, est vitae tempus. 4. Caesar omnes copias ad mare convocābit. 5. Timor magnus milites omnes occupāvit. 6. Consul Romanus militum fortium virtutem hodie laudabat. 7. Proelium equestre in ripa fluvii pugnāvērunt. 8. Custōdes fortes ante castrorum portas fortiter pugnauerunt. 9. Leges omnibus hominibus sunt utiles. 10. Imperator Romane, hostes in proelio navali superā. 11. Num milites Romani Britannos fortes in multis proeliis superāvērunt? 12. Milites Romani multa proelia cum magno periculo pugnauerunt. 13. Di immortāles multa bona hominibus bonis donabunt. 14. In magnis periculis, pueri, fortes este. 15. Omnibus hominibus mors est communis. 16. Insula magna silvestrisque est Sicilia.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The snow in the woody places is deep to-day.
2. The Romans fought many battles near their ships.
3. The corn was not ripe in the fields, for the frost in Gaul was severe.
4. Caesar called the soldiers of the tenth legion brave men (*acc.*)
5. The general will place all the brave soldiers on (*in abl.*) the right bank of the river.
6. There are many cities on the island.
7. In winter the nights are long and the cold severe.
8. The rocks on the right bank of the river are high and sharp.
9. O boy, the laws of your masters are severe.
10. Many animals are not swift.
11. Caesar fought a cavalry battle near the sea.
12. Are not many old men mild?

## LESSON XXVIII.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—

(*Continued.*)

Many adjectives of the third declension have only one form in the nominative singular to express gender. These generally end in *-s* or *-x*. They are consonant stems, but follow in part the declension of *-i* stems, having *-i* or *-e* in the ablative singular; *-ium* in the genitive plural, and *-ia* in the neuter plural. Thus :—

*Audax, bold.*

*Fēlix, fortunate.*

SINGULAR.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
GEN.	audācīs	audācīs	fēlicīs	fēlicīs
DAT.	audācī	audācī	fēlicī	fēlicī
ACC.	audācem	audāx	fēlicem	fēlix
VOC.	audāx	audāx	fēlix	fēlix
ABL.	audācī ( <i>or -ē</i> )	audācī ( <i>or -ē</i> )	fēlicī ( <i>or ē</i> )	fēlicī ( <i>or ē</i> )

PLURAL.

PLURAL.

NOM.	audācēs	audācīa	fēlicēs	fēlicīa
GEN.	audācīum	audācīum	fēlicīum	fēlicīum
DAT.	audācībus	audācībus	fēlicībus	fēlicībus
ACC.	audācēs ( <i>is</i> )	audācīa	fēlicēs ( <i>is</i> )	fēlicīa
VOC.	audācēs	audācīa	fēlicēs	fēlicīa
ABL.	audācībus	audācībus	fēlicībus	fēlicībus.

	Vētus, <i>old</i> .		Ōriens, <i>rising</i> .	
	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
NOM.	vētus	vētus	ōriens	ōriens
GEN.	vētēris	vētēris	ōrientis	ōrientis
DAT.	vētērī	vētērī	ōrientī	ōrientī
ACC.	vētērem	vētus	ōrientem	ōriens
VOC.	vētus	vētus	ōriens	ōriens
ABL.	vētērē (or -ī)	vētērē (or -ī)	ōrientē (or -ī)	ōrientē (or -ī)
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
NOM.	vētērēs	vētēra	ōrientēs	ōrientīa
GEN.	vētērum	vētērum	ōrientīum	ōrientīum
DAT.	vētērībus	vētērībus	ōrientībus	ōrientībus
ACC.	vētērēs	vētēra	ōrientēs	ōrientīa
VOC.	vētērēs	vētēra	ōrientēs	ōrientīa
ABL.	vētērībus	vētērībus	ōrientībus	ōrientībus

Note.—All adjectives of the third declension have -īa in the neuter plural except comparatives and *vetus*. Most adjectives have -īum in the genitive plural when the preceding syllable is long : as, *audāx*, *audācium*; *ācer*, *ācrium*. But when the preceding syllable is short, they have -um: as, *dives*, *rich*, *dīvītum*; *pauper*, *poor*; *paupērum*. *Pār*, however, has *pārium*.

## VOCABULARY.

*rēcens*, *rēcentis*, *recent*, *fresh*.

*flens*, *flentis*, *weeping*.

*dives*, *dīvītis*, *rich*.

*par*, *pāris*, *equal*.

*ingens*, *ingentis*, *large*, *tall*.

*vētērānus*, *a*, *um*, *veteran*.

*bēātus*, *a*, *um*, *happy*.

*ignāvīa*, *ae*, *sloth*, *cowardice*.

*lūmen*, *lumīnis*, *light*.

*grex*, *grēgis* (M.), *a flock*, *herd*.

*factum*, *i*, *deed*.

*implōro*, *āre*, *āvi*, *implore*.

*culpo*, *āre*, *āvi*, *blame*, *find fault with*.

*specto*, *āre*, *āvi*, *gaze on*, *look at*.

*appello*, *āre*, *āvi*, *call by name*.

*ōro*, *āre*, *āvi*, *pray for*.

*cras*, *adv.*, *to-morrow*.

*saepe*, *often*.

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *puer flens*, *vir audax*, *āger fēlix*, *sol ōriens*, *regnum vētus*, *grex magnus*.

Translate into English :—

1. *Puella flores recentes hodie spectabat*. 2. *Milites in Caesaris castris erant audaces*. 3. *Romani milites veteres appellavērunt*

veteranos. 4. In insula sunt serpentes magni. 5. Agricolaefilii solem orientem cras spectabunt. 6. Grex ingens bovu in campo errat. 7. Mulieres flentes hostium Caesarem, ducem Romanorum, implorabant. 8. Viri, facta audacia clarorum hominum laudāte. 9. Multi Romani consilium ducis non laudabunt. 10. Pater infelix filii ignāviam culpavit. 11. Viro diviti pecuniam donat. 12. Nonne mulier ob filii mortem tristis erit? 13. Num homines pro libertate in proeliis pugnavērunt? 14. Caesar milites veterānos in colle alto cras locabit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The general gives equal parts of the land to the veteran soldiers. 2. Will not the weeping women implore the aid of the general? 3. The Germans were tall and bold. 4. Was not the sun bright yesterday? 5. Caesar will assemble all the veteran soldiers on the plain to-day. 6. Did the master blame the sloth of the boy? 7. The bold sailors often implore the gods in dangers. 8. The boys were wandering in the field and gazing-at the fresh flowers. 9. O boy, praise the bold deed of the Roman soldier. 10. Rich men are not often happy. 11. Old men often find-fault-with boys. 12. The men implored the aid of the bold Roman. 13. The farmer's flocks were wandering in the thick wood. 14. Caesar called the soldiers of the tenth legion veterans (*acc.*) 15. We often gazed-at the rising lights of heaven.

---

## LESSON XXIX.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives in Latin are compared, as in English, either by means of endings (*terminational comparison*), or by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, *more*, and *maxīme*, *most*, to the positive (*adverbial comparison*).

2. Most adjectives are compared by means of the endings *-ior* (masc. and fem.), *-ius* (neut.), for the comparative, and *-issimus* (a, -um) for the superlative : as, *Altus*, *high*; *altior*, *higher*; *altissimus*, *highest*; *grāvis*, *heavy*, *severe*; *gravior*, *gravissimus*.

3. Most adjectives in -us (-a, -um), most adjectives in -is (-is, -e), and most adjectives of the third declension of one termination, are compared like *altus*. Thus :—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>doctus, learned,</i>	<i>doctior,</i>	<i>doctissimus.</i>
<i>dulcis, sweet,</i>	<i>dulcior,</i>	<i>dulcissimus.</i>
<i>ātrox, dark,</i>	<i>atrōcior,</i>	<i>atrocissimus.</i>

Note.—All these adjectives are compared by dropping the -i, or the -is, of the genitive singular of the positive, and adding -ior or -issimus to the part remaining.

4. Comparatives (except *plus*, p. 51) are all declined like *mitior* (p. 50); superlatives, like *bonus* (p. 20).

5. *Than* after a comparative is *quam*, which takes the same case after it as the corresponding word before it<sup>1</sup>: as, *Lupus est saevior quam canis, the wolf is fiercer than the dog.* *Lupum saeviozem quam canem aestimo, I consider the wolf fiercer than the dog.* *Quam*, however, is frequently omitted, and then the noun following the comparative is put in the ablative: as, *Lupus saevior cane est, the wolf is fiercer than the dog;* *lupum saeviozem cane aestimo, I consider the wolf fiercer than the dog.*

Note.—*Quam* can only be omitted when the noun or pronoun before the comparative is in the nominative or accusative: as, *Caesāri potius quam Balbo donabit, he will give to Caesar rather than to Balbus* (here *quam* must be used).

#### VOCABULARY.

<i>fortis, -is, -e, strong.</i>	<i>fīnis, finis (M.), end; pl., territories.</i>
<i>brēvis, is, -e, short.</i>	<i>lux, lūcis (F.), light.</i>
<i>sāpiens, sapientis, wise.</i>	<i>iūdex, iūdīcis, judge.</i>
<i>vēlox, velōcis, swift.</i>	<i>vīta, vitae, life.</i>
<i>āēr, aēris (M.), air.</i>	<i>festin-o, -āre, -āvi, hasten.</i>
<i>ventus, i, wind.</i>	<i>lōc-o, āre, āvi, place, pitch.</i>

<sup>1</sup>The word after *quam*, if the subject of a verb, will of course be in the nom.: as, *He carries a heavier load than Balbus (carries), portat ōnus gravius quam Balbus (portat).*

## EXERCISE.

Compare all the adjectives in the above list. Decline together :  
*vir doctior, homo brevissimus, iudex sapiens, navis velox.*

Translate into English :—

1. Leges inter Romanos gravissimae erant. 2. Omnium Gallorum fortissimi sunt. 3. Felicior est pater quam filius. 4. Iudex sapientior rege est. 5. Rhenus, flumen altissimum, inter Gallorum et Germanorum fines est. 6. Magister, homo doctissimus, fabulas longissimas pueris saepe narrābat. 7. Consūlis oratio omnibus militibus gratissima erat. 8. In Britannia noctes sunt breviores. 9. Principes inter Germanos erant fortissimi. 10. Vita hominum est brevissima. 11. Milites Romani in proeliis audaciores sunt quam Germani. 12. Inter Graecos erat doctissimus. 13. Solis lux est clarior quam lux lunae. 14. Roma fuit clarissima urbs.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Were not the Roman soldiers braver than the Germans? 2. Light is swifter than wind. 3. The Roman is wiser than the German. 4. In the battle the soldiers of the tenth legion were bravest. 5. Cicero was the most learned orator among the Romans. 6. The sailors swam in the deepest water to the shore. 7. The farmer walked through a very thick forest to the bank of the river. 8. You are more powerful than the sons of kings. 9. Water is heavier than air. 10. The ships of the Romans were swifter than the ships of the enemy. 11. The bravest soldiers hastened to the town. 12. On a high hill the soldiers pitched their camp. 13. The swiftest ships of the enemy are in the deep river. 14. Between the territories of the Gauls and Germans (*gen.*) there is a deeper river.

## LESSON XXX.

## ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

1. Adjectives in *-er* form their comparative regularly in *-ior*; but their superlative is formed by adding *-rimus* to the nominative singular masculine of the positive : as,

## POSITIVĒ

ācer, *sharp*mīser, *wre*cēler, *swift*

pulcher,

nīger, *blowing*

## LESSON XXXI.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—(Continued.)

blowing adjectives are irregular in the superlative:—

NOTE.—	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
rīmus in <i>tutward</i> ,	extērīor,	extrēmus and extīmus.
mātūrissī <i>wre</i> ,	infērīor,	infīmus and īmus.
2. The <i>higher</i> ,	sūpērīor,	suprēmus and summus.
larly in <i>behind</i> ,	postērīor,	postrēmus and postūmus.

mons infīmus is *the lowest mountain* (of a range); mons fācīlis, *ottom of the mountain*. Supremus mons is, *the highest* (of a group of mountains); summus mons, *the top of the* sīmīlis.

some adjectives have no positive: as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
—	cītērīor, <i>hither</i> ,	cītīmus, <i>hithermost</i> .
—	dētērīor, <i>worse</i> ,	dēterrīmus, <i>worst</i> .
—	intērīor, <i>inner</i> ,	intīmus, <i>innermost</i> .
—	ōcīor, <i>swifter</i> ,	ōcīssīmus, <i>swiftest</i> .
—	priōr, <i>former</i> ,	prīmus, <i>first</i> .
—	prōpīor, <i>nearer</i> ,	proxīmus, <i>next, nearest</i> .
—	ultērīor, <i>farther</i> ,	ultīmus, <i>farthest, last</i> .

Note.—The superlative with quam denotes the highest degree possible: as, Quam plurimi, *as many as possible*.

## VOCABULARY.

argentum, *silver*.tēmpus, tempōris (N.), *time*.aurum, *gold*.antīquus, a, um, *ancient*.sēnex, sēnis, *old man*.hic, adv., *here*.ōpūs, ōpēris (N.), *work*.

## EXERCISE.

Decline together: ōpus facile, tempus antiquum, aurum grave, Gallia citerior.

Translate into English:—

1. Senex tempora antiqua laudat, nostra culpat. 2. Aurum est argento gravius. 3. Opera tua difficillima sunt. 4. Gallia citerior

est proxima. 5. Reges Gallorum pacem cum proximis civitatibus confirmavērunt. 6. Leges bonae meliores quam milites fortissimi sunt. 7. In summo monte Romani castra sua locavērunt. 8. Sol est maior quam luna. 9. Itinēra per citeriorem Galliam fuērunt difficillima. 10. Mons primus fuit supremus omnium. 11. Hostes cum maximis copiis agros nostros vastabunt. 12. Urbs Roma clarissima in Italia est. 13. Nostrae filiae sunt pulcherrimae. 14. Puer minor fratre fuit. 15. Plurīmi milites in urbe ambulābant.

Translate into Latin:—

1. On the top of the mountain the soldiers built a very high citadel. 2. The moon is smaller than the earth. 3. In the sea are very large and very many animals. 4. He is the oldest of all the poets. 5. The king was younger than his brother. 6. In the islands the nights are longer than here. 7. The journey through Gaul was very difficult to our soldiers. 8. The swiftest men are not always first. 9. The soldiers of the tenth legion were the best of all. 10. On the highest place the general pitched the camp of the Romans. 11. He was the richest of all the citizens. 12. In war the farmer was very wretched. 13. Caesar was the most distinguished general among the Romans. 14. The cities in Gaul are very small.

## LESSON XXXII.

### ADVERBIAL COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, usually form their comparative and superlative by means of the adverbs *māgis*, *more*, and *maxīme*, *most*, respectively: as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
īdōnēus, <i>fit</i> , <i>suitable</i> .	māgis īdōnēus,	maxīmē īdōnēus.
dūbīus, <i>doubtful</i> ,	māgis dūbīus,	maxīmē dūbīus.

But adjectives in -quus, form the comparative and superlative regularly: as, *antīquus*, *ancient*, *antīquior*, *antīquissimus*.

2. Adjectives followed in English by *to* or *for*, are usually followed by a dative in Latin: as, *Utīlis civitāti*, *useful to the state*; *aptus bello*, *fit for war*; *similis patri*, *like (to) the father*.



3. Adjectives followed in English by *of*, are usually followed in Latin by the genitive : as, *Avīdus laudis*, *greedy of praise*; *plenus militūm*, *full of soldiers*. *Dignus* (*worthy*), however, takes the abl. : as, *Dignus poenā*, *worthy of punishment*.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>amicus</i> , -a, -um, <i>friendly</i> .	<i>avidus</i> , <i>greedy</i> , <i>fond</i> .
<i>inimicus</i> , -a, -um, <i>unfriendly</i> .	<i>similis</i> , -e, <i>like</i> (with the dat.)
<i>carus</i> , -a, -um, <i>dear</i> .	<i>dissimilis</i> , -e, <i>unlike</i> (with the dat.)

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *hōmo amicus*, *opus plēnum*, *terra similis*, *miles fortissimus*, *pūella pulchrior*.

Translate into English :—

1. *Urbs frumenti plena erat*. 2. *Dux omnibus Gallis amicus erit*. 3. *Puer patri simillimus fuit*. 4. *Locus magis idoneus castris quam urbi est*. 5. *Caesar omnibus Romanis carissimus fuit*. 6. *Castra Romanorum quam hostium propiōra erant*. 7. *Locus est maxime idoneus castris*. 8. *Poeta optimus omnibus hominibus carus est*. 9. *Populus Romanus avidissimus belli erat*. 10. *Urbes tum erant plenae hominum clarorum*. 11. *Filius patri simillimus erat*; *puella matri*. 12. *Omnium Gallorum fortissimi sunt*. 13. *Milites nostri maxime dubii erant*. 14. *Epistola filiae carior fuit matri quam filii*.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The Roman leader was very friendly to the Gauls. 2. The soldiers of the Roman legion were dear to Caesar. 3. The Romans were more friendly to the Greeks than to others. 4. The place was more suitable for a temple than for a camp. 5. He was the best poet among the Romans. 6. Was not the last king very like his brother? 7. The Gauls were next to the Germans. 8. He was very fond of the praise of the citizens. 9. The Romans seized a town full of corn. 10. The hill was very suitable for a camp. 11. Was not the boy very unlike his father? 12. The soldier was very like his brother. 13. The boy hastened to the nearest city. 14. The largest boys are not always the best.

## LESSON XXXIII.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the fourth declension have the genitive singular in -ūs.

2. Nouns of this declension end in the nominative singular in -ūs or -ū. Nouns in -ūs are masculine ; those in -ū are neuter.

3. Nouns in -us are declined as follows :—

Fructus (M.), *fruit*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. fruct-ūs, <i>fruit</i> .	fruct-ūs, <i>fruits</i> .
GEN. fruct-ūs, <i>of fruit</i> .	fruct-ūum, <i>of fruits</i> .
DAT. fruct-ūī, <i>to or for fruit</i> .	fruct-ībus, <i>to or for fruits</i> .
ACC. fruct-um, <i>fruit</i> .	fruct-ūs, <i>fruits</i> .
VOC. fruct-ūs, <i>O fruit</i> .	fruct-ūs, <i>O fruits</i> .
ABL. fruct-ū, <i>with, by or from fruit</i> .	fruct-ībus, <i>with, by or from fruits</i> .

4. Nouns in -u are declined as follows :—

Cornu (N.), *a horn*.

SINGULAR	PLURAL.
NOM. cornū, <i>a horn</i> .	corn-ūa, <i>horns</i> .
GEN. corn-ūs, <i>of a horn</i> .	corn-ūum, <i>of horns</i> .
DAT. corn-ū, <i>to or for a horn</i> .	corn-ībus, <i>to or for horns</i> .
ACC. corn-ū, <i>a horn</i> .	corn-ūa, <i>horns</i> .
VOC. corn-ū, <i>O horn</i> .	corn-ūa, <i>O horns</i> .
ABL. corn-ū, <i>with, by or from a horn</i> .	corn-ībus, <i>with, by or from horns</i> .

5. The following nouns have -ūbus instead of -ībus in the dative and ablative plural: Artus, *a joint*; portus, *a harbor*; trībus, *a tribe*; vēru, *a spit*; and all dissyllables in -cus, as lācus, *a lake*.

6. Dōmus (F.), *a house*, is irregular and is inflected as follows :—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. dōm-ūs.	dōm-ūs.
GEN. dōm-ūs.	dōm-ūum (or dōm-ōrum).
DAT. dōm-ūī (or dōm-ō).	dōm-ībus.
ACC. dōm-um.	dōm-ōs (or dōm-ūs.)
VOC. dōm-ūs.	dōm-ūs.
ABL. dōm-ō (or dōm-ū).	dōm-ībus.

## VOCABULARY.

exercitus, ūs, *an army.*lūsus, ūs, *sport, play.*equitatus, ūs, *cavalry.*arcus, ūs, *a bow.*currus, ūs, *a chariot.*senātus, ūs, *the senate.*conspectus, ūs, *sight, view.*peditatus, ūs, *infantry.*lātus, ā, um, *broad, wide.*impedimenta, ōrum, *baggage.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : exercitus magnus, dōmus lāta, currus cēler.

Translate into English :—

1. Imperator Rōmānus peditatum equitatumque in locis superioribus locāvit. 2. Senātus populi Romani virtūtem exercitūs laudat. 3. Domus mea altior quam tua est. 4. Caesar militum virtutem in senatu laudābit. 5. Milites in ducis conspectu pugnābant. 6. Fructūs in agricularum hortis maturi erant. 7. Lusūs animos puerorum saepe delectat. 8. Milites multi cum impedimentis in urbem properavērunt. 9. Nonne cornua magna sunt? 10. In urbe sunt multae domūs. 11. Frater consūlis altam domum in urbe aedificāvit. 12. Britanni contra peditatum Romanum pugnāvērunt. 13. Arcus nostri sunt longiores quam Romanorum.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Sport always pleases boys. 2. The bows of the Romans were shorter than ours. 3. The general often praised the cavalry of the Roman army. 4. Your house is larger than mine. 5. No army is in the territory of the enemy. 6. The senate of the Roman people will praise the infantry of your army. 7. The hill was in sight of our soldiers. 8. The army of the Romans is better than yours. 9. The Romans built very many ships. 10. The soldiers carried the corn to the camp. 11. The Senate gave many rewards to the soldiers. 12. The chariots of the Gauls were very long and broad. 13. The boy's bow is full of joints. 14. The soldiers praised the valor of the general.

## LESSON XXXIV.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the fifth declension have the genitive singular in -ōī. The nominative singular always ends in -ēs.

2. All nouns of this declension are fem., except *meridiēs* (*noon*), which is masc. and *dies* (*day*), which is masc. or fem. in the sing., and masc. in the plural. Nouns in -es are declined as follows:—

Rēs (F.), <i>a thing, matter.</i>		Dīēs (M. or F.), <i>a day.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. rēs,	rēs.	dīēs,	dīēs.
GEN. rē-i,	rē-rum.	dīē-i,	dīē-rum.
DAT. rē-i,	rē-bus.	dīē-i,	dīē-bus.
ACC. re-m,	rēs.	dīe-m,	dīēs.
VOC. rēs,	rēs.	dīēs,	dīēs.
ABL. rē	rē-bus.	dīē,	dīē-bus.

3. In *respublica* (F.), *the commonwealth*, both parts are inflected:—

Res-publica (F.), <i>the commonwealth, country.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM. rēs-publīca,	rēs-publīcae.
GEN. rēi-publīcae,	rērum-publīcārum.
DAT. rēi-publīcae,	rēbus-publīcis.
ACC. rem-publīcam,	rēs-publīcas.
VOC. rēs-publīca,	rēs-publīcae.
ABL. rē-publīcā,	rēbus-publīcis.

#### ABLATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

4. The following adjectives govern the ablative: *Dignus, worthy*; *indignus, unworthy*; *contentus, contented*; *praeditus, endowed with*; *frētus, relying on*; *liber, free from*: as, *Miles coronā dignus est, the soldier is worthy of a crown*; *pūer ingēniō praeditus est, the boy is endowed with ability.*

#### VOCABULARY.

fīdes, fīdēi, <i>faith, loyalty.</i>	mercātor, ōris, <i>merchant.</i>
spēs, spēi, <i>hope, expectation.</i>	rāmus, ī, <i>a branch.</i>
pernicīes, -ēi, <i>ruin, bane.</i>	luxūriā, -ae, <i>luxury.</i>
portus, -ūs, <i>a harbor.</i>	nōtus, -a, -um, <i>known.</i>
ūsus, -ūs, <i>experience.</i>	occūpo, āre, āvi, <i>seize.</i>
tīmor, -ōris (M.), <i>fear.</i>	nunquam, adv., <i>never.</i>

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together: *dies clāra*; *res magna*; *portus idōnēus*; *respublica nostra.*

Translate into English:—

1. *Milites fide imperatoris freti erant.* 2. *Mercatores omnem*

rem Romanis nuntiavērunt. 3. Timor magnus rempublicam occupavit. 4. Magna erat spes victoriae in animis militum. 5. Puer patre suo indignus est. 6. Nautae, spe freti, mare magnum navigant. 7. Mercator nunquam in portu est ; mare altum navigat. 8. Miles fortis omni laude dignus fuit. 9. Muri urbis nostrae altiores quam hostium sunt. 10. Usus in omnibus rebus est utilis, sed utilissimus in bello. 11. Luxuria est maxima perniciēs reipublicae. 12. Puer omni culpā liber est. 13. Imperator maximas res exercitui nuntiābit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The hope of the soldiers was very great. 2. The general, relying on his valor, seized the camp of the enemy. 3. All the harbors were very well known (*superl.*) to our sailors. 4. They called the son of the general, the hope of the commonwealth. 5. The man was worthy of death on-account-of (*ob+acc.*) his unworthy life. 6. The men were free from fear. 7. The son of the general was endowed with great ability. 8. He was contented with a golden crown. 9. The leader, relying on the loyalty of his soldiers, seized the camp of the enemy. 10. Luxury is a bane to all commonwealths. 11. Small birds often build on the tops of (p. 59, 1) trees. 12. The soldier is worthy of the greatest praise on account of his valor. 13. The master built large houses for his slaves.

## LESSON XXXV.

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

1. Numerals,	are divided into										ones and adverbs.						
Numeral adje																	
(a) Car																	
one; du																	
(b) O																	
primus,	octōgintā,	nōnāgintā,	centum	centum et unus	ducenti, ae, a	trecenti, ae, a	quadringenti, e	quingenti, ae	sexcenti, ae, a	septingenti, a	octingenti, ar	nongenti, ae,	mille	duo millia	quinque millia	decem millia	centum millia
(c) D																	
how ma	LXXX.	XC.	C.	CI.	CC.	CCC.	CCCC.	D. or IJ.	DC.	DCC.	DCCC.	DCCCC.	M. or CIIJ.	MM.	ICJ.	CCICJ.	CCCCJ
2. N																	
Semel, C	80	90	100	101	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900	1,000	2,000	5,000	10,000	100,000

Another form of numeral adverbs

rus,

THE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	NUMERAL ADVERBS.
primus, a, um, <i>first</i> .	singŭli, ae, a, <i>one by one</i> .	semel, <i>once</i> .
secundus, a, um (or alter), <i>second</i> .	binī, ae, a, <i>two by two</i> .	bis, <i>twice</i> .
tertius, a, um, <i>third</i> .	trinī or ternī	ter
quartus	quaternī	quāter
quintus	quinī	quinquēns <sup>1</sup>
sextus	senī	sexiens
septimus	septēnī	septiens
octāvus	octonī	octiens
nōnus	nōvēnī	nōviens
dēcimus	dēnī	dēcians
undēcimus	undēnī	undēcians
dūdēcimus	dūdēnī	dūdēcians
tertius dēcimus	ternī dēnī	{ terdēcians or tredēcians
quartus dēcimus	quaternī dēnī	quattuordēcians
quintus dēcimus	quinī dēnī	quindēcians
sextus dēcimus	senī dēnī	sēdēcians
septimus dēcimus	septēnī dēnī	septēnsdēcians
dūdēvicēsīmus	dūdōvīcēnī	dūdōvīcians
undēvicēsīmus	undēvīcēnī	undēvīcians
vicēsīmus	vicēnī	vicians
primus et vicesimus or }	viceni singuli	{ semel et vicians or vicians semel
vicesimus primus	duodetrīcēnī	duodetrīcians
duodetrigesimus	undetrīcēnī	undetrīcians
undetrigesimus	trīcēnī	trīcians
trīcēsīmus		

EXERCISE.

Decline together: dies clāra ; res magna ; portus idōnēus  
lica nostra.

Translate into English :—

1. Milites fide imperatoris freti erant. 2. Mercatores

XXVIII. |  
XXIX. |  
XXX. |

28 |  
29 |  
30 |

40	XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēni	quadrāgēns
50	L.	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsīmus	quinquāgēni	quinquāgēns
60	LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēni	sexāgēns
70	LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēni	septuāgēns
80	LXXX.	octogintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēni	octōgēns
90	XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēni	nōnāgēns
100	C.	centum	centēsīmus	centēni	centiens
101	CI.	{ centū unus or centum et unus	centēsīmus primus or centēsīmus et primus	centeni et singuli or centeni singuli	centiens semel
200	CC.	ducenti, ae, a	ducentēsīmus	dūcēni	ducentiens
300	CCC.	trecenti, ae, a	trēcentēsīmus	trēcēni	trēcentiens
400	CCCC.	quadringenti, ae, a	quadringentesīmus	quadrīgēni	quadrīngentīens
500	D. or I <sup>2</sup> .	quingenti, ae, a	quingentesīmus	quīgēni	quīngentīens
600	DC.	sexcenti, ae, a	sexcentēsīmus	sexcēni	sexcentiens
700	DCC.	septingenti, ae, a	septingentesīmus	septīgēni	septīngentīens
800	DCCC.	octingenti, ae, a	octingentesīmus	octīgēni	octīngentīens
900	DCCCC.	nongenti, ae, a	nongentesīmus	nōngēni	nongentiens
1,000	M. or C <sup>10</sup> .	mille	millēsīmus	singula millia	milliens
2,000	MM.	duo millia	bis millēsīmus	bina millia	bis milliens
5,000	I <sup>50</sup> .	quinque millia	quinquēns millesīmus	quina millia	quinquēnsmilliens
10,000	CC <sup>100</sup> .	decem millia	decēns millesīmus	dēna millia	dēcēns milliens
100,000	CCC <sup>1000</sup> .	centum millia	centīns millesīmus	centēna millia	centīns milliens

<sup>1</sup> Another form of numeral adverbs in -ens is in -ēs : quinquēs, sexīs.

4. Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except (1) *ūnus*, *one*; *dūo*, *two*; *trēs*, *three*; (2) the hundreds, beginning with *dūcenti*, *two hundred*; (3) the plural of *mille*, *a thousand*.

*Unus*, *one*, has already been declined (p. 27). *Dūo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:—

*Duo, two.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	dūo	dūae	dūo
GEN.	dūōrum	dūārum	dūōrum
DAT.	dūōbus	dūābus	dūōbus
ACC.	dūōs or dūo	dūās	dūo
VOC.	dūo	dūae	dūo
ABL.	dūōbus	dūābus	dūōbus

*Tres, three.*

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	trēs	trīā
GEN.	trīum	trīum
DAT.	trībus	trībus
ACC.	trēs (īs)	trīā
VOC.	trēs	trīā
ABL.	trībus	trībus

5. *Millē*, *a thousand*, is indeclinable in the singular, but in the plural is declined as follows:—

NOM. millīā,	GEN. millīum,	DAT. millībus,
ACC. millīa,		ABL. millībus.

Note.—*Mille*, in the singular, may be either an adjective, or a noun with the word depending on it in the genitive: as, *Mille hōmīnes* or *mille hōmīnum*, *a thousand men*. In the plural it is always a noun: as, *Decem millia hōmīnum*, *ten thousand men* (=ten thousand of men).

6. Compound numbers like 21, 22, &c., when between 20 and 100, are written *ūnus et viginti*, *duo et viginti*, or *viginti unus*, *viginti duo*, &c.

Above *one hundred*, the greater number precedes (with or without et): as, *dūcenti unus*, or *dūcenti et unus*, *two hundred and one*.



7. The ordinals are declined like the singular of *bonus* (p. 20), and the distributives like the plural of *bonus*.

8. The distributive numerals are used :—

(a) To express our *so many at a time, so many each*, with a cardinal numeral : as, *Pūēris bīnos libros dōnāvit, he gave the boys two books apiece.*

(b) To express multiplication : as, *Bīs bīna, twice two.*

(c) With substantives that have a different meaning in the singular and plural, respectively : as, *Bīna castra, two camps.* (*Castrum is a fort; dūo castra, would mean two forts.* See Appendix).

#### EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE.

9. Duration of time and extent of space are usually expressed by the accusative : as, *Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit, Romulus reigned thirty-seven years; nix quattuor pēdes alta, snow four feet deep.* (*Per, through, is added to the accusative of time to express precision.*)

#### PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

10. The partitive genitive expresses the whole of which a part is taken : as, *Pars militum, part of the soldiers; unus militum, one of the soldiers; decem millia passuum, ten thousand paces (=ten Roman miles).*

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together : *ūnus miles, dūae dōmūs, tria millia passuum, alter hōmo.*

Translate into English (for vocabulary, see end of book) :—

1. *Milites binis telis contenti erunt.* 2. *Arbor quadraginta pedes alta est.* 3. *Rex annum iam tertium et vicesimum regnat.* 4. *Caesar castra decem millia passuum ab hostibus locavit.* 5. *Graeci urbem Troiam decem annos ob unam mulierem oppugnabant.* 6. *Locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos aberat.* 7. *Quaestōris hiberna castra aberant ab imperatore millia passuum viginti quinque.* 8. *Duodeviginti annos tyrannus Syracusanorum fuit Dionysius.* 9. *Agger pedes trecentos longus erat, altus duodecim.* 10. *Per tres menses nullum mare mercatoribus nostris tutum erat.* 11. *Quinque horas nostri milites cum hostibus pugna-*

vērunt. 12. Cives Romulum conditōrem urbis Romae appellaverunt. 13. Puer duo millia passuum ambulavit. 14. Milites in oppido multas horas pugnabant. 15. Fagus in silva multos pedes alta est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The soldiers of the tenth legion walked through snow two feet deep. 2. The camp of the enemy is ten miles distant from the river. 3. The tree is higher than the mound of the camp. 4. The city was about a mile distant from the sea. 5. The Romans pitched their camp on the top of a hill. 6. The general will give the soldiers of the seventh legion two crowns apiece on account of their valor. 7. Geneva is a town very near the territories of the Helvetii. 8. The tree is one hundred feet high. 9. The boy walked many miles across high mountains. 10. The general collected ten thousand soldiers at the foot of the hill. 11. A marsh two thousand feet wide and three miles long was between our camp and the camp of the enemy. 12. The plain is distant from the city about eighteen miles. 13. The town is eight miles distant from the camp. 14. The Roman general was endowed with great ability. 15. The wall was ten miles long and eighteen feet high.

## LESSON XXXVI.

### PASSIVE VOICE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE.

1. The present, imperfect, and future indicative of the passive voice, are formed by adding endings to the present stem. These tenses are inflected as follows :—

#### PRESENT.

##### SINGULAR.

##### PLURAL.

- |           |                                         |                                      |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | āmor, <i>I am (being) loved.</i>        | āmāmur, <i>we are (being) loved.</i> |
| 2. “      | āmāris or āmāre, <i>thou art loved.</i> | āmāmīni, <i>you are loved.</i>       |
| 3. “      | āmātur, <i>he (she, it) is loved.</i>   | āmāntur, <i>they are loved.</i>      |

## IMPERFECT.

- |           |                                              |                                         |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | ămăbār, <i>I was (being) loved.</i>          | ămăbāmur, <i>we were (being) loved.</i> |
| 2. “      | ămăbāris or ămăbāre, <i>thou wast loved.</i> | ămăbāmīnī, <i>you were loved.</i>       |
| 3. “      | ămăbātur, <i>he (she, it) was loved.</i>     | ămăbantur, <i>they were loved.</i>      |

## FUTURE.

- |      |                                                 |                                       |
|------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. “ | ămăbor, <i>I shall be loved.</i>                | ămăbīmur, <i>we shall be loved.</i>   |
| 2. “ | ămăbēris or ămăbēre, <i>thou wilt be loved.</i> | ămăbīmīnī, <i>you will be loved.</i>  |
| 3. “ | ămăbītur, <i>he (she, it) will be loved.</i>    | ămăbuntur, <i>they will be loved.</i> |

## ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

2. The agent after a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with a or ab: as, *Vir a sociis laudatur, the man is praised by his comrades.*

## ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT.

3. Cause, manner, means, and instrument are denoted by the ablative without a preposition: as, *Puer pallidus irā fuit, the boy was pale with rage (abl. of cause); magno fletu Caesarem orant, they beseech Caesar with much weeping (abl. of manner); Gallorum animos verbis confirmat, he encourages the minds of the Gauls by his words (abl. of means); puerum gladio vulnerat, he wounds the boy with a sword (abl. of instrument).*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together: *primum agmen; urbs alta; tanta virtus; Karthāgo, urbs antiqua; Scipio, vir prudens.*

Translate into English:—

1. *Pueri boni a magistris suis laudabuntur.*
2. *Hostium agri totam hiemem a militibus Romanis ferro et igni vastantur.*
3. *Karthago, urbs antiqua, a Scipione expugnabatur.*
4. *Ab omnibus bonis viris laudabor.*
5. *Num epistola tui patris ab meo socio laudatur?*
6. *Res a fugitivis nuntiatur.*
7. *Puerum alii (some) culpant, alii laudant.*
8. *Puer a patre suo educabatur.*
9. *A tuo patre et matre laudābēris.*
10. *Nonne militum animi timore perturbantur?*
11. *Tanta scientia erat imperatoris Romani.*
12. *Castra a Caesare, duce Romano, in summo monte locantur.*

13. Milites legionis septimae in colle altissimo castra locaverunt.  
 14. Num castra ab militibus nostris in summo monte locantur?

Translate into Latin :—

1. I shall be praised by the soldiers of the first legion. 2. Did not the boy blame the soldier? 3. Caesar will be praised by all the soldiers. 4. Many battles were being fought by the Romans in Gaul. 5. The city is saved by a faithful slave. 6. The Gauls devastated the fields of the Romans with fire and sword. 7. The good pupil is praised by his master. 8. He will be praised by all citizens on account of his valor. 9. O boy, praise the valor of the Roman soldiers. 10. The skill of the Romans in war is praised by all men. 11. The waves of the sea are disturbed by the wind. 12. Scipio took Karthage, a very rich city, by storm. 13. Some of the soldiers fought against the Gauls for ten years. 14. The king reigned twelve years in the state.

## LESSON XXXVII.

### PASSIVE VOICE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION. (Continued.)

1. The perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect of the indicative passive are formed from the perfect participle passive with *sum*, *to be*. Thus :

#### PERFECT.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	<i>āmātus sum, I have been, or was, loved.</i>	<i>āmātī sūmus, we have been, or were, loved.</i>
2. “	<i>āmātus es, thou hast been, or wast, loved.</i>	<i>āmātī estis, you have been, or were, loved.</i>
3. “	<i>āmātus est, he has been, or was, loved.</i>	<i>āmātī sunt, they have been, or were, loved.</i>

#### PLUPERFECT.

1. “	<i>āmātus eram, I had been loved.</i>	<i>āmātī erāmus, we had been loved.</i>
2. “	<i>āmātus eras, thou hadst been loved.</i>	<i>āmātī erātis, you had been loved.</i>
3. “	<i>āmātus erat, he had been loved.</i>	<i>āmātī erant they had been loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

- |           |                                                |                                                |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Pers., | āmātus ēro, <i>I shall have been loved.</i>    | āmāti ērimus, <i>we shall have been loved.</i> |
| 2. “      | āmātus ēris, <i>thou wilt have been loved.</i> | āmāti ēritis, <i>you will have been loved.</i> |
| 3. “      | āmātus ērit, <i>he will have been loved.</i>   | āmāti ērunt, <i>they will have been loved.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

2. The present imperative passive is inflected as follows:—

- |           |                              |                              |
|-----------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 2. Pers., | āmāre, <i>be thou loved.</i> | āmāmīni, <i>be ye loved.</i> |
|-----------|------------------------------|------------------------------|

Note.—The perfect participle passive is regularly formed by adding *-tus* to the present stem: as, *āmā-re, to love*; present stem, *ama-*; perfect participle passive, *āmā-tus*. The perfect participle passive is inflected like the adjective *bonus*, and agrees with the noun to which it refers, in gender, number and case: as, *Puer amatus est, the boy has been loved*; *amatus* is nominative singular masculine, agreeing with *puer*. *Puella amata est, the girl has been loved*; *amata* is nominative singular feminine, agreeing with *puella*.

3. From the perfect participle passive, by the change of *-us* into *-um*, is formed the *supine in -um*. The supine in *-um* has the force of the English infinitive used to express *purpose*; but it is used only after *verbs of motion*: as, *Puerum portavit ludos spectātum, he brought the boy to see the games* (*spectātum* is the supine in *-um* after the verb of motion *portavit*.)

Note.—The *present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *perfect indicative*, and the *supine*, are called the *principal parts of the verb*. Thus: *āmo, amāre, amāvi, amātum*, are the principal parts of *amo*.

## EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of: *porto, āro, dono, vōco, laudo*.

Translate into English:—

- |                                       |                                 |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Pueri ad matrem vocati sunt.       | 2. Ager ab agricola aratus est. |
| 3. Liber parvus puero donatus erit.   | 4. Cena a puellis parata erit.  |
| 5. Nonne viri ad hortum vocati erant? | 6. Cur a pueris laudatus        |

es? 7. Num agricolae filii in hortum vocati sunt? 8. Floresne militibus a regina donati sunt? 9. Pugna a militibus bene pugnata est. 10. A pulchra virgine laudatus eris. 11. Nomina hominum a nauta rogata erant. 12. Galli a Romanis superati erunt. 13. Vocavit agricolam agros aratum (*supine*).

Translate into Latin :—

1. Have you been praised by the master? 2. Did he give the books to the boy? 3. Had the little book been given to the judge? 4. Was the farmer called to plough (*supine*) the field? 5. Had the meal been prepared for the sailor by the girl? 6. The brave soldiers had all been killed by the sword. 7. The fields will have been ploughed in summer. 8. Was not the fight very badly fought? 9. Have the girls been surpassed by the boys? 10. Was not the house built for the queen? 11. The beautiful girl had been praised by all. 12. Did he not bring the boy to walk among the flowers?

---

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### REVIEW OF THE PASSIVE OF AMO.

#### ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN.

A point of time (*time when*) is expressed by the ablative: as, *Hieme noctes sunt longae, in winter the nights are long.*

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together: *Virgo pulchra, ōnus grāve, ver nōvum, ācies longa, aestas brevis.*

Translate into English :—

1. Auctumno noctes sunt longiores quam aestate. 2. Omnes milites in exercitu Romano a duce laudantur. 3. Agricolaē agros vērē arant. 4. Nostra consilia hostibus a servis nuntiabantur. 5. Miles sagittis hostium vulneratur. 6. Magna copia frumenti a servis ad urbem Romam aestate proximā portabitur. 7. Pater patriae a Senatu populoque Romano appellaris. 8. Hieme mediā castra ab imperatore in collibus altissimis locantur. 9. Caesar multos annos imperator in Gallia fuit. 10. Hieme Romani in

castris erant ; vere imperator ad bellum legiones excitabit. 11. Onera gravia a militibus trans montes portantur. 12. Dux hostium telo vulnerabatur. 13. Primo anno Romani Brutum consulem creaverunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The brave boy swam across the deep river. 2. On (in) dark nights the clouds hide the moon. 3. The birds sing songs in spring among the woods. 4. The days in winter are shorter than in summer ; the frost is keener than in spring. 5. You were being praised at-that-time (*tum*) by all the citizens. 6. The house of the farmer is smaller than that<sup>1</sup> of my father. 7. At daybreak the camp was pitched in the plain by the Romans. 8. The maidens were often praised by the queen on account of (*ob + acc.*) their diligence. 9. The master will be praised by all the servants. 10. The maiden was beloved by all her sisters. 11. The boy was wounded by the arrow of his brother. 12. In autumn a large quantity of corn was brought to the city by the farmers. 13. Did not the Romans collect (*compāro*) three thousand cavalry and six thousand infantry in the spring?

---

## LESSON XXXIX.

### ADVERBS.

1. Adverbs are formed from adjectives in *-us* and *-er* of the first and second declensions, by changing the genitive singular of the adjective into *ē*. Thus :—

ADJECTIVE.	GENITIVE.	ADVERB.
<i>cārus, dear,</i>	<i>cār-i,</i>	<i>cār-ē, dearly.</i>
<i>dignus, worthy,</i>	<i>dign-i,</i>	<i>dign-ē, worthily.</i>
<i>pulcher, beautiful,</i>	<i>pulchr-i,</i>	<i>pulchr-ē, beautifully.</i>
<i>mīser, wretched,</i>	<i>mīsēr-i,</i>	<i>mīsēr-ē, wretchedly.</i>

2. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by changing the *-is* of the genitive singular into *-iter*, or—if the adjective ends in *-ns*—into *-er*. Thus :—

---

<sup>1</sup>Omit that.

ADJECTIVE.	GENITIVE.	ADVERB.
fortis, <i>brave,</i>	fort-is,	fort-iter, <i>bravely.</i>
grāvis, <i>heavy,</i>	grāv-is,	grāv-iter, <i>heavily.</i>
ācer, <i>sharp,</i>	ācr-is,	ācr-iter, <i>sharply.</i>
fērox, <i>fierce,</i>	fērōc-is,	fērōc-iter, <i>fiercely.</i>
sāpiens, <i>wise,</i>	sāpiēnt-is,	sāpiēnt-er, <i>wisely.</i>
prūdēns, <i>prudent,</i>	prūdēt-is,	prūdēt-er, <i>prudently.</i>

3. Some adverbs have two forms, one in -e and one in -ter :

as,

ADJECTIVES.	ADVERBS.
dūrus, <i>hard,</i>	dūr-ē, dūr-iter.
firmus, <i>firm,</i>	firm-ē, firm-iter.
largus, <i>bounteous,</i>	larg-ē, larg-iter.
hūmānus, <i>courteous,</i>	hūmān-ē, hūmān-iter.
miser, <i>wretched,</i>	miser-ē, miser-iter.

4. The neuter accusative singular of many adjectives is used as an adverb : as,

ADJECTIVE.	ADVERB.
multus, <i>much,</i>	multum.
fācīlis, <i>easy,</i>	fācīlē.
rēcens, <i>fresh,</i>	rēcens.
dulcis, <i>sweet,</i>	dulcē.

5. The neuter singular comparative of the adjective is used as the comparative of the adverb. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective, by changing the genitive singular ending to -ē. Thus :

	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
{	ADJ. cārus, <i>dear,</i>	cārīor,	cārissīmus.
	ADV. cārē,	cārīus,	cārissīmē.
{	ADJ. miser, <i>wretched,</i>	miserīor,	miserīmus.
	ADV. miserē,	miserīus,	miserīmē.
{	ADJ. ācer, <i>sharp,</i>	ācrīor,	ācerrīmus.
	ADV. ācriter,	ācrīus,	ācerrīmē.
{	ADJ. prūdēns, <i>prudent,</i>	prūdētīor,	prūdētissīmus.
	ADV. prūdenter,	prūdētīus,	prūdētissīmē.



6. Some adverbs are formed irregularly from adjectives : as,

## ADVERBS.

ADJECTIVE.	POSITIVE.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
bōnus, <i>good</i> ,	bēne, <i>well</i> ,	mēlius,	optimē.
mālus, <i>bad</i> ,	māle, <i>badly</i> ,	pēius,	pessimē.
multus, <i>much</i> ,	multum, <i>much</i> ,	plūs,	plurimē or plurimum.
parvus, <i>small, little</i> ,	pārum, <i>little</i> ,	mīnus,	mīnimē.
magnus, <i>great</i> ,	magnōpēre, <i>greatly</i> ,	māgis,	maximē.

7. Some adverbs, not derived from adjectives, are compared : as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
dīū, <i>long</i> ,	dīūtius,	dīūtissimē.
saepē, <i>often</i> ,	saepius,	saepissimē.

## EXERCISE.

Form adverbs from the following adjectives, and compare both adjectives and adverbs : Cēler, *swift* ; altus, *high* ; aeger, *sick* ; sīmilis, *like* ; libens, *willing* ; audax, *bold*.

Decline together : aquila celeris, dies clarior, eques fortissimus, vita melior.

Translate into English :—

1. Romani multos annos contra Karthaginienses fortiter pugnaverunt. 2. Vere imperator unam legionem celeriter comparabit. 3. Una legio ab duce Romano aestate celerrime comparatur. 4. Homo saepe est poenā gravissimā dignus. 5. Virtus militum ab Caesare maxime laudatur. 6. Italia, nostra patria, ab omnibus civibus carissime amatur. 7. Homo in meo consulatu a Senatu saepissime laudabatur. 8. Galli magnas equitum et peditum copias celerrime comparant. 9. Locus proelio maxime idoneus est. 10. Timor maximus omnes milites exercitūs saepissime occupavit. 11. Die decimo Caesar omnia arma ad oppidum celerius portabit. 12. Reliquas legiones pro castrorum portis hōdie locavit. 13. Imperatorem tela hostium gravissime vulneraverunt. 14. In una<sup>1</sup> virtute nostra spes victoriae est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The snow was four feet deep on<sup>2</sup> the top of the mountain. 2.

1. *Alone*. 2. Use *in* with abl.

The army of the Romans is often defeated in war. 3. Ten legions are quickly collected by the general against the enemy. 4. The soldiers fought very bravely for four hours. 5. The general praised greatly the valor of his soldiers. 6. The generals pitched the camp in a very suitable place. 7. The man is contented with all his friends. 8. The commander thought the plain a very suitable place for a camp. 9. The Gauls were very fond of war and for many years fought very fiercely against the Germans. 10. On the next day, the soldier quickly hastened to the camp. 11. Our general is more skilled in war (*gen.*) than the leader of the enemy. 12. The town is very near a high hill (*dat.*) 13. The road to the top of the mountain is very difficult. 14. Caesar posted (*loco*) the soldiers of the tenth legion on the right wing.

---

## LESSON XL.

### SECOND CONJUGATION.

#### Indicative and Imperative Active.

1. The second conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ē* before the present infinitive ending *-re*: as,

<i>mōnĕo, I advise,</i>	pres. inf., <i>mōnĕ-re, to advise.</i>
<i>hābĕo, I have,</i>	pres. inf., <i>hābĕ-re, to have.</i>

2. The part that is left after dropping the ending *-re*, is called the present stem; and the present, imperfect and future indicative are formed from it, as in the first conjugation.

3. The perfect is sometimes formed, as in the first conjugation, by adding *-vī* to the present stem: as,

PRES. INDICATIVE.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	PRES. STEM.	PERFECT.
<i>dĕlēo, I destroy,</i>	<i>dĕlē-re,</i>	<i>dĕlē-</i>	<i>dĕlēvī.</i>

4. Most verbs, however, form the perfect by dropping the final *-ē* of the present stem and adding *-ŭī*: as,

PRES. INDICATIVE.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	PRES. STEM.	PERFECT.
<i>mōnĕo, I advise,</i>	<i>mōnĕ-re,</i>	<i>mōnĕ-</i>	<i>mōnŭī.</i>

5. Some verbs drop the *-ē* of the present stem and add *-si*: as,

PRES. INDICATIVE.	PRES. INFINITIVE.	PRES. STEM.	PERFECT.
mānĕo, <i>I remain</i> ,	mānĕ-re,	mānĕ-	man-si.
iūbĕo, <i>I order</i> ,	iūbĕ-re,	iūbĕ-	ius-si (=iub-si).

6. The present imperative is got, as in the other conjugations, by dropping the *-re* of the infinitive: as,

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT IMPERATIVE.
mōnĕo, <i>I advise</i> ,	mōnĕ-re,	mōnĕ.
iūbĕo, <i>I order</i> ,	iūbĕ-re,	iūbĕ.

7. The indicative and imperative active of *mōnĕo* are inflected as follows:—

Mōnĕo, *I advise.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers., mōnĕo	mōnĕmus
2. “ mōnĕs	mōnĕtis
3. “ mōnet	mōnent

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., mōnĕbam	mōnĕbāmus
2. “ mōnĕbās	mōnĕbātis
3. “ mōnĕbat	mōnĕbant

FUTURE.

1. Pers., mōnĕbo	mōnĕbīmus
2. “ mōnĕbis	mōnĕbītis
3. “ mōnĕbit	mōnĕbunt

PERFECT.

1. Pers., mōnūi	mōnūimus
2. “ mōnūisti	mōnūistis
3. “ mōnūit	mōnūērunt or mōnūēre

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., mōnūeram	mōnūērāmus
2. “ mōnūērās	mōnūērātis
3. “ mōnūerat	mōnūērāt

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers., mōnūēro	mōnūērīmus
2. “ mōnūēris	mōnūērītis
3. “ mōnūērit	mōnūērīnt

## IMPERATIVE.

2. Pers., mōnē	mōnēte
----------------	--------

Note.—The supine of mōneo is mōnītum; and the principal parts are : mōneo, mōnēre, mōnui, mōnītum.

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : hora brevis, mons altior, summus collis, ager felix, flumen altum, pater suus.

Translate into English :—

1. Hostium exercitus arcem sex menses tenuit. 2. Summum montem milites primae legionis habuērunt. 3. Magister discipulum multos annos docuit. 4. In conspectu nostri exercitus agri vastati sunt. 5. Milites naves multas frumento vinoque complēvērant. 6. Nix duos pedes alta in montibus iacet. 7. Hostium adventus militum pavorem augēbit. 8. Ab (=on) una parte Gallos flumen Rhenus, et ab altera parte montes Pyrēnaei continent. 9. Pater meus in Italia multos annos mansit. 10. Veris adventus omnibus animalibus gratissimus est. 11. Equitatus hostium multas horas collem tenēbat. 12. Karthaginienses multas naves Romanorum apud insulam Siciliam delevērunt. 13. Hodie exercitus Romanus magnam spem victoriae habet.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The army of the enemy held our territories. 2. My father will remain in Italy for six months. 3. The river Garonne, the Pyrenees mountains and the Ocean bound Gaul. 4. Caesar had great hope of victory. 5. The soldiers have very great experience in war<sup>1</sup>. 6. The lieutenant held the top of the hill for many days. 7. The thing was told to the enemy by a soldier of the legion. 8. The Gauls will quickly destroy all the houses. 9. I shall remain ten days in the city. 10. The victory of the soldiers will be pleasing to the general. 11. For many years the master

<sup>1</sup> Use the genitive.

taught the sons of the old man. 12. On the next day Caesar moved the army forward<sup>2</sup> ten miles and remained there for ten days. 13. The enemy pitched their camp in the plain.

<sup>2</sup> *To move forward*, přomůvĕo.

## LESSON XLI.

### SECOND CONJUGATION.—(*Continued*).

#### Indicative and Imperative Passive.

The indicative and imperative passive of verbs of the second conjugation are inflected as follows :—

*Mōněor, I am advised.*

#### INDICATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1. Pers., mōněor
2. “ mōněris *or* mōněre
3. “ mōnětur

- mōněmur
- mōněmīni
- mōnentur

##### IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., mōněbar
2. “ mōněbāris *or* mōněbāre
3. “ mōněbātur

- mōněbāmur
- mōněbāmīni
- mōněbantur

##### FUTURE.

1. Pers., mōněbor
2. “ mōněbēris *or* mōněbēre
3. “ mōněbītur

- mōněbīmur
- mōněbīmīni
- mōněbuntur

##### PERFECT.

1. Pers., mōnītus sum
2. “ mōnītus ēs
3. “ mōnītus est

- mōnītī sūmus
- mōnītī estis
- mōnītī sunt

##### PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., mōnītus ēram
2. “ mōnītus ērās
3. “ mōnītus ērat

- mōnītī ērāmus
- mōnītī ērātis
- mōnītī ērant

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	mōnītus ēro	mōnītī ērimus
2. “	mōnītus ēris	mōnītī ēritis
3. “	mōnītus ērit	mōnītī ērunt

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

2. “	mōnēre	mōnēmīni
------	--------	----------

## RULES FOR EXPRESSING TIME.

1. A *point of time* is expressed by the ablative : as, Hieme noctes sunt longae, *in winter the nights are long.*

2. *Within* a point of time is expressed either by the simple ablative, or by the accusative with inter or intra : as, Paucis diebus, inter paucos dies, intra paucos dies, *within a few days.*

3. *Many years after* is, multis annis post; *many years before* is multis annis ante : as, Multis annis post urbs expugnata est, *the city was taken many years after.* (post is an adverb).

Note.—Post multos annos is also used for *many years after* and ante multos annos for *many years before.*

4. Duration of time is expressed by the accusative : as, Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, *Romulus reigned for thirty-seven years.*

5. *Ago* is expressed by abhinc followed by the words expressing time in the accusative or ablative : as, Abhinc decem dies (or abhinc decem diebus) Caesar castra mōvit, *ten days ago Caesar moved his camp.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : prima lux, quaestor fortis, summus mons, dies sérēnus, duo pedes.

Translate into English :—

1. Prima luce milites legionis summum collem tenent. 2. Paucis diebus post res Caesarī nuntiata est. 3. Abhinc viginti annos oppidum a duce deletum est. 4. Agamemnon cum universa Graecia vix decem annis urbem Troiam expugnavit. 5. Hasdrubal, dux Karthaginensium, octo fere annos imperium obtinuerat. 6.

Multos continuos dies copiae Romanorum in castris tenebantur. 7. Urbs Karthago a Scipione abhinc multis annis est deleta. 8. Caesar castra sua ex summo monte ad planitiem movebit. 9. Mille fere et quingentos passus castra ab hostibus promotata sunt. 10. Multis diebus ante de coniuratione senatum monuit servus. 11. Hostes tela sex pedes longa et unum pedem lata habebant. 12. Multis annis post milites summum collem tenuerant. 13. Decem annis a militibus Graecis urbs Troia deleta est.

Translate into Latin :--

1. On the next day at daybreak Caesar moved his camp to the foot of the hill. 2. The hill is held by the enemy for five hours. 3. The army of Scipio destroyed Karthage, a very wealthy city, many years ago. 4. Was not the city taken by storm five years after? 5. Within ten years the general has fought many battles against the enemy. 6. The forces of the enemy are two miles distant from the city. 7. You are all silent, my friends; do you fear the decision of the judge? 8. The birds in spring build their nests in the tall trees. 9. The arrival of spring is welcome to all. 10. Within fifty years the Romans destroyed two very fierce nations. 11. The number of the soldiers was increased by a levy at the beginning of spring. 12. At the beginning of summer, the boy was seen in the fields daily. 13. The town was destroyed by the Roman commander ten years ago.

## LESSON XLII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### Indicative and Imperative Active.

1. The third conjugation includes all verbs that have the characteristic vowel *-ĕ* before the present infinitive ending *-re*. The present stem is obtained by dropping *-rĕ*; and from it the verb stem, which always ends in a consonant or *-u*, is obtained by dropping the characteristic *-ĕ*: as,

PRESENT INFINITIVE.	PRESENT STEM.	VERB STEM.
<i>rĕgĕre, to rule,</i>	<i>rĕgĕ-</i>	<i>rĕg-</i>
<i>mĭnŭĕre, to lessen,</i>	<i>mĭnŭĕ-</i>	<i>mĭnŭ.</i>

2. The perfect is formed regularly by adding *-si* to the verb stem : as,

PRES. INFIN.	PRES. STEM.	VERB STEM.	PERF. INDIC.
rēgēre	rēgĕ-	rēg-	rexī (=regsi)

3. The future is formed by adding *-am* to the verb stem : as,

PRES. INFIN.	PRES. STEM.	VERB STEM.	FUT. INDIC.
rēgēre	rēgĕ-	rēg-	rēg-am

4. The indicative and imperative active of *rēgo*, *I rule*, are inflected as follows :—

*Rēgo, I rule.*

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	rēgo	rēgīmus
2. “	rēgīs	rēgītis
3. “	rēgit	rēgunt <sup>1</sup>

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	rēgēbam	rēgēbāmus
2. “	rēgēbās	rēgēbātis
3. “	rēgēbat	rēgēbant

FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	rēgam	rēgēmus
2. “	rēgēs	rēgētis
3. “	rēget	rēgent

PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	rexī	rexīmus
2. “	rexistī	rexistis,
3. “	rexit	rexērunt <i>or</i> rexēre

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	rexeram	rexērāmus
2. “	rexerās	rexērātis
3. “	rexerat	rexerant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	rexēro	rexērīmus
2. “	rexerīs	rexērītis
3. “	rexerit	rexerint

<sup>1</sup>The characteristic *-ĕ* is changed to *-i* or *-u*.



## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

2. Pers., rēgē

rēgīte

## RULES FOR EXPRESSING PLACE.

1. *Place to which* is regularly expressed by the *accusative with a preposition*, unless before the names of towns and small islands : as, *Ad Galliam, ad urbem contendit, he hastens to Gaul, to the city.* With the names of towns and small islands, *place to which* is regularly expressed by the *accusative without a preposition* : as, *Romam, Corinthum, Karthaginem, Aeginam, contendit, he hastens to Rome, Corinth, Karthage, Aegina.*<sup>1</sup> So also *domum (home), rus (to the country)*, are used without a preposition : as, *Domum, rus ambulat, he walks home, to the country.*

2. *Place from which* is regularly expressed by the *ablative with a preposition*, unless before the names of towns and small islands : as, *Ab Gallia, ab urbe contendit, he hastens, from Gaul, from the city.* But with the names of towns and small islands, *from* is regularly expressed by the *ablative without a preposition* : as, *Romā, Corintho, Karthagine, Aeginā contendit, he hastens from Rome, Corinth, Karthage, Aegina.* So also *domo, is from home; rure, from the country.*

3. To express *place in which*, a preposition is required, unless with the names of towns and small islands : as, *In Gallia, in urbe, vivit, he lives in Gaul, in the city.* But to express *place in which* with the names of towns or small islands, the so-called *locative*<sup>2</sup> case is used. This case has the form of (*a*) the genitive, if the noun is of the first or second declension singular ; (*b*) the ablative, if the noun is of the third declension singular or if the noun is plural : as, *Romae, at Rome; Corinthi, at Corinth; Karthagine, at Karthage; Athēnis, at Athens (Athenae, pl.); Delphis, at Delphi (Delphi, pl.); Curibus, at Cures (Cures, pl.)*

<sup>1</sup> When *ad* is used before the name of a town, it means *towards* or *in the neighborhood of* : as, *Ad Romam contendit, he hastens towards Rome or to the neighborhood of Rome.*

<sup>2</sup> A case which became obsolete in the later language.

So, too, *domi*, at home; *humi*, on the ground; *belli*, in war; *ruri*, in the country; *militiæ*, on military service, abroad.

4. When *urbs* or *oppidum* is used in apposition to the name of a town, the preposition should be expressed : as, *Ad urbem Rōmā* contendit, he set out for the city of Rome; *ex urbe Romā* properavit, he hastened from the city of Rome; *in urbe Roma* vixit, he lived in the city of Rome. (Latin says : *The city Rome* for our city of Rome.)

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *proximus collis*, *puer diligens*, *extrema aestas*, *domus parvā*, *primum ver*, *exercitus magnus*, *puella prudens*.

Translate into English :—

1. *Caesar copias suas ad proximum collem subduxit.* 2. *Romae consules a civibus quotannis creantur.* 3. *Dionysius pueros Corinthi abhinc multis annis docēbat.* 4. *Imperator ad Italiam extremā aestate contendit.* 5. *Vir erat non solum domi, sed etiam belli clarissimus.* 6. *Dux hostium fossam, duo millia passuum longam, ex castris ad flumen perduxit.* 7. *Vere multos dies ruri puer mansit.* 8. *Milites plurīmi ad Karthaginem, urbem omnium rerum plenam, aestate comparatī sunt.* 9. *Primo vere Pompeius omnes copias hostium terrā marique superavit.* 10. *Plato multos annos Athenis vixit.* 11. *In Gallia citeriore decem diebus duae legiones a Caesare comparatae sunt.* 12. *Lacedaemon erat honestissimum domicilium senectūtis.* 13. *Aestate legatus decimam legionem Romae conscripsit.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. At Ephesus there was a splendid temple of Diana. 2. He was even more distinguished at home than abroad. 3. At the end of summer two legions were collected (*comparo*) at Athens. 4. He walks within five hours from the city to his home. 5. The general led his army from Rome to Athens within four months. 6. Was not the boy advised by his teacher many days ago? 7. Was he living in the beginning of spring at Rome? 8. Romulus reigned in the city of Rome for thirty-seven years. 9. Pompey hastened from Brundisium in the beginning of night. 10. The top of the hill was held by Labienus, a brave lieutenant of Caesar. 11. The general in the middle of summer enrolled (*conscribo*) three legions at Lucca,

a town of hither Gaul. 12. Within fifty days the pirates were defeated (*supero*) by Pompey. 13. The man was wounded in the battle by the darts of the enemy.

## LESSON XLIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—(*Continued.*)

## Formation of the Perfect Active and Supine Stems.

Note.—The principal parts of all verbs of the 3rd conjugation should, owing to their irregularity, be carefully committed to memory as they occur.

1. The perfect indicative active is regularly formed by adding *-si*, and the supine by adding *-tum*, to the verb stem: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
rēgo,	rēgēre,	rexī (=regsi),	rectur, (=regtum)

2. But some verbs have a *reduplicated* perfect: *i. e.*, the first consonant of the word is prefixed with a vowel (generally *-ē*) added: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
cādo, <i>I fall</i> ,	cādēre,	cē-cīdī,	cāsum. (=cad-tum)

Note.—The stem vowel is often weakened as in this case (*-ā* passing to *-ī*).

3. Sometimes, too, the reduplication has been lost: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
fīdo, <i>I cleave</i> ,	fīdēre,	fīdī (=fī-fīdī)	fīssum.

4. The stem vowel is sometimes lengthened for the perfect: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
āgo, <i>I do</i> ,	āgēre,	ēgī,	actum.
lēgo, <i>I choose</i> ,	lēgēre	lēgī,	lectum.

5. Sometimes, to form the perfect, an *-i* is added to the verb stem: as,

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
rūo, <i>I rush,</i>	rūēre,	rūī,	rūtum.
verto, <i>I turn,</i>	vertēre,	verti,	versum.

## 6. Learn the principal parts of :

PRES. IND.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
mitto, <i>send,</i>	mittēre,	misi,	missum.
dico, <i>tell,</i>	dicēre,	dixi,	dictum.
claudio, <i>shut,</i>	claudēre,	clausi,	clausum.
pello, <i>drive,</i>	pellēre,	pēpūli,	pulsum.
carpo, <i>pluck,</i>	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum.
pōno, <i>place,</i>	ponēre,	pōsūi,	pōsitum.
ālo, <i>rear,</i>	ālēre,	ālūi,	altum.
dūco, <i>lead,</i>	dūcēre,	duxi,	ductum.
scando, <i>climb,</i>	scandēre,	scandi,	scansum.
trāho, <i>draw,</i>	trāhēre,	traxi,	tractum.
scribo, <i>write,</i>	scribēre,	scripsi,	scriptum.
vīvo, <i>live,</i>	vivēre,	vixi,	victum.

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : frigus acre, servus fidēlis, tristior vultus, res maxima, respublica incolumis.

Translate into English :—

1. Puer ad patrem Romam binas litteras quotīdie misit. 2. Vespēri imperator Romanus portas castrorum claudet. 3. Primā luce nostri milites copias hostium e summo colle pellent. 4. Abhinc multos annos pomum in tuo horto carpsi. 5. Hieme in summis Alpibus frigus acerrimum est. 6. Hostes primum copias suas contra exercitus nostri dextrum cornu posūerunt ; deinde nostros milites in fugam magno clamore verterunt. 7. Magnis corporibus Germanorum nostri milites terrebantur. 8. Multi hostes in proeliis ceciderunt. 9. Britanni ansērem et gallinam alunt. 10. Post paucos menses Caesar copias suas ex Britannia duxit. 11. Annos circiter trecentos quinquaginta Romani insulam Britanniam tenuerunt. 12. Miles, virtute fretus, muros urbis altos scandit. 13. Omnium gentium Galli sunt belli cupidissimi.

Translate into Latin :—

1. During the winter the Romans drew their ships to the shore and remained there many months. 2. The boy wrote three letters

daily. 3. Many illustrious<sup>1</sup> men lived formerly at Athens, but none was more illustrious than the orator Demosthenes. 4. The king lived at Rome for many years. 5. The house of my father is three miles distant from the city. 6. On the next day, scouts told the matter to our commander. 7. Many thousands of the enemy fell in the battle. 8. At home and abroad he was equally beloved by his fellow-citizens. 9. The sun is larger than the earth. 10. After many years he will live in Corinth. 11. The father lived ten years at Karthage with his son. 12. The father sent his son to Delphi, a very rich city. 13. The farmers plucked many apples in the beginning of autumn.

---

## LESSON XLIV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.—(Continued.)

#### Indicative and Imperative Passive.

1. The indicative and imperative passive of *rēgo*, *I rule*, are inflected as follows :—

*Rēgor*, *I am ruled.*

#### PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers., <i>rēgor</i>	<i>rēgimur</i>
2. “ <i>rēgēris or rēgēre</i>	<i>rēgimīnī</i>
3. “ <i>rēgitur</i>	<i>rēguntur</i>

#### IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>rēgēbar</i>	<i>rēgēbāmur</i>
2. “ <i>rēgēbāris or rēgēbāre</i>	<i>rēgēbāmīnī</i>
3. “ <i>rēgēbātur</i>	<i>rēgēbantur</i>

#### FUTURE.

1. Pers., <i>rēgar</i>	<i>rēgēmur</i>
2. “ <i>rēgēris or rēgēre</i>	<i>rēgēmīnī</i>
3. “ <i>rēgētur</i>	<i>rēgentur</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Say “many” and “illustrious.”

## PERFECT.

1. Pers., rectus sum	rectī sūmus
2. “ rectus es	rectī estis
3. “ rectus est	rectī sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., rectus eram	rectī ērāmus
2. “ rectus erās	rectī ērātis
3. “ rectus erat	rectī ērant

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers., rectus ero	rectī ērīmus
2. “ rectus eris	rectī ērītis
3. “ rectus erit	rectī ērunt

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

2. Pers., rēgēre	rēgīmīnī
------------------	----------

2. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, naming, regarding* and *showing*, take two accusatives in the active : as, *Populus Romanus Ciceronem consulem creavit, the Roman people elected Cicero consul.* Here *Ciceronem* is the direct object, and *consulem* is a part of the predicate and is called the predicate accusative.

In the passive, these verbs take two nominatives ; the direct object of the active becomes the subject nominative, and the predicate accusative of the active becomes the predicate nominative of the passive : as, *Cicero consul a populo Romano creatus est, Cicero was elected consul by the Roman people.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *noster miles, alter consul, fortitudo magna, bellum atrox, magister optimus.*

Translate into English :—

1. *Populus Romanus Camillum consulem postēro anno lēgit.* 2. *Camillus consul postero anno ab populo Romano lectus est.* 3. *Nonne Cicero unā voce ab omnibus consul declarabitur?* 4. *Parentes puerum Scipionem nominabunt.* 5. *Omnium virtutum maxima inter homines habita est fortitudo.* 6. *Romani duo bella*

atrocissima cum finitimis gentibus centum annos gesserunt. 7. Titus Lartius primus dictātor et Spurius Cassius magister equitum creatus est. 8. Num epistola ad patrem suum a puero Athenas missa est? 9. Romulus urbem Roman ex suo nomine appellavit. 10. Num civitas a rege crudelissimo quam a consule mitissimo melius regetur? 11. Abhinc multos annos Roma, urbs clarissima, a Romulo condita est. 12. Alter (*one*) consul domi mansit; alter bellum contra hostes patriae gessit. 13. Socrates homo sapientissimus totius orbis terrarum est habitus. 14. Urbis portae vesp̄ri clausae sunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. He was chosen consul by the votes of all the citizens. 2. Two consuls are chosen yearly by the Roman people. 3. The soldiers were considered worthy of a golden crown. 4. The father will call his son Scipio from the name of his grandfather. 5. The Karthaginians carried on wars for two hundred years against the Roman people. 6. The general took-by-storm the camp of the enemy at daybreak. 7. He will live for four years at Cures, a small town. 8. The Athenians considered Socrates the wisest of men. 9. He set out at night for Gaul accompanied-by (*cum + abl.*) his little son. 10. The man was declared consul by all the citizens. 11. Shall we not choose Caesar, the greatest commander of the Roman people? 12. Was the general chosen by the Roman people? 13. Caesar stayed a few days at Brundisium on-account-of (*ob + acc.*) the storm.

---

## LESSON XLV.

### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

#### Indicative and Imperative Active.

1. The fourth conjugation includes all verbs that have -ī (i long) before the present infinitive ending -re. The present stem is obtained by dropping -rē of the present infinitive: as,

PRESENT INFINITIVE

audire

PRESENT STEM.

audi-

2. The indicative and imperative active are inflected as follows :—

Audīo, *I hear.*

PRESENT.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	audīo	audīmus
2. “	audīs	audītis
3. “	audit	audiunt

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audīēbam	audīēbāmus
2. “	audīēbās	audīēbātis
3. “	audīēbat	audīēbant

FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	audīam	audīēmus
2. “	audīēs	audīētis
3. “	audīet	audīent

PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audīvī	audīvīmus
2. “	audīvisti	audīvistis
3. “	audīvīt	audīvērunt or audīvēre

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audivēram	audivērāmus
2. “	audivērās	audivērātis
3. “	audivērat	audivērant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	audivēro	audivērīmus
2. “	audivēris	audivērītis
3. “	audivērit	audivērint

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

2. Pers.,	audi	audite
-----------	------	--------

VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES.

3. Verbs of *asking*, *teaching* and *concealing* take two accusatives in the active, one of the person and another of the thing : as, *Pater filium musicam docuit*, *the father taught his son music.*



In the passive, the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained: as, *Filius musicam a patre doctus est*, *the son was taught music by his father*.

Note.—*Pëto*, *I ask*, and *postülo*, *I demand*, take the accusative of the thing and the ablative of the person with *a* (or *ab*), *from*: as, *Pacem ab Romanis petiverunt*, *they asked the Romans for peace* (= *they asked peace from the Romans*); *librum ab amico postüla-vit*, *he demanded a book from his friend*. *Quaero*, *to ask, seek*, takes the accusative of the thing and the ablative of the person with *a* (or *ab*), *e* (or *ex*), or *de*: as, *Causam e viro quaesivit*, *he asked a reason from the man* (or, *he asked the man for a reason*).

## EXERCISE.

Decline together: *malum facinus*, *magna vox*, *moenia alta*, *fossa longa*, *partes tres*, *consul clarissimus*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Magister puerum sententiam rogavit*. 2. *Puer a magistro sententiam rogatus est*. 3. *Catilina iuventutem multa facinora docebat*. 4. *Cicero per legatos de consiliis hostium doctus est*. 5. *Per silentium noctis vocem magnam in silvis audiverunt*. 6. *Nonne dux consilium nostros milites celavit?* 7. *Hostes castra fossa valloque muniverant*. 8. *Orationem Ciceronis, viri clarissimi, cras audies*. 9. *Romani duo bella atrocissima una aestate finiverunt*. 10. *Mulieres pacem ab hostibus petunt*. 11. *Ariovistus, in Caesaris consulatu, rex atque amicus appellatus est*. 12. *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*. 13. *Audite, O Romani, multa et praeclara facta maiorum nostrorum*.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Cato was asked his opinion about (*de + abl.*) the conspiracy. 2. Necessity teaches man many arts. 3. Caesar had demanded corn from the enemy ten days before. 4. On the next day the enemy asked the Britons for aid. 5. O citizens, hear the words of Socrates, the wisest of men. 6. Did not the citizens hear the speech of the consul? 7. They have demanded soldiers from the Gauls within fifty days. 8. He lived many years at Athens as<sup>1</sup> a

<sup>1</sup>Omit *as*.

boy. 9. Did you hear of (*de*) the defeat of the Roman army?  
 10. The boy was sleeping on the ground for two hours. 11. Will  
 our general finish the war in the summer? 12. Shall we punish  
 the innocent and acquit the guilty? 13. The people had chosen  
 Ancus king, ten years before.

## LESSON XLVI.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## Indicative and Imperative Passive.

The indicative and imperative passive of *audio*, *I hear*, are  
 inflected as follows:—

*Audior*, *I am heard*.

## PRESENT.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Pers.,	<i>audior</i>	<i>audimur</i>
2. “	<i>audiris or audire</i>	<i>audimini</i>
3. “	<i>auditur</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>

## IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>
2. “	<i>audiēbāris or audiēbāre</i>	<i>audiēbāmini</i>
3. “	<i>audiēbātur</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>

## FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	<i>audiāar</i>	<i>audiēmur</i>
2. “	<i>audiēris or audiēre</i>	<i>audiēmīni</i>
3. “	<i>audiētur</i>	<i>audiēntur</i>

## PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>auditus sum</i>	<i>auditi sūmus</i>
2. “	<i>auditus es</i>	<i>auditi estis</i>
3. “	<i>auditus est</i>	<i>auditi sunt</i>

## SUPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	<i>auditus eram</i>	<i>auditi erāmus</i>
2. “	<i>auditus erās</i>	<i>auditi erātis</i>
3. “	<i>auditus erat</i>	<i>auditi erant</i>

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	auditus ěro	auditi ěrimus
2. “	auditus ěris	auditi ěritis
3. “	auditus ěrit	auditi ěrunt

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

2. Pers.,	audire	audimĭni
-----------	--------	----------

## EXERCISE.

Conjugate like audio: Punio, *punish*; munio, *fortify*; erudio, *educate*; vestio, *clothe*; servio, *be a slave*.

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne pelle leonis vestitus est? 2. Castra a multis viris muniebantur. 3. Legiōnes Romanae nunquam servient. 4. Cur non taces? A magistro puniēris. 5. Nonne castra multis arboribus munita erant? 6. Num colles ab hostibus munientur? 7. Plebs Romana ignaviae serviēbat. 8. Nonne pueri a magistris erudiuntur? 9. Nonne pueri audaces graviter punientur? 10. Turris altissima a Caesāre munita erit. 11. Servi nostri a fabris optime eruditi sunt. 12. O pueri, virtute vestimini.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The shouts of the enemy were often heard. 2. Are not the boys being educated by their master? 3. The camp was fortified on a high hill. 4. Will you not be silent? You will be heard by the master. 5. They were clothed with the skins of lions. 6. The shout of the soldiers will be heard in the city. 7. The birds were heard in the wood. 8. Were not the boys well educated? 9. The messengers were being punished by the general. 10. Be clothed, soldier, with courage. 11. You will not be heard, boys, by the master. 12. Do not punish, O master, the best boy.

## LESSON XLVII.

## COGNATE ACCUSATIVE. ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

1. Verbs are often followed by an accusative of kindred origin or meaning : as, Turpissimam vitam vivit, *he lives a very base life*; mirum somnium somniavit, *he dreamt a wonderful dream*;

proelium pugnāt, *he fights a battle.* This is called the *cognate accusative*.

2. Many intransitive verbs, especially those expressing motion and compounded with the preposition *ad* (*to*), *circum* (*around*), *per* (*through*), *praeter* (*past*), *trans* (*across*), or *super* (*above*), take an accusative after them: as, *Cato rostra advolat, Cato flies to the hustings; equites Romani senatum circumstant, Roman knights surround the senate; murmur contionem pervasit, a murmur went through the assembly.* (Here the accusative depends on the preposition. The sentences might have been expressed thus: *Ad rostra Cato volat; equites Romani circum senatum stant; murmur per contionem vasit.*)

3. The transitive verbs, *transduco* (or *traduco*), *I lead across*, and *transporto*, *I bear across*, may take two accusatives in the active, one depending on the verb and the other on the preposition: as, *Hannibal copias Ibērum traduxit, Hannibal led the forces across the Ebro; Caesar milites navibus flumen transportat, Caesar conveys his soldiers across the river in ships.*

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together: *media aestas, album lac, dura servitus, summum consilium, omnes boni cives.*

Translate into English:—

1. Caesar omnes copias Rhenum mediā aestate traduxerat. 2. Tres iam partes copiarum Helvetii flumen traduxerunt. 3. Plerique frumenta non serunt; pellibus vestiti sunt. 4. Naves Romanae oram Siciliae praetervectae sunt. 5. Catilina cum sociis sceleratis senatum circumstat. 6. Cato primus sententiam in senatu rogatur. 7. Hannibal nonaginta millia hominum flumen Iberum transducit. 8. Num Galli multos annos durissimam servitutem servant? 9. Summum senatūs consilium ab Romanis appellatum est. 10. Mercator hieme mare navigabit. 11. Xerxes Hellespontum exercitum traduxit. 12. Ab omnibus bonis civibus auditus eram.

Translate into Latin:—

1. The Romans did not sail the sea in the middle of winter. 2. Did not the general with all his forces fly to the city? 3. The citizens stand round the temple of Jupiter. 4. The Germans led

their forces across the Rhine. 5. Will he be contented with his lot? 6. Was not a large army led across the mountains into Gaul? 7. The enemy fought a fierce battle in the middle of the plain. 8. The man lived at Athens for many years, but he was brought up at Rome. 9. In early spring Hannibal will lead a large army across the Alps. 10. He was heard by the noblest men of our state. 11. The Romans were taught the art of war by necessity. 12. Did not Marius make a very long journey in the middle of summer?

## LESSON XLVIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—(*Continued*),

## Verbs in -io.

1. A few verbs of the third conjugation form the present indicative in -io (active), -ior (passive), like verbs of the fourth conjugation except that -i is short (-ī) throughout the present : as,

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE
căpio, <i>I take</i> ,	căpĕre	cĕpĭ,	captum.

Căpio, *I take*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRESENT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	căpio	căpĭmus	căpĭor	căpĭmur
2. “	căpis	căpĭtis	{ căpĕris <i>or</i>	căpĭmĭni
3. “	căpĭt	căpĭunt	{ căpĕre	căpĭuntur
			căpĭtur	

## IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	căpiĕbam	căpiĕbămus	căpiĕbar	căpiĕbămur
2. “	căpiĕbās	căpiĕbătis	{ căpiĕbāris <i>or</i>	căpiĕbămĭni
3. “	căpiĕbat	căpiĕbant	{ căpiĕbāre	căpiĕbantur
			căpiĕbătur	

## FUTURE.

1. Pers., cāpīam	cāpiēmus	cāpiar	cāpiēmur
2. “ cāpiēs	cāpiētis	{ cāpiēris or cāpiēre	cāpiēmīni
3. “ cāpiet	cāpiēt	cāpiētur	cāpiēntur

## PERFECT.

1. Pers., cēpi	cēpimus	captus sum	capti sūmus
2. “ cēpisti	cēpistis	captus es	capti estis
3. “ cēpit	{ cēpērunt or cēpēre	captus est	capti sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., cēpēram	cēpērāmus	captus eram	capti ērāmus
2. “ cēpērās	cēpērātis	captus erās	capti ērātis
3. “ cēpērat	cēpērant	captus erat	capti ērant

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers., cēpēro	cēpērīmus	captus ero	capti ērīmus
2. “ cēpēris	cēpērītis	captus eris	capti ērītis
3. “ cēpērit	cēpērint	captus erit	capti ērunt

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

2. Pers., cāpē	cāpīte	cāpēre	cāpīmīni
----------------	--------	--------	----------

Conjugate like capio the following verbs :—

fūgio,	fūgēre,	fūgi,	fūgītum, <i>flee.</i>
fācio,	facēre,	fēcī,	factum, <i>do.</i>
iācio,	iācēre,	iēcī,	iactum, <i>throw.</i>
rāpio,	rāpēre,	rāpūi,	raptum, <i>seize.</i>

2. Many verbs that are intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, especially verbs of *emotion*, *taste* or *smell*: as, *Sequāni Ariovisti crudelitatem horrēbant*, *the Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus*; *haec oratio antiquitatem olet*, *this speech smacks of antiquity*; *piscis mare sapit*, *the fish tastes of the sea*.

3. An adjective or a verb may take an accusative to define its meaning: as, *Puer caput vulneratur*, *the boy is wounded in the head*; *imperator dextram manum ictus est*, *the general was struck on the right hand*. Here *caput* and *manum* define the

meaning of the verbs *vulneratur* and *ictus est*. Such accusatives are called *accusatives of specification* or *closer definition*.

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *locus superior, dies clarus, duo consules, magnae copiae; Cicero, orator clarissimus.*

Translate into English :—

1. *Cives mali honores semper desperabunt.* 2. *Matronae annum, ut parentem, Brutum lugēbunt.* 3. *Omnes boni cives mortem Ciceronis maerēbant.* 4. *Salūtem reipublicae consul in bello Karthaginiensi desperavit.* 5. *Nonne pueri patris mortem dolēbunt?* 6. *Miles dextrum humerum telo vulneratus est.* 7. *Puer patri vultum simillimus est.* 8. *Unus e militibus ab hoste femur vulneratur.* 9. *Puer dextram manum lapide ictus est.* 10. *Agamemnon, dux Graecorum, tempore belli Troiani vixit.* 11. *Cicero a senatu populi Romani pater patriae appellatus est.* 12. *Ciceronem unā voce universus populus consulem declaravit.* 13. *Nonne hostes, virtute freti, copias Rhenum transducent?* 14. *Maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum transducitur.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. Will he not despair of the safety of the state? 2. Did not all the citizens mourn over the death of the noble consul? 3. The man smiled-at the losses of his friend, but mourned over his own. 4. One of the soldiers of the seventh legion was wounded in the arm by a javelin. 5. Did not the soldier wound the boy in the right knee? 6. We all shudder at the cruelty of the Roman commander. 7. He will be called the father of his country by all good men. 8. Was not the man very like his father in countenance? 9. The hill was held for many hours by the soldiers. 10. Caesar took within fifteen months many thousands of the enemy. 11. Did not all the citizens mourn over the sad death of Cicero? 12. He was elected consul by the votes of the whole people. 13. Was not the brave soldier wounded severely in the head by the dart of the enemy? 14. Were you throwing a spear?

## LESSON XLIX.

## THE PARTICIPLE.

1. The Latin participle has partly the nature of a verb, and partly that of an adjective. Hence the name (from *pars* and *capio*).

Like a verb, it has voice, tense, and number, and governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived; like the adjective, it has declension and gender, and agrees with nouns.

2. Transitive verbs have, in the active, a present and a future participle; and in the passive, a perfect and a future participle.

3. The present participle active always ends in the nominative in *-ns*, and is declined like *oriens* (p. 53); the future participle active ends in *-tūrus*, and is declined like *bonus* (p. 20).

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT.

## FUTURE.

1. Conj., <i>āma-ns</i> , <i>loving</i> .	<i>āmā-tūrus</i> , <i>about to love</i> .
2. “ <i>mōne-ns</i> , <i>advising</i> .	<i>mōnī-tūrus</i> , <i>about to advise</i> .
3. “ <i>rēge-ns</i> , <i>ruling</i> .	<i>rec-tūrus</i> , <i>about to rule</i> .
4. “ <i>audīe-ns</i> , <i>hearing</i> .	<i>audī-tūrus</i> , <i>about to hear</i> .

4. The present participle expresses an act that takes place simultaneously with that of the main verb: as, *Caesar, ex urbe decēdens, legionem conscribit*, *Caesar, while leaving the city, enrolls a legion*. (Here *decēdens* is nom. sing. masc., agreeing with *Caesar*.)

5. The present participle is often used with the *case absolute* which in Latin is the *ablative*, and not, as in English, the nominative: as, *Coniuratio facta est, Tarquinio regnante*, *the conspiracy was formed in the reign of Tarquin (i.e., Tarquin reigning)*.

Note.—The future participle active often expresses *intention*: as, *Urbem capturi sumus*, *we are about to take the city (= we intend)*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. *Hostes, e loco superiore in nostros milites venientes, tela iaciunt*  
 2. *Patrem canentem audivi*. 3. *Vir suae civitatis imperium ob-*



tenturus erat. 4. Milites pugnaturi clamorem faciunt. 5. Magnam multitudinem hostium fugientium nostri interfecerunt. 6. Milites, victoriam desperantes, in castris manebant. 7. Princeps pacem a Caesare flens petebat. 8. Pater filium suum decedens monuit. 9. Hostes in castra fugientes interfecimus. 10. Puerum audituri sumus. 11. Oppidum in deditionem imperator accepturus est. 12. Bellum contra Gallos gesturi eramus. 13. Legiones in oppidum reducturi sunt Romani.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Caesar intends to carry-on war against the Gauls in spring.
2. All weeping begged peace of Caesar.
3. The Romans made an attack on the flying enemy.
4. Caesar attacked the enemy while fortifying (*part.*) their camp.
5. He praised the soldiers while bravely resisting the attack of the enemy.
6. Our men intend to make a march through the territories of the enemy.
7. Ariovistus, despairing of victory, sent messengers to Caesar.
8. Our men found many thousands of the enemy devastating the fields of the allies.
9. He intends to advise the commander.
10. They fought with the enemy while they were attacking (*part.*) our camp.
11. Many of the enemy were killed fighting.
12. They sought pardon from Caesar as he was coming (*part.*) to the camp.
13. We did not see the man coming to town.

## LESSON L.

### PARTICIPLES PASSIVE.

#### Substitutes for Perf. Part. Act.

1. There are two participles in Latin in the passive voice, the perfect ending in *-tus*, and the future in *-ndus*. Both are declined like *bonus*.

#### PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

Present stem	{	1. Conj., <i>amā-tus</i> , <i>having been loved</i> .
and <i>-tus</i> .		2. “ <i>mōnī-tus</i> , <i>having been advised</i> (-ē of stem changed to -ī).
(In 3rd conj., verb stem	}	3. “ <i>rec-tus</i> , <i>having been ruled</i> (=reg-tus).
+tus.)		4. “ <i>audī-tus</i> , <i>having been heard</i> .

## FUTURE PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

Present stem and -ndus.	}	1. Conj., ama-ndus, about to be loved.
		2. “ mone-ndus, about to be advised.
		3. “ rege-ndus, about to be ruled.
		4. “ audie-ndus, about to be heard (i changed to -ie in stem).

2. The perfect participle passive expresses an act completed before that of the verb to which it is joined: as, **Homo, ab amico monitus, coniurationem fecit**, *the man, advised by his friend, formed a conspiracy*. (Here the “advising” must precede the “forming of the conspiracy.”)

This participle is often used with an *ablative absolute*: as, **Opère perfecto, suos reduxit**, *the work finished, he led back his men*. But the ablative absolute should not be translated literally. Thus: **opere perfecto** is *on (or after) finishing the work, or when he had finished the work*.

3. Latin has no perfect participle active. Its place is supplied by (1) the ablative absolute with the perfect participle passive: as, **Urbe captā, copias reduxit**, *having taken the city, he led back his forces* (i.e., *the city having been taken*); (2) **postquam** with the perf. indic.: as, **Postquam urbem cēpit, copias reduxit** *after he took the city, he led back his forces*<sup>1</sup>.

Note.—Two nouns, or an adjective and a noun, in the ablative absolute are used (as **sum**, *I am*, has no present participle) without a copula: as, **Tullo rege**, *when Tullus was king*; **Caesāre consūle**, *in the consulship of Caesar*; **caelo serēno navigāmus**, *we sail when the sky is clear (=the sky being clear)*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. **Dāto signo, nostri milites impētum in hostes fēcērunt**. 2. **Omnibus captivis tradītis, in fines hostium postero die pervēnit**.

<sup>1</sup> **Quum**, *when*, with the past subjunctive—a very common substitute for the perf. part. act.—will be mentioned later on. Thus: *Having taken the city, he led back his forces* = **Quum urbem cēpisset, copias reduxit**.

3. Re frumentariā<sup>1</sup> comparatā, castra movet et diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervēnit. 4. Solis occasu suas copias, multis acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. 5. Castris munitis, duas ibi legiones reliquit. 6. Responsis ad Caesarem portatis, iterum legatos cum mandatis mittit. 7. Oratione habitā, princeps concilium dimittit. 8. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fuis, imperator oppidum in deditionem accepit. 9. Milites, agris hostium vastatis, in fines Trēvīrorum perveniunt. 10. Interim nostri milites impetum amplius<sup>2</sup> horas quattuor, paucis vulneribus acceptis, sustinuerunt. 11. Bellum, Caesāre imperatore, contra Gallos decem annos gerebātur. 12. Cives cum hostibus urbem oppugnantibus acriter dimicabunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The soldiers, having hurled their darts, broke through the line of the enemy. 2. When the news (*res*) was reported, Caesar set out into hither Gaul with five legions. 3. After all Gaul had been subdued (*abl. abs.*), Caesar hastened to Rome at the beginning of winter. 4. Having been elected consul, he left the city. 5. The soldiers fled into the thick woods, because their leader was killed (*abl. abs.*). 6. The soldiers of the enemy broke through our line after hurling their spears. 7. I saw the boy standing near the temple of Jupiter. 8. After the speech was delivered, the consul left the city. 9. Caesar, having lost his father, was taught all the arts of the Romans by his mother. 10. In the consulship of Marius, the Romans defeated Jugurtha, king of Numidia. 11. The boy was advised by his father, a most excellent man. 12. Will he not be called king by the Senate? 13. The boy was wounded in the head by a dart of the enemy.

---

<sup>1</sup>Res frumentaria, *supply of corn*; ablative absolute. <sup>2</sup>*More than*; it has no effect on the syntax.

## LESSON LI.

## PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The pronoun of the first person, *ĕgo, I*, is inflected as follows :—

*Ego, I.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM.	<i>ĕgo, I.</i>	<i>nōs, we.</i>
GEN.	<i>mĕi, of me.</i>	<i>nōstrum or nōstri, of us.</i>
DAT.	<i>mihī, to or for me.</i>	<i>nōbis, to or for us.</i>
ACC.	<i>mĕ, me.</i>	<i>nōs, us.</i>
VOC.	Wanting.	Wanting.
ABL.	<i>mĕ, with, from, or by me.</i>	<i>nōbis, with, from, or by us.</i>

2. The pronoun of the second person, *tū, thou*, is inflected as follows :—

*Tū, thou, you (sing.)*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
NOM.	<i>tū, thou, you.</i>	<i>vōs, you or ye.</i>
GEN.	<i>tūi of thee or you.</i>	<i>vestrum or vestri, of you.</i>
DAT.	<i>tīhī, to or for thee or you</i>	<i>vōbis, to or for you.</i>
ACC.	<i>tĕ, thee, you.</i>	<i>vōs, you.</i>
VOC.	<i>tū, thou.</i>	<i>vōs, you.</i>
ABL.	<i>tĕ, with, from, by thee or you.</i>	<i>vōbis, with, by or from you.</i>

Note.—The genitives *nostrum* and *vestrum* are always used partitively. (p. 69, 10) : as, *Unus nostrum, one of us*. Otherwise *nostri* and *vestri* are used : as, *Mĕmor nostri, mindful of us*.

3. The pronouns of the first and second persons are rarely expressed, except for emphasis or contrast : as, *Ego laudo sed tu vitupĕras, I praise, but you blame* (or, if the emphasis is to be brought out distinctly, *It is I that praise, but you that blame.*)

4. The personal pronouns of the third person are wanting, but are supplied by the demonstratives *hic, ille, is, this, that* (p. 117).

5. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of a verb : as, *Tĕ laudas, you praise yourself*. (Here *tĕ* is a reflexive, referring to the subject of *laudas*.) The first and second personal

pronouns are used as reflexives of the first and second persons : as, *Ego me laudo, I praise myself*; *nos nos laudāmus, we praise ourselves*; *tu te laudas, you praise yourself*; *vos vos laudatis, you praise yourselves*.

6. The reflexive pronoun of the third person is as follows :—

Sui. of himself.

NOM. Wanting.

GEN. sūi, of himself, (*herself, itself, themselves*).

DAT. sibi, to himself, (*herself, itself, themselves*).

ACC. sé, himself, (*herself, itself, themselves*).

VOC. ———

ABL. sē, with, from, by himself (*herself, itself, themselves*).

Note.—Sese is often used for se in the accusative.

7. The forms of sui refer to the subject of the verb : as, *Caesar se laudat, Caesar praises himself*; *milites se laudant, the soldiers praise themselves*.

8. The preposition cum, with, when used with the ablative of a personal or reflexive pronoun, is written as a suffix : as, *Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, with me, you, etc.*

#### VERBS GOVERNING A DATIVE

9. The dative is used in Latin with many verbs that in English govern the accusative. This is usual with verbs meaning *to please, favor, trust, assist* and their contraries ; also, *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, spare, pardon, be angry* : as, *Res omnibus hominibus placuit, the thing pleased all men*; *Fortūna fortibus favet, Fortune favors the brave*; *legibus pāruit consul, as consul he obeyed the laws*.

Note.—The following, however, govern the accusative :—

*Iuvo, adiuvo, I aid*; *delecto, I delight*; *laedo, offendo, I harm* ; *iubeo, I order* ; *vēto, prohibeo, I forbid* ; *rego, guberno, I rule, I direct* : as, *Libris me delecto, I delight myself with books*; *multa oculos laedunt, many things hurt the eyes*.

*Fido* and *confido, I trust*, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the thing : as, *Non tibi, sed exercitu meo confido, not you, but my army I trust*.

10. Verbs compounded with *bene*, *male*, *satis* govern the dative : as, *Optimo viro maledixit*, *he reviled a most excellent man*; *mihi nunquam satisfēcit*, *he never satisfied me*.

11. Latin puts a pronoun of the first person before one of the second, and one of the second before one of the third. A verb, therefore, referring to several subjects will be plural and agree with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third : as, *Ego et tu valēmus*, *you and I are well* (note the order of the Latin); *tu et Tullia valētis*, *Tullia and you are well*.

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *exercitus meus*, *magnum praemium*, *omnis vicus*, *hostis noster*, *duae legiones*.

Translate into English :—

1. Interdum fortuna nobis favet, saepe nostris consiliis obstat.  
 2. Urbe expugnatā, milites hostium ne nobis quidem<sup>1</sup> parcent. 3. Omnes civitates nobis obsides dēdērunt. 4. Pater meus tibi abhinc multos annos legionem donavit. 5. Nonne vestri amici tecum Romae manēbunt? 6. Caesar paucos dies in hostium finibus mansit; omnibusque vicis incensis, se in castra sua recepit. 7. Nonne puer patris sui mandato parebit? 8. Num homo mihi maledixit? 9. Caesar multos annos legionibus Romanis in Gallia imperavit. 10. Nos omnes Ciceronis orationes laudavimus. 11. Tibi omnibusque malis hominibus diffido. 12. Oppido expugnato, imperator suas legiones in castra reduxit. 13. Ego et pater meus tuis consiliis paruimus.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Marcus and I stayed at Rome for three years. 2. We shall all remain in the city for one year. 3. My friend easily persuaded me. 4. The scout announced to us the arrival of Caesar. 5. After the town was taken<sup>2</sup> by our men, we seized all the baggage of the enemy. 6. He sent the scout with us into Gaul. 7. He envied his brother, and did not obey the commands of the Roman people. 8. Shall we resist the legions of the Romans? 9. We resisted the

<sup>1</sup> Ne-quidem, *not even* (with the emphatic word intervening). <sup>2</sup> Ablative absolute.

forces of the enemy for three months. 10. Wisdom will not always help you. 11. Caesar led his forces from the camp. 12. You and I will stay in the country in summer. 13. Will not the good citizen obey the laws of his country?

## LESSON LII.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. *Sum, I am*, has three infinitive forms, viz., the present infin., *esse, to be*; the perfect infin., *fūi-sse, to have been*; and the future infin., *fūtūrus esse, to be about to be* (*fū-tūrus=fut. part*).

2. Transitive verbs usually have three infinitive forms in the active in Latin and three in the passive : viz., the present, perfect, and future infinitive.

## ACTIVE INFINITIVES.

In the active voice the infinitive is thus formed :—

Pres. infin. = pres. stem + -re.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ \u0107m\u00e1-re, to love.} \\ 2. \text{ m\u00f3n\u00e9-re, to advise.} \\ 3. \text{ r\u00e9g\u00e9-re, to rule.} \\ 4. \text{ aud\u00ed-re, to hear.} \end{array} \right.$
Perf. infin. = perf. stem + -sse.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ \u0107m\u00e1vi-sse, to have loved.} \\ 2. \text{ m\u00f3nui-sse, to have advised.} \\ 3. \text{ rexi-sse, to have ruled.} \\ 4. \text{ aud\u00edvi sse, to have heard.} \end{array} \right.$
Future infin. = future part. act. + esse, to be.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{\u0107m\u00e1t\u00fcrus esse, to be about to love.} \\ \text{m\u00f3n\u00edtt\u00fcrus esse, to be about to advise.} \\ \text{rect\u00fcrus esse, to be about to rule.} \\ \text{aud\u00edtt\u00fcrus esse, to be about to hear.} \end{array} \right.$

3. In the passive voice the infinitives are thus formed :—

## PASSIVE INFINITIVES.

Present infinitive = present stem + ri (except in third conj. which adds -i to verb stem).	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ \u0107m\u00e1-r\u00ed, to be loved.} \\ 2. \text{ m\u00f3n\u00e9-r\u00ed, to be advised.} \\ 3. \text{ r\u00e9g-i, to be ruled.} \\ 4. \text{ aud\u00ed-r\u00ed, to be heard.} \end{array} \right.$
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Perf. infin. = perf. part. pass. + esse, to be.	{	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>āmātus esse, to have been loved.</i></li> <li>2. <i>mōnītus esse, to have been advised.</i></li> <li>3. <i>rectus esse, to have been ruled.</i></li> <li>4. <i>audītus esse, to have been heard.</i></li> </ol>
Future infin. = supine + īri (pres. infin. passive of eo, I go).	{	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>āmātum īri, to be about to be loved.</i></li> <li>2. <i>mōnītum īri, to be about to be advised.</i></li> <li>3. <i>rectum īri, to be about to be ruled.</i></li> <li>4. <i>audītum īri, to be about to be heard.</i></li> </ol>

4. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as a noun in the neuter singular, and may be the subject or object of another verb : as, *Laudari ab aliis gratum est, to be praised by others is a pleasant thing.* (Here *laudari* is used as an indeclinable neuter noun, subject of *est*; and *gratum* agrees with it)

Note.—In this way *abstract* nouns in English are often rendered into Latin : as, *fallere est semper turpe, deceit (i.e., to deceive) is always base*; *parentes amare est laudabile, filial affection is praiseworthy.*

5. Many verbs take an infinitive to complete their meaning : as, *Bellum gerere parat, he is preparing to carry on war*; *omnes discedere iubet, he orders all to depart.*

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Caesar milites suos castra vallo fossaque munire iussit. 2. Imperator cum suis militibus in provinciam pervenire contendit. 3. Iter per provinciam facere parat. 4. Constituērunt iumentorum quam maximum numerum comparare. 5. Caesar omnes equites ad castra primā luce venire iubēbit. 6. Docere est discere. 7. Nos contra Gallos bellum gerere non dubitamus. 8. Te domum venire veto. 9. Humanum est errare. 10. Nonne tu rus cum tuo fratre venire constituisti? 11. Num vera discere cupivistis? 12. Bellum contra Romanos gerere est semper periculosum. 13. *Cantūs* avium audire nos saepe delectat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Order the soldier to come home. 2. The Romans are preparing to carry on war against the Gauls. 3. To hesitate in battle is to be defeated. 4. It is better to give than to receive. 5. We



desire to reach the top of the hill before daybreak. 6. Writing (*inf.*) letters to friends is a pleasant thing. 7. The senate forbade the soldiers to wage war beyond the province. 8. Why do you hesitate to read the book? 9. Teach me to seek wisdom. 10. It is often safer to run away than to fight. 11. It is pleasant to walk in the fields in spring. 12. We did not order the soldiers to obey the general.

---

## LESSON LIII.

### ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

1. The infinitive is often used with an accusative for a subject where English has a noun-clause introduced by *that*. This is the regular construction after verbs of *knowing, thinking, saying,* and the like, and with such expressions as *it is manifest, it is certain, it is true*: as, *Sentimus ignem calere, we know that fire is hot* (literally = *we know fire to be hot*); *hostes adesse dicit, he says that the enemy are near* (literally = *he says the enemy to be near*); *fratrem tuum esse fortem intellego, I understand that your brother is brave*; *certum est liberos a parentibus amari, it is certain that children are loved by their parents*; *manifestum est albam esse nivem, it is evident that snow is white*. This construction is called the *accusative with infinitive*, and is one of the commonest in Latin.

2. The *tense* of the infinitive after a verb of *saying* or *thinking* in past time, is often a difficulty. Thus: *He said that the boy was at Rome* is, *Puerum Romae fuisse dixit*, if the exact words of the speaker were, *the boy was at Rome*. But if the speaker's words were, *the boy is at Rome*, then, *he said that the boy was at Rome* is, *Puerum Romae esse dixit*. The tense used by the speaker is the tense required for the infinitive.

3. The participles used in the future inf. act. and the perfect inf. pass. must agree in gender, number and case with the noun to which they refer: as, *Dixit se ab omnibus amatum esse, he said that he had been loved by all*; *audio copias a Caesare eductas esse, I hear that the forces have been led out by Caesar*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English

1. Dixit se omnia pro patria fecisse.
2. Exploratores nuntiavērunt oppidum ab Romanis captum esse.
3. Caesar pontem rescindi iubet.
4. Nuntiabit Romanos a Gallis superatos esse.
5. Negat Caesarem oppidum cepisse.
6. Legatus dicit consulem castra servavisse.
7. Puto copias hostium ignavas esse.
8. Putavistine consules fuisse iniustos?
9. Custodes nuntiavērunt hostes arcem occupavisse.
10. Nonne tibi dixērunt se copias Rhenum transduxisse?
11. Num omnes tuos milites bellum gerere iussisti?
12. Exploratoresne nuntiant hostes nostris legatis pāruisse?
13. Nonne consul tibi dixit se milites suos monuisse?

Translate into Latin :—

1. The soldier says that the enemy are approaching.
2. He said that the enemy were approaching.
3. The men said that the town would be taken.
4. They said that the town had been taken.
5. He says that he has received a letter from his brother.
6. Cicero said that he had saved his native land.
7. He said that he was saving his native land.
8. They reported that the enemy were taking the town.
9. The poet says that wisdom is better than gold.
10. He said that he had always been a friend.
11. He said that the teacher praised the boy.
12. The man thought that the hills were high.
13. The king said that his soldiers were brave.
14. He thought that you were coming.

## LESSON LIV.

## INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF HOPING.

1. Verbs signifying *to hope, promise, undertake or swear*, take in Latin the future infinitive and the accusative of the pronoun : as, *Sperat se Romam venturum esse, he hopes to come to Rome* (literally = *he hopes that he will come to Rome*); *promitto me libros ad te missurum esse, I promise to send books to you*; *suscipis te bella gesturum esse, you undertake to carry on wars*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Imperator promittit se pacem nobiscum facturum esse. 2. Omnes milites sperant se paucis diebus oppidum capturos esse. 3. Caesar dixit se viros in deditionem recepturum esse. 4. Promittunt se neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos esse. 5. Caesar Helvetios temperaturos esse ab iniuria non aestimabat. 6. Consul putavit se ab omnibus bonis civibus amatum iri. 7. Nuntiatum est oppidum captum iri. 8. Existimavērunt iter Helvetiorum magno cum periculo provinciae futurum esse. 9. Caesar respondit se civitatem conservaturum esse. 10. Obsidibus acceptis, Caesar dixit se liberis mulieribusque parciturum esse. 11. Speramus milites consulis Genevam occupaturos esse. 12. Sperasne te hodie in oppidum perventurum esse? 13. Dixit iter longum futurum esse.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The Romans will demand hostages. 2. He said that the Romans would demand hostages. 3. The town will be taken by our soldiers. 4. He announced that the town would be taken by our soldiers. 5. They will remain two years at Rome. 6. They answered that they would remain two years at Rome. 7. The enemy pitched their camp at (*ad+acc.*) the foot of the hill. 8. The scouts brought word that the enemy would pitch their camp at the foot of the hill. 9. He undertook to come to the town. 10. He hopes that his friend will come to you. 11. Caesar will arrive on the fifth day. 12. He says that Caesar will arrive on the fifth day. 13. He said that the temple would be built in a few days.

## LESSON LV.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.—(*Continued*).

The following are additional examples of the *Accusative with Infinitive* :—*Dicit virum scribere*, he says that the man is writing (=the man to be writing); *dicit virum scripsisse*, he says that the man was writing, wrote, or has written; *dicit virum scripturum esse*, he says that the man will write. But : *Dixit virum scribere*,

*he said that the man was writing* (exact words of speaker : *Vir scribit*); *dixit virum scripsisse*, *he said that the man was writing, wrote, or had written*, (according as the exact words of the speaker were : *Vir scribebat*, *vir scripsit*, or *vir scripserat*); *dixit virum scripturum esse*, *he said that the man would write* (exact words of speaker : *Vir scribet*, *the man will write*).

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Itaque ex legionibus fabros arcessiri iubet. 2. In insulis scripserunt dies brevissimos esse. 3. Interfectos esse legatos magnamque partem exercitus in proelio cecidisse nuntiavit. 4. Omnibus rebus constitutis, Caesar ad portum cum duabus legionibus pervenit. 5. Fallere alios est semper turpe. 6. Manifestum est hostes agmen mediâ nocte esse transducturos. 7. Milites legionis septimae locum cepērunt hostesque, paucis vulneribus acceptis, ex silvis expulerunt. 8. Iubet legionem mediâ nocte castra vallo fossaque munire. 9. Caesar, acceptis litteris, horâ circiter undecimâ diei statim nuntium ad hostes mittit. 10. Exploratores omnes exercitum magnum hostium in unum locum cogi nuntiaverunt. 11. Legati Aeduos omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnes equites amisisse dixerunt. 12. Gallos a populo Romano paucis annis victos esse Caesar dicit. 13. Ad Galliam magnis itineribus contendere paravit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They said that the Romans had led their forces across the river at daybreak. 2. I hear that your friend has been sick for many days. 3. I thought that the man was coming to Rome. 4. We know that the country is cold in winter and hot in summer. 5. At Rome the days are shorter in summer than they are in Britain. 6. The bravest of the Roman soldiers were slain in the battle by the cavalry of the Germans. 7. It was evident to all that our men were braver than the enemy in battle. 8. We believe that the soul of man is immortal. 9. When Caesar was consul (*abl. abs.*), the army was led against the Gauls. 10. They relate that Rome was founded by Romulus many years ago. 11. After Cicero was expelled from Rome (*part.*), he sailed to Greece. 12. To lie is base ; to speak the truth is always praiseworthy.

## LESSON LVI.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Many verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. These are called *deponent verbs* (*verba deponentia*), because they lay aside (*depōnere*) their active form and their passive meaning: as, *Mīror, I admire.*

2. Deponents occur in all four conjugations. In the first, second and fourth conjugations they have the characteristic vowel of their conjugation before the pres. infinitive pass. ending *-ri*. In the third conjugation this infinitive is formed by adding *-i* to the verb stem: as,

1st Conj.,	<i>mīrā-rī, to admire,</i>	—conjugated like	<i>ama-ri.</i>
2nd “	<i>vērē-ri, to fear,</i>	“ “	<i>mone-ri.</i>
3rd “	<i>sēqu-ī, to follow,</i>	“ “	<i>reg-i.</i>
4th “	<i>blandī-rī, to flatter,</i>	“ “	<i>audīri.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT

*Singular.*

1. Pers.,	<i>mīror</i>	<i>vērēor</i>	<i>sēquor</i>	<i>blandīor</i>
2. “	<i>mīrāris or mīrāre</i>	<i>vērēris or vērēre</i>	<i>sēquēris or sēquere</i>	<i>blandīris or blandire</i>
3. “	<i>mīrātur</i>	<i>vērētur</i>	<i>sēquītur</i>	<i>blandītur</i>

*Plural.*

1. Pers.,	<i>mīrāmur</i>	<i>vērēmur</i>	<i>sēquīmur</i>	<i>blandīmur</i>
2. “	<i>mīrāmīnī</i>	<i>vērēmīnī</i>	<i>sēquīmīnī</i>	<i>blandīmīnī</i>
3. “	<i>mīrantur</i>	<i>vērentur</i>	<i>sēquantur</i>	<i>blandīuntur</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*

1. Pers.,	<i>mīrābar</i>	<i>vērēbar</i>	<i>sēquēbar</i>	<i>blandīēbar</i>
2. “	<i>mīrābāris or mīrābāre</i>	<i>vērēbāris or vērēbāre</i>	<i>sēquēbāris or sēquēbāre</i>	<i>blandīēbāris or blandīēbāre</i>
3. “	<i>mīrābātur</i>	<i>vērēbātur</i>	<i>sēquēbātur</i>	<i>blandīēbātur</i>

*Plural.*

1. Pers.,	<i>mīrābāmur</i>	<i>vērēbāmur</i>	<i>sēquēbāmur</i>	<i>blandīēbāmur</i>
2. “	<i>mīrābāmīnī</i>	<i>vērēbāmīnī</i>	<i>sēquēbāmīnī</i>	<i>blandīēbāmīnī</i>
3. “	<i>mīrābantur</i>	<i>vērēbantur</i>	<i>sēquēbantur</i>	<i>blandīēbantur</i>

## FUTURE.

*Singular.*

1. Pers.,	mirābor	vērēbor	sēquar	blandīar
2. “	mirābēris or mirābēre	vērēbēris or vērēbēre	sēquēris or sēquere	blandīēris or blandiēre
3. “	mirābitur	vērēbitur	sēquētur	blandiētur

*Plural.*

1. Pers.,	mirābīmur	vērēbīmur	sēquēmur	blandiēmur
2. “	mirābīmīnī	vērēbīmīnī	sēquēmīnī	blandiēmīnī
3. “	mirābuntur	vērēbuntur	sēquentur	blandientur

## PERFECT.

*Singular.*

1. Pers.,	mirātus sum	vērītus sum	sēcūtus sum	blandītus sum
2. “	mirātus es	vērītus es	sēcūtus es	blandītus es
3. “	mirātus est	vērītus est	sēcūtus est	blandītus est

*Plural.*

1. Pers.,	mirātī sūmus	vērītī sūmus	sēcūtī sūmus	blandītī sūmus
2. “	mirātī estis	vērītī estis	sēcūtī estis	blandītī estis
3. “	mirātī sunt	vērītī sunt	sēcūtī sunt	blandītī sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

1. Pers.,	mirātus eram	vērītus eram	sēcūtus eram	blandītus eram
2. “	mirātus erās	vērītus erās	sēcūtus erās	blandītus erās
3. “	mirātus erat	vērītus erat	sēcūtus erat	blandītus erat

*Plural.*

1. Pers.,	mirātī ērāmus	vērītī ērāmus	sēcūtī ērāmus	blandītī ērāmus
2. “	mirātī erātis	vērītī erātis	sēcūtī erātis	blandītī erātis
3. “	mirātī erant	vērītī erant	sēcūtī erant	blandītī erant

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

*Singular.*

1. Pers.,	mirātus ero	vērītus ero	sēcūtus ero	blandītus ero
2. “	mirātus eris	vērītus eris	sēcūtus eris	blandītus eris
3. “	mirātus erit	vērītús erit	sēcūtus erit	blandītus erit

*Plural.*

1. Pers.,	mīrātī	vērītī	ērīmus	sēcūtī	ērīmus	blanditī
	ērīmus					ērīmus
2. "	mīrātī	ērītis	vērītī	ērītis	sēcūtī	ērītis
3. "	mīrātī	ērunt	vērītī	ērunt	sēcūtī	ērunt

## IMPERATIVE-PRESENT.

*Singular.*

mīrāre	vērēre	sēquere	blandire.
--------	--------	---------	-----------

*Plural.*

mīrāmīnī	vērēmīnī	sēquīmīnī	blandīmīnī
----------	----------	-----------	------------

## PARTICIPLES.

Present,	mīrans, <i>admiring</i>	vērens	sēquens	blandiēns
Perfect,	mīrātus, <i>having admired.</i>	vērītus	{ sēcūtus or sēcūtus	blanditus
Future,	{ mīratūrus, <i>about to admire.</i>	vērītūrus	sēcūtūrus	blanditūrus
	{ mīrandus, <i>about to be admired.</i>	vērendus	sēquendus	blandiendus

Note.—Deponents have a perf. part. act., but with a passive form : as, *Caesar locūtus tēcūt, Caesar having spoken was silent.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *flos recens, prima lux, vox magna, oppidum vetus, puer memor.*

Translate into English :—

1. Puella flores in silva mirata est. 2. Caesar cum omnibus copiis prima luce profectus est. 3. Milites legionis hortatus, aciem instruxit. 4. Polliciti sunt se obsides duros esse. 5. Non conamur in fines hostium ingredi. 6. Angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur. 7. Vestigia ursi ad cavum sequentur. 8. Puer, viam virtutis arduam sequere. 9. Voce magnā auditā, pueri veriti sunt. 10. Imperator dixit se vespere profecturum esse. 11. In fines suos Helvetios venire patiuntur. 12. Arbitrati sunt se ad profectionem paratos esse. 13. Manifestum est hostes e castris profectos esse. 14. Omnes pollicentur se ad oppidum cum impedi-  
mentis esse venturos.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The enemy will attempt to make a march through our province. 2. Do not attempt to set out from Italy, but hasten with all your forces to Rome. 3. They thought that they were ready for all dangers. 4. Caesar will not suffer the Aedui to come into the province. 5. Caesar, with two legions, set out from Rome. 6. They promised to give hostages to our commander. 7. They tried to take the town. 8. He said that he would follow the leader of the legion. 9. They thought that the boy had followed the tracks of the bear. 10. Having promised to give hostages, the ambassador set out for home. 11. All set out from home with their baggage. 12. They attempted to take the city of Rome. 13. It was evident that they had left for Gaul.

## LESSON LVII.

### DEPONENT VERBS.—(Continued.)

The deponents *ūtor* (*use*), *fruor* (*enjoy*), *fungor* (*discharge*), *pōtior* (*obtain*), *vescor* (*eat*), govern the ablative: *as, Plurimis rebus fruimur et utimur, we enjoy and use very many things; magnā praedā est potitus, he obtained a large booty; lacte et carne vescebantur, they lived on milk and flesh.*

### EXERCISE.

Decline together: *imperator noster, homo sapiens, signum datum, primum agmen, via ardua, omnis pars, dextra manus.*

Translate into English :—

1. Omnes virtutem imperatoris nostri in proelio mirari adivimus. 2. Homo sapiens ratione optime utitur. 3. Puer, occasione tua melius utere. 4. Britannii lacte et carne vescuntur pellibusque vestiuntur. 5. Hostium impedimentis castrisque potiēmur. 6. Nonne navibus, nautae, utimini? 7. Dicit Germanos equis non usos esse. 8. Caesar, cognito consilio hostium, ad flumen Tamēsim profectus est. 9. Imperator cum unā legione oppido potiri conatus est. 10. Dux nuntiat duas legiones ab oppido profectas esse. 11. Nonne hostes sequēmur et oppido potiemur?



12. Ex omnibus partibus hostes nostros milites aggressi sunt. 13. Platōnem, virum sapientem, philosophiam Athenis docuisse audivimus. 14. Nonne puerum dextram manum lapide vulneratum esse dixerunt? 15. Romae natus est sed mortuus est Athenis.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Our men obtain possession of (*potior*) the enemy's camp during the night. 2. They said that the Gauls set out from their camp at daybreak. 3. It is very easy to obtain possession of the sovereignty of Gaul. 4. The boy followed the tracks of the bear to the foot of the tree. 5. Did you not employ guides for (*gen.*) the route? 6. The boy did not employ his time well. 7. After the death of his father, the man went to Athens. 8. When the city was taken, the wives and children of the conquered were all killed. 9. We shall follow our leader to the top of the hill. 10. We hope that the general will gain possession of the camp of the enemy. 11. He says that the Britons live on milk and flesh. 12. They hoped to gain possession of the town by treachery. 13. When his forces were drawn up (*abl. abs.*), he attacked the enemy vigorously.

---

## LESSON LVIII.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Besides *is, ěa, ĩd* (*this, that*) which will be given in Lesson LX., there are in Latin three demonstrative pronouns : *Hic, this near me; iste, that near you; ille, that near him* (her or it.) They are declined as follows :—

*Hic, this, i.e., this one near me* (the speaker.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>hĭc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hĕc</i>	<i>hĭ</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
GEN.	<i>hũius</i>	<i>hũius</i>	<i>hũius</i>	<i>hĕrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hĕrum</i>
DAT.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
ACC.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hĕc</i>	<i>hĕs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
ABL.	<i>hĕc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hĕc</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>

Istō, *that near you* (the person spoken to.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	istō	istā	istud	istī	istae	istā
GEN.	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istis	istis	istis
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	istā
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istis	istis	istis

Illō, *that near him* (*her, it—the person or thing spoken of*).

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	illō	illā	illud	illī	illae	illā
GEN.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illā
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

2. **Hic** is the demonstrative of the 1st person. It refers to the person or thing near me (the speaker): as, *Hic liber, this book*. So too, *Haec patria, this land of ours*; *haec vita, this present life*; *his sex diebus, within the last six days*.

3. **Iste** is the demonstrative of the 2nd person. It refers to the person addressed: as, *Iste liber, that book near you*; *ista opinio, that opinion you hold*; *iste amicus, that friend of yours*. It often has the idea of contempt.

4. **Ille**, *that yonder*, is the demonstrative of the 3rd person. It refers to a person or thing other than those present. It may express therefore:—

(a) The remote in time, as opposed to the present (which is expressed by *hic*): as, *Illa antiquitas, that far-off past*; *illis diebus, in those bygone days*.

(b) *That well known, the celebrated*: as, *Illa Medēa, the far-famed Medēa*; *ille Caesar, the renowned Caesar*

(c) An emphatic *he, she, or it*: as, *Illos neglōgis, those (whom all men know) you disregard*.

5. *Hic* and *ille* are often contrasted. They may be used :—

(a) Of two persons already mentioned. In this case *hic* relates to the nearer, *the latter*; *ille*, to the more remote, *the former*: as, *Romulum Numa excēpit*; *hic pace, ille bello melior fuit, after Romulus came Numa; the latter excelled in peace, the former in war.*

(b) For *the one* and *the other*: as, *Neque hoc neque illud, neither the one nor the other*; *et hic et ille, both the one and the other* (*et... et=both.... and*).

(c) For *some* and *others*: as, *Hi pacem, illi bellum cupiunt, some wish peace, others war.*

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together: *hic homo, illa mulier, iste vir, illud tempus, haec vita.*

Translate into English :—

1. *Estne hic homo amicus tuus?* 2. *Istum librum esse pulchrum dixit.* 3. *Illa antiquitas a multis laudata est.* 4. *Haec arma secum ex oppido portabunt.* 5. *Ob hanc rem Caesar Romam legatos misit.* 6. *Neque hic neque ille Romae erat.* 7. *De istis rebus ad te scribam.* 8. *Hoc proelio nuntiato, omnes legiones ad Galliam duxit.* 9. *Nonne puer nuntiavit epistolam ad patrem meum missam esse?* 10. *Cicero et Caesar viri illustres erant; hic bello melior erat, ille eloquentiā.* 11. *Nos diximus milites ad omnia haec pericula esse paratos.* 12. *Illo die hunc Athenis fuisse manifestum est.* 13. *His decem diebus ad illud oppidum pervēnimus.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. Will not that man write me a letter about those affairs of yours? 2. This man is the best of all the citizens. 3. Are those your arms? 4. They said that that book of yours was the best of all. 5. That well-known Cicero was very eloquent. 6. Did he not say that he intended to set out for Gaul within six days? 7. Those soldiers devastated the lands of the enemy. 8. On account of this defeat we were forced to give up our arms. 9. Were those books written by you? 10. Caesar told his soldiers that he would devastate the land. 11. Neither the one nor the other was at Athens in

this year. 12. I have not seen this man within the last four days. 13. Will not that woman be praised by all? 14. We all think that Caesar was greater than Pompey.

---

## LESSON LIX.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—(Continued.)

#### DATIVE WITH VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

1. Transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con* (for *cum*), *in*, *inter*, *ob*, (*on*, *against*), *post*, *prae* (*before*), *sub* (*under*), or *sūper* (*above*), often govern an accusative of the direct and a dative of the indirect object : as, *Populus Romanus bellum Gallis intūlit*, *the Roman people made war on the Gauls*.

Note.—In the passive the direct object of the active becomes the subject, while the indirect object is still retained : as, *Bellum Gallis a populo Romano illātum est*, *war was made on the Gauls by the Roman people*.

2. Intransitive verbs compounded with the above-mentioned prepositions, often govern the dative : as, *Caesar exercitui praefuit*, *Caesar commanded the army*; *consiliis consulis obstat*, *he opposes the plans of the consul*.

#### DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

3. The dative is used with the verb *sum*, *I am*, to express possession : as, *Mihi est liber*, *I have a book* (literally, *there is a book to me*.)

4. The compounds of *sum* (except *possum*, *I can*) govern the dative : as, *Tibi adsum*, *I aid you*.

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together : *hic bonus homo*, *haec pulchra dies*, *illa legio*, *ista soror*, *istud tempus*, *illud mare*, *iste vir*.

Translate into English :—

1. Ego et tuus amicus tibi in omnibus periculis adierimus.
2. Caesar Labienum hibernis praefecit.
3. Hic locus ab horto circiter passus sexcentos aberat.
4. Hi, nostros disiectos adorti, proelium renovaverunt.
5. Illi divinis rebus intersunt, sacrificia procurant, religiones interpretantur.
6. His omnibus Druidibus praeest unus qui summam habet auctoritatem.
7. Nostro adventu permoti, Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.
8. His rebus cognitis a captivis per fugisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsēqui iussit.
9. Ab his cognoscit non longe oppidum Cassivelauni abesse, silvis paludibusque munitum.
10. Legiones Latīnae longā societate militiam Romanam edoctae sunt.
11. Rebus male gestis, fortuna imperatori defuit.
12. Legati sese Caesari dedituros esse atque imperata facturos polliciti sunt.
13. Vere primo Caesari in Gallia ulteriore duae legiones erant.
14. Num verum est te primo vere Romae fuisse ?

Translate into Latin :—

1. Was not the general present at the battle on that day ?
  2. Some lack courage ; others opportunity.
  3. Fortune often opposes the designs of these men.
  4. The Romans for many years carried on war against the Karthaginians.
  5. Labienus commands the soldiers of this legion.
  6. The women and children begged the Romans for peace.
  7. In the consulship of Caesar, war was declared against the Gauls.
  8. No man will prefer disgrace to honor.
  9. In ancient times the Karthaginians had many colonies, large fleets, and great wealth.
  10. These legions were drawn up in three lines in front of the camp.
  11. They had already led their forces through the territory of the Sequāni.
  12. The celebrated (p. 118, 4) Demosthenes is considered the greatest orator among the Greeks.
  13. After subduing Greece, the celebrated Alexander defeated large forces of the Persians at the river Granīcus.
-

## LESSON LX.

## IS, IDEM, IPSE.

1. The pronoun *is*, *this, that (he, she, it)*, is declined as follows :—

*Is, that, (he, she, it).*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	is	ēā	īd	ēī or īī	ēae	ēā
GEN.	ēlus	ēlus	ēlus	ēōrum	ēārum	ēōrum
DAT.	ēī	ēī	ēī	ēīs or īīs	ēīs or īīs	ēīs or īīs
ACC.	ēum	ēam	īd	ēōs	ēās	ēā
ABL.	ēō	ēā	ēō	ēīs or īīs	ēīs or īīs	ēīs or īīs

2. The pronoun *īdem*, *the same*, is declined as follows :—

*Idem, the same.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	īdem	ēādem	īdem	ēīdem or īīdem	ēaedem	ēādem
GEN.	ēlusdem	ēlusdem	ēlusdem	ēōrundem	ēārundem	ēōrundem
DAT.	ēīdem	ēīdem	ēīdem	ēīsdem or īīsdem	ēīsdem or īīsdem	ēīsdem or īīsdem
ACC.	ēundem	ēandem	īdem	ēōsdem	ēāsdem	ēādem
ABL.	ēōdem	ēādem	ēōdem	ēīsdem or īīsdem	ēīsdem or īīsdem	ēīsdem or īīsdem

3. The pronoun *ipse*, *self, himself*, is declined as follows :—

*Ipse, self, himself.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

4. *Is* is a pronoun of reference, simply referring to some person or thing mentioned before : as, *Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus*

et ditissimus fuit Orgētōrix; is coniurationem nobilitatis fecit, *among the Helvetians, Orgetorix was by far the noblest and most wealthy; he formed a conspiracy among the nobility.* (Here is refers to Orgetorix.) It is often used as the personal pronoun of the 3rd person.

5. *Idem, same*, is often used to express *our also, at the same time, at once*: as, Cicero orator erat idemque philosophus. *Cicero was an orator and, at the same time, a philosopher.*

6. *Ipse, self*, may be added for emphasis to a noun, pronoun or numeral: as, Caesar ipse imperavit, *Caesar himself commanded*; tu ipse hoc fecisti, *you yourself did this*; se ipsum interfecit, *he killed himself*; ipse navem aedificavit, *he built the ship by himself*; triginta ipsi dies, *exactly thirty days*; adventu ipso hostes terruit, *by his mere (very) arrival he frightened the enemy*; ipse hoc vidi, *I saw this with my own eyes.*

*Ipse* is also added in the genitive singular or plural to a possessive pronoun to express *own*: as, Mea ipsius culpa, *my own fault*; sua ipsius domus, *his own house*; vestra ipsorum amicitia, *your own friendship.* (This gen. is in apposition with the gen. implied in the possessive.)

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together. ipsa oratio, is obses, idem vir, ipse imperator, eadem mulier, ipsum tempus, ea domus, ipse deus, ea filia.

Translate into English:—

1. Nos ipsi illum virum pugnantes vidimus. 2. Decem ipsis diebus oppidum expugnavit. 3. Hic vir deos immortales esse negat. 4. Pollicetur se iis arma daturum esse. 5. Tu ipse quattuor dies Karthagine mansisti. 6. Homo ipse dixit se paucis diebus venturum esse. 7. Eadem dona ad imperatorem missa sunt. 8. Homo servum suum vocavit et opus eius (*his*) laudavit. 9. Cicero fuit inter Romanos orator eloquentissimus; idem maximus philosophus fuit. 10. Dixerunt eundem virum multa bella in Italia gessisse. 11. Ipse vidi puerum ex urbe Roma excedentem. 12. Eodem die castra movit et copias ad flumen duxit. 13. Ipsa hac die Caesar Romae erat. 14. Caesar illud oppidum magno cum exercitu tribus diebus expugnavit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. On that very night the army took the town by storm. 2. Caesar himself said that he would lead the army. 3. Did you not see the same soldiers at Rome? 4. Were the soldiers of this legion on that day at Athens? 5. Those very towns will be taken by him. 6. By his mere order he liberated the man. 7. My own house was burned by the soldiers on that day. 8. For this reason he led his army out of the camp. 9. Those same men were always very friendly to the Romans. 10. He said that they had sent one legion against the Gauls. 11. That legion remained for three months in camp. 12. It is plain that they will not start for Rome within ten days. 13. He sent the same man from Athens to Italy.

---

## LESSON LXI.

### GENITIVE WITH SUM, I AM.

The genitive is used with the verb *sum, I am*, to express our *belongs to*: as, *Haec domus est mei patris, this house belongs to my father*. This genitive may be used to express our *task, duty, custom, characteristic, mark, token*: as, *Iudicis est sequi verum, it is the duty of a judge to follow the truth* (literally: *to follow the truth is of, i.e., belongs to a judge*); *hoc est praeceptoris, this is the business of an instructor*; *sapientis est res adversas aequo animo ferre, it is the characteristic of a wise man to bear adversity with resignation* (literally: *with an even mind*).

Note.—With possessive pronouns, this genitive is not used, but the neuter of the corresponding possessive adjective: as, *Tuum (not tui) est vidēre, it is your duty to see*.

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together: *Is audax vir, eadem virgo, hoc ipsum tempus, illa bona mulier, ista domus, ea oratio antiqua*.

Translate into English :—

1. Est Caesāris, obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem hostes accipere. 2. Semper est huius militis



imperatorī parere. 3. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est se eam rem esse facturum. 4. Eodem die castra promovit et contra hostes contendit. 5. Castra hostium esse maxima dixit. 6. Manifestum est iudicis esse verum sequi. 7. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 8. Haec eodem tempore Caesari nuntiata sunt. 9. Hoc responso dato, de provincia decessit. 10. Consulis est senatum in curiam vocare. 11. Meum est imperatori parere. 12. Ipse horā diei quartā cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus copias armatas conspexit. 13. Abhinc triginta ipsis annis, ille Corinthi mortuus est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. This man told Caesar that the Belgae had crossed the river on the same day. 2. It is the duty of a commander to fight bravely for his native land. 3. The commander himself within the last ten days has taken two cities. 4. At the same time ambassadors were sent by the general from the camp. 5. He placed a lieutenant over the legion, but he himself set out for Gaul. 6. Caesar said that he had sent forward all the cavalry at the third watch. 7. It is the characteristic of a soldier to obey his general in all things. 8. It is the duty of a wise man to obey the laws. 9. It is your duty to favor the good. 10. We saw that the attack of the enemy was checked by his mere arrival. 11. On the same day, Caesar collected the same forces as before and marched against the enemy. 12. He said that it was the part of the people to put the best man at the head of the army (use *praeficio*, appoint.)

---

## LESSON LXII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The relative pronoun refers to some noun or pronoun preceding called the antecedent. The relative in Latin is *qui* (M.), *quae* (F.), and *quod* (N.)

Qui, *who*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	qui	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cūi	cūi	cūi	quībus	quībus	quībus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quībus	quībus	quībus

2. Quisquis and quicumque, *whoever*, are called indefinite relatives, the suffix -cumque (or -cunque) added to the simple relative qui, forming an indefinite relative, just as -ever added to *who*, *which*, does in English. Quicumque is inflected like qui; quisquis is usually found only in the forms quisquis, quidquid or quicquid, quoquo.

## AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

3. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender*, *number* and *person*; but its case is determined by the verb of its own clause: as, Puer, qui magistrum amat, bonus est, *the boy who loves his master is good*; puer, quem magister amat, bonus est, *the boy whom the master loves is good*; ego, qui te laudavi, rex sum, *I, who praised you, am king*; ego, quem tu laudavisti, rex sum, *I, whom you praised, am king*.

Note 1.—The relative in the objective case, so often omitted in English, is never omitted in Latin: as, Hic est liber quem tu mihi dedisti, *this is the book you gave me*.

Note 2.—Cum, *with*, is appended to the relative, as to the personal pronouns: as, Quicum (= quocum), quācum, quibuscum (not cum quo, &c.)

## EXERCISE.

Decline together: Quae urbs, hoc flumen, prima lux, duae legiones, filia mea, ille liber, illud oppidum, primum ver.

Translate into English:—

1. Urbs, quam vides, Roma est. 2. Tres legiones, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit. 3. Milites, quorum virtus magna fuit, contra hostes a Caesare missi sunt. 4. Dixit se

copias flumen primā luce esse transducturum. 5. Cum quattuor legionibus, quas secum habebat, in castra properavit. 6. Dux legiones, quarum virtute urbs servata erat, laudavit. 7. Quisquis contra hostem fortiter pugnabit, coronam auream habebit. 8. Puellae, quas te vidisse dixisti, filiae meae sunt. 9. Belgae proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum saepe bellum gerunt. 10. Nonne dixisti hunc librum esse meum? 11. Milites, a quibus urbs expugnata erat, fortes fuerunt. 12. Eā re nuntiatā, Caesar legiones, quas secum habebat, praemisit. 13. Illis oppidis expugnatis, Caesar primo vere in fines hostium profectus est. 14. Vir, quicum venisti, hic est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. That house which you saw, is mine. 2. At daybreak, he led out of the camp two legions which he sent at once against the enemy. 3. He led into camp the troops, which he had assembled there. 4. They reported that the forces of the enemy had departed at the beginning of night. 5. He hastens to Rome with the legions which were then wintering at Massilia. 6. The tenth legion, which had often saved the state, was sent forward by Caesar. 7. Whoever said that he had seen me on that day, spoke falsely. 8. The city was taken by the soldiers whom he brought with him from Gaul. 9. To Caesar they sent ambassadors of whom the chief was Divīco. 10. I told him that this man had often led the soldiers to battle. 11. The Aeduans, whose fields had been laid waste almost in sight of the Roman army, sent ambassadors to Caesar. 12. I will give you the book you sent me yesterday. 13. The boy you praised is the best of all.

---

## LESSON LXIII.

### CORRELATIVES.

1. Many demonstrative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs in a principal clause have corresponding relative pronouns, adjectives or adverbs in a subordinate clause. These are called *correlatives*.

2. The following correlatives should be learned : *Īdem...qui*,

*the same as; talis...qualis, such as; tantus...quantus, as great as; tot...quot, as many as: as, Idem est qui semper fuit, he is the same as he always was; res eodem statu quo antea stat, the matter stands in the same position as before; talis est qualis semper fuit, he is of the same character as he always was; tantam voluptatem habeo quantam tu, I have as much pleasure as you; tot erant milites quot fluctus maris, the soldiers were as many as the waves of the sea.*

3. The adverbs *such, so* (limiting adjectives or adverbs) are expressed by *tam*: *as, Tam bonus homo, such a good man. As good as you, is tam bonus quam tu.*

4. The following correlative adverbs should also be learned: *Ibi...ubi, there...where; inde...unde, thence...whence; eo...quo, thither...whither; eā...quā, in that direction in which: as, Ubi natus est, ibi mortuus est, where he was born, there he died; unde profectus est, eodem properavit, he hastened to the spot from which he set out.*

#### EXERCISE.

Decline together: *quae res, qui dies, idem homo, haec mulier.*

Translate into English:—

1. Ubi adolescens abhinc multis annis educatus est, ibi senex his paucis diebus mortuus est. 2. Tantas divitias non habet quantas paucis ante annis. 3. Eadem utilitatis quae honestatis est regula. 4. Nunquam tantam contionem vidi quanta nunc haec est. 5. Eodem naves, unde profectae sunt, properavērunt. 6. Nonne hodie tanti sunt fluctus quanti heri erant? 7. Hodie homines iidem sunt qui quondam erant. 8. Talis est qualis semper fuit. 9. Quā nocte Alexander Magnus natus est, eādem templum Dianae Ephesiae deflagavit. 10. Ubi Cicero natus est, ibi C. Marius. 11. Quā dux milites duxit, eā hostes iter fecerunt. 12. Eodem anno quo Caesar copias suas in Britanniam duxit, Vergilius togam virilem sumpsit.

Translate into Latin:—

1. He lived in the place in which (use *idem qui*) he was born. 2. The farmer has not so large a harvest as he had last year. 3. We shall never see such waves as we beheld yesterday. 4. Did you not

read as many books as your sister? 5. Were not the Greeks the same in former times as they are now? 6. The same year in which the father died, the son left Italy. 7. We came to Rome on the same night as he set out for Greece. 8. They all reached the same spot as they had left a few days before. 9. The enemy followed our men by the same route as we had taken a few years before. 10. He killed as many soldiers as you. 11. He is not the same to-day as he was a year ago. 12. They remained in the same place in which they had pitched their camp a few days before. 13. The waves were such as we had never before seen.

---

## LESSON LXIV.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The interrogative pronouns *quis*, *quæ*, *quid*, and *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, *who?* *what?* are used in asking questions. They are inflected as follows :—

*Quis, who?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>quis</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quæ</i>
GEN.	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>cūius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>cūī</i>	<i>cūī</i>	<i>cūī</i>	<i>quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>
ACC.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quæ</i>
ABL.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>	<i>quībus</i>

2. The interrogative pronoun *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* is inflected like the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* (see p. 126).

3. *Quis* is generally used substantively and rarely as an adjective : as, *Quis hominum hoc dubitat?* *what man doubts this?* (i. e., *who of men*). *Qui* interrogative is used adjectively in agreement with its noun : as, *Qui homo hoc fecit?* *what man did this?* *quod facinus fecit?* *what crime did he commit?*

Note.—*Quis* and *qui* are often strengthened by the addition of *-nam*; *quisnam*, *quinam* are therefore emphatic interrogatives meaning *who, pray?* *who, then?*

4. *Which of two?* is *uter, utra, utrum*: as, *Uter vestrūm? which of you two?* (see p. 27).

5. In replying to a question, where we use the simple *Yes* or *No*, the Latins repeat the verb or some emphatic word: as, *Vēnitne? did he come?* *Non vēnit, No; vēnit, Yes.*

Note.—They also say, however, *vero etiam, ita, certe, sane*, for *Yes*; and *non, minime, minime vero*, for *No*.

6. *Whether...or*, in a double question, is usually *utrum...an*: as, *Utrum vir lēgit an scribit? whether does the man read or write?*

Note.—*Or not*, after *whether*, is *annon* in principal interrogative sentences: as, *Utrum amat patriam annon? whether does he love his native land or not?*

#### GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

7. A noun in the genitive (called the *genitive of quality*) is often added to another noun to denote a quality: as, *Vir est summæ fortitudinis, he is a man of the highest courage; vir erat maximæ sapientiæ, he was a man of the greatest wisdom.*

Note.—The noun in the genitive expressing quality has invariably an adjective with it. Thus, *a man of wisdom* is not *vir sapientiæ* but *vir sapiens*. But, where the corresponding adjective is wanting, *praeditus, endowed with*, may be used with the simple ablative: as, *Homo virtūte praeditus, a man of (endowed with) valor.*

8. The genitive of quality is chiefly used to denote *number, amount, dimension, age, time*: as, *Septuaginta navium classis, a fleet of seventy ships; viginti pedum in altitudinem est agger, the embankment is twenty feet high (literally, is of twenty feet in height); puer tredecim annorum, a boy thirteen years of age.*

Note.—Other constructions may be used for the genitive of quality: as, *Viginti pedes altus est agger, the embankment is high twenty feet* (acc. of extent of space); *puer tredecim annos natus, a boy of thirteen years of age* (i.e., *a boy born thirteen years*). So, too: *Cicero trium et quadraginta annorum consul fuit, or Cicero, tres et quadraginta annos natus, consul fuit, Cicero at the*

*age of forty-three was consul; mensa est trium pedum in latitudinem, or mensa est tres pedes lata, the table is three feet wide.*

9. The ablative is used, like the genitive, to express quality, especially when external qualities of dress or appearance are mentioned : as, *Homo magno capite, ore rubicundo, magnis pedibus, a man with a large head, red face, and big feet; Caesar erat excelsā statūrā, Caesar was of tall stature.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : *qui homo bonus? quod facinus malum? qui vir prudens? quae urbs pulchra?*

Translate into English :—

1. *Quid proximā, quid superiore nocte egisti?* 2. *Uter consulum nobis amicus est?* 3. *Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armorum pedites hostibus occurrebant.* 4. *Utram in partem flumen fluit?* 5. *Erat inter Labienum atque hostium castra difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis.* 6. *Quod periculum eo die vitavisti?* 7. *Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.* 8. *Nonne nuntiatum est omnem peditatum et levis armorum Numidas pontem ab duce transductos esse?* 9. *Utrum patrem an patriam plus amat?* 10. *Quem Caesar hibernis eā hieme praefecit?* 11. *Num Romanis classis viginti navium erat?* 12. *His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a Senatu decreta est.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. Who gave a golden crown of great weight to this soldier? 2. Are not serpents of great size found in that island? 3. Whether was this boy born at Rome or at Karthage? 4. The Germans were said to be men of great strength. 5. Two generals were chosen by the Athenians, Pericles, a man of great valor, and Sophocles, a poet of undying fame. 6. Was not Cimon a man of great liberality? 7. You possess a man of remarkable modesty, well-known valor, and approved fidelity. 8. It is the characteristic of a foolish man to condemn the faults of others and to be blind to (*non videre*) his own. 9. Which of the two boys is more like his father? 10. Will not the Romans remain at Ravenna all winter? 11. By whom were the Romans conquered in battle? 12. Who was at home on that day? 13. Did he not come to Rome that night? Yes.

## LESSON LXV.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. Pronouns that do not refer to any particular person or thing are called *indefinite pronouns*. The more common are :—

Quis, quæ or qua, quid or quod, *any* (especially after *si, if, nisi, unless*).

— Aliquis, aliquæ or aliqua, aliquod or aliquid, *some one*.

( Quisquam, quæquam, quicquam or quidquam, *any one*.

( Ullus, ulla, ullum, *any* (see p. 26), used as the adjectival form of *quisquam*.

Quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, *a certain one*.

— Quisque, quæque, quidque or quodque, *each*.

Unusquisque, unaquæque, unumquidque or unumquodque, *each one, each individual*.

— Uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, both*.

Quivis, quævis, quidvis or quodvis, *any one you like*.

Quilibet, quælibet, quidlibet or quodlibet, *any one you like*.

Utervis, utravis, utrumvis, *either of the two you like*.

Uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, *either of the two you like*.

Nemo, *no one*; nihil, *nothing*; nullus, nulla, nullum, *none* (p. 26).

2. In declining the above, the following rules may be observed :—

The forms in *quis* and *qui* are declined like interrogative *quis* and relative *qui*, but have *qua* or *quæ* in the fem. sing., and *quid* or *quod* in the neuter singular. Forms in *quod* are adjectival, those in *quid* substantival. Thus :—

Tempus aliquod, *some time*; temporis aliquid, *some time* (literally, *something of time*).

Unusquisque is declined in both parts and used in the singular only; *uterque, utriusque*, is declined in the first part only.

Nemo is declined like *virgo* (p. 34), but has *nullius* for the gen. and *nullo* or *nullâ* for the abl.

Nihil is neuter and used only in the nominative and accusative sing.

3. *Quisquam* (adjectival, *ullus*) is used in sentences that contain a negative, in interrogative sentences implying a negative answer,



or in comparative clauses : as, *Nec quisquam me vidit, nor did anyone see me; nec ullus homo me vidit, nor did any man see me; num quisquam me vidit? did anyone see me? num ullus homo me vidit? did any man see me? fortior est quam quisquam vestrum, he is braver than any of you.*

## EXERCISE.

Decline together : unusquisque puer, uterque homo, mulier quaedam, miles aliquis, nullum animal.

Translate into English :—

1. Num quisquam Ciceronem eo tempore laudavit? 2. Ad puerum, cuius pater in bello interfectus est, aliquod donum mitte. 3. Homo quidam mihi dixit eum eo anno esse mortuum. 4. Uterque puer in schola erat. 5. Num ullum animal sine sensu est? 6. Nemo ei nuntiavit urbem ab hostibus esse captam. 7. Nuntiat unumquemque ab eo esse occisum. 8. Nihil temporis ab hoc puero amittitur. 9. Nemo omnium militum, qui legionis septimae sunt, a me laudabitur. 10. Nuntiat Gallos in sinistro cornu agminis locatos esse. 11. Putavisti utrumque puerum domo decessisse. 12. Duces quosdam praemisit, qui viam monstraverunt. 13. Omnes, in quibus aliquid dignitatis fuit, eō convēnerunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Some one has given a sword to each soldier. 2. Did any one say that these men were brave? 3. I heard that some Roman soldiers set out from the camp on that day. 4. A certain one told me that he had seen you on the top of the hill. 5. Both the consuls commanded an army in that year. 6. Each one of us was praised by the general. 7. Some one brought word to the camp that we had been defeated. 8. Will not some one lead us against the enemy? 9. Who will say that this general was not better than all other generals? 10. Choose any man you like (use *quivis*) for this war. 11. Did any one of the soldiers say that he was brave? 12. Both wars were carried on by the two generals in the same year.

---

## LESSON LXVI.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—(*Continued*).

## DATIVE OF PURPOSE.

1. The dative is used to express *purpose, intention, and destination*: as, *Malo est hominibus avaritia, avarice is an evil* (literally, *for an evil*) *to men*; *quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit, he left five cohorts to guard the camp* (= *for a guard to the camp*). This is called the *dative of purpose*.

The following uses of this dative should be noted: *Vēnit nobis auxilio, he came to aid us* (i. e., *for an aid*); *Pericles agros suos dono reipublicae dedit, Pericles gave his lands as a gift to the state*; *Gallis magno erat impedimento, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls*.

2. The dative is often used in Latin instead of the English possessive: as, *Omnes flentes Caesāri sese ad pedes proiēcerunt, all in tears threw themselves at Caesar's feet*. This dative gives more prominence to the person mentioned: as, *Hoc mihi minuit spem, this lessened my hope*.

## EXERCISE.

Decline together: *pater meus, totus ille dies, is consul, idem beatus homo, vir quidam Romanus, eadem navis, quis nauta, homo quivis, Cicero ipse, orator clarissimus*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Hoc aliquis dicet, nec errabit*. 2. *Locus silvestris spem salutis aliquam praebebat*. 3. *Plerumque Gallis, prae magnitudine corporum suorum, brevitās nostra contemptui est*. 4. *Hic homo cuiusquam iniuriae sibi non conscius est*. 5. *Neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam habetur*. 6. *Consensu eorum omnium, pace factā, hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerant*. 7. *Quem locum nostri castris delegerunt?* 8. *His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militaris*. 9. *Caesar, principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se vocatis, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit*. 10. *Quisque eorum militum hoc die coronā aureā ab imperatore donatus est*. 11. *Haec culpa magno dedecori tibi fuit*. 12. *Labienus,*

castris hostium potitus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit.  
13. Caesar pollicitus est eam rem sibi curae esse futuram.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The Romans learned some facts (*res*) from a deserter. 2. Nor have they any clothing<sup>1</sup>, except skins. 3. Caesar had sent some soldiers of each legion to aid the allies. 4. There is timber<sup>2</sup> of every kind in Britain except beech and fir. 5. Each of the scouts came to the general and promised to aid him in the matter. 6. When he had learned these facts, he called to him some of the chiefs of the state. 7. Were there any of the chiefs present at the council of the Gauls? 8. He came to aid the Athenians in the war. 9. I have a book which, many years ago, you gave me as a present. 10. Who will not attribute this to you as a fault? 11. Civil wars have always been a great loss to a state. 12. In the consulship of Caesar this chief came with many followers to aid the Romans. 13. Of the two consuls, one fell in that battle, the other is still of great service to the state.

---

## LESSON LXVII.

### REVIEW EXERCISE ON THE PRONOUN.

Translate into English :—

1. Itaque ille legatum in Treviros, qui proximi flumini sunt, cum equitatu mittit. 2. Quibus rebus coacti, legatos ad eum de pace mittunt. 3. In fines Ambiānorum pervenit qui se sine mora dederunt. 4. Unde die priore profectus est, eo pervenit. 5. Ubi puer natus educatusque erat, ibi senex mortuus est. 6. Hi proximi sunt Germanis qui trans Rhenum incolunt quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. 7. In fines Gallorum legionem cui Galba praeerat misit. 8. Sulla cum equitibus quos habebat in castra venit. 9. Helvetii legatos ad eum mittunt quorum Divico princeps fuit. 10. Illi, cum iis quae retinuerant armis, eruptionem fecerunt. 11. Longe sunt humanissimi qui Cantium incolunt. 12. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae.

---

<sup>1</sup>Say "anything of clothing." <sup>2</sup>Materia.

Translate into Latin :—

1. He persuades Castīcus, whose father had held sovereign power (*regnum*) among the Sequani for many years. 2. He said that on that day these Helvetii had sent two ambassadors to Caesar. 3. Meanwhile, by means of the legion which he had with him and the soldiers who had assembled from the province, he runs a wall from Lake Geneva to Mount Jura. 4. At daybreak he arrived at-the-place (*eo*) from which he had started the previous night. 5. The man who trusts all men is often deceived. 6. The ground (*locus*) which our men had selected as a place suitable for the camp, was of-this-character (*hic*). 7. Was not the poet Ovid born in the same year in which Cicero the orator died? 8. They said that the poet Ovid was born at Sulmo, a small town among the Peligni. 9. After the murder of Caesar (use *abl. abs.*). Brutus and Cassius fled to Asia. 10. Brutus and Cassius were defeated at Philippi by Marcus Antonius and Octavianus. 11. Cassius being informed of (*de*) the arrival of the enemy, led all his army across the bridge at daybreak. 12. He surrendered all his forces to the Roman commander, and gave up all the arms he had with him. 13. After learning these facts, he sent forward all the cavalry to the number of six thousand.

## LESSON LXVIII.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. The subjunctive mood of *sum*, *I am*, is inflected as follows:—

	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>sim</i>	<i>simus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
2. “	<i>sis</i>	<i>sitis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
3. “	<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>
	PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	<i>fūerim</i>	<i>fūerimus</i>	<i>fūissem</i>	<i>fūissēmus</i>
2. “	<i>fūeris</i>	<i>fūeritis</i>	<i>fūissēs</i>	<i>fūissētis</i>
3. “	<i>fūerit</i>	<i>fūerint</i>	<i>fūisset</i>	<i>fūissent</i>

2. The subjunctive active of regular verbs of the four conjugations is inflected as follows :—

## PRESENT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	āmēm	āmēmus	mōnēam	mōnēāmus
2. “	āmēs	āmētis	mōnēās	mōnēātis
3. “	āmet	āment	mōnēat	mōnēant
1. Pers.,	rēgam	rēgāmus	audiām	audiāmus
2. “	rēgās	rēgātis	audiās	audiātis
3. “	rēgat	rēgant	audiat	audiant

## IMPERFECT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	āmārem	āmārēmus	mōnērem	mōnērēmus
2. “	āmārēs	āmārētis	mōnērēs	mōnērētis
3. “	āmāret	āmārent	mōnēret	mōnērent
1. Pers.,	rēgērem	rēgērēmus	audīrem	audīrēmus
2. “	rēgērēs	rēgērētis	audīrēs	audīrētis
3. “	rēgēret	rēgērent	audīret	audīrent

## PERFECT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	āmāvērīm	āmāvērīmus	mōnūērīm	mōnūērīmus
2. “	āmāvērīs	āmāvērītis	mōnūērīs	mōnūērītis
3. “	āmāvērīt	āmāvērīnt	mōnūērīt	mōnūērīnt
1. Pers.,	rexērīm	rexērīmus	audīvērīm	audīvērīmus
2. “	rexērīs	rexērītis	audīvērīs	audīvērītis
3. “	rexērīt	rexērīnt	audīvērīt	audīvērīnt

## PLUPERFECT.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	āmāvīssēm	āmāvīssēmus	mōnūīssēm	mōnūīssēmus
2. “	āmāvīssēs	āmāvīssētis	mōnūīssēs	mōnūīssētis
3. “	āmāvīssēt	āmāvīssēt	mōnūīssēt	mōnūīssēt
1. Pers.,	rexīssēm	rexīssēmus	audīvīssēm	audīvīssēmus
2. “	rexīssēs	rexīssētis	audīvīssēs	audīvīssētis
3. “	rexīssēt	rexīssēt	audīvīssēt	audīvīssēt

3. The subjunctive, as opposed to the indicative (which represents the action of the verb as a fact), is said to represent the action of the verb as something only *supposed*. But this rule is of

little practical value. The meanings and uses of the subjunctive must be carefully mastered in detail.

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

4. The following are three main uses of the subjunctive in simple sentences :—

(a) In *exhortations*: as, *Semper iidem simus*, *let us always be the same*. The negative is *nē*: as, *Ne hoc faciat*, *let him not do this*.

(b) In *commands*, especially negative commands (with *nē* for *not*): as, *Ne multa discas sed multum*, *do not learn many things but much*.

Note.—Unless in general maxims like the above, the perfect is more usual here than the present: as, *Ne id dixeris*, *do not say that*.

(c) To express a *wish*: as, *Beātus sis*, *may you be happy*. When the wish may still be realized, the present or perfect is used; when the wish is vain and can not be realized, the imperfect or pluperfect. *Utinam* (*O! that*) usually introduces a wish: as, *Adsit* or *utinam adsit*, *O! that he may be here*; *utinam adfuerit* *O! that he may have been here*; *utinam adesset*, *O! that he were here (now)*; *utinam adfuisset*, *O! that he had been here (then)*. The negative in expressing a wish is usually *nē*: as, *Nē vivam si scio*, *may I not live, if I know*.

### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. *Discedant ab armis omnes qui in Italia sunt.*
2. *Valeant, valeant cives mei; sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati; stet haec urbs praeclara mihi que patria carissima.*
3. *Utinam P. Clodius non modo viveret, sed etiam praetor, consul, dictator esset.*
4. *Mali discernant se a bonis.*
5. *Non Romae, sed Karthagine hiemet.*
6. *Ne in Italia sed Syracusis hiemet.*
7. *Utinam ne mercatores eas res ad Belgas importavissent.*
8. *Exercitus noster hostes hoc proelio vincat.*
9. *Ne copiae Romanae barbaros vincant.*
10. *Utinam vos omnes amici Caesaris essetis.*
11. *Exploratores nos de adventu hostium moneant.*
12. *Utinam domi eo die fuissem.*
13. *Filius patris sui vocem audiat.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. O ! that we may take this town within a few days.
2. Would that we had been living at that time !
3. May we not be sailing the sea in the middle of winter !
4. O ! that we may conquer our enemies in this battle.
5. Let us hear our teacher.
6. Would that we had seized the citadel !
7. May we all love our parents who have taught us everything !
8. O ! that the enemy may be defeated.
9. May you dwell with us a long time in this city !
10. O ! that you may refrain from wrong-doing.
11. Do not expect to see me to-morrow.
12. Would that he had not seen me at Rome !
13. Do not ask the boy his name.

---

## LESSON LXIX.

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

(Continued.)

The subjunctive is also used in simple sentences :—

(a) In questions of *doubt*, *astonishment*, or *deliberation*: as, *Quid dicam?* *what shall I say?* *what am I to say?* *Quid dicerem?* *what should I have said?* *what was I to say?* This is called the *deliberative subjunctive*. It is often introduced by *an*: as, *An ego non venirem?* *ought I not to have come?*

(b) To soften an assertion, or make a concession: as, *Crēdas,* *you would believe*; *crēdēres,* *you would have believed*; *hoc dixerim,* *I would have said this*; *aliquis dicat,* *some one may say*.

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Pacem petamus (p. 138, 4), nam exercitus noster superatus est.
2. Nostras copias hoc flumen audacter transducamus; hostes enim nostro adventu fugient.
3. Milites Romani contra hostes audacter pugnent.
4. Hoc affirmaverim, eum Romam venisse.
5. Utinam, puer, optima ames.
6. Illo die Romanos esse victos crederes.
7. Hoc sine ullā dubitatione affirmaverim eloquentiam rem esse omnium difficillimam.
8. Ego censeam Catilinam cum suis sociis in Etruriam esse profecturum.
9. Nemo, his rebus cognitis, hoc

dixerit. 10. An huic cedamus? An huius condiciones audiamus; 11. An superbiam prius commemorem? 12. Quis credat animos hominum non immortales esse?

Translate into Latin :—

1. O! that this man had warned us of (*de + abl.*) the danger. 2. What was I to do in so great a danger? 3. Am I to love the enemies of the state? 4. Are we to throw away liberty and honor? 5. Let us fight bravely for our native land. 6. Let us retreat to the nearest hill, for the number of the enemy is great. 7. You would have said that the Gauls were desirous of war. 8. Let us punish this man severely. 9. Who can deny that Caesar was the greatest general among the Romans? 10. After defeating the barbarians, let us seize their town. 11. Would that the consul were living! 12. Let them send ambassadors to Caesar concerning (*de + abl.*) peace. 13. Let him remain at home this day.

## LESSON LXX.

### SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.

The subjunctive passive of the four conjugations is inflected as follows :—

#### PRESENT.

1. Pers.,	ăm̄er	m̄on̄ear	r̄egar	audīar
2. “	ăm̄eris or ăm̄ere	m̄on̄earis or m̄on̄eare	r̄egar̄is or r̄egare	audīaris or audīare
3. “	ăm̄etur	m̄on̄eatur	r̄egatur	audīatur
1. Pers.,	ăm̄emur	m̄on̄eamur	r̄egamur	audīamur
2. “	ăm̄emini	m̄on̄eamini	r̄egamini	audīamini
3. “	ăm̄entur	m̄on̄eantur	r̄egantur	audīantur

#### IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	ăm̄arer	m̄on̄erer	r̄egerer	audirer
2. “	ăm̄areris or ăm̄arere	m̄on̄ereris or m̄onerere	r̄egerer̄is or r̄egerere	audirer̄is or audirere
3. “	ăm̄aretur	m̄on̄eretur	r̄egeretur	audiretur
1. Pers.,	ăm̄aremur	m̄on̄eremur	r̄egeremur	audiremur
2. “	ăm̄arem̄ini	m̄on̄erem̄ini	r̄egerem̄ini	audirem̄ini
3. “	ăm̄arentur	m̄on̄erentur	r̄egerentur	audirentur



## PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	ămătus sim	mōnītus sim	rectus sim	audītus sim
2. “	ămătus sis	mōnītus sis	rectus sis	audītus sis
3. “	ămătus sit	mōnītus sit	rectus sit	audītus sit
1. Pers.,	ămătī simus	mōnītī simus	rectī simus	audītī simus
2. “	ămătī sitis	mōnītī sitis	rectī sitis	audītī sitis
3. “	ămătī sint	mōnītī sint	rectī sint	audītī sint

## PLUPERFECT.

1. P.,	ămătus essem	mōnītus essem	rectus essem	audītus essem
2. “	ămătus essēs	mōnītus essēs	rectus essēs	audītus essēs
3. “	ămătus esset	mōnītus esset	rectus esset	audītus esset
1. P.,	ămătī essēmus	mōnītī essēmus	rectī essēmus	audītī essēmus
2. “	ămătī essētis	mōnītī essētis	rectī essētis	audītī essētis
3. “	ămătī essent	mōnītī essent	rectī essent	audītī essent

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Ne tanta occasio a vobis amittatur.
2. Utinam ne vincantur.
3. Cur mali amentur?
4. Utinam, pueri, moniti essetis.
5. Ne a malis amemini.
6. Utinam ab iis ne auditi essent.
7. Ne putaveris te tantam occasionem semper habiturum esse.
8. Utinam optimi missi essent.
9. An orationes utilissimae reipublicae semper habeantur?
10. Oppido incenso, hostium agros vastavimus.
11. Hoc potius dixerim, te nunquam monitum esse.
12. Omnes moriamur; ne vincamur.
13. Utinam ne infelices sitis.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Do not tell me that the man has been killed.
  2. O! that he were more loved.
  3. Would that you had been sent yourself!
  4. Let us always be the same as (*qui*) we have ever been.
  5. Let not this opportunity be lost.
  6. Are such men as these to be considered brave?
  7. Let the boys be well taught by the master.
  8. After taking the town, he led the army over the river.
  9. You would rather say this, that all the villages had been burned by him.
  10. Let it not be thought that your work is done.
  11. Do not think that he will revile the good.
  12. O! that you may all be fortunate.
-

## LESSON LXXI.

## COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

1. All the compounds of sum are inflected like sum, except possum, *I am able, I can* (pōtis, *able + sum, I am*), and prōsum, *I benefit*.

Possum, *I am able, I can* is thus inflected :—

Possum, *I am able, I can*.

## PRESENT.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	possum	possūmus	possim	possīmus
2. “	pōtēs	pōtestis	possis	possītis
3. “	pōtest	possunt	possit	possint

## IMPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	pōtēram	pōtērāmus	possem	possēmus
2. “	pōtērās	pōtērātis	possēs	possētis
3. “	pōtērat	pōtērant	posset	possent

## PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	pōtūi	pōtūimus	pōtūerim	pōtūerimus
2. “	pōtūisti	pōtūistis	pōtūeris	pōtūeritis
3. “	pōtūit	pōtūerunt <i>or</i> pōtūere	pōtūerit	pōtūerint

## PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers.,	pōtūeram	pōtūērāmus	pōtūissem	pōtūissēmus
2. “	pōtūērās	pōtūērātis	pōtūissēs	pōtūissētis
3. “	pōtūērat	pōtūērant	pōtūisset	pōtūissent

## FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	pōtēro	pōtērīmus
2. “	pōtēris	pōtērītis
3. “	pōtērit	pōtērunt

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

1. Pers.,	pōtūero	pōtūerīmus
2. “	pōtūeris	pōtūerītis
3. “	pōtūerit	pōtūerint

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.	PRESENT PARTICIPLE.
posse	pōtūisse	potens (used as an adjective = <i>powerful</i> .)

Note.—*Quam*, *as*, by an ellipsis of *possum* (which however is often retained), is often used with superlatives as an intensive : *as*, *Quam maximis* (potest) *itineribus in Italiam contendit, he hastens to Italy by as long marches as possible.*

2. *Prōsum*, *I help, I benefit*, is inflected like *sum* but retains its original -*d* (*prosum*=*prod-sum*) before a vowel and loses it before a consonant. It is inflected as follows :—

*Prōsum, I help, I benefit.*

PRESENT.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers., <i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsumus</i>	<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōsimus</i>
2. “ <i>prōdēs</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>	<i>prōsis</i>	<i>prōsitis</i>
3. “ <i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>	<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>

IMPERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>prōdēram</i>	<i>prōdērāmus</i>	<i>prōdessem</i>	<i>prōdessēmus</i>
2. “ <i>prōdērās</i>	<i>prōdērātis</i>	<i>prōdesseēs</i>	<i>prōdessētis</i>
3. “ <i>prōdērat</i>	<i>prōdērant</i>	<i>prōdesset</i>	<i>prōdesseēt</i>

PERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>prōfūi</i>	<i>prōfūimus</i>	<i>prōfūerim</i>	<i>prōfūerimus</i>
2. “ <i>prōfūistī</i>	<i>prōfūistis</i>	<i>prōfūeris</i>	<i>prōfūeritis</i>
3. “ <i>prōfūit</i>	<i>prōfūerunt or</i> <i>prōfūere</i>	<i>prōfūerit</i>	<i>prōfūerint</i>

PLUPERFECT.

1. Pers., <i>prōfūeram</i>	<i>prōfūerāmus</i>	<i>prōfūissem</i>	<i>prōfūissēmus</i>
2. “ <i>prōfūerās</i>	<i>prōfūerātis</i>	<i>prōfūissēs</i>	<i>prōfūissētis</i>
3. “ <i>prōfūerat</i>	<i>prōfūerant</i>	<i>prōfūisset</i>	<i>prōfūissent</i>

FUTURE.

1. Pers., <i>prōdēro</i>	<i>prōdērīmus</i>
2. “ <i>prōdēris</i>	<i>prōdērītis</i>
3. “ <i>prōdērit</i>	<i>prōdērunt</i>

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

- |           |           |             |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. Pers., | prōfūēro  | prōfūērīmus |
| 2. “      | prōfūēris | prōfūērītis |
| 3. “      | prōfūērit | prōfūērīnt  |

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

- |      |        |          |
|------|--------|----------|
| 2. “ | prōdēs | prōdeste |
|------|--------|----------|

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

prōdesse

## PERFECT.

prōfūisse

## PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

prōfūtūrus, a, um

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Hoc facere non potuit. 2. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves tempestate reiectas cursum tenēre non potuisse. 3. Quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit. 4. His legatis Gallorum persuadēre non potērit. 5. Quis tantum numerum militum illi provinciae imperare possit? (p. 139). 6. Id oppidum ex itinere oppugnare conatus, propter muri altitudinem expugnare non potuit. 7. Caesar ex provincia quam maximas copias militum comparavit. 8. Quis mihi in tanto periculo prosit? 9. Caesar, comparata re frumentaria, quam celerrime ad Ariovistum contendit. 10. Non tibi proderit contra naturam niti. 11. Quid tibi tempus in his rebus consumere profuit? 12. Quid in tanto discrimine reipublicae facere possim? 13. Primo vere omnes gentes Gallicae in unum locum a duce Romano coactae sunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Shall I not be able to help you at that time? 2. It will benefit the state to collect all the forces possible at the beginning of summer. 3. Were not the Romans able to conquer the Gauls? 4. It will be of great advantage to you to reach Italy on that day. 5. Were you not able to reach Rome on the same night? 6. What can I do when so many enemies crowd around me (*abl. abs.*)? 7. Am I to throw away my arms or boldly march against them?

8. The Aedui were the most powerful nation of all Gaul. 9. Assemble as many troops as possible and advance boldly against the enemy. 10. On that day he gave each of his soldiers two bushels of corn. 11. He learned from the scouts that the ships of the enemy could not reach the river. 12. Caesar replied as briefly as possible to the words of the ambassador. 13. I could not speak for (*prae*+*abl.*) tears.

## LESSON LXXII.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS—MEMINI, COEPI, ODI, NŌVI.

1. Verbs that are wanting in some of their parts are called *defective verbs*. The following are used only in the perfect and tenses derived from the perfect: *mēmīni*, *I remember*; *coepe*, *I begin*; *ōdi*, *I hate*; *nōvi*, *I know*. They are inflected as follows:—

## INDICATIVE.

Perfect.	mēmīni, isti, &c.	coepe	ōdi	nōvi
Pluperfect.	mēmīnēram	coepēram	ōdēram	nōvēram
Fut. Perfect.	mēmīnēro	coepēro	ōdēro	nōvēro

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	mēmīnērim	coepērim	ōdērim	nōvērim
Pluperfect.	mēmīnissem	coepissem	ōdissem	nōviſsem

## IMPERATIVE.

Fut., 2. Sing.	mēmēto	Wanting.	Wanting.	Wanting.
2. Pl.	mēmētōte			

## INFINITIVE.

Perfect	mēmīnisse	coepisse	ōdisse	nōvisse
Future.	Wanting.	coeptūrus esse	ōsūrus esse	Wanting.

## PARTICIPLE.

Perfect Pass.	Wanting.	coeptus	ōsus	nōtus
Fut. Active.	Wanting.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus	

2. *Nōvi* is properly the perfect of *nosco* (*-gnosco* in compounds), *I begin to know*.

3. Each of the above verbs has in the perfect, a present meaning, in the pluperfect, an imperfect meaning, and in the future

perfect, a future meaning : as, *Coepi, I begin ; coepĕram, I began ; coepĕro, I shall begin.* (*Coepi, however, means both I begin and I began.*)

4. *Coepi* (active form) is used when an active infinitive follows : as, *Urbem aedificare coepit, he began to build the city ;* while *coeptus sum* (passive form) is used when a passive infinitive follows : as, *Urbs aedificari coepta est, the city began to be built.*

5. Other defective verbs are : *Aio, I say ; fari, to speak ; inquam, I say.* These are given in the Appendix.

6. *Inquam* is used, like the English *says he*, in direct quotations : as, "*Ego,*" inquit, "*cras veniam,*" "*I,*" he says, "*shall come to-morrow.*" The nominative, if expressed, comes after *inquam*, inquit.

#### GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

7. The following verbs usually take a genitive after them :—*Misĕrĕor, miseresco, (feel pity), meminĭ (remember), obliviscor (forget), reminiscor (remember) :* as, *Miserĕre labōrum, pity sufferings ; huius diĕi meminero, I shall remember this day.*

Note.—*Misĕror, āri, ātus sum (express pity for),* takes the accusative : as, *Casum suum miseratur, he bewails his misfortune.*

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. *Nec unquam obliviscar illius noctis.* 2. *Eorum magno numero interfecto, imperator ex itinere oppidum hostium oppugnare coepit.* 3. *Re frumentariā comparatā, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat.* 4. *Nunquam virtutis Romanorum obliviscar.* 5. *Semper in civitate, quibus opes multae sunt, vetera odĕre, nova exoptant.* 6. *Helvetii nostros proelio lacessere coeperunt.* 7. *In murum lapides iaci coepti sunt.* 8. *Quam (how) multa meminĕrunt senes !* 9. *Eundem legatum omnibus copiis praefecit.* 10. *Solent homines ea bene meminisse quae pueri didicerunt.* 11. *Potestne, inquit Epicurus, quidquam voluptate esse melius ?* 12. *Non cuiusvis hominis est iniuriarum oblivisci.* 13. *Illi, cum equitatu ad flumen progressi, e loco superiore nostros prohibere coeperunt.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. They began to follow and attack our men in the rear. 2. We

cannot forget the old wrongs of our ancestors. 3. Let the Roman people remember the ancient valor of the Gauls. 4. At midday a large quantity of dust began to be seen. 5. Remember (*pl.*) us and our wrongs. 6. He hated the Roman people on-account-of (*ob*) their cruelty. 7. At daybreak Caesar began to move forward the engines against the town. 8. O! that he may not forget your kindness. 9. Pity the many sufferings which we have endured. 10. "I will never," he says, "betray my native land to its bitterest enemies." 11. The general began to lead his forces across the river a few hours ago. 12. Stones began to be thrown against our men by the enemy. 13. Can anything be sadder than his death?

## LESSON LXXIII.

## IRREGULAR VERB—VŎLO, NŎLO, MĀLO.

1. The irregular verbs vŏlo, *I wish, will*, and its compounds nŏlo (*nē, not + vŏlo*), *I am unwilling*, and mālo (*magis, more + vŏlo*), *I prefer*, are thus inflected :—

## PRESENT.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	vŏlo	vŏlŭmus	vŏlim	vŏlŭmus
2. "	vŏs	vultis	vŏlis	vŏlŏtis
3. "	vult	vŏlunt	vŏlit	vŏlint
1. Pers.,	nŏlo	nŏlŭmus	nŏlim	nŏlŭmus
2. "	non vŏs	non vultis	nŏlis	nŏlŏtis
3. "	non vult	nŏlunt	nŏlit	nŏlint
1. Pers.,	mālo	mālŭmus	mālim	mālŭmus
2. "	māvŏs	māvultis	mālis	mālŏtis
3. "	māvult	mālunt	mālit	mālŏtis

## IMPERFECT.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	vŏlēbam	vŏlēbāmus	vellem	vellēmus
2. "	vŏlēbās	vŏlēbātis	vellēs	vellētis
3. "	vŏlēbat	vŏlēbant	vellet	vellent

1. Pers.,	nōlēbam	nōlēbāmus	nollem	nollēmus
2. “	nōlēbās	nōlēbātis	nollēs	nollētis
3. “	nōlēbat	nōlēbant	nollet	nollent
1. Pers.,	mālēbam	mālēbāmus	mallem	mallēmus
2. “	mālēbas	mālēbātis	mallēs	mallētis
3. “	mālēbat	mālēbant	mallet	mallent

## FUTURE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		
1. Pers.,	vōlam	vōlēmus	None	None
2. “	vōlēs	vōlētis		
3. “	vōlet	vōlent		
1. Pers.,	nōlam	nōlēmus		
2. “	nōlēs	nōlētis		
3. “	nōlet	nōlent		
1. Pers.,	mālam	mālēmus		
2. “	mālēs	mālētis		
3. “	mālet	mālent		

## PERFECT.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	vōlūi	vōlūimus	vōlūerim	vōlūerimus
2. “	vōlūisti	vōlūistis	vōlūeris	vōlūeritis
3. “	vōlūit	vōlūerunt <i>or</i> vōlūere	vōlūerit	vōlūerint
1. Pers.,	nōlūi	nōlūimus	nōlūerim	nōlūerimus
2. “	nōlūisti	nōlūistis	nōlūeris	nōlūeritis
3. “	nōlūit	nōlūerunt <i>or</i> nōlūere	nōlūerit	nōlūerint
1. Pers.,	mālūi	mālūimus	mālūerim	mālūerimus
2. “	mālūisti	mālūistis	mālūeris	mālūeritis
3. “	mālūit	mālūerunt <i>or</i> mālūere	mālūerit	mālūerint

## PLUPERFECT.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Pers.,	vōlūeram	vōlūerāmus	vōlūissem	vōlūissēmus
2. “	vōlūerās	vōlūerātis	vōlūissēs	vōlūissētis
3. “	vōlūerat	vōlūerant	vōlūisset	vōlūissent



1. Pers.,	nōlūēram	nōlūērāmus	nōlūissem	nōlūissēmus
2. "	nōlūērās	nōlūērātis	nōlūissēs	nōlūissētis
3. "	nōlūērat	nōlūērant	nōlūisset	nōlūissent
1. Pers.,	mālūēram	mālūērāmus	mālūissem	mālūissēmus
2. "	mālūērās	mālūērātis	mālūissēs	mālūissētis
3. "	mālūērat	mālūērant	mālūisset	mālūissent

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers.,	vōlūēro	vōlūērīmus	None
2. "	vōlūēris	vōlūērītis	
3. "	vōlūērit	vōlūērīnt	
1. Pers.,	nōlūēro	nōlūērīmus	
2. "	nōlūēris	nōlūērītis	
3. "	nōlūērit	nōlūērīnt	
1. Pers.,	mālūēro	mālūērīmus	
2. "	mālūēris	mālūērītis	
3. "	mālūērit	mālūērīnt	

## IMPERATIVE.

Present	nōlī	nōlīte
---------	------	--------

## INFINITIVE.

Present	vōlle	nolle	malle
Perfect	vōlūisse	nōlūisse	mālūisse

## PARTICIPLES.

Present	vōlens (used as an adjective = <i>willing.</i> )	nōlens (used as an adjective = <i>unwilling.</i> )
---------	-----------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------

2. Vōlo, nōlo and mālo are followed by an infinitive without an accusative : as, Romam venire vult, *he wishes to come to Rome*; ad Galliam venire non vult, *he is unwilling to come to Gaul*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Caesar cum Helvetiis bellum gerere volebat. 2. Consules civem Romanum interficere voluērunt. 3. Milites eo die maluerunt in castris manēre quam (= *rather than*) pugnare. 4. Mons, quem Caesar a Crasso teneri volebat, ab hostibus tenebatur. 5. Num Ariovistus in proelio cum Romanis contendere voluit? 6.

Quis mare hieme navigare velit? 7. Utinam hostes bellum contra Romanos gerere vellent. 8. Dixit se velle eum regem illius civitatis facere. 9. Caesar se ab Gallia discedere nolle dixit. 10. Nonne hiemem Romae agere vultis? 11. Utrum pugnare an fugere mavis? 12. Nonne domi esse quam in urbe hostium male-tis? 13. "Mālo," inquit Cicero, "cum Platōne errare quam cum aliis recte facere."

Translate into Latin :—

1. Caesar wished to finish the war before winter. 2. Why do you wish to do such things? 3. We are unwilling to do it, for it will injure our friends. 4. He preferred to remain in the country in summer; in winter, at Rome. 5. Who was willing to sail the sea in winter? 6. Would that he were willing to do it! 7. Were they willing to surrender their arms to us? 8. He wished to reach Rome before night but he was unable. 9. Their scouts wished to discover the plans of our general. 10. Why are you unwilling to tell me the truth? 11. Did Caesar refuse to be called king? 12. He said that he was willing to be called king by the citizens.

---

## LESSON LXXIV.

### ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF PRICE.

#### ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

1. Price, with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, is expressed by the ablative when the price is definitely stated: as, *Viginti talentis unam orationem vendidit Isocrates, Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents; multo sanguine haec victoria nobis stat, this victory costs us much blood (literally, stands to us at much blood).*

Note.—With verbs of *exchange*, the thing received in exchange is usually in the accusative and the thing given in exchange in the ablative: as, *Exilium patriā mutāvit, he received exile in exchange for his native land (=he went into exile).*

#### GENITIVE OF PRICE.

2. When the price for which a thing is bought or sold is not stated definitely, *price* is usually expressed by the genitive, especi-

ally with the words *magni* (*at a great price*), *parvi* (*at a low price*), *pluris* (*at a greater price*), *mīnōris* (*at a less price*), *tanti* (*at so great a price*), *quanti* (*at as great a price*): as, *Hortos tanti quanti tu ēmit*, *he bought gardens at as high a price as you*; *frumentum pluris vendo*, *I sell corn at a higher price.*

Note.—Do not use *multi* or *maioris*, but *magni*, *pluris*, for *at a high price*, *at a higher price.*

Translate into English :—

1. *Frumenti modius in Sicilia aestimatus est ternis sestertiis.*<sup>1</sup> 2. *Illo die frumentum exercitui metiri coeperunt.* 3. *Utinam Romam mecum ire voluisset.* 4. *Cum finitimis civitatibus pacem facere quam bellum gerere mavult.* 5. *Num boni cives patriam suam auro vendere volent?* 6. *Minimi frumentum in his locis vendunt.* 7. *Noli putare pacem gemmis venalem esse.* 8. *Quis ab Aeduis frumentum hoc tempore postulare vult?* 9. *Utrum Romam ire an domi manere hodie vis?* 10. *Voluptatem virtus minimi aestimat.* 11. *Homines suā parvi pendere, aliena cupere solent* 12. *Haec civitas est magnae auctoritatis inter Gallos.* 13. *Eo die Romā ad Graeciam proficisci voluit.* 14. *Nulla pestis humano generi pluris stat quam irā.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. He was unwilling to sell his corn at so high a price. 2. Was he not willing to lead the army against the Gauls? 3. He preferred to sail to Greece rather than remain at Rome. 4. The Germans were of tall stature, and of great skill in arms. 5. He bought corn at three sesterces a bushel. 6. This man sold his native land for gold. 7. This gem was valued by my father at one hundred denarii.<sup>2</sup> 8. Will he be willing to command an army? 9. You have a man of remarkable modesty, well-tried valor, and approved fidelity. 10. It is your interest to aid the state as much as possible. 11. It is a great disgrace to the country to sell its honour for gold. 12. He preferred to carry on war for many years against the Gauls. 13. He was unwilling to remain at home during the whole winter.

<sup>1</sup> Roman silver coin worth nearly 5 cents.

<sup>2</sup> Roman silver coin worth nearly 20 cents.

## LESSON LXXV.

## FĒRO, I CARRY.

1. The verb *fĕro*, *I carry*, is irregular. It is inflected as follows :—

*Fĕro*, *I carry*, *bear*.

Principal parts—*Fĕro*, *ferre*, *tŭli*, *lĕtum*.

## PRESENT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	
1. Pers.,	<i>fĕro</i>	<i>fĕror</i>	<i>fĕrar</i>
2. “	<i>fers</i>	<i>ferris</i> or <i>ferre</i>	<i>fĕrĕris</i> or <i>fĕrĕre</i>
3. “	<i>fert</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>fĕrĕtur</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers.,	<i>fĕrimus</i>	<i>fĕrimur</i>	<i>fĕramur</i>
2. “	<i>fertis</i>	<i>fĕrimini</i>	<i>fĕramini</i>
3. “	<i>fĕrunt</i>	<i>fĕruntur</i>	<i>fĕrantur</i>

## IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	
1. Pers.,	<i>fĕrĕbam</i>	<i>fĕrĕbar</i>	<i>fĕrer</i>
2. “	<i>fĕrĕbĕs</i>	<i>fĕrĕbĕris</i> or <i>fĕrĕbĕre</i>	<i>fĕrĕris</i> or <i>fĕrĕre</i>
3. “	<i>fĕrĕbat</i>	<i>fĕrĕbĕtur</i>	<i>fĕrĕtur</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers.,	<i>fĕrĕbĕmus</i>	<i>fĕrĕbĕmur</i>	<i>fĕrĕmur</i>
2. “	<i>fĕrĕbĕtis</i>	<i>fĕrĕbĕmini</i>	<i>fĕrĕmini</i>
3. “	<i>fĕrĕbant</i>	<i>fĕrĕbantur</i>	<i>ferrentur</i>

## FUTURE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	
1. Pers.,	<i>fĕram</i>	<i>fĕrar</i>	None.
2. “	<i>fĕrĕs</i>	<i>fĕrĕris</i> or <i>fĕrĕre</i>	
3. “	<i>fĕret</i>	<i>fĕrĕtur</i>	
<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
1. Pers.,	<i>fĕrĕmus</i>	<i>fĕrĕmur</i>	
2. “	<i>fĕrĕtis</i>	<i>fĕrĕmini</i>	
3. “	<i>fĕrent</i>	<i>fĕrentur</i>	

PERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
tūli	tūlērim	lātus sum	lātus sim
tūlisti	tūlēris	lātus es	lātus sis
tūlit	tūlērit	lātus est	lātus sit
tūlīmus	tūlērimus	lāti sūmus	lāti simus
tūlistis	tūlēritis	lāti estis	lāti sitis
tūlērunt <i>or</i> tūlere	tūlērint	lāti sunt	lāti sint

PLUPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
tūlēram	tūlissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
tūlērās	tūlissēs	lātus erās	lātus essēs
tūlērat	tūlisset	lātus erat	lātus esset
tūlērāmus	tūlissēmus	lāti ēramus	lāti essēmus
tūlērātis	tūlissētis	lāti ērātis	lāti essētis
tūlērant	tūlissent	lāti ērant	lāti essent

FUTURE-PERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
tūlēro	None.	lātus ero	None.
tūlēris		lātus eris	
tūlērit		lātus erit	
tūlērimus		lāti ērimus	
tūlēritis		lāti ēritis	
tūlērint		lāti ērunt	

IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
2. Sing.,	fer	ferre
2. Plural,	ferte	fērīmīni

INFINITIVE.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Present,	ferre	ferri
Perfect,	tūlisse	lātus esse
Future,	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES.

Present,	fērens	Perfect,	lātus, a, um
Future,	lātūrus, a, um	Future,	fērendus, a, um <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fēro is of the third conjugation : ferre = fērēre (the middle e being dropped); so also ferrem = ferērem. The vowel -i is dropped in fers (=feris), fert (=ferit), and fertis (=ferītis). The forms fēro, tūli, lātum, are derived from three independent stems.

2. The compounds of *fēro* are given for reference :—

PRES. IND	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
<i>affēro</i> (ad + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>afferre</i> ,	<i>attūli</i> ,	<i>allātum</i> , <i>bring to</i> .
<i>aufēro</i> (ab + <i>fēro</i> )	<i>auferre</i> ,	<i>abstūli</i> ,	<i>ablātum</i> , <i>carry away</i> .
<i>confēro</i> (con, <i>together</i> , + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>conferre</i> ,	<i>contūli</i> ,	<i>collātum</i> , <i>to bring together</i> .
<i>effēro</i> (ex + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>efferre</i> ,	<i>extūli</i> ,	<i>elātum</i> , <i>carry out</i> .
<i>infēro</i> (in + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>inferre</i> ,	<i>intūli</i> ,	<i>illātum</i> , <i>carry into</i> .
<i>offēro</i> (ob, <i>on, to</i> , + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>offerre</i> ,	<i>obtūli</i> ,	<i>oblātum</i> , <i>present</i> .
<i>prōfēro</i> (prō + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>prōferre</i> ,	<i>protūli</i> ,	<i>prolātum</i> , <i>carry forward</i> .
<i>rēfēro</i> (re, <i>back</i> , + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>rēferre</i> ,	<i>retūli</i> ,	<i>relātum</i> , <i>carry back</i> .
<i>diffēro</i> (dis, <i>apart</i> , + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>differre</i> ,	<i>distūli</i> ,	<i>dilātum</i> , <i>differ</i> .
<i>suffēro</i> (sub, <i>under</i> , + <i>fēro</i> ),	<i>sufferre</i> ,	<i>sustūli</i> ,	<i>sublātum</i> , <i>endure</i> .
<i>tollo</i> ,	<i>tollere</i> ,	<i>sustūli</i> ,	<i>sublatum</i> , <i>lift, take away</i> .

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Onus gravissimum a servo domum fertur. 2. Dicit iniurias a nobis diu esse latas. 3. Nos omnes scimus onera a servis ferri. 4. Negabant socii se castris auxilium laturos esse. 5. Negabant se vultus Germanorum ferre posse. 6. Hostes primum impetum nostrorum militum ferre non poterant. 7. Dona et praemia ad milites primae legionis lata sunt. 8. Fer, puer, hos liberos ad patrem. 9. Ferre labores est viri fortis. 10. Dicit hostes in unum locum impedimenta contulisse. 11. Quae mutari non possunt, patienter feramus. 12. Imperator impedimenta in unum locum conferri iussit. 13. Haec responsa ad Caesarem ab exploratoribus lata sunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The baggage was brought together into one place. 2. The slave carried a heavy load home. 3. He said that the Romans had endured wrongs for-a-long-time (*diu*). 4. You all know that the slaves carried arms to the enemy. 5. The allies will bring aid to us to-day. 6. We were not able to bear so heavy a load. 7. The soldiers of the tenth legion carried wood to the camp. 8. Bear, O boys, these orders to your master. 9. Let men bear what they

cannot change. 10. O! that he may be willing to bear this burden.  
 11. Let us bring aid to our soldiers who have fought bravely  
 against the enemy. 12. Word was brought to the general that the  
 soldiers were unwilling to fight.

## LESSON LXXVI.

## FIO, I BECOME.

1. The irregular verb *fio*, *I am made, I become* (passive of *fācio*, *make*), is inflected as follows:—

Principal parts—*Fīo, fīēri, factus sum.*

## PRESENT.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>fīc</i>	<i>fīam</i>
<i>fīs</i>	<i>fīas</i>
<i>fīt</i>	<i>fīat</i>
<i>fīmus</i>	<i>fīāmus</i>
<i>fītis</i>	<i>fīātis</i>
<i>fīunt</i>	<i>fīānt</i>

## PERFECT.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>
<i>factus ēs</i>	<i>factus sis</i>
<i>factus est</i>	<i>factus sit</i>
<i>facti sūmus</i>	<i>facti simus</i>
<i>facti estis</i>	<i>facti sitis</i>
<i>facti sunt</i>	<i>facti sint</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<i>fīēbam</i>	<i>fīērem</i>
<i>fīēbās</i>	<i>fīērēs</i>
<i>fīēbat</i>	<i>fīēret</i>
<i>fīēbāmus</i>	<i>fīērēmus</i>
<i>fīēbātis</i>	<i>fīērētis</i>
<i>fīēbant</i>	<i>fīērent</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>factus eram</i>	<i>factus essem</i>
<i>factus ērās</i>	<i>factus essēs</i>
<i>factus erat</i>	<i>factus esset</i>
<i>facti ērāmus</i>	<i>facti essēmus</i>
<i>facti ērātis</i>	<i>facti essētis</i>
<i>facti érant</i>	<i>facti essent</i>

## FUTURE.

<i>fīam</i>	None.
<i>fīēs</i>	
<i>fīet</i>	
<i>fīēmus</i>	
<i>fīētis</i>	
<i>fient</i>	

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

<i>factus ero</i>
<i>factus ēris</i>
<i>factus ērit</i>
<i>facti ērīmus</i>
<i>facti ērītis</i>
<i>facti ērunt</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

Present,	<i>fī</i>	<i>fīte</i>
----------	-----------	-------------

## INFINITIVE.

Present, <i>fīēri</i> ,	Perfect, <i>factus esse</i> ,	Future, <i>factum irī</i> .
-------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------

## PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, <i>factus, a, um.</i>	Future, <i>fāciendus, a, um.</i>
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

2. *Fio* is used as the passive of *facio*, *I make*, which is regular except that it omits *-e* in the 2nd singular present imperative : as, *Fac, do thou; faciēte, do ye or you.*<sup>1</sup>

3. *Facio*, when compounded with a preposition, changes *-a* to *-i*, and makes its passive regularly in *-ficior* : as, *perficior* (from *perficio*, *finish*), *efficior* (from *efficio*, *effect*).

In other cases, the *-a* remains unchanged, and the passive is *-fio* : as, *satisfacio*, *satisfy* ; pass., *satisfio*.

#### ABLATIVE OF SOURCE OR ORIGIN.

4. The English *from*, expressing *source*, is generally expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* (or *ab*), *e* (or *ex*) : as, *Hoc audiui e meo patre, I have heard this from my father.* The English *from*, expressing *origin*, (except with the names of remote ancestors) is generally expressed by the ablative without a preposition : as, *Ille optimis parentibus ortus est, that man is descended from very noble parents.* But : *Belgae a Germanis orti sunt, the Belgae are descended from the Germans.*

#### EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *gigno*, *orior*, *nascor*, *ēdo*, *facio*.

Translate into English :—

1. *Haec nullo modo fieri possunt.* 2. *Hic vir, nobili patre natus, consul fiet.* 3. *Dixit hoc fieri posse.* 4. *Ne impetus in hostes fiat.* 5. *Utinam Cicero illo tempore consul factus esset.* 6. *Tum Caesar litteris certior fiebat Belgas contra populum Romanum coniurare.* 7. *Utinam vos ipsi amici Caesaris essetis.* 8. *Undique uno tempore impetus in hostes fiebat.* 9. *Helvetii de Caesaris adventu certiores facti sunt.* 10. *Utinam Romulus, optimo parente genitus, nunc esset rex.* 11. *Hoc Caesaris voluntate non fit.* 12. *Ille a populo Romano consul est factus.* 13. *Copias ex castris duc ; et contra hostes pugnā.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. Many things become easy by practice. 2. Let nothing be done without the consent of Caesar. 3. He is not able to do this

<sup>1</sup>So too *dīco*, *I say* ; *duco*, *I lead*, and *fero*, *I carry*, make the imperative 2nd sing. in *dīc*, pl. *dicite* ; *duc*, *ducite* ; *fer*, *ferite*.



without your aid. 4. These men, born from illustrious parents, sold the city for gold. 5. He says that this could have been done by you. 6. Let not attacks against our camp be made. 7. O ! that you were able to make an attack against the town at daybreak. 8. Caesar was informed by spies that the enemy were attacking the town. 9. The enemy made an attack against our forces from all sides. 10. The Romans were said to be descended from the Trojans. 11. These things were not done with my consent. 12. O consuls, lead out your troops and make an attack upon the enemy. 13. O boy, tell these things to your father.

## LESSON LXXVII.

## EO, I GO.

1. The irregular verb *ĕo*, *I go*, is inflected as follows :—

*Ĕo*, *I go*.

Principal parts—*Ĕo*, *ire*, *ivī* or *īi*, *ītum*.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
1. Pers., <i>ĕo</i>	<i>ĕam</i>	<i>ivī</i> or <i>īi</i>	<i>ivĕrim</i> or <i>ĭĕrim</i>
2. “ <i>is</i>	<i>ĕās</i>	<i>ivisti</i> or <i>īisti</i>	<i>ivĕris</i> or <i>ĭĕris</i>
3. “ <i>it</i>	<i>ĕat</i>	<i>ivit</i> or <i>īit</i>	<i>ivĕrit</i> or <i>ĭĕrit</i>
1. Pers., <i>imus</i>	<i>ĕāmus</i>	<i>ivimus</i> or <i>īimus</i>	<i>ivĕrimus</i> or <i>ĭĕrimus</i>
2. “ <i>itis</i>	<i>ĕātis</i>	<i>ivistis</i> or <i>īistis</i>	<i>ivĕritis</i> or <i>ĭĕritis</i>
3. “ <i>ĕunt</i>	<i>ĕant</i>	<i>ivĕrunt</i> or <i>ĭĕrunt</i> <i>ivĕre</i> or <i>ĭĕre</i>	<i>ivĕrint</i> or <i>ĭĕrint</i>
IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
1. Pers., <i>ibam</i>	<i>irem</i>	<i>ivĕram</i> or <i>ĭĕram</i>	<i>ivissem</i> or <i>ĭissem</i>
2. “ <i>ibās</i>	<i>irēs</i>	<i>ivĕrās</i> or <i>ĭĕrās</i>	<i>ivissēs</i> or <i>ĭissēs</i>
3. “ <i>ibat</i>	<i>iret</i>	<i>ivĕrat</i> or <i>ĭĕrat</i>	<i>ivisset</i> or <i>ĭisset</i>
1. Pers., <i>ibāmus</i>	<i>irĕmus</i>	<i>ivĕrāmus</i> or <i>ĭĕrāmus</i>	<i>ivissĕmus</i> or <i>ĭissĕmus</i>
2. “ <i>ibātis</i>	<i>irĕtis</i>	<i>ivĕrātis</i> or <i>ĭĕrātis</i>	<i>ivissĕtis</i> or <i>ĭissĕtis</i>
3. “ <i>ibant</i>	<i>irent</i>	<i>ivĕrant</i> or <i>ĭĕrant</i>	<i>ivissent</i> or <i>ĭissent</i>

## FUTURE.

1. Pers.,	ībo	None.
2. “	ībis	
3. “	ībit	
1. Pers.,	ībimus	
2. “	ībītis	
3. “	ībunt	

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

īvēro or iēro	None.
īvēris or iēris	
īvērit or iērit	
īvērimus or iērimus	
īvērītis or iērītis	
īvērint or iērint	

## IMPERATIVE PRESENT.

2. Sing., ī

2. Plural, īte

## INFINITIVE.

Present, ire,                      Perfect, īvisse or īisse,                      Future, itūrus esse

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres., iēns (Gen., ēuntis),                      Fut. Act., itūrus, a, um,  
Fut. Pass., ēundus, a, um.

Note.—A common compound of ēo, is vēnēo [vēnum, *to sale* (obsolete adverb), and eo], *be sold*. Principal parts: Vēnēo, vēn-īre, vēnīi, vēnītum.

## ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

2. The English *from*, expressing separation, is—except with the names of towns and small islands—generally expressed by the ablative with the preposition *a* (*ab*), *e* (*ex*), or *de*: as, *A rege Pyrrho ex Italia legati vēnērunt*, *ambassadors came from king Pyrrhus in Italy* (literally, *from Italy*). But, *Romā profectus est*, *he set out from Rome* (p. 85).

Note.—The preposition is generally omitted after:—

(1) Verbs meaning to *desist from*, *relieve from*, *deprive of*, *need*, *be without*, *free from*: as, *Conātu destītit*, *he desisted from the attempt*; *lēvā me hoc onēre*, *relieve me from this burden*; *oculis se privavit*, *he deprived himself of eyes*; *non ēgēo medicinā*, *I want no medicine*; *homo culpā vacat*, *the man is without a fault*.

(2) Adjectives signifying *want*, or *freedom from*: as, *Animus liber curā*, *a mind free from care*; *puer est expers metu*, *the boy is free from fear*; *urbs est nudā praesidio*, *the city is destitute of defence*.

## EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : eo, in eo, contendo, desisto, transeo, redeo, cognosco.

Translate into English :—

1. L. Brutus, patre nobilissimo natus, civitatem dominatu regio liberavit. 2. Hoc conatu Romani destitērunt et domum iverunt. 3. Helvetiī, hoc metu liberati, contra hostes iērunt. 4. Illi e finibus suis exire voluērunt. 5. Nemo ante Hannibalem cum exercitu Alpes transiit. 6. Omnium Romanorum princeps Horatius contra hostes ibat. 7. I, lictor, hunc hominem delīgā et me timore liberā. 8. Tum omnes magno tumultu ex castris exivērunt. 9. Mens sapientis est curā liberā. 10. Num consul hanc urbem praesidio nudam relinquit? 11. Post hanc infelicem pugnam exercitus domum rediit. 12. Milites duobus itineribus domo exire poterant. 13. Omnium rerum naturā cognitā, levamur superstitione. 14. Omnes milites ex castris ivisse dixit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Will you go home with me? 2. The consul went out of the camp with all his troops free-from (*expers*) fear. 3. Let us go across the river to the house of my friend. 4. Go, messenger, tell the Roman Senate that we will not obey their laws. 5. O! that the consul had defended us on that day. 6. A man free from care is a joy (*dat.*) to his friends. 7. Corn was never sold cheaper. 8. Caesar says that he will go with the tenth legion alone. 9. The Germans said that they would cross the river and devastate the lands of the Roman people. 10. The number of those who returned home was three hundred. 11. He freed his native land from slavery. 12. The consul went to the army and protected it from attack. 13. We shall go against the enemy relying on the aid of the immortal gods.

---



## EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *ēdo*, *fio*, *defendo*, *edūco*, *subsequor*, *possum*, *capio*, *iubeo*, *nolo*.

Translate into English :—

1. Multi barbari carnem humanam *ēdunt*. 2. Num, puer, cibum hunc edes? 3. Utinam hunc cibum, qui a servo mihi datus est, edissem. 4. Haec res a consule eo die fiet. 5. Nonne viri hi optimi, claris parentibus orti, consulem defendent? 6. Ipse omnes copias ex castris eduxit equitatumque subsequi iussit. 7. Vespere domum ire voluit. 8. Utinam eā aestate Romam ire noluisset. 9. Hunc cibum *ēdere* non potest. 10. Hostes castra Romanorum capere non potērunt. 11. Num collem summum equitatu occupare potērunt? 12. Quis nos impetu militum defendat? 13. Quis vos telis hostium defendet?

Translate into Latin :—

1. Did he say that he would return to Rome? 2. He freed the state from slavery. 3. Shall we not go against the enemy, relying on our own valor? 4. He was a man of great ability but he lacked (*expers esse*) prudence. 5. O! that I had not eaten the food. 6. The general took the city which was without a guard. 7. Caesar led away his forces from the city which he had liberated from siege. 8. Was he unwilling to return home that day? 9. O! that he were willing to go with us to Gaul. 10. Shall we not go against an enemy who, for so many years, has devastated our fields? 11. Go, soldiers, against the enemy with firm courage. 12. Who will say that corn has ever been sold at a higher price? 13. These laws were passed<sup>1</sup> by the citizens in their assembly.

## LESSON LXXIX.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Verbs used only in the third person singular are called impersonal: as, *ningit*, *it snows*.

2. Impersonal verbs are conjugated like other verbs of the con-

<sup>1</sup>To pass a law, *ferre legem*.

jugation to which they belong, but they are often defective in the supine and participle : as,

Constat, <i>it is admitted.</i>	Principal parts :	constat,	constāre,	constītit.
Līcet, <i>it is allowed.</i>	“ “	līcet,	līcēre,	līcūit.
Accīdit, <i>it happens.</i>	“ “	accīdit,	accīdēre,	accīdit.
Ēvēnit, <i>it happens.</i>	“ “	ēvēnit,	ēvēnīre,	ēvēnit.

3. Constat, līcet, accīdit, ēvēnit, are inflected as follows :—

## INDICATIVE.

Present,	constat	līcet	accīdit	ēvēnit
Imperfect,	constābat	līcēbat	accīdēbat	ēvēnīēbat
Future,	constābit	līcēbit	accīdet	ēvēniet
Perfect,	constītit	līcūit	accīdit	ēvēnit
Pluperfect,	constītērat	līcūērat	accīderat	ēvēnērat
Future-Perfect,	constītērit	līcūērit	accīderit	ēvēnērit

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present,	constet	līcēat	accīdat	ēvēnīat
Imperfect,	constaret	līcēret	accīderet	ēvēnīret
Perfect,	constītērit	līcūērit	accīderit	ēvēnērit
Pluperfect,	constītisset	līcūisset	accīdisset	ēvēnisset

## INFINITIVE.

Present,	constāre	līcēre	accīdēre	ēvēnīre
Perfect,	constītisse	līcūisse	accīdisse	ēvēnisse
Future,	constātūrum esse	līcītūrum esse	—	ēvēntūrum esse

Note.—By after *it is admitted* is inter : as, Inter omnes constat, *it is admitted by all*, or *all admit*.

4. The English *ought* may be expressed by the impersonal oportet, oportēre, oportūit, *it is needful* : as, Te hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this*; te hoc facere oportēbat or oportuit, *you ought to have done this*; te hoc facere oportēbit, *you ought to do this* (in the future).

Note.—Instead of the impersonal oportet with the accusative, the personal dēbeo, *I owe*, may be used : as, Hoc facere dēbes, *you ought to do this*; hoc facere debēbas or debūisti, *you ought to have done this*; hoc facere debēbis, *you ought to do this* (in the future).

5. The English *may* and *might* (expressing *permission*) are translated by *licet*, *it is allowed*, *licēre*, *licūit*: as, *Mihi hoc facere licet*, *I may do this* (literally, *it is allowed to me to do this*); *tibi hoc facere licēbat* or *licuit*, *you might have done this*; *ei hoc facere licebit*, *he will be allowed to do this* (in the future).

Note.—The tense of the infinitive after *possum*, *licet*, *debeo*, *oportet*, does not change in Latin as in English: as, *Hoc facere potui*, *I could have done it*.

6. A predicate adjective after *esse* (*to be*) governed by *licet*, agrees in gender, number and case with the noun or pronoun to which it refers: as, *Aliis esse ignāvis licet*, *others may be cowards* (literally, *it is allowed to others to be cowards*). So also with *necesse esse* (*it is necessary*), *expēdit* (*it is expedient*), *libet* (*it is pleasing*): as, *Necesse est nobis esse fortibus*, *it is necessary for us to be brave*; *ei esse otioso non expēdit*, *it is not expedient for him to be at leisure*; *ei libebit esse amico*, *it will please him to be a friend*.

EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of: *licet*, *expedit*, *libet*, *oportet*, *debeo*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Licet nobis bellum cum iis gerere*. 2. *Licebit iis nobiscum bella multa gerere*. 3. *Oportet me omnia fortiter ferre*. 4. *Eum ad mortem duci oportuit*. 5. *Nobis non expedit esse otiosis*. 6. *Romam eo tempore ire debuere*. 7. *Privati agri apud eos nihil est; neque longius anno remanere uno in loco licet*. 8. *Liberi eorum in servitatem abduci non debent*. 9. *Non tibi esse ignavo licebit*. 10. *Tibi Romae manere non libet*. 11. *Inter omnes constat Ciceronem eloquentissimum oratorem esse*. 12. *Helvetiis iter per provinciam Romanam facere non licuit*. 13. *Constat inter omnes Romam caput orbis terrarum fuisse*.

Translate into Latin:—

1. You might have done this. 2. I could have remained at Rome all the winter. 3. We ought to bear the hardships of life bravely. 4. You ought, Catiline, long ago to have been put to death. 5. O! that it were expedient for me to be at leisure. 6. We were not permitted to attack the enemy. 7. Did not the

Romans permit us to make a march through the province? 8. All admit that the moon is smaller than the earth. 9. Did not all admit that Homer was a greater poet than Vergil? 10. Ought not the general to have attacked the enemy? 11. It is admitted by all that Caesar will fight with the Gauls in the spring. 12. The sick man is not allowed to see his friends. 13. He ought to have seen his father on that day.

---

## LESSON LXXX.

### IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS THAT GOVERN THE DATIVE.

1. Verbs that govern a *dative* in the active (p. 105), are used *impersonally* in the passive : as, *Ego tibi impero, I command you; ego tibi credo, I believe you.* But in the passive: *Tibi imperatur, you are commanded* (literally, *it is commanded to you*); *tibi creditur, you are believed* (not *tu imperāris, tu credēris*).

2. Intransitive verbs are often used in the passive impersonally : as, *Ītur, people go* (literally, *it is gone*); *curritur, they run* (literally, *it is run*); *pugnatum est, a battle was fought.*

Note 1.—With such verbs the agent is generally omitted ; if it is expressed, it may be in the dative or in the ablative with *a* (or *ab*) : as, *Helvetiis* (or *ab Helvetiis*) *pugnatum est, a battle was fought by the Helvetii.*

Note 2.—Such verbs are often best translated by substituting an appropriate noun as subject : as, *Clamatum est, a shout was raised.*

3. Some verbs that are impersonal in English are personal in Latin : as, *Cicero eo anno consul fuisse videtur, it seems that Cicero was consul in that year; urbs Roma a Romulo esse condita dicitur, it is said that the city of Rome was founded by Romulus.* So too, *Putor, I am supposed; feror, I am said.*

#### EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *credo, persuadeo, pareo, ignosco, parco, capio, curro, trado, venio.*



Translate into English :—

1. Solon esse sapientissimus dictus est.
2. Homērus multis annis ante Vergilium vixisse traditus est.
3. Omnibus mulieribus liberisque parceretur.
4. Nonne tibi a magistro creditum est?
5. Num hoc oppidum ab hostibus eo anno captum esse dicitur?
6. Tibi a bonis non ignoscitur.
7. Imperatori a militibus non parebatur.
8. Omnibus ad portam curritur.
9. In eo loco multas horas acriter pugnatum est.
10. Duci a militibus decimae legionis non parebitur.
11. Mihi ab amico persuasum est.
12. Ille vir doctissimus fuisse dicitur.
13. Romam nobis vespere ventum est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. It was said that Cicero was the most eloquent of all the Romans.
2. You were believed by all the soldiers in the army.
3. They will be pardoned by the general.
4. I was easily persuaded by my friend.
5. It seems that he was the bravest of the soldiers.
6. It is related that Athens, the capital of Greece, was founded by Cecrops.
7. A battle was fought on the plain by the Romans.
8. All ran to the gates of the camp.
9. You were not obeyed by the boys.
10. It is said that Vergil lived at the same time as Horace.
11. Will not all the prisoners be pardoned by the general?
12. Will not the messenger be believed by all the soldiers?
13. Did it not seem that he was the most learned of the Romans?

---

## LESSON LXXXI.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS—(*Continued*).

1. The construction of the following verbs expressing *feeling* should be noticed: *Miseret* (*it excites pity*), *poenitet* (*it repents*), *pudet* (*it shames*), *taedet* (*it wearies*), *piget* (*it vexes*). They are used with the *accusative of the person affected and the genitive of the object causing the feeling*: as, *Eorum nos miseret*, *we pity them* (literally, *it excites one's pity of them*); *hos homines ignaviae suae pudet*, *these men are ashamed of their idleness*; *te stultitiae poenitet*, *you repent of your folly*; *me dubitationis huius taedet*, *I am weary of this hesitation*.

2. *Ōpus est* and *ūsus est*, *there is need*, are generally used impersonally with the *dative* of the person to whom there is need and the *ablative* of the thing needed: as, *Cibo mihi opus est*, *I have need of food* (literally, *there is need to me with food*); *viginti talentis tibi usus est*, *you have need of twenty talents*.

3. The impersonals *intērest* and *rēfert*, *it is of importance*, have the genitive of the person to whom the matter is of importance: as, *Clodii intererat Milōnem perire*, *it was of importance to Clodius that Milo should die*. But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, the ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun is used in Latin: as, *Id meā interest*, *this is of importance to me*; *hoc tuā intererat*, *this was of importance to you*. The degree of importance is expressed either by an adverb (*e.g.*, *multum*, *magnopere*, *plurimum*, *etc.*), or by a genitive of price (*e.g.*, *tanti*, *magni*, *parvi*, *etc.*): as, *Multum meā interest*, *it is of much importance to me*; *magni tuā intererat*, *it was of great importance to you*.

## EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of: *pudet*, *poenitet*, *miseret*, *taedet*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Nonne te stultitiae tuae pudet?* 2. *Nobis armis opus est.* 3. *Tui flagitii poenitere te oportet.* 4. *Omnium civium a consule servari intererat.* 5. *Magistratibus igitur nobis opus est, sine quorum prudentiā esse civitas non potest.* 6. *Vestrā intererat, commilitones, castris hostium potiri.* 7. *Hodie omnibus praesidio tuo opus est.* 8. *Magni meā interest te mihi adesse.* 9. *Hunc hominem sclerum poenitebit.* 10. *Nos illius viri miseret.* 11. *Ad salutem civitatis intererat nos quam maximas copias comparare.* 12. *Magni intererit tuā amicos quam plurimos habere.* 13. *Eius stultitiae me eo tempore puduit.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. I am ashamed of his cowardice. 2. You have need of friends. 3. We ought all to be ashamed of our defeat. 4. It is of great importance that the city should be saved. 5. We have all need of friends without whose aid we cannot do good to others. 6. It is to their interest to help their friends in danger. 7. It is of the

highest interest to you to aid your brother. 8. Did he not repent of his undertaking? 9. He said that it was his interest to remain at Rome. 10. You ought to collect as many soldiers as possible. 11. You ought to repent of your wicked deeds. 12. We are not ashamed of our forefathers. 13. He pitied the sorrows of the old man.

---

## LESSON LXXXII.

### VERBS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *condemning*, *reminding*, and *admonishing* take, in the active, the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing : as, *Te impietātis absolvo*, *I acquit you of impiety*; *arguit me furti*, *he accuses me of theft*; *cives eum proditiōnis accusaverunt*, *the citizens accused him of treachery*; *iudices hunc furti condemnant*, *the jury condemn this man for theft*; *Catilina eos egestatis admonebat*, *Catiline reminded them of their needy condition*; *nos officii nostri admonuit*, *he reminded us of our duty*.

Note.—In the passive, these constructions become respectively : *Tu impietatis ab me absolvēris*; *furti ab eo arguor*; *is proditiōnis a civibus accusatus est*, *hic furti ab iudicibus condemnatur*; *ei egestatis a Catilina admonebantur*; *nos officii nostri ab eo admoniti sumus*.

#### EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *dico*, *solvo*, *parco*, *cado*, *occido*, *licet*.

Translate into English :—

1. Themistocles absens proditiōnis damnatus est. 2. Iudex eum iniuriarum absolvit. 3. Nonne omnes eum furti accusaverunt? 4. Me officii mei admonere licuit. 4. Nos omnes stultitiæ nostræ poenitere oportet. 5. Num puer ab iudice furti absolutus est? 6. Huius post mortem populum iudicii sui poenitebit. 7. Catilina coniurationis contra patriam ab Cicerone condemnatus est. 8. Opus est omnibus nobis sapientiā. 9. Alium (*one*) stultitiæ, alium sceleris

admonet. 10. Magni nostrā interest milites quam plurimos comparare. 11. Quam plurimos occīdisse dixit. 12. Nonne omnibus liberis a militibus parceretur? 13. Tuo praesidio nobis usus erat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They condemned the boy for theft. 2. They acquitted him of treachery. 3. Was he accused of cowardice? 4. He was unwilling to remind them of their folly. 5. Was Verres not accused of extortion by Cicero? 6. Did he pity the sorrows of the wretched man? 7. Cicero accused him of treachery. 8. We are all in need of foresight in danger. 9. It was of great importance that they should repent of their crimes. 10. Were not the wretched men spared by the soldiers? 11. It was said that he was acquitted of this charge by the judge. 12. We all needed your help on that day. 13. O! that he had repented of his folly.

---

## LESSON LXXXIII.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

1. The usual word for *he, she, it, they, &c.*, when they are expressed at all, is *Is, eā, id*, (p. 122, 4) : as, *Is hostis esse dicebatur, he was said to be an enemy; id tibi affirmo I assure you of it; in eos officia confērunt, on them they bestow kindnesses.*

2. When *he, she, it, etc.*, are to be strongly emphasized they are expressed by *hic, iste, ille* (p. 118) : as, *Hoc illud est, that is it; ille vitam in otio ēgit, he passed his life in idleness.*

3. *He, she, it, etc.*, referring to the subject of a verb, are expressed by the reflexive *sui* (p. 105) : as, *Caesar dicit se id fēcisse, Caesar says that he (Caesar) did it (eum would mean someone else than Caesar); Caesar eum sibi legatum esse iubet, Caesar orders him to be legate to him (Caesar).*

Note.—In a complex sentence, *ipse* is used to refer to the subject of a subordinate clause, if ambiguity would arise from the use of *sui* : as, *Rogat cur de ipsis despērent, he asks them why they despair of themselves (de se would mean of him).*

4. The forms of *sui* may, however, refer to the object of a verb, if no ambiguity results : as, *Reliquos cogit se convertere*, *the rest he compels to turn* (literally, *to turn themselves*).

5. *His, her, its, their*, are usually expressed by the genitive of *is*: as, *Dixit se eorum amicum esse*, *he said that he was their friend*. But *his, her*, etc., referring to the subject of a verb is expressed by *suus*: as, *Domum suam vendit*, *he sells his house*.

Note 1.—In a complex sentence the genitive of *ipse* is used for *his*, etc., to refer to the subject of a subordinate clause, if ambiguity would arise from the use of *suus*: as, *Rogat cur se ipsorum inimicis tradere velint*, *he asks why they want to surrender him to their enemies*.

Note 2.—The possessive is not expressed in Latin, if no ambiguity arises from its omission : as, *Patri pārē*, *obey your father*.

## EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of : *mitto, credo, parco, relinquo, curro, possum, mōveo, vīdeo, sentio, contemno*.

Translate into English :—

1. Caesar ducem clarissimum contra se lectum esse credebat.  
 2. Sentit animus se vi suā moveri. 3. Clamavit eum cecīdisse.  
 4. Nonne eum flentem vidisti? 5. Credit eum semper nostri memorem esse. 6. Eos eorum copias educere iubet. 7. Rēge dimisso, Caesar copias suas in eius fines duxit. 8. Marcus et Quintus fratres fuērunt ; hic fortior, ille prudentior fuit. 9. Pueri et<sup>1</sup> senem et consilia eius contemnunt. 10. Oppido relicto, Caesar in eos iter fecit. 11. Dixit eum haec vidisse. 12. Nonne is sum qui id feci?

Translate into Latin :—

1. He threw himself upon them. 2. Having sent forward the cavalry, he led the infantry into their territory. 3. Caesar said that he would spare them. 4. Did he not think that they would help him? 5. He promised that he would make war upon their towns. 6. That prison could not hold them. 7. The old man says that he despises both himself and them. 8. Did he think that he was believed? 9. He knew that they were worthy of death. 10. He said that some rivers ran deep. 11. These people think that they are happy. 12. He has taken all their cities.

<sup>1</sup> Et . . . et, both . . . and.

## LESSON LXXXIV.

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

1. One form of the Latin verb remains to be discussed. This is the *gerund*.<sup>1</sup> The gerund is a verbal noun, corresponding to the English participial noun in *-ing*. It is inflected as follows :—

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

GEN.	āmandī, <i>of loving.</i>
DAT.	āmandō, <i>to or for loving.</i>
ACC.	āmandum, <i>loving.</i>
ABL.	āmandō, <i>with, by, from, or in loving</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

mōnendī, <i>of advising.</i>
mōnendō, <i>to or for advising.</i>
mōnendum, <i>advising.</i>
mōnendō, <i>with, by, from or in advising.</i>

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

GEN.	rēgendī, <i>of ruling.</i>
DAT.	rēgendō, <i>to or for ruling.</i>
ACC.	rēgendum, <i>ruling.</i>
ABL.	rēgendō, <i>with, by, from or in ruling.</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

audiendī, <i>of hearing.</i>
audiendō, <i>to or for hearing.</i>
audiendum, <i>hearing.</i>
audiendō, <i>with, by, from or in hearing.</i>

2. The gerund has partly the nature of a noun and partly that of a verb. As a noun, it may be governed by another noun in the genitive, or by an adjective, or by a preposition. It resembles a verb in governing a case and in being limited by an adverb : as, *Ius vocandi senatum*, *the right of summoning the senate*. (Here the gerund is governed in the genitive by *ius*, and governs *senatum* in the accusative, because *vocāre* governs that case); *docendo discimus*, *we learn by teaching*; *natus ad regendum*, *born for ruling*; *parcendo inimicis gloriam paravit*, *he won distinction by sparing his enemies*.

Note.—The nominative of the gerund is supplied by the infinitive : as, *Ambulare iucundum est*, *walking is delightful*.

## GERUNDIVE.

3. Instead of the gerund with an accusative, Latin often uses a peculiar construction of its own. Thus : *Born for ruling men* is not often expressed by *natus ad viros regendum*, but by *natus ad viros*

<sup>1</sup>The word is derived from *gero*, *carry*, because, apparently, it expresses the action of the verb as being “*carried on*.”

regendos, where *regendos* agrees with *viros* in gender, number, and case, and is called the *gerundive*. So too: *In epistolis scribendis* (*in writing letters*) is used for *in scribendo epistolas* and *consilium urbis capiendæ* (*the plan for taking the city*), for *consilium capiendi urbem*.

4. The *gerundive* has the form of the future part. passive. Thus :—

Present stem and -ndus.	{	1. Conj.,	āma-ndus, a, um.
		2. “	mōne-ndus, a, um.
		3. “	rēge-ndus, a, um.
		4. “	audīe-ndus.

5. The rule for turning the *gerund* into the *gerundive* is easily deduced from the above examples. It may be stated as follows : *The direct object of the gerund is attracted into the case of the gerund, which is then made to agree with its object in gender and number.*

6. The genitive of the *gerund* or of the *gerundive* is often used with *causā*, *on account of, for the sake of*, which is written after its case : as, *Vestis est frigōris depellendi causā*, *dress is intended for keeping off cold.*

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Nonne is ad ludos spectandos profectus est? 2. Hic clipeus utilis corpori tegendo est. 3. Eloquentia legendis poetis augētur. 4. Summa voluptas ex discendo capitur. 5. Inīta sunt consilia urbis delendæ. 6. Milites frumentandi causā in fines hostium missi sunt. 7. Non oratum sed querendi causā iērunt. 8. Te duce, ad arma capiēda parati sumus. 9. Nullum spatium ad se armandos dabatur. 10. Optimam occasionem nāvigandi habemus. 11. Breve tempus satis longum est ad bene vivendum. 12. Ea sunt usui ad armandas naves.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Water is good for drinking. 2. They formed the plan of killing the consul. 3. Was he not skilled in (*gen.*) guiding the state? 4. He spent much time in writing letters. 5. The horse is fit for carrying burdens. 6. You will have an opportunity of finishing

the work. 7. He will send them into the territory of the enemy to collect corn (*gerundive with causā*). 8. Have they formed the plan of crossing the river? 9. I thought you had come for the purpose of (*causā*) seeing the city. 10. He said that they were coming for the purpose of making a bridge. 11. Were they ready to take up arms in the consulship of Caesar? 12. He said that he was going into the garden to see the flowers

## LESSON LXXXV.

### THE GERUND—(*Continued*).

#### Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

1. The gerund and *not the gerundive* is to be used:—

(*a*) In the case of verbs that do not govern an accusative: as, *Parcendo inimicis*, *by sparing enemies* (not *parcendis inimicis*).

(*b*) Where euphony would be violated: as, *Amicos vīdendi causā*, *for the sake of seeing friends* (not *amicorum videndorum*).

(*c*) Where ambiguity results: as, *Aliquid docendi causā*, *for the sake of teaching something* (not *alicuius*, which would mean *some one*).

2. The gerundive is often used to express *duty* or *necessity*: as, *Hostis tīmendus*, *an enemy that ought to be, or must be, feared*.

3. From this use of the gerundive, a whole conjugation—called the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*—is formed of the gerundive and the verb *sum*, *I am*. Thus:—

Present,	{ <i>āmandus sum, I am to be loved.</i> <i>āmandus es, thou art to be loved, etc.</i>
Imperfect,	{ <i>āmandus eram, I was to be loved.</i> <i>āmandus eras, thou wast to be loved, etc.</i>
Future,	{ <i>āmandus ero, I shall have to be loved.</i> <i>āmandus eris, thou wilt have to be loved, etc.</i>

and so forth.



4. The agent is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by the dative : as, *Parentes nobis amandi sunt*, *our parents should be loved by us*.

5. The passive periphrastic conjugation is generally used to translate the English *should, ought, must* (expressing duty or necessity) : as, *Ex civitate pellendi sunt*, *they must be banished*.

When the verb in English is active, the object becomes the subject in Latin, and the subject becomes the dative of the agent : as, *Aqua mihi bibenda est*, *I must drink water (=water must be drunk by me)*.

6. Intransitive verbs and verbs that govern the genitive, the dative, or the ablative, must be used *impersonally* in the passive periphrastic conjugation : as, *Nobis eundum est*, *we must go (=it must be gone by us)*; *omnibus moriendum est*, *all must die*; *inimicis a nobis parcendum est*, *we must spare our enemies*; *utendum est iudicio a te*, *you must use your judgment*.

Note.—When a verb does not govern the accusative, the agent (to avoid ambiguity) is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by a (or ab) with the ablative. This appears from the last two examples.

7. With *do* (*give*), *curo* (*take care of*), *trado* (*hand over*), the gerundive is used to express *purpose* : as, *Terram habitandam dat*, *he gives them the land to dwell in*; *pontem faciendum curat*, *he has a bridge built*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. *Pārendum est legibus.*
2. *Haec Caesari miranda videntur.*
3. *Hostibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum esse existimabat.*
4. *Civibus a nobis subveniendum est.*
5. *Caesar ad dilectūs agendos profectus est.*
6. *Intellexit magnam partem equitatūs ab hostibus, aliquot diebus ante, praedandi causā trans flumen esse missam.*
7. *Ars civitatis gubernandae est difficillima.*
8. *In libris tuis legendis tres dies multā cum voluptate exēgi.*
9. *Catilina bellum suscepit reipublicae evertendae causā.*
10. *Ariovistus cum suis ad occupandum oppidum contendit.*
11. *Tempus bello gerendo idoneum non erat.*
12. *Ad galeas induendas tempus deūit.*
13. *Vix iis rebus administrandis tempus dabatur.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. Wisdom is increased by learning and thinking. 2. Caius obtained the consulship for the purpose of avenging his brother. 3. He won credit by aiding friends. 4. Caesar gave the signal for (say *of*) beginning the battle. 5. The Romans were desirous of carrying on war. 6. They undertook the work for the purpose of finishing it. 7. We must all cultivate virtue. 8. I must send this letter to my father at Rome. 9. We must forget our wrongs. 10. The farmer must plough his fields in the spring. 11. Caesar set out to Gaul to carry on war. 12. Do you think that he should be believed? 13. We must all obey the general.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

### ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. SUPINE.

1. Besides the passive periphrastic conjugation in Latin, there is also an active one, expressing *futurity* or *intention*. It is formed from the verb *sum* and the future participle in *-tūrus*. Thus : *Āmaturus sum*, *I am going* (or *intend*) *to love*; *āmaturus eram* (or *fui*), *I was going* (or *intended*) *to love*; and so on through all forms. So too : *Mōnīturus sum*, *I intend to advise*; *mōnīturus eram*, *I intended to advise*.

#### SUPINES.

2. Latin verbs have two supines, one in *-tum* and one in *-tu*. They are formed by adding *-tum* and *-tu* to the present stem or to the present stem modified : as,

*āmātum*, *to love*.

*amātu*, *to be loved*.

*mōnītum*, *to advise*.

*monītu*, *to be advised*.

*rectum*, *to rule*.

*rectu*, *to be ruled*.

*audītum*, *to hear*.

*audītu*, *to be heard*.

3. The supine in *-tum* is used to express *purpose* after verbs of motion. It governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived : as, *Legatos mittunt rogatum auxilium*, *they send ambassadors to ask for aid*; *pabulatum milites emisit*, *he sent out soldiers to forage*.

The supine in *-tu* is used after adjectives expressing *difficulty, ease, credibility, pleasure, worth* or the reverse, and after a few substantives, like *fas (right), nefas (wrong), scēlus (wickedness)*: as, *Difficile est dictu, it is difficult to be said, or it is difficult to say.*

Note 1.—The supines are verbal nouns, one in the accusative and one in the ablative.

Note 2.—The supine in *um* with the pres. inf. pass. of *eo, I go*, is used to form the fut. inf. pass. of the verb. Thus: *He said that he would be advised, dixit se monitum iri = he said that it is gone (i.e., people go) to advise him.*

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Amicitiamne populi Romani est repudiaturus? 2. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium. 3. His rebus factis, consilium urbis capiendae ineunt. 4. Neque obsides repetituri neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturi fuērunt. 5. Bello confecto, legati ad Caesarem gratulatum convenērunt. 6. Omnia uno tempore sunt agenda: vexillum proponendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, acies instruenda. 7. Ex eā civitate profugi ad Senatum Romam venerunt iniurias sociorum questum. 8. Occasio negotiū bene gerendi omittenda non est. 9. Eo die imperator decimam legionem pabulatum misit. 10. Nos neque legatos missuri neque ullam condicionem pacis sumus accepturi. 11. Nonne primo vere agri agricolis arandi sunt? 12. Ite. per provinciam nostram sunt facturi hostes. 13. Ante primam lucem imperator cum tribus legionibus Romā est profecturus.

Translate into Latin :—

1. We must not lose this opportunity of attacking the enemy. 2. Ambassadors came to Rome to ask aid against the Germans. 3. Alexander intended to lead his army across the Granīcus. 4. Ariovistus is not likely to reject my friendship. 5. We intend to set out for Rome before night. 6. After all Gaul was subdued by Caesar (*abl. abs.*), envoys were sent by many states to ask him for peace. 7. Hannibal, incredible to relate, reached Adrumētum, which is a hundred miles distant from Zama, within the space of

two days. 8. All should cultivate the art of speaking. 9. Nothing seemed to Xenophon so princely (*regūlis*) as the pursuit of cultivating the soil. 10. I intend now to speak of (*de*) choosing a commander for (*ad*) that war. 11. The Helvetii were fond of fighting with their neighbors. 12. We must all defend our country when attacked by an enemy (*abl. abs.*). 13. Spring is the time of year for sowing seed.

---

## LESSON LXXXVII.

### CLASSIFICATION OF CLAUSES.—INDIRECT QUESTION.

1. Dependent or subordinate clauses are called *noun clauses*, *adjective clauses*, or *adverbial clauses*, according as they perform the function of a noun, adjective, or adverb. Thus, in *I know who he is*, the clause *who he is* is a noun-clause, object of *know*; in *I saw the man whom you mean*, the clause *whom you mean* is an adjective clause, qualifying *man*; in *He came that he might see the town*, the clause *that he might see the town* is an adverbial clause of purpose, modifying *came*.

#### INDIRECT QUESTION.

2. A noun-clause headed by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb and used as the subject or object of a verb, takes its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is called an *indirect* (or *dependent*) question. Thus: *Scio quis sit*, *I know who he is*; *quid faciat multum rēfert*, *it is of much importance what he does*. (Here *quis sit*, and *quid faciat*, are indirect questions.)

3. The following are the more common interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs: *Quis*, *who?* *uter*, *which of two?* *quantus*, *how great?* *qualis*, *what kind?* *quot*, *how many?* *ubi*, *where?* *unde*, *whence?* *quo*, *whither?* *cur* (or *quare*), *why?* *qui* or (with adjs. and adverbs) *quam*, *how?* *quemadmodum* or *quomodo*, *in what way?* *quantum*, *how much?* *quando*, *when?* (*quum* is never interrogative), *quoties*, *how often?* *quamdiu*, *how long?*

4. *Whether, if*, at the head of an indirect question, is *num*: as, *Dic mihi num vēnerit*, *tell me if he has come*.

5. *Whether . . . or*, is *utrum . . . an*; but *or not* is *necne* in indirect questions (not *annon*, as in direct. P. 130, 6.): as, *Multum interest utrum valeamus an aegri simus*, *it makes a great difference whether we are well or sick*; *videamus utrum aqua sit necne*, *let us see whether it is water or not*.

Note.—After *nescio* or *haud scio* (*I don't know*), *dubito* (*I doubt*), *incertum est* (*it is uncertain*)—implying an affirmative—*whether* is *an*: as, *Constantiam dico? Nescio an melius patientiam possim dicere*, *consistency, do I say? I don't know whether I can not better say long-suffering*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. Rogat num sui oblitus sim. 2. Quaeramus quoties hic Idem promiserit. 3. Rogabo num is maior fratre sit. 4. Rogemus cur is solus taceat. 5. Omnes intellegunt quam audaces sitis. 6. Hoc dubium est uter nostrum verecundior sit. 7. Ex iis quaeremus quid agant. 8. Nescimus quomodo effugerit. 9. Quot estis? Nescio quot simus. 10. Credo te audivisse quâ mihi hi nocuerint. 11. Novisti eum quam tardus sit. 12. Ex eo quaesivi quanti domum vendiderit. 13. Roga eos unde veniant.

Translate into Latin:—

1. We had not heard whether you conquered. 2. I ask you whether these are your words or not. 3. He asks me whether I had sold all my books. 4. Tell me how many letters you wrote yesterday. 5. I ask you where you have put my book. 6. I do not know when he intends (p. 174) to return. 7. Do not tell him where you are coming from. 8. Do you know by whom the city was founded? 9. It is hard to tell whether you really understand. 10. Have you forgotten where you promised to go to-day? 11. It does not concern me whether it is selling low or not. 12. He is asking if he ought to remain at Rome. 13. Ask him what he is doing about it.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

## CLASSIFICATION OF TENSES.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Indirect Question—(*Continued*).

1. Latin tenses are divided into *Primary* and *Secondary* (or *Historical*), as follows :—

Primary Tenses.	{	Pres.,	āmat, <i>he loves.</i>
		Pres.-Perf.,	āmāvit, <i>he has loved.</i>
		Future,	āmābit, <i>he will love.</i>
		Future Perf.,	āmāvērit, <i>he will have loved.</i>
Secondary or Historical Tenses.	{	Imperf.,	āmābat, <i>he was loving.</i>
		Past Indef.,	āmāvit, <i>he loved.</i>
		Pluperf.,	āmāvērat, <i>he had loved.</i>

Note.—The Latin perfect has the force of both a present-perfect (*i.e.*, perf. with *have*) and a past indefinite. When it is a pres.-perf., it is a *primary* tense ; when a past indef., a *secondary*.

2. The above classification of Latin tenses is important, in view of the fact that the tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause is primary when the tense of the main verb is primary, and secondary when the tense of the main verb is secondary. This is an important rule, and is called the rule for the *Sequence of Tenses*. It may be stated thus :—

## RULE FOR THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

*A primary tense in the principal clause, is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause ; a secondary tense in the principal clause, is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent clause.*

3. The following examples of the indirect question will illustrate the rule :—

## A. PRIMARY TENSES IN BOTH PRINCIPAL AND DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

(1) *Present in Principal clause.*

Scio quid āgās, *I know what you are doing (now) (dependent question, therefore verb in subj.)*

Scio quid ēgēris, *I know what you have done* (in the past).

Scio quid actūrus sīs, *I know what you are going to do* (in the future ; i.e., *what you will do*).

Note.—The place of the fut. subjun. act. (which is wanting), is supplied by the active periphrastic conjugation (p 174, 1).

(2) *Present-Perfect in Principal clause.*

Cognōvi quid āgās, *I have learned what you are doing* (now).

Cognōvi quid ēgēris, *I have learned what you have done* (in the past).

Cognōvi quid actūrus sīs, *I have learned what you are going to do* (in the future).

(3) *Future in Principal clause.*

Audiam quid āgās, *I shall hear what you are doing* (then).

Audiam quid ēgēris, *I shall hear what you have done* (in the past)

Audiam quid actūrus sīs, *I shall hear what you are going to do* (in the future).

(4) *Future-Perfect in Principal clause.*

Cognōvēro quid āgās, *I shall have known what you are doing* (then).

Cognōvēro quid ēgēris, *I shall have known what you have done* (in the past).

Cognōvēro quid actūrus sīs, *I shall have known what you are going to do* (in the future).

B. SECONDARY (OR HISTORICAL) TENSES IN PRINCIPAL AND DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

(1) *Imperfect in Principal clause.*

Sciēbam quid āgērēs, *I knew* (literally, *was knowing*) *what you were doing* (then).

Sciēbam quid ēgissēs, *I knew what you had done* (in the past).

Sciēbam quid actūrus essēs, *I knew what you were going to do* (in the future ; i.e., *what you would do*).

(2) *Past Indefinite in Principal clause.*

Cognōvi quid āgērēs, *I learned what you were doing* (then).

Cognōvi quid ēgissēs, *I learned what you had done* (in the past).

Cognōvi quid actūrus essēs, *I learned what you were going to do* (in the future).

(3) *Pluperfect in Principal clause.*

*Cognōvĕram quid āgĕrĕs, I had learned what you were doing (then.)*

*Cognōvĕram quid ĕgissĕs, I had learned what you had done (in the past).*

*Cognōvĕram quid actūrus essĕs, I had learned what you were going to do (in the future).*

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Quaeritur cur doctissimi homines maxime dissentiant. 2. Qualis ipse sit animus nescit. 3. Quid dies ferat est incertum. 4. Quid proximā, quid superiore nocte egeris, quis nostrum ignorat? 5. Quid eā nocte egisset, quid in (*for*) proximam constituisset, edocui. 6. Vidēs quanta tempestas invidiae nobis impendat. 7. Neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae nationes eam incolerent reperiēbat. 8. Ex his omnibus iudicat rebus quanto cum periculo et quantā cum virtute res sint administratae. 9. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae apud Ciceronem gerantur. 10. Interim legatis convocatis, et quae cognovisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit. 11. Memoravit quibus in locis m̄ximae hostium copiae a populo Romano fusae essent. 12. Quanti suam domum vendidit? 13. In hac obsidione nulli parvitum est. 14. Nemini a nobis invidetur.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Who of us (p. 104) does not know where you were last night?
2. He understood at what risk he had done this. 3. Caesar knew for what reason (*quā de causā*) these things were said. 4. I will tell you what cities the Romans took in this war. 5. The consul read to the people what the senate had decreed on the previous day. 6. He pointed out from what classes the forces of Catilina were drawn (*comparo*). 7. He ascertained from spies what was the nature of the road to the camp of the enemy. 8. Caesar found out why Ariovistus did not come to the meeting. 9. After giving up their arms (*abl. abs.*), all the enemy came that night to the camp. 10. We compelled the merchants to tell us from what districts they came. 11. It is said that the man was ten years younger than his brother. 12. The soldiers did not spare the inhabitants of that town. 13. He sold his house for ten talents.



LESSON LXXXIX.

IDIOMATIC USE OF THE INDIRECT QUESTION.

Noun-clauses Introduced by Quod and Ut.

1. An English abstract noun is often expressed in Latin by an indirect question : as, *Dico tibi quale periculum sit, I tell you the nature of the danger*; *quot essent hostes rogavit, he asked the number of the enemy*; *quo eamus rogant, they ask our destination (=whither we are going).*

NOUN-CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY QUOD.

2. Quod (meaning, *because, the fact that*), with the indicative often introduces a noun-clause in Latin : as, *Magnum est hoc, quod victor victis pepercit, this is an important matter, the fact that when victorious he spared the vanquished.*

NOUN-CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY UT.

3. Verbs of *asking, commanding, striving, and effecting*, take in English an infinitive but in Latin a noun-clause introduced by *ut*, *that*, with the subjunctive: as, *Oro te ut hoc facias, I beg you to do this*; *nītitur ut vincat, he strives to conquer.*

If there is a *not* with the inf., *nē (that not)* is used for *ut non*: as, *Puero imperavi ne domo exiret, I ordered the boy not to go from home (impf., in accordance with the rule for sequence, p. 178).*

Note 1.—*Iubeo, I order*, however, and *vēto, I forbid*, take the infinitive : as, *Iussi puerum domo non exire, I ordered the boy not to go from home*; *vetuit me hoc facere, he forbade me to do it.*

Note 2.—*Statuo, constituo, decerno, I determine*, take the infinitive when the subject of the main verb and of the infinitive is the same : as, *Statuit Caesar in Italiam redire, Caesar determined to return to Italy.* In other cases, they take a noun-clause introduced by *ut* or *ne*: as, *Statuit Caesar ut legiones suae in Italiam redirent, Caesar determined that his legions should return to Italy.*

4. The following impersonal verbs are followed by a noun-clause introduced by *ut*: *Contingit*, *evēnit*, *accīdit*, and *fit* (*it happens*), *restat* (*it remains*), *sēquītur* (*it follows*), *feri potest* (*it may happen*): as, *Accīdit ut nemo adesset*, *it happened that no one was present.*

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. *Quod Regulus rediit, mirabile videtur.* 2. *Constat inter omnes ad salutem civium inventas esse leges.* 3. *Caesar bellum eā aestate cum Germanis gerere constituit.* 4. *Pollicitus est se hoc postero die esse facturum.* 5. *Dixerunt sibi in animo esse sine ullo maleficio per provinciam iter facere.* 6. *Rogavit quando perfecti essent.* 7. *Caesar his de causis quas commemoravi Rhenum transire decreverat.* 8. *Restat ut de magnitudine bellī et imperatore deligendo loquar.* 9. *Quod tu incolumis domum rediisti, mihi gratum est.* 10. *Ariovistus respondit senatum populi Romani sibi praesidio esse.* 11. *Primā luce productis omnibus copiis et duplici acie instructā, quid hostes consilii caperent exspectabat.* 12. *Oravit ut omnibus pueris mulieribusque parceretur.* 13. *Se hoc opus eo die confecturum esse suscipit.* 14. *Rogavit me ne id facerem.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. He ordered all the forces to assemble on that day at Rome. 2. I asked you to perform all the commands of the general. 3. The enemy will strive to capture the town with all its forces. 4. It follows that he was condemned for treachery by the senate. 5. Explain to the judges your view of the matter. 6. They said that the Romans had pitched their camp in this plain. 7. Do you know our reason for declaring war? 8. He forbade the consul calling the people together on that day. 9. We are not asked to assemble in the market-place. 10. It happened that he was absent from Rome in that year. 11. What amount of money shall I bring? 12. We strove to finish the work within a few days. 13. He determined to set out for Gaul that winter. 14. Beg them not to come. 15. The fact that you betrayed your country is enough.

---

## LESSON XC.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## Final Clauses Introduced by Ut (or Ne), and Quo.

1. An *adverbial clause* is one that takes the place of an adverb. Thus, in *I eat that I may live*, the clause introduced by *that* is an adverbial clause of *purpose*, limiting the action of the main verb. An adverbial clause of purpose is called a *final clause* (from *finis, an end*), because it expresses the *end* or object of the verb it limits.

2. Final clauses in Latin are usually introduced by *ut, that, or ne, that . . . not, lest* (both with the subjunctive) : as, *Edo ut vivam, I eat that I may live* ; *hoc dico ne te laedam, I say this that I may not offend you* (=to avoid offending you).

Note.—*Ne* in a final clause, may often translate the English “to avoid,” “to prevent.”

3. In final clauses the *present* subjunctive is used after *primary* tenses ; the *imperfect* after *secondary*, in accordance with the *Rule for Sequence* (see p. 178). Thus : *Multi laudant ut laudentur, many praise that they may be praised* (pres. after a primary tense) ; *multi laudabant ut laudarentur, many praised that they might be praised* (imperfect after a secondary tense).

4. *That no one, that no (adj.), that nothing, that never*, in a final clause, are respectively *ne quis, ne ullus, ne quid, ne unquam* : as, *Porta clausa est ne quis exiret, the gate was shut that no one might go out* ; *clamant ne ullum verbum audiatur, they are shouting that no word may be heard* ; *abii ne quid viderem, I went away that I might see nothing* ; *hoc facite ne unquam vituperent, do this that they may never revile*.

5. Instead of *ut* in a final clause, *quo* (= *ut eo, that by this*) with the subjunctive, is used when the clause has a comparative in it : as, *Puto aliquid puero dandum esse quo sit studiosior, I think that something ought to be given to the boy that he may be more zealous* ; *Caesar castella communit quo facilius Helvetios prohibere possit, Caesar erects forts that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetii*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Non vivimus ut edamus.
2. Hoc factum est ne quis in civitatem restitueretur.
3. Ad urbem vēnimus ut oratorem audiremus.
4. Domum redibo ut dormiam.
5. Hoc feci ne cui displicērem.
6. Haec scribebam ut bono esses animo.
7. Ne quis ex civitate pelleretur, ĩdem promisit.
8. Multa mentitus est quo iunior videretur.
9. Utinam rex ipse adesset.
10. His cognitis, milites eduxit ne omnes interficerentur.
11. Legibus servīmus ut liberi esse possīmus.
12. Captivos omnes interfīci iussit quo melius iter faceret.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They went into the garden that they might find the book.
2. They set out in the morning that they might reach the city before night.
3. We will go away in order not (use *nē*) to see them.
4. I did this in order that I might injure no one.
5. We must raise a shout that we may be heard by him.
6. He praised us in order to be praised by us.
7. He killed himself that he might never see the country overthrown.
8. Do not buy what you do not need.
9. In a few days we shall return to see (use *quo*) the place better.
10. Did you not see with what pride he answered?
11. We must teach our children in order that they may be better citizens.
12. He wishes to return home in order to stand for the consulship.

---

## LESSON XCI.

### FINAL CLAUSES—(*Continued*).

Qui Final. Quominus and Quin. Neve.

1. The relative *qui* (called *qui final*) is often used with the subjunctive to express a *purpose*: as, *Misit legatos qui pacem peterent*, *he sent ambassadors to sue for peace* (*qui=ut ei*).

Note.—Relative adverbs, like *ubi* (*where*) and *unde* (*whence*), are used, like the relative pronoun, to express a purpose:

as, *Domum ubi habitaret iēgit, he chose a house where he might dwell* (ubi=ut ibi, *that there*).

2. After verbs of *preventing*, a final clause is often used, introduced by *quominus* (=by which the less=in order that not): as, *Nihil obstat quominus scribas, nothing prevents you from writing* (=by which you should the less write).

Note.—After verbs of *preventing*, *quin* (qui+ne=how not), may be used for *quominus*, if there is a negative or virtual<sup>1</sup> negative with the main verb: as, *Vix inhibēri potuit quin saxa iacēret, he could scarcely be prevented from throwing stones*.

3. After verbs of *fearing*, a final clause is used, introduced by *ut* or *ne*: as, *Vērēor ne veniat, I am afraid he will come*; *vereor ut veniat, I am afraid he will not come*.

Note.—Here *ut* and *ne* apparently change their meaning; *ut* is used for *that not*, and *ne* for *that*.

4. The English future after verbs of *fearing*, is expressed by the subjunctive—the present subjunctive, if after a primary tense, the imperfect if after a secondary: as, *Timeo ut labōres sustīneas, I am afraid that you will not endure your labors*; *timēbam ne eā evēnīrent, I was afraid that these things would happen*.

5. In English the infinitive is often used to denote a *purpose*, but in Latin it is never so used in good prose. Such an infinitive may be expressed in Latin in various ways.

Thus: *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace*, may be expressed as follows:—

*Lēgātos misit ut pacem pētērent* (ut *final*).

*Legatos misit qui pacem pētērent* (qui *final*).

*Legatos misit ad pacem petendam* (gerundive acc. with ad), or  
*legatos misit pacis petendae causā* (gerundive genitive with causā).

*Legatos misit ad pacem petendum* (gerund acc. with ad), or  
*legatos misit pacem petendi causā* (gerund genitive with causā).

*Legatos misit pacem petitum* (supine after verb of motion).

*Legatos misit pacem petituros* (future part. active expressing a purpose).

<sup>1</sup>A word like *vix*, *scarcely*, or a question expecting the answer *No*.

6. For *et ne* (following *ut* or a previous *ne*), *nēve* (or *neu*) is used: as, *Hoc dico ut bono animo sit neve perturbetur. I say this that he may be of good courage and may not be disturbed; abibo ne eum videam neve audiam, I will go away that I may not see or hear him.*

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Legatos ad eum misērunt qui dicerent sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere. 2. Caesar litteras nuntiosque misit ne eos frumento neve aliā re iuvarent. 3. Petierunt ut concilium totius Galliae in certum diem indicere liceret. 4. Qualis esset natura montis, nuntios qui cognoscerent misit. 5. Nuntios praemittit qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. 6. Itaque impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur. 7. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 8. Omnes milites tum timebant ne ab hoste circumvenirentur. 9. Vereor ut hoc tibi profuturum sit. 10. Quale praemium ei sit tributum docebo, quo facilius intellegi possit. 11. Naves vento tenebantur, quominus in portum redirent. 12. Consules videant ne quid detrimenti respublica capiat. 13. Omnes equites praemisit qui vidērent quas in partes iter caperent.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Caesar sends forward the soldiers of the tenth legion to seize the hill. 2. He ordered them not to go out of camp after sunset. 3. He begged him to spare the women and children. 4. He ordered them to open (*laxare*) the ranks that they might the more easily use their swords. 5. He was afraid that all the soldiers would desert him. 6. The Romans built forts to keep back the enemy. 7. They were afraid that they would be defeated. 8. I tell you this, that you may the more easily understand. 9. I do not know when they intend to set out. 10. He asked him not to bring a single soldier with him. 11. He persuaded them to set out with him. 12. Fearing that he would not be able to withstand the attack, he sent a despatch to Caesar. 13. He warned him to avoid all wrong-doing.

## LESSON XCII.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESULT.  
UT CONSECUTIVE.

1. An adverbial clause is often used to express the *result* of what is described in the main clause. Such clauses are called *consecutive* clauses (*consequor, overtake, attain*). Thus, in the sentence, *Such fear seized all, that the king himself fled*, the clause introduced by *that* is a consecutive clause.

2. A consecutive clause is usually introduced by *ut* with the subjunctive (called *ut-consecutive*): as, *Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut rex ipse fugerit, such fear seized all that the king himself fled*; *tam caecus fuit ut me non viderit, he was so blind that he did not see me*.

Note 1.—The rule for the sequence of tenses (p. 178) does not apply in consecutive clauses. Of course the imperfect subjunctive will be used, but only if the meaning requires it. Thus: *Tantus timor exercitum occupavit ut omnes perturbarentur, such fear seized the army that all were disturbed* (incomplete continuous act).

Note 2.—*That . . . not* in a consecutive clause, is not *ne* (as in a final clause; p. 183), but *ut non*; so, too, *ut nemo, ut nullus, ut nihil*, are used for *that no one, that no, and that nothing*. See below.

3. Consecutive clauses are used after demonstrative words like *talis, such; tantus, so great; sic, ita, tam, so; adeo, to such a degree*: as, *Talis erat ut nemo ei crederet, he was of such a character that no one believed him; tanta vis probitatis est ut eam in hoste diligamus, so great is the force of honesty that we love it even in an enemy; Tarquinius sic Servium diligebat ut is eius vulgo haberetur filius, Tarquin so loved Servius that the latter was commonly regarded as his son; Verres Siciliam per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit, Verres so harried Sicily for three years that it could not in any way be restored to its original condition; tam improbus fuit ut nihil eum unquam a scelere revocaverit, he was so wicked that nothing ever called him away from crime; hoc eum adeo terruit ut*

vix hodie prodire audeat, *this so terrified him that he scarcely ventures (now) to go forth.*

### QUI CONSECUTIVE.

4. The relative qui (called *qui-consecutive*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a consecutive clause : as, Non is sum qui hoc faciam, *I am not the one to do it (qui=ut ego, that I).*

5. Qui consecutive is used in the following constructions :—

(a) With certain *indefinite expressions*, like sunt qui (*there are some who*), reperiuntur qui (*there are found who*), nemo est qui (*there is no one who*), quis est qui? (*who is there who?*), nihil est quod (*there is nothing that*) : as, Sunt qui putent nihil sibi litteris opus esse, *there are some who think that they have no need of literature* ; nihil est quod dicere velim, *there is nothing that I wish to say.*

(b) After dignus (*worthy*), indignus (*unworthy*), and idoneus or aptus (*fit*) : as, Dignus est qui ametur, *he is worthy to be loved (=he deserves to be).*

(c) After quam with a comparative : as, Maior est quam cui resisti possit, *he is too great to be resisted (=greater than to whom it can be resisted).*

Note.—Possum, *I can*, is used impersonally, only when joined with a passive infinitive.

6. Instead of qui non, quin with the subjunctive is often used : as, Nemo est quin sciat, *there is no one who does not know.*

So too, after dubito (*doubt*), nego (*deny*), ignōro (*be ignorant*), when joined with a negative or virtual negative,<sup>1</sup> that is expressed by quin (=qui ne, *how not*) : as, Negari non potest quin turpe sit fidem fallere, *it cannot be denied that it is dishonorable to break one's word* ; non dubitat quin animus sit immortalis, *he does not doubt that the soul is immortal* ; num quis ignorat quin haec vera sint? *is anyone ignorant that this is the truth?*

Note.—Quis means *any* after si, nisi, ne, num, quo and quanto.

<sup>1</sup> Words like vix, *scarcely*, and questions that expect the answer No.



## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeas induendas tempus defuerit. 2. Flumen Arar in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat, iudicari non possit. 3. Mandat ut crebros exploratores in Suevos mittant quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant. 4. Non is sum qui mortis periculo terrear. 5. Hunc Caesar idoneum iudicaverat quem cum mandatis mitteret. 6. Quis servus dignus fuit cui nostra salus permitteretur? 7. Non tam sum imperitus rerum ut hoc non sciam. 8. Sunt qui censeant unā animum et corpus perire. 9. Quis potest esse tam aversus a vero qui haec neget? 10. Tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut nostri proelium redintegrarent. 11. Neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit. 12. Mons altissimus impendebat ut facile perpauca nos prohibere possent. 13. Illae tamen omnes dissensiones erant eiusmodi quae non ad delendam sed commutandam rempublicam pertinerent. 14. Hostes plures sunt quam qui aestimari possint.

Translate into Latin :—

1. We were not able to prevent the Belgae from forming a league with the rest of the Gauls. 2. The enemy endeavored to hinder us from taking refuge (*se recipere*) in our camp. 3. Nothing is so obscure that it cannot be found out by enquiry. 4. There is no doubt that the Belgae are the bravest of all the Gauls. 5. The storm was so great that no ship could reach the harbor. 6. He was so diligent that he lost no time in play. 7. What prevents us from seeing the games to-day? 8. The river was so deep that the soldiers were not able to cross it on foot. 9. Men were sent to pick out a place suitable for the camp. 10. The Romans fought so fiercely that they easily defeated the forces of the enemy. 11. I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth. 12. There is no one but believes that he was guilty of treachery. 13. There were some in the army who were willing to betray their country for gold. 14. Their deeds are too great to be told.

## XCIII.

## THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.

1. A conditional sentence contains (*a*) a main clause, (*b*) an adverbial clause stating the condition on which the statement of the main clause is, or would be, true : as, *If he says this, he is wrong*. The clause containing the condition is called the *if*-clause.

2. The common types of the conditional sentence are as follows :—

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

	IF-CLAUSE.	MAIN CLAUSE.
Indicative in both Clauses.	1. Si quis hæc dicit, <i>If anyone says this,</i>	errat, <i>he is wrong.</i>
	Si quis hæc dixit, <i>If anyone said this,</i>	erravit, <i>he was wrong.</i>
Subjunctive in both Clauses.	2. Si quis hæc dicet (or dixerit), <i>If any one says (literally, shall say or have said) this,</i>	errabit. <i>he will be wrong.</i>
	3. Si quis hæc dicat, <i>If anyone were to (or should) say this,</i>	erret, <i>he would be wrong.</i>
	4. Si quis hæc diceret, <i>If anyone were saying this (now),</i>	erraret, <i>he would be wrong.</i>
	5. Si quis hæc dixisset, <i>If anyone had said this (in the past)</i>	erravisset, <i>he would have been wrong.</i>

Note.—Instead of the English present, referring to the future (as in type 2), Latin uses the future, or—if the action of the verb in the *if*-clause is over before that of the main verb begins—the future-perfect.

3. *Unless, or if not* with the force of *unless*, in an *if*-clause, is *nisi* or *ni*: as, *Nisi arma sumpsisses, delētus esses, unless you had taken up arms, you would have been destroyed; nisi medicus adesset, puer morēretur, if the doctor were not here, the boy would be dying*. But when *if not* can not be turned into *unless*, it is ex-

pressed by *si non* : as, *Cur mihi nocēs, si ego tibi non noceo?* *why do you harm me, if I do not harm you?*

4. *Any*, after *si* or *nisi*, is *quis* : as, *Si quis ita fecerit, poenas dabit, if anyone does so, he will be punished* (literally, *shall have done so*).

5. *Whether . . . or*, introducing alternative conditions (i. e., with the force of *if . . . or if*), is expressed by *sive* (*seu*) . . . *sive* (*seu*) : as, *Sive adfuisti sive abfuisti, nihil dico, whether you were present or absent, I say nothing*.

Note.—*Sive . . . sive* must be carefully distinguished from *utrum . . . an* (p. 177, 5), introducing a dependent double question and used as the subject or object of a verb : as, *Utrum velit an nolit rogo, I ask whether he is willing or unwilling*.

6. *But if*, introducing a corrected condition is *sin* (= *si + ne*, *if not*) ; *if not* is *si minus* : as, *Si rogas, respondeo; sin nihil rogas taceo if you ask, I answer; but if you don't ask, I hold my peace; si haec fecerit, gaudebo; si minus, aequo animo feram, if he has done it, I shall be glad; if not, I shall bear it with patience*.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. *Si roges, respondeam.* 2. *Si quid haberem, darem.* 3. *Si Metelli fidei diffisus essem, iudicem eum non retinuissem.* 4. *Nomen huius floris si scirem, eum pluris facerem.* 5. *Sive bene sive male facit, odio est.* 6. *Si ceteris satisfaciat, sibi satisfaciat.* 7. *Hoc si fecit, non ita acutus fuit.* 8. *Hoc si sciam, dicere non audeam.* 9. *Mihi si tu subvenies, gaudebo; si minus, non aegre feram.* 10. *Nisi auxilio venisses, de nobis actum esset.* 11. *Hoc si verum est, impetrabis; sin falsum, noli expectare.* 12. *Frater tuus si adesset, tibi plauderet.*

Translate into Latin :—

1. *If you had not applauded, he would have been ashamed.* 2. *If the harvest is large, the country will be rich.* 3. *If you should come to our aid, all would be well; if not, it will be all over with us.* 4. *If he were unwilling, we would not go.* 5. *Whether he reads or writes, he wastes no time.* 6. *If you were to ask me that, I should*

answer nothing. 7. If they had not detained me, I should have been here sooner. 8. If they put this man at the head of the army, the country will be safe. 9. If you should be willing, he would be unwilling. 10. If he had not been a man of courage, he would not have refused. 11. If he leads his army over the Rhine, it is all over with them. 12. If anyone should say so, he would not be listened to by anyone.

---

## LESSON XCIV.

### CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

#### Exception to the Rules.

1. The common types of the conditional sentence are easily learned with a little attention and practice. They are classified as follows :—

Conditional sentences are divided into *three* classes :

#### I. SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

This class will be easily recognized when the second and third classes are known. It includes all conditional sentences in which nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition. It has the indicative in both clauses : as, *Pecuniam si habet, dat, if he has money, he gives it; pecuniam si habuit, dedit, if he had money, he gave it.*

Note.—*Si* rarely stands at the head of the sentence. Hence the common use of *quodsi* for *si* at the head of a *si*-clause.

#### II. FUTURE CONDITIONS.

This class includes conditional sentences in which the fulfilment of the condition is referred to the future. Of these there are two types :—

(a) Where the condition is regarded as likely to be fulfilled : as, *Pecuniam si habebit, dabit, if he has (old English, shall have) money, he will give it.*

Here the fut. indic. is used in both clauses. But the fut. perf. is used in the *if*-clause when the action of the verb of that clause is to be represented as over before that of the main verb begins: as, *Hoc si fecerit, morietur*, *if he does this, he shall die* (literally, *shall have done*).

(*b*) Where the condition is regarded as unlikely to be fulfilled. Such sentences have in English *would* or *should* in the main clause: as, *Pecuniam si habeat, det*, *if he should have money, he would give it*.

Here the present subjunctive is used in both clauses.

### III. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT.

This class includes all conditional sentences in which the condition is represented as not fulfilled. Of these also there are two types:—

(*a*) Where the condition is referred to the present. These have in English the word *now* (expressed or understood) in both clauses: as, *Pecuniam si habēret, daret*, *if he had money (now), he would give it*.

Here the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

(*b*) Where the condition is referred to the past. This type has in English *would have* in the main clause: as, *Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset*, *if he had had money, he would have given it*.

Here the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

Note 1.—In sentences of Class III., the *if*-clause may refer to the past, while the main clause refers to the present, or *vice versa*: as, *Illi si haec fecissent, viverent*, *if they had done this, they would now be alive*.

Note 2.—The first type of Class III. is also used of *past* time to express *continuous action*: as, *Haec si sentirent, sapientes essent*, *if they had held these views, they would have been wise*.

2. One important exception to the regular rules for conditional sentences must be noted. It is as follows:—

The indicative, and *not the subjunctive*, is used in the main clause of the conditional sentence when the verb of that clause is—

(a) In the periphrastic conjugation active or passive (p. 172, 174).

(b) Possum, *I can*; debeo, *I ought*; oportet, *it is needful*: as, Ni litteras misisset, agros relicturi erant, *if he had not sent the letter, they would have left their lands*; consilia si processissent, interficiendus fuit, *if the plans had succeeded, he would have been put to death*; totus exercitus deleri potuit, si persecuti essent victores, *the whole army might have been destroyed, if the victors had followed up*.

3. *Provided that* is expressed by dum, by mōdo, or by dummodo, all with the subjunctive (with nē for non in negative clauses): as, Oderint dum metuant, *let them hate provided that they fear*; veniant dum ne maneant, *let them come, provided that they do not remain*.

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. Iterum si experiri volunt, ego iterum paratus sum decertare.  
 2. Catilina si in urbe mansisset, nunquam nos rempublicam liberavissemus. 3. Helvetii si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, pacem cum iis faciam. 4. Servi mei si me metuerent, domum meam relinquendam esse putarem. 5. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat industria. 6. Magno me metu liberabis, dummodo inter me atque te murus intersit. 7. Haec si tecum patria loquatur, impetrare debet. 8. Multi omnia recta atque honesta negligunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur. 9. Si certior factus essem in quo periculo esses, ad te advolassem. 10. Galli aequo animo omnes belli patiuntur iniurias, dummodo repellant periculum servitutis. 11. Neque hostem sustinere poterant, ni cohortes se obiecissent. 12. Nisi discedes, ego te hostem habebō. 13. Si te interfecero, ego gratiam multis faciam.

Translate into Latin:

1. I shall carry on war against the Gauls, provided I can collect two legions. 2. If you should conquer the enemy in battle, they would not obey you. 3. If that consul were living, he would keep off the attack of this enemy. 4. The power of Karthage would not have fallen so easily, if we had not conquered her with our fleet. 5. Provided he does not carry on war against that state, we will aid him with all our forces. 6. If he had been here, he would have

helped me. 7. If they make an attack upon this town, they will take it. 8. If you do not give up the hostages, I shall regard you as enemies. 9. Provided you ward off this danger, we shall consider you a friend. 10. If you had wished to take this town, you should have collected more forces. 11. The man would have died, if we had not aided him. 12. If the rest were killed, would you escape? (use *act. periphr. conjugation.*) 13. If he had been the same as before, I could have touched his heart.

---

## LESSON XCV.

### COMPARATIVE AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. A comparative adverbial clause expresses *agreement* (or the opposite) with the statement of the main clause : as, *Ut sementem fēcēris, ita mētes, you shall reap according as you do* (lit., *shall have done*) *your seeding.*

Here the clause introduced by *ut* is an adverbial comparative clause.

2. Comparative clauses fall into two classes :—

(a) Where the comparison is stated as a *fact*: as, *Omnia, sicut acta sunt, memoravit, he has narrated everything just as it was done.*

(b) Where the comparison is stated as a mere *supposition*: as, *Honores petunt quasi honeste vixerint, they seek office, as if they have lived honorably (=while they have not).*

The first class takes the indicative; the second, the subjunctive.

3. The following are the common comparative conjunctions that are usually joined with the subjunctive : *Tanquam*, or *tanquam si*, *quasi*, *velut*, or *velut si*, *as if*: as, *Tanquam hoc difficile sit, as if this were hard*; *velut si Asia sit clausa, sic nihil perfertur ad nos just as if Asia were closed, no news reaches us.*

4. The English *the . . . the* with two comparatives, is expressed in Latin in two ways : -

(a) By *quo . . . eo* (or *quanto . . . tanto*) with two comparatives : as, *Quo (or quanto) quisque est melior, eo (or tanto) difficilior*

susplicatur, *the better a man is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting.*

(b) By *ut quisque...ita* with two superlatives: as, *Ut quisque vir optimus est, ita difficillime susplicatur, the better a man is, &c.*

Note.-- This might also be translated: *In proportion to a man's goodness, &c., or, In proportion as a man is good, &c.*

### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

5. *Concessive* adverbial clauses are those that make some concession, in spite of which the statement of the main clause is true. They are usually introduced in English by *although*: as, *Romani, quamquam proelio fessi erant, tamen procedunt, the Romans, although they were weary with fighting, nevertheless advance.*

6. Concessive clauses, when they state a *fact*, take the indicative; when they state a *supposition*, the subjunctive: as, *Caesar, quamquam nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen susplicabatur, though Caesar had not as yet discovered their plans, he nevertheless was suspicious; etsi falso in susplicionem venisses, tamen mihi ignoscere debuisti, although you had been falsely suspected, still you should have pardoned me* (in *susplicionem venire* = the passive of *susplicor*, *I suspect*).

7. The following are the common concessive conjunctions, and the moods with which they are used: *Quamquam* (*though*), and *ut* (*however*), with indicative; *licet*, *quamvis* (lit., *as you wish*), *ut*, *quum* (all meaning *although*), with subjunctive; *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi* (*although, even if*)—all compounds of *si*, and following the same rules for mood.

Note.—*Quamvis* is also used as an adverb: as, *Ille, quamvis facētus, odio est, he, however witty, is hated* (or *whatever his wit*); (*odio esse, to be for an object of hate, is the passive of odi, I hate*).

8. The relative *qui* with the subjunctive is often used concessively. It is called *qui concessive*: as, *Caesar, qui haec vidēret, tamen aciem instruxit, though Caesar saw this, still he drew up his line.*



## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Etsi maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam contendit.
2. Quamquam crebro audiebat Labienum ab inimicis suis sollicitari, tamen non credidit.
3. Senectus, quamvis non sit gravis, tamen aufert viriditatem.
4. Quamquam premebantur, tamen omnia fortissimo sustinebant animo.
5. Nonne impetrare debent, etiamsi adhiberi vim non possit?
6. Quamquam Germanos diutius in Gallia versari Galli voluerant, tamen populi Romani exercitum hiemare in Gallia moleste ferebant.
7. Non igitur potestas est conservandae reipublicae, quamvis ea prematur periculo.
8. Hannibal, ex quo die dux est declaratus, velut Italia sibi provincia decreta esset, nobis inferre bellum statuit.
9. Illa superiora, quamquam ferenda non fuerunt, tamen, ut potui, tuli.
10. Quanto erat in dies gravior oppugnatio, tanto crebriores litterae ad Caesarem mittebantur.
11. Ut meritus est, ita poenam persolvit.
12. Senatum metus cepit velut si ad portas hostes essent.
13. Caesar, etsi prope exacta aestas erat, tamen eo exercitum duxit.
14. Tibi adero ego, licet amicus tuus absit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Though the Germans were of great bravery, still they were often defeated by the Romans in battle.
2. All the citizens were terrified just as though the enemy were-at (*adesse*) the gates.
3. The battle was fought as the general had directed.
4. Whatever is disgraceful, even though it may be concealed, can in no way be honorable.
5. Life, however short, can always be useful.
6. You speak as though the enemy would conquer.
7. Though ambition is a vice, it is often the cause of virtues.
8. Though the summer had ended, Caesar collected a large number of ships.
9. The bolder the Romans were, the more timid the enemy became.
10. Though their general did not conquer me, still his valor must be praised.
11. Though Caesar had only one legion, still he hastened to set out.
12. He acted otherwise than (*aliter quam*) he ought to have done.
13. Though they were the bravest in Gaul, they were not equal to the Romans in valor.

## LESSON XCVI.

CAUSAL CLAUSES.—QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM  
(BECAUSE).

1. Causal adverbial clauses state the *cause* or reason for the fact mentioned in the main clause. In English they are usually introduced by *because*: as, Tacent quia periculum metuunt, *they are silent because they fear danger*.

2. Causal clauses are usually introduced by quod, quia, *because*, or quoniam (=quum iam, *since now*), *seeing that*.

They are followed by the indicative when the reason they introduce is given on the speaker's own authority; they are followed by the subjunctive when the reason they introduce is given on the authority of another: as, Patriâ expulsus est quia iustus erat, *he was banished because he was just* (esset would mean that this was the reason usually given, for the truth of which, however, the speaker would not vouch); Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet iuventutem, *Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he was corrupting the young men* (corrumpebat would mean that the speaker vouched for the truth of the charge).

Note.—This quod is common after queror (*complain*), laudo (*praise*), gaudeo (*be glad*), doleo (*be sorry*).

3. Quum (cum), in the sense of *since*, is often used to introduce a causal clause: as, Haec quum ita sint, abibo, *as this is so, I will go away*.

4. The relative qui (called *qui causal*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a causal clause: as, Peccâsse videor qui a te discesserim, *it seems I have done wrong, inasmuch as I have parted from you* (peccâsse = peccavisse).

Note.—In this sense, qui is often strengthened by the addition of quippe or utpöte, *indeed, as being*: as, Multa de me questus est quippe qui in me incensus esset, *he complained at length of me, inasmuch as he had been exasperated against me*.

5. Qui causal is very commonly found after *exclamations*: as, *Me miserum, qui hæc fecerim, wretch that I am for doing this!*

Note.--The accusative case is often used in exclamations. It is called the *accusative of exclamation*.

6. Non quod, or non quo, with the subjunctive, is often used to introduce a rejected reason: as, *Hoc laudo non quod honestum sit, sed quod utile est, I praise this, not because it is honorable but because it is expedient; de consilio meo non scripsi, non quo celandum esset sed quia, &c., I did not write you about my plan, not because it required to be concealed but because, &c.* So too: non quin, not but that: as, *Non quin me ames sed quod abire cupio, not but that you love me, but because I am anxious to go.*

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English:—

1. Aedui, cum se defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Quae cum ita sint, vestra tecta defendite. 3. Itaque quoniam ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba facit frater eius. 4. O terram beatam, quae hunc virum exceperit. 5. Aedui legatos miserunt questum quod Harudes agros suos popularentur. 6. Quoniam iam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite. 7. O praeclarum diem, cum in illud divinorum animorum concilium proficiscar. 8. Caesar Aeduos frumentum flagitabat quod magnâ inopiâ urgebatur. 9. Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebrate illos dies. 10. Nonne Aristides expulsus est patriâ, quod iustus esset? 11. Romani quia consules ad id tempus prospere gererent, minus his cladibus commovebantur. 12. Quoniam res ita se habet, in urbem redeamus. 13. Succenseo tibi, quia lucrum amicitiae anteposuisti.

Translate into Latin:—

1. It is a very easy matter, since we surpass all in valor, to obtain the sovereignty of all Gaul. 2. Since they were not able to withstand our attack, they betook themselves to the baggage and the waggons. 3. O wretched man! inasmuch as you have been expelled from your native land by ungrateful citizens. 4. The Helvetii sent ambassadors to him, since they knew that he had crossed the river with all his forces. 5. The soldiers were glad because they had retaken the camp which they had lost a few days

before. 6. They rejoiced because they were going to assault a town in which there was so large an amount of booty. 7. Since they had no hope that the city could be defended, they resolved to withdraw into the citadel. 8. He was always very poor though he might have been (use *licet*) very rich. 9. The soldiers were compelled to leave their baggage on this side of the river, because the enemy were following them. 10. Since we must advance against the enemy, arouse your courage, comrades. 11. The Helvetii sent ambassadors to say that they would come to the council on the next day. 12. O! wretched man, since you have lost the opportunity of saving the state. 13. Since this is so, let us arm ourselves against the enemy.

---

## LESSON XCVII.

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

#### Postquam. Dum. Priusquam.

1. Temporal adverbial clauses define the time of the action of the main verb: as, *Hæc feci dum potui, I did this while I could.* Here the clause *dum potui* is temporal, limiting the main verb *feci*.

#### POSTQUAM.

2. Temporal conjunctions meaning *after that*, like *postquam*, *simul*, *simul ac* (or, before a vowel, *atque*), *ubi*, *ut* (*primum*), *quum primum*, are followed by the indicative: as, *Simul atque hæc audivit, abiit, after he had heard this, he went away.*

Note.—The perfect is used after these conjunctions for the English pluperfect.

*Postquam id animadvertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, after he had noticed this, Caesar withdraws his forces to the nearest hill; ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida incendunt, when they thought they were ready, they set fire to the towns; ea res ut Helvetiis nuntiata est, eum causam dicere coegērunt, when this fact was reported to the Helvetii, they compelled him to plead his cause; nostri, simul in arido constitērunt,*

impetum fecerunt, *our men, as soon as they had set foot on dry land, made an attack.*

## DUM.

3. Temporal conjunctions meaning *while* or *until*, like *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, take the indicative when they mean *while*, *as long as*: as, *Dum ea Romani parant, iam oppidum oppugnabatur, while the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.*

Note.—When the time expressed by the *dum*-clause includes the time of the action of the main verb, the present tense is used in Latin instead of the English past.

4. *Dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, meaning *until*, take the indicative when used to express time alone: as, *Hoc feci dum mihi licuit, I did this as long as it was allowed me; dum rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit, there was silence until Marcellus returned; Milo in senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est, Milo was in the senate on that day, until the senate was dismissed.*

But when they express some further idea of *purpose* or *expectation*, they require the subjunctive: as, *Dum naves convenirent expectavit, he waited till the ships should assemble (i.e., in order that they might assemble); differant dum ira defervescat, let them put off till their anger cools (i.e., in order that their anger may cool; impetum hostium sustinuit quoad ceteri pontem interrumperent, he withstood the attack of the enemy till the rest should break down the bridge (i.e., that they might break down the bridge.)*

## PRIUSQUAM.

5. Temporal conjunctions meaning *before that*, like *priusquam* and *antequam*, take the indicative when they mark simple priority in time: as, *Priusquam lucet adsunt, they are here before it is light; filios convocavit antequam mortuus est, he called together his sons before he died.*

They take the subjunctive, however, when used to express some further idea of *intention* or of a *prevented result*: as, *Priusquam pugnaretur nox intervenit, night came on before the battle was fought (result prevented); priusquam se hostes ex terrore recipere-*

ent, in *fines eorum exercitum duxit*, *before the army recovered from their panic, he led his army into their territory* (intention).

Note.—*Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written in two words: as, *Ante rorat quam pluit*, *it drops before it rains*.

6. For *dum*, meaning *provided that*, see page 194, 3.

#### EXERCISE.

Give the principal parts of: *video, iubeo, duco, interficio, moror, desisto*.

Translate into English:—

1. *Obsidio per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatio fuit, dum vulnus ducis curaretur.* 2. *Antequam huic respondebo, de me pauca dicam.* 3. *Exspectate dum consul fiat.* 4. *Ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit.* 5. *Simul ac signa nostra vident, portas aperuerunt.* 6. *Priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari iubet.* 7. *Antequam de meo adventu audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perveni.* 8. *Postquam copias hostium venire vidit, flumen exercitum transducere maturavit.* 9. *Dum ea geruntur, ii qui pro portis castrorum erant, Caesari id nuntiaverunt.* 10. *Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.* 11. *Non ante finitum est proclium quam ille interfectus est.* 12. *Dum reliquae naves eo convenirent exspectavit.* 13. *Nec prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum pervenerunt.* 14. *Ipse, equo vulnerato, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. When the Helvetii had been informed of his arrival, they sent ambassadors to him. 2. After he had learned these facts, he convoked an assembly. 3. As soon as they had recovered from their flight, they sent envoys concerning peace. 4. In order that he might learn these things before he made the attempt, he sent forward his lieutenant with a ship of war. 5. While he was delaying a few days near Vesontio, a panic seized the army. 6. They begged Caesar to send them aid before the king should collect a force. 7. The ambassador did not depart until he had seen us embark. 8. Every thing was done before he reached Italy. 9. Nor did we cease the pursuit (*say make an end of pursuing*) until they reached their ships. 10. Before I return to Rome, I shall go

to Athens. 11. He came to our camp before the Germans could learn what was being done. 12. Nor were they sure till we were close to their camp. 13. He was not deterred by fear of punishment from speaking the truth.

---

## LESSON XCVIII.

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES—(Continued).

#### Syntax of Quum (when, since).

1. Quum (cum) *causal* (i.e., meaning *since*), as has been shown (p. 198, 4), requires the subjunctive: as, *Quæ quum ita sint, Catilina, perge quo coepisti, as this is so, Catiline, go on as you have begun.*

2. Quum simply expressing contemporaneous time (called *quum temporal*) takes the indicative: as, *Quum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, when Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of the one party; quum verba faciunt, maiores extollunt, when they speak they extol their ancestors; nondum profectus erat quum haec gerebantur, he had not yet departed when these things were taking place.*

In these sentences, quum is a relative adverb corresponding to a suppressed correlative tum in the main clause.

3. But when used with the imperfect or pluperfect tense, quum usually takes the subjunctive, even when no idea of cause is implied: as, *Decessit Agesilâus quum in portum venisset, Agesilaus died when he had entered the harbor.*

Note.—Quum with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, is a common substitute for the perf. part. active, which is wanting in Latin: as, *Quum haec dixisset, abiit, having spoken these words, he departed.* There are, therefore, four substitutes for the perf. part. active:—

- (a) **Quum** + imperf. or pluperf. subj.      (b) **Postquam** + perf. indic.
- (c) The ablative absolute.      (d) The perf. part. of a synonymous deponent.

Thus : *Having spoken these words, is :—*

- (a) **Quum** haec dixisset.      (b) **Postquam** haec dixit.
- (c) **His dictis** (= *these things said*)      (d) **Haec locutus**.

4. **Quum** is often used for *quoties, as often as, whenever* : as, **Quum impetum fecerant, hostes cedere cogebantur**, *whenever they made a charge, the enemy were forced to retire*; **quum rosam vidi, tum ver esse arbitror**, *whenever I see the rose, then I judge that it is spring*.

Note.—In this sense, **quum** takes the perfect for the English present, and the pluperfect for the English past.

5. **Quum** with the subjunctive, sometimes has a concessive force, meaning *although* : as, **Pylades quum sis, dices te esse Orestem**, *though you are Pylades, you will say you are Orestes*.

Note.—This meaning of **quum** may be used to translate the English *instead of* : as, **Quum dicere deberet, conticuit**, *instead of speaking, he held his peace* (literally, *when he ought to have spoken*).

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. **Caesari quum id nuntiatum esset, maturat ab urbe proficisci**
2. **Helvetii quum de eius adventu certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt.**
3. **Num dubium est utrum casu an consilio factus sit mundus?**
4. **Aedui quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium.**
5. **Diu quum esset pugnatum, hostium impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt.**
6. **Caesar iussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent.**
7. **Qui quum eum in itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, pacem petierunt.**
8. **Pueri utrum legant an scribant nescio.**
9. **Haec quum animadvertisset, convocato concilio, vehe-**



menter eos incusat. 10. Utrum legat necne nescio. 11. Quum civitas armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus est. 12. Haec quum flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prendit. 13. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, poposcit.

Translate into Latin :—

1. When he had enquired of (*ex*) the scouts what tribes were in arms, he learned the truth. 2. When Caesar came to those towns, he demanded arms and hostages of them. 3. When the ships were approaching Britain, a violent storm arose. 4. As soon as they recovered from their dismay, they sent envoys to-sue-for (*de*) peace. 5. When the enemy were advancing on our camp, our soldiers made a sally. 6. Scipio, fearing (*pf. part.*) that he would lose the town, led out his soldiers in battle array. 7. When I was trying to expel him from the city, I had another object in view (use *aliud agere, drive at another thing*). 8. He asked whether Caesar came to the Senate on that day or not. 9. I asked him whether he lived at Rome or Athens. 10. It is a question (*quaeritur*) whether there is one world or more. 11. While the Senate was preparing to make war on Caesar, he marched unexpectedly against them. 12. Since this is so, I shall wait till you come. 13. Caesar having perceived that the enemy were near, led his forces to the nearest hill.

---

## LESSON XCIX.

### INDIRECT (OR OBLIQUE) NARRATION.

1. A statement depending on a verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing*, or the like, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique narration*.

Thus, in *Dixit se civem Romanum esse*, *he said that he was a Roman citizen*, the words *se civem Romanum esse* are in indirect narration. The actual words used were, *Civis Romanus sum*, *I am a Roman citizen*; these are said to be in *direct narration*.

---

<sup>1</sup>The term *oblique narration* is sometimes limited so as to apply only to *reported speeches*. It is more convenient to use it in the wider sense.

2. The main verb of direct narration becomes infinitive in indirect narration, and the subject of direct narration becomes accusative before the infinitive (p. 109). The tense of the infinitive will be present, perfect, or future, according as the tense of the *actual words* was present, perfect, or future. Thus :—

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
Civis Romanus sum. <i>I am a Roman citizen.</i>	Dixit se civem Romanum esse. <i>He said that he was a Roman citizen.</i>
Civis Romanus ero. <i>I shall be a Roman citizen.</i>	Dixit se civem Romanum futurum esse (or <i>fōre</i> ). <i>He said that he should be a Roman citizen.</i>
Civis Romanus eram (or fui). <i>I was (or have been) a Roman citizen.</i>	Dixit se civem Romanum fuisse. <i>He said that he was (or had been) a Roman citizen.</i>

Note.—After verbs meaning *to hope* or *promise*, the future infinitive is used instead of the English present infinitive : as, *Promisit se venturum esse, he promised to come.*

3. To determine the tense of the infinitive in indirect narration, it is best to find the tense of the main verb in direct narration ; *the tense of the main verb in direct narration is the tense of the infinitive in indirect narration.* Thus, in *Caesar said that he had written*, the direct narration is *I have written, scripsi* ; the indirect, therefore, is *Caesar dixit se scripsisse* ; *he said that he was an orator, dixit se orātōrem esse* (direct = *orator sum*).

Note.—Pronouns of the 1st or 2nd person become pronouns of the 3rd person in reporting speeches in indirect narration.

4. All adjectival and adverbial clauses in indirect narration must have the subjunctive : as, *Dixit se eos quos cēpisset domum misisse, he said that he had sent home those whom he had taken* (direct = *eos quos cepi domum misi, I have sent home those whom I have taken*) ; *dixit se, quoties potuisset, rediisse he said that he had returned as often as he could* (direct = *rediit quoties potui, I have returned as often as I could*).

Note 1.—In accordance with the rule for the *sequence of tenses*

(p. 178), the verb of the dependent adjectival or adverbial clause will be in the impf. or plupf. subjunctive in indirect narration after a secondary tense.

Note 2.—A subordinate clause, when inserted in a passage in indirect narration on the authority of the writer or reporter, takes the indicative: as, *Certior factus est id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur*, *he was informed that this was intended, i.e., to break down the bridge which he (Xerxes) had built over the Hellespont* (here the clause *quem ... fecerat* has the indicative, because the writer vouches for the truth of the statement himself). (Note.—*Id agere*=*to aim at this*).

5. The imperative of direct narration is put in the subjunctive in indirect narration (after a secondary tense, in the impf. subjunctive): as, *Ne cunctarentur*, *let them not delay (he said)* (direct=*ne cunctamini, do not delay*).

6. Questions that expect an answer are put in the subjunctive in indirect narration; rhetorical questions (exclamations and appeals), in the infinitive: as, (*Scriptis*) *quid de praeda faciendum esse censerent?* (*he wrote*) *what did they think should be done with regard to the booty?* (direct=*quid...censetis? what do you think?*); *quid esse turpius? cur eos dubitare?* *what was more dishonorable? why did they hesitate?* (direct=*quid est turpius? cur dubitatis? what is more dishonorable? why do you hesitate?*)

7. A fut.-perf. indicative in a dependent clause in direct narration, becomes, in indirect, perf. subjun. after a primary tense and pluperf. subjun. after a secondary: as, *Dicit eum qui id fecerit, poenas daturum esse*, *he says that the one who does (literally, shall have done) this, shall be punished*; *dixit eum qui id fecisset, poenas daturum esse*, *he said that the one who did that, should be punished*.

8. Oblique narration is often suddenly introduced into the narrative by the historians, without the governing verb of *saying* being expressed: as, *Regulus reddi captivos negavit esse utile: illos enim bonos duces esse*, *Regulus denied that it was expedient that the captives should be restored: that they were good leaders*.

9. *I say . . . not*, in Latin is *nego*, which, owing to the tendency in Latin to put the negative forward in the sentence, is usually put first: as *Negabat se praemium ullum accepturum*, *he said that he would not accept any reward*. (Note.—*Esse* with a participle is often dropped in indirect narration).

## EXERCISE.

Translate in o English:—

1. *Omnia quae iussissent parata esse scripsit.* 2. *Nihil temere esse agendum existimabant; quid enim levius esse quam, auctore hoste, capere consilium?* 3. *Eos cur tam sero venissent rogavit: quam diu eos servituros esse?* 4. *Dixit se domum eos quibus pepercisset dimisisse.* 5. *Dixit iis qui philosophiam vituperarent, satis responsum esse.* 6. *Negabant se eos, qui semper paravissent seditionem, coercere posse.* 7. *Num dixit se mansurum esse dum imperator adveniret?* 8. *Negabat se scire quo verteretur.* 9. *Clamavit se quantum potuisset, eius praecepta observaturum; fidem praestaret.* 10. *Caesar certior factus est ex ea parte, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse.* 11. *Nuntiatum est eos omnia facere quae vellet.* 12. *Negavit caecos videre.*

Translate into Latin (using *oblique narration*):—

1. He said that he had given them the books they asked for. 2. He wrote that the camp they had fortified was three miles from Rome. 3. Let them remember, he said, what he had told them. 4. Let them not forget the kindness they had received. When would they see such friends again? 5. Let them not accept favors from an enemy. 6. Had they not enjoyed peace under Caesar's rule? 7. He said that he had not sold his house? 8. He said that his house had been sold for as much as he gave for it. 9. Why did they live, he said, when they could not maintain their freedom? 10. They said that he used to groan as often as he saw his son (p. 204, 4). 11. Do not think I am angry with those I love. 12. I was told that he used to say that life was very short.

## LESSON C.

## SUMMARY OF RULES FOR TURNING DIRECT INTO OBLIQUE NARRATION.

## The Conditional Sentence in Oblique Narration.

1. The following is a summary of the rules already given for *turning direct into oblique narration* :—

(1) The main verb of direct narration becomes infinitive in indirect narration.

(2) All adjectival and adverbial clauses take the subjunctive in indirect narration.

(3) Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd person usually become pronouns of the 3rd person. *E. g.* :—

ego, nos	become	se
meus, noster	“	suus
tu, vos	“	ille, illi
tuus, vester	“	illius, illorum
hic, iste	“	ille, is

(4) Adverbs of *present* time become (after a secondary tense) adverbs of *past* time. *E. g.* :—

nunc	becomes	iam, tunc.
heri ( <i>yesterday</i> )	“	pridie ( <i>the day before</i> ).
hodie ( <i>to-day</i> )	“	illo die ( <i>that day</i> ).
cras ( <i>to-morrow</i> )	“	postridie ( <i>next day</i> ).

So :—hic (*here*) becomes ibi (*there*).

(5) Imperatives become subjunctives (usually imperf. subjunctives).

(6) Rhetorical questions are expressed by the accusative and infinitive ; questions that expect an answer, by the subjunctive.

(7) A future-perfect used in a dependent clause for the English present, becomes perfect subjunctive after a primary, and pluperfect subjunctive after a secondary tense.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCE IN OBLIQUE NARRATION.

2. These rules may now be applied to turning the common types of the conditional sentence into oblique narration. The verb of

the main clause becomes *acc. with inf.*, and the verb of the *if*-clause *subjunctive*, as follows :—

DIRECT.		OBLIQUE.
1. Pecuniam si habet, dat, <i>If he has money, he gives it.</i>	becomes	Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat, dare, <i>He says that if he has money, he gives it.</i>
Pecuniam si habuit, dedit (or dabat), <i>If he had money, he gave it.</i>	“	Dicit se, si pecuniam habuerit, dedisse, <i>He says that if he had money, he gave it.</i>
2. (a) Pecuniam si habebit (or habuerit), dabit, <i>If he has money, he will give it.</i>	“	Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat (or habuerit), daturum esse, <i>He says that if he has money, he will give it.</i>
(b) Pecuniam si habeat, det, <i>If he should have money, he would give it.</i>	“	Dicit se, si pecuniam habeat, daturum esse, <i>He says that if he should have money, he would give it.</i>
3. (a) Pecuniam si haberet, daret, <i>If he had money (now), he would give it.</i>	“	Dicit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse, <i>He says that if he had money (now), he would give it.</i>
(b) Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset, <i>If he had had money, he would have given it.</i>	“	Dicit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse, <i>He says that if he had had money, he would have given it.</i>

Note 1.—The future (*habebit*), in the *if*-clause of direct narration becomes present subjunctive (*habeat*) in the indirect after a primary tense.

Note 2.—The present subjunctive (*det*), in the main clause becomes future infinitive (*daturum esse*) in indirect narration.

Note 3.—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in the main clause (*daret* and *dedisset*), are expressed in indirect narration by the future participle and *fuisse* (*daturum fuisse*, i.e., *to have been about to give*).

3. After a secondary tense the verb of the *if*-clause is changed

in accordance with the rule for the sequence of tenses (p. 178).  
Thus :—

DIRECT.	.	OBLIQUE.
1. Si pecuniam habet, dat,	becomes	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, dare.
Si pecuniam habuit, dedit (or dabat),	“	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, dedisse.
2. (a) Si pecuniam habebit (or habuerit), dabit,	“	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet (or habuisset), daturum esse.
(b) Si pecuniam habeat, det,	“	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum esse.
3. (a) Si pecuniam haberet, daret,	“	Dixit se, si pecuniam haberet, daturum fuisse.
(b) Si pecuniam habuisset, dedisset,	“	Dixit se, si pecuniam habuisset, daturum fuisse.

Note.—The future-perfect in the *if*-clause of direct narration, becomes pluperfect subjunctive in oblique.

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Dicit se, si illi id fecerint, gratiam habiturum esse. 2. Promisit se, si adesset, locuturum esse. 3. Dixit eum, si adesset, aliter sensurum esse. 4. Negavit se, si Metelli fidei diffisus esset, iudicem eum retenturum fuisse. 5. Negavit se, si ille id rogavisset, responsurum fuisse. 6. Dixit eos, si sibi parerent, urbem capturos esse. 7. Dicebant eum, si sapientior esset, meliorem fore (futurum esse). 8. Quid diceret Cicero, si viveret? 9. Imperatori si paruisset, viveret. 10. Dixit eum, si imperatori paruisset, victurum fuisse. 11. Negabat se, nisi vidisset, crediturum fuisse. 12. Dixit se eos, si conarentur, prohibiturum esse.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They said that if Caesar came, it would be all over with their army. 2. It is clear that if Nero had lived, they would have made war on Rome. 3. He answered that unless they withdrew then, he would regard them as enemies. 4. He told them that if they wished to enjoy peace, he must be obeyed. 5. They said that it was of no

importance to them whether he stayed or went. 6. They asked if the man had gone to Rome. 7. It was clear that if he did it, he would be punished. 8. They said that if he were there, he would help them. 9. Whether you remain or go, you will be punished. 10. Don't you think that if he were here, all would be well? 11. O! that I had seen what I ought to do. 12. He said that if *he* were general, he would give no quarter (use *parco*).

---

## LESSON CI.

### OBLIQUE NARRATION—(*Continued*).

The rules given in the last lesson may be applied to turning passages from Caesar or Livy from direct into indirect narration, or *vice versa*, as is done in the following passages:—

#### A.

#### *Helvetian Envoys Address Caesar.*

##### DIRECT.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi tu eos constitueris atque esse volueris; sin bello persequi perseverabis, remiscere et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ii, qui flumen transierant, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribueris aut nos despexeris; nos ita a patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtute quam dolo con-

##### DIRECT.

If the Roman people make (literally, *will make*) peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii will go into that district, and abide in that place, where you will appoint (literally, *will have appointed*), and wish them to abide; but if you continue to attack them in war, call to mind both the old disaster of the Roman people and the ancient valor of the Helvetii. As to your having fallen unexpectedly on one canton, when those who had crossed the river were not able to bear help to their comrades, do not on that account



tendamus aut insidiis nitamur. Quare ne commiseris ut hic locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.

Note.—The italics mark the words and inflections that must be changed in passing from direct to indirect narration.

## INDIRECT.

(Helvetii haec dixerunt) :

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros (esse) atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transiissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus maioribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut me-

presume exceedingly on your valor or look down on us. We have learned this from our fathers and ancestors, *i.e.*, to fight with valor rather than to fight with trickery or depend on ambuscades. Wherefore do not cause this place where we have taken our stand, to get a name, or to hand down a tradition, from the overthrow of the Roman people and the destruction of their army.

## INDIRECT.

If the Roman people made peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii would go into that district and abide in that place where Caesar appointed and wished them to abide; but if he continued to attack them in war, he should (*let him*) call to mind both the old disaster of the Roman people and the ancient valor of the Helvetii. As to his having unexpectedly fallen on one canton, when those who had crossed the river were not able to bear help to their comrades, he should not (*let him not*) on that account presume exceedingly on his valor or look down on them; that they had learned this from their fathers and ancestors, *i.e.*, to fight with valor rather than to fight with

morian proderet. Caesar, *De Bell. Gall.*, B. I., ch. 13.

trickery or depend on ambuscades. Wherefore let him not cause that place, where they had taken their stand, to get a name or hand down a tradition from the overthrow of the Roman people and the destruction of their army.

B.

*Reply of Caesar to the Envoys.*

DIRECT.

Eo *mihī* minus dubitationis datur quod eas res, quas vos commemoravistis, memoriā teneo; atque eo gravius fero, quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si alicuius iniuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est, quod neque commissum (esse) a se intellegebat quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere possum?

DIRECT.

For this reason the less hesitation is caused me, because I remember the events you have mentioned; and I am the more pained, the less they happened in accordance with the desert of the Roman people (*i.e.*, and my pain is all the greater because they did not happen in accordance with the desert of the Roman people). For if they had felt conscious in their minds (*lit.*, *to themselves*) of any wrongdoing, it was not hard to take precautions; but they were deceived by this fact, *i.e.*, that they were not aware that ought had been done by them to justify their being afraid, and that they thought they should not feel fear without reason. But if I am willing to forget the old affront, can I lay aside the recollection of recent injuries also?

INDIRECT.

(His Caesar ita respondit :)  
Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari,

INDIRECT.

(Caesar replied to them as follows :) That for this reason

quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent; qui si alicuius iniuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo (eum) deceptum (esse) quod neque commissum (esse) a se intellexeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam se deponere posse?

the less hesitation was caused him, because he remembered the events which the Helvetian envoys had mentioned; and that he was the more pained, because they had not happened in accordance with the desert of the Roman people; for if they had been conscious in their minds of any wrong-doing, it would not have been hard to take precautions; but that they were deceived by this fact, *i.e.*, that they were not aware that aught had been done by them to justify their being afraid, and that they thought they ought not to fear without reason. But if he were willing to forget the old affront, could he lay aside the recollection of recent injuries also?

Note.—These passages should be translated and re-translated until the rules of oblique narration are perfectly familiar.

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English, and turn into Latin indirect narration after *dixit*:—

1. Quis sim, inquit, scies ex hoc quem ad te misi; curā ut vir sis et cogita in quem locum sis progressus; vide quid iam tibi sit necesse et cura ut omnium tibi auxilia adiungas, etiam infimorum.
2. Veniam ipse, si potero, quamquam hodie aegroto; si minus, veniet frater qui decem millia passuum abest; vincendum est nobis aut moriendum.
3. Aedui obsides non reddent neque eis bellum inferent, si stipendium quotannis pendent.
4. Quod si præterea nemo sequetur, cum sola decima legione ibo.
5. Unde venis? quid vis? quid facturus es? finem fac.
6. Mihi haec res curae erit; volo de his rebus tecum agere.
7. Mons quem a Labieno teneri

voluerit, ab hoste tenetur. 8. Hoc die in eos, qui oram maritimam incolunt, profecturus sum. 9. Neque credo neque credidi neque credam. 10. Si quid a me vultis, ab armis discedite. 11. Si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, vobiscum pacem faciam. 12. Helvetii a maioribus ita instituti sunt ut obsides accipere, non dare, consueverint.

---

## LESSON CII.

### NOTES ON THE TENSES.

1. The present indicative of the Latin verb represents both the *indefinite*, the *progressive*, and the *emphatic* form of the English verb. Thus, amo is either *I love* (indef.), *I am loving* (progressive), or *I do love* (emphatic).

2. The present indicative is used idiomatically :

(a) In *narration*, for the *perfect* : as, Continuo milites Melitam mittit, *he immediately despatches men to Malta*.

(b) With adverbs of past time, for the English present-perfect (perfect with *have*) : as, Hoc iamdūdum (or iampridem) facio, *I have been doing this for a long time*.

Note.—The imperfect will, of course, be used for the English pluperfect : as, Iampridem sperabam, *I had long been hoping*.

(c) With *dum* (*while*), for the English past ; see p. 201, 3.

3. The imperfect represents an action as *continued* or *repeated* in past time : as, Scribēbam, *I was writing*; consilium mutavit, videbat enim nihil confici posse, *he altered his plan, for he saw that nothing could be done* (imperfect of *continuous action*); hæc pueri discebamus, *we used to learn this as boys* (imperfect of *repeated* or *habitual action*).

Note 1.—The Latin imperfect is often translated by the English *used to*, *began to*, *tried to*.

Note 2.—In the historians, the present infinitive is often used instead of the imperfect indicative, *when a series of actions is described*: as, Omnes clamare, *all kept crying out*; Caesar quotidie

eos frumentum flagitare, *Caesar kept daily importuning them for corn.* This is called the *historic infinitive*.

4. In writing letters, the Latins adapted the tenses to the time at which the letter would be read: as, *Neque cum haec scribebam nescius eram, I am not ignorant when I write* (literally, *I was not ignorant, when I was writing*).

#### FÖRE UT.

5. Many verbs have no supine and, therefore, no future infinitive (active or passive), which is formed from the supine. Such verbs form their future infinitive by means of *före* or *futurum esse* (*to be about to be*), and *ut* with the subjunctive: as, *Dicunt fore ut haec poscant, they say that they will demand these things; dixerunt fore ut ea poscerentur, they said that these things would be demanded* (imperfect, in accordance with the *rule of sequence*).

Note.—This construction is often used (as more convenient) even with verbs that have a supine: as, *Dixit fore ut rex mitteretur, he said that the king would be sent.*

#### FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

6. It has been shown (p. 179, note) that the future subjunctive active (which is wanting) is supplied in Latin by the active periphrastic conjugation, made up of the future participle and the verb *sum*. Thus: *Scio quid acturus sis, I know what you will do; sciebam quid acturus esses, I knew what you would do* (imperfect, after a secondary tense). The future subjunctive passive, and the future subjunctive active of verbs that have no supine, are formed by means of the impersonal *futurum sit* (or *esset*) with an *ut*-clause. Thus:—

##### *Future Subjunctive Active.*

*Rogo num futurum sit ut puer discat, I ask whether the boy will learn.*

*Rogavi num futurum esset ut puer disceret, I asked whether the boy would learn.*

##### *Future Subjunctive Passive.*

*Non dubito quin futurum sit ut puer doceatur, I do not doubt that the boy will be taught.*

Non dubitavi quin futurum esset ut puer doceretur, *I did not doubt that the boy would be taught.*

## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Iam pridem sperabam eum hoc facturum. 2. Tertium iam annum hic sumus. 3. Haec dum aguntur, Hannibal castra movet. 4. Dixit se hoc iam dudum notum habere. 5. Philosophia in Graecia florebat. 6. Facies totius negotii varia fuit : pars cedere, alii insequi ; nihil consilio agi, fors omnia regere (p. 216, 3, note 2). 7. Mihi dicebat unde veniret. 8. Nescio quando futurum sit ut convalescat. 9. Speravi fore ut convalesceret. 10. Credo fore ut feriat. 11. Putavi fore ut urbs a nobis caperetur. 12. Rogavit quando futurum esset ut signum attolleretur. 13. Huius modi viros adolescens admirabar. 14. Hostes in nos saxa devolvebant.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Did I not know what you would do? 2. I did not doubt that the king would be killed by him. 3. He said that these facts would soon be learned by the scholar. 4. It is uncertain whether the boy will learn. 5. It was uncertain whether the boy would be taught. 6. Who can doubt that our camp will be easily defended? 7. Since you are ashamed of your plan, what prevents you from abandoning it? 8. I have long been anxious to know your reason for doing it. 9. He used to promise to come every day. 10. He said that he knew what we would demand (*posco*). 11. Whenever they captured a town, they butchered men, women and children (p. 204, 4).

## LESSON CIII.

NOTES ON THE PARTICIPLE.—“WITHOUT”  
AND A PARTICIPIAL NOUN.

## Present Participle Passive.

1. The pres. part. pass. (which is wanting in Latin) is supplied by a relative clause : as, *Domus, quae hic aedificatur, iam venit, the house being built here, has already been sold.*

## IDIOMATIC USES OF THE PARTICIPLE.

2 (a) Two finite verbs in English connected by *and* are frequently expressed in Latin by a participle and a main verb: as, *Eum arreptum Romam duxerunt*, *they arrested him and took him to Rome*; *ingressus consedit*, *he entered and sat down*.

(b) The Latin perf. part. pass. with a noun, is often used to express two nouns in English: as, *Rex interfectus*, *the murder of the king*; *ab urbe condita*, *from the foundation of the city*; *nuntiata clades*, *the announcement of the defeat*.

(c) The present participle, when used—as it is so commonly in English—for the past participle, must be translated by the perf. part., or one of its equivalents (*p. 203, 3, note*). Thus: *Leaving home, he came to Athens*, *domo profectus Athenas venit*; *having heard this, quo audito* (*Proficiscens* would mean *while leaving*; *audiens*, *while hearing*).

(d) Instead of the perfect indicative active, the perf. part. pass. with *habeo* *I have*, is used (chiefly with verbs meaning *to know* or *find out*) to denote a *continuous effect*: as, *Fidem quam habent diu notam*, *faith which they have long known*.

(e) The ablative absolute can only be used when a new subject is introduced. Thus: *As the enemy were retiring, they wasted the land*, *hostes se recipientes agros vastabant* (not *hostibus se recipientibus*). But: *As the enemy were retiring, we wasted the land*, *hostibus se recipientibus, agros vastabamus*.

(f) A demonstrative pronoun can not be joined, as in English, to the participle. Thus: *Those doing this, will be punished*, is *qui hoc facient, poenas dabunt* (not *ii hoc facientes*).

(g) The present participle is often used in Latin to express an English abstract noun: as, *Interroganti mihi respondit*, *he replied to my question*; *lugentium lacrimae*, *tears of mourning* (lit. *of men mourning*).

(h) The agent with the perf. part. pass. is frequently expressed by the dative instead of by *a* (or *ab*) with a preposition: as, *Omnia haec mihi perspecta sunt*, *all these points have been studied by me*.

(i) To translate properly into English, the present or perfect participle, a finite clause is often required. This clause will be *relative, temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional*, according to the particular relation expressed by the participle. Thus :

Resistentibus non parcimus,	<i>we do not spare those who resist us</i> (relative).
Epistola ad me scribentem vēnit,	<i>the letter came to me as (when, while) I was writing</i> (temporal).
Caesar haec veritus suōs eduxit,	<i>because (as, since) he was afraid of this, Caesar led out his men</i> (causal).
Hoc crimine absolutus tamen furti damnatus est,	<i>though he was acquitted of this charge, he was condemned for theft</i> (concessive).
Nobis vel morientibus non ignosceret,	<i>he would not forgive us, even if we were dying</i> (conditional).

#### WITHOUT.

3. The ablative of the gerund can not be joined with *sine*, the usual preposition for *without*. Phrases, therefore, like *without injuring himself, without your perceiving it*, must be paraphrased into some synonymous form of words, and this turned into Latin. Thus : *He aids others without injuring himself, aliis subvēnit, non sibi nocens; I did it without your perceiving it, hoc feci, te non sentiente; they condemn him without hearing him, eum damnant inauditum; he cries without feeling grief, flet nec dolet; he never led out his army without examining the position of the ground, nunquam exercitum eduxit nisi explorato locorum situ; those cannot fall without these falling with them, cadere illa non possunt ut haec non concidant; to think of my going away without saying good-bye to anyone! mene abiisse, nullo salutato!*

Note.—The accusative with infinitive is used to express indignation or surprise. It is called the *Infinitive of Exclamation*. The interrogative *-ne* is frequently added to the first word, as if the sentence were interrogative in form.



## EXERCISE.

Translate into English :—

1. Instructos ordines in locum aequum deducit (p. 219, 2, (a)).
2. Hostes fugatos persequitur. 3. Hos transductos necat. 4. Illi libertatem imminutam non tulerunt. 5. Sibi quisque caesi regis decus expetebat. 6. Hoc e provincia decedens mihi negavit. 7. Haec diiudicare non poterimus, nisi melius ante (*adverb*) causam cognoverimus. 8. Adeone esse hominem infelicem quemquam! 9. Videor audire clamores gaudentium. 10. Celeriter aggressus eos ex vallo deturbavit. 11. Mendaci homini ne vera quidem dicenti credere solemus. 12. Haec omnia mutavit, me non probante. 13. Nonne sero ad mihi gratulandum vēnit? 14. Odisti me quum me amare debeas. 15. Operam dedit libris colligendis.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Nothing shall happen without my giving you notice. 2. He went away without consulting anyone. 3. I never visit you without coming away more learned. 4. Having taken the city, he touched nothing belonging to the temple. 5. They came to Italy during the reign of Tarquin. 6. Seize the man and slay him. 7. Are you not ashamed of the violation of your word? 8. You shall be punished for the violation of the treaty. 9. Fearing for the safety of himself and his friends, he fled to Rome. 10. Flinging themselves at his feet, they begged him to pardon them. 11. Manlius, having killed the Gaul, despoiled him. 12. He did not deny that he had ascertained this himself. 13. I asked those standing near what the man meant. 14. To my complaint that he had broken his word, he said nothing.

---

## LESSON CIV.

### THE PREPOSITION.

1. A Latin preposition governs either the accusative or the ablative, except in, sub, super (*above*), and subter (*beneath*), which govern both.

Note.—*Gratiā* and *causā* (*for the sake of*) govern the genitive; but they are really nouns used as prepositions.

2. *In*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter* govern the *ablative* when they express *rest*, and the *accusative* when they express *motion*: as, *In urbe* *in the city*; *in urbem*, *into the city*; *sub muro*, *under the wall*; *sub murum*, *up under the wall*; *super eo pendet*, *it hangs over him*; *super eum volat*, *it flies over him*.

3. The following nine prepositions govern the *ablative*: *A* (*or ab*), *from, by*; *coram*, *in presence of*; *cum*, *with*; *de*, *from, concerning*; *e* (*ex*), *out of*; *prae*, *in front of, in consequence of*; *pro*, *in front of, on behalf of*; *sine*, *without*; *tenus*, *up to*.

4. All other prepositions govern the *accusative*. A list is given for reference: *Ad*, *towards*; *adversus*, *opposite*; *ante*, *before*; *apud*, *beside*; *circum* (*or circā*), *round*; *cis* (*or citrā*), *on this side of*; *trans*, *across*; *contrā*, *against*; *ergā*, *towards*; *extrā*, *outside of*; *inter*, *among*; *infrā*, *below*; *intrā*, *within*; *iuxtā*, *near*; *ob*, *on account of*; *penes*, *in the power of*; *per*, *through*; *post*, *behind*; *praeter*, *past*; *prope*, *near to*; *propter*, *close to*; *secundum*, *along, after*; *versus*, *towards* (written after its case); *ultrā*, *beyond*.

5. The prepositions are widely used with nouns to form idiomatic adverbial phrases of *place, time, and manner*. Such prepositional phrases should be committed to memory as they are met with. A list is added for reference:—

*A* or *ab* (*from, by*).

*A fronte*, *in front* (so, *a lātēre*, *in flank*; *a tergo*, *in rear*); *a senatu stat*, *he stands on the senate's side*; *a re frumentaria laborare*, *to be in distress with regard to supplies*; *confestim a proelio*, *immediately after the battle*.

*Ad* (*to*).

*Ad ludos pecunia decernitur*, *money is voted for the games*; *ad fortunam felix*, *fortunate in point of fortune*; *ad Cannas*, *in the neighborhood of Cannae*; *ad Siciliam*, *off Sicily*; *ad aliorum arbitrium*, *at the beck of others*.

Apud (*beside*).

Apud forum, *near the forum*; apud me, *in my house*; apud me plus vālet, *he has more influence with me*; apud Terentium, *in the writings of Terence*.

Cum (*with*).

Cum gladio, *wearing a sword*; magnā cum curā quaerit, *he seeks with great care*; confer hanc pacem cum illo bello, *compare this peace with that war*; cum aliquo certare, *contend with a person*.

De (*from, about*).

De industria, *on purpose*; bene mōrēri de patria, *deserve well of one's country*.

E or ex (*out of*).

Ex equis pugnare, *fight on horseback*; statua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*; ex consulatu, *immediately after his consulship*; ex itinere, *while on the march*; quaerere ex aliquo, *ask from a person*; ex improvise, *unexpectedly*; ex foedere, *in accordance with the treaty*; ex sententia, *satisfactorily*; ex parte magna, *in a great measure*.

In (*in or into*).

In equo, *on horseback*; in barbaris, *among barbarians*; in bonis ducere, *reckon among blessings*; in te unum se tota convertet civitas, *the whole state will turn to you alone*; pietas in deos, *piety to the gods*; pecunia in rem militarem data, *money given for military purposes*; in rem tuam haec est, *this is for your interest*; in dies, *every day*; in horas, *every hour*; denarius in singulos modios, *a denarius for every bushel*; in posterum diem, *for the next day*.

Inter (*between, among*).

Inter me et te hoc interest, *there is this difference between you and me*; inter se aspiciēbant, *they kept looking at one another*; inter aedificandos muros, *during the building of the walls*.

Per (*through*).

Per vim, *by violence*; per speculatores, *by means of spies (secondary agent)*; per me, *through my instrumentality*; per to

stetit quominus vinceret, *it was owing to you that he did not conquer*; digladientur per me licet, *they may fight it out, as far as I am concerned*.

**Praeter** (*past, except*).

Praeter modum, *beyond measure*; decem praeter se, *ten besides themselves*; omnes praeter unum, *all except one*; praeter naturam, *outside the course of nature*.

**Pro** (*before, instead of, in behalf of*).

Pro occiso relictus, *left for dead*; pro meritis gratias agere, *to thank for services*; pro multitudine hominum, fines angustos habent, *considering their population they have limited territory*; proellum atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur, *a battle is fought fiercer than might have been expected from the number of combatants*.

**Sub** (*under, up to*)

Sub nostram aciem successerunt, *they came right up to our line*; quae sub sensus sunt, *what is within the range of the senses*; sub haec dicta omnes procubuerunt, *after these words all prostrated themselves*; sub ipsā profectioe, *at the very start*; sub noctem, *at night-fall*.

#### EXERCISE.

Translate into English :

1. Velim ut cogites quid agendum nobis sit super hac re. 2. Satis superque dictum esse putavit. 3. Nonne paulo ultra eum locum castra transtulit? 4. Supra belli metum, id quoque accesserat. 5. Hostes sub monte illo consēdisse dixit. 6. Homo est sine re, sine fide, sine spe. 7. Omnia quae secundum (*according to*) naturam fiunt in bonis habenda sunt. 8. Non aequum est me propter vos decipi. 9. Secundum te nihil est amicus solitudine. 10. Decet, quidquid agas, agere pro viribus. 11. Haec contra legem proque lege dicta sunt. 12. Solem prae multitudine iaculorum non videbitis. 13. Senatus paulo post de his rebus habitus est. 14. Quum et per valetudinem et per anni tempus navigare poteris, ad nos veni.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Next day he descends from the mountain and pitches his camp beside the river.
2. O! that he had not led us towards Rome.
3. This done, he threw himself upon his sword.
4. Are we never to know in whose hands the decision rests?
5. Tell me when you intend to speak to him about it.
6. Do not speak in his behalf.
7. You will have the greatest influence with him.
8. They halted when they came within the cast of a spear.
9. Is there not a race that dwells beneath the earth?
10. After so many battles we are tired of war.
11. You have come here after the manner of (*in modum*) fugitives.
12. In whose hands does the power lie?
13. It is a scandalous thing to take money for (*ob*) giving a verdict.
14. Do you think they love each other? (use *inter*.)



# PART II.

---

READER :

NEPOS AND CAESAR SELECTIONS

PRESCRIBED FOR MATRICULATION IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO.

---

WITH EXERCISES.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.



## DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

### I.—FIRST DECLENSION.

Latin nouns end in nominative in *-a*. Nouns in *-e*, *-as*, *-es* are derived from Greek.

Gender Rule: Nouns in *-a*<sup>1</sup>, *-e* are feminine; those in *-as*, *-es* are masculine.

Genitive ending regularly, *-æ*.

Mens a, F., <i>a table</i> .		Epitom e, F., <i>an abridgment</i> .
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR <sup>3</sup> .
<i>Nom.</i> mens <i>ǎ</i>	mens <i>æ</i>	<i>Nom.</i> ěpĭtŏm <i>ē</i>
<i>Gen.</i> mens <i>æ</i>	mens <i>ārum</i>	<i>Gen.</i> ěpĭtŏm <i>ēs</i>
<i>Dat.</i> mens <i>æ</i>	mens <i>īs</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>Dat.</i> ěpĭtŏm <i>æ</i>
<i>Acc.</i> mens <i>am</i>	mens <i>as</i>	<i>Acc.</i> ěpĭtŏm <i>ēn</i>
<i>Voc.</i> mens <i>ǎ</i>	mens <i>æ</i>	<i>Voc.</i> ěpĭtŏm <i>ē</i>
<i>Abl.</i> mens <i>ā</i>	mens <i>īs</i>	<i>Abl.</i> ěpĭtŏm <i>ē</i>

Leonid *as*, M., *Leonidas*.

SINGULAR.
<i>Nom.</i> Lěōnĭd <i>as</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Lěōnĭd <i>æ</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Lěōnĭd <i>æ</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Lěōnĭd <i>am</i> ( <i>-an</i> )
<i>Voc.</i> Lěōnĭd <i>ā</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Lěōnĭd <i>ā</i>

Pers *es*, M., *a Persian*.

SINGULAR.
<i>Nom.</i> Pers <i>es</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Pers <i>æ</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <sup>o</sup> Pers <i>æ</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Pers <i>en</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Pers <i>ē</i> ( <i>-ǎ</i> )
<i>Abl.</i> Pers <i>ē</i> ( <i>-ā</i> )

<sup>1</sup> Nouns in *-a* denoting male beings are masculine; *as*, *Nauta*, *a sailor*; *agricola*, *a farmer*; *poeta*, *a poet*; also *dama*, *a deer*; *talpa*, *a mole*; *Hadria*, *the Adriatic Sea*.

<sup>2</sup> The following nouns have usually *-ābus* in the dative and ablative plural: *Dea*, *a goddess*; *filia*, *a daughter*; *liberta*, *a freedwoman*; *mula*, *a she-mule*; *equa*, *a mare*; *asina*, *a she-ass*.

<sup>3</sup> When nouns derived from the Greek have a plural, it is regular like the plural of *mensa*.

## II.—SECOND DECLENSION.

Latin nouns end in -us, -er, -ir, -um. Nouns in -os, -on are derived from Greek.

Gender Rule : Nouns in -us<sup>1</sup>, -er, -ir, -os are masculine ; those in -um, -on are neuter.

Genitive ending, -i.

Dōmīn us, M., *a lord, master.*

Māgister, M., *a master, teacher.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	dōmīn us	dōmīn ī	<i>Nom.</i>	māgister	māgistr ī
<i>Gen.</i>	dōmīn ī	dōmīn ōrum <sup>2</sup>	<i>Gen.</i>	māgistr ī	māgistr ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	dōmīn ō	dōmīn īs	<i>Dat.</i>	māgistr ō	māgistr īs
<i>Acc.</i>	dōmīn um	dōmīn ōs	<i>Acc.</i>	māgistr um	māgistr ōs
<i>Voc.</i>	dōmīn ē <sup>2</sup>	dōmīn ī	<i>Voc.</i>	māgister	māgistr ī
<i>Abl.</i>	dōmīn ō	dōmīn īs	<i>Abl.</i>	māgistr ō	māgistr īs

Puer, M., *a boy.*

Vir, M., *a man.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	pūer	pūer ī	<i>Nom.</i>	vīr	vīr ī
<i>Gen.</i>	pūer ī	pūer ōrum	<i>Gen.</i>	vīr ī	vīr ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pūer ō	pūer īs	<i>Dat.</i>	vīr ō	vīr īs
<i>Acc.</i>	pūer um	pūer ōs	<i>Acc.</i>	vīr um	vīr ōs
<i>Voc.</i>	pūer	pūer ī	<i>Voc.</i>	vīr	vīr ī
<i>Abl.</i>	pūer ō	pūer īs	<i>Abl.</i>	vīr ō	vīr īs

<sup>1</sup>Exceptions to Gender (2nd Decl.).—The following are feminine : (1) Names of cities and islands: as, Cōrinthus, *Corinth*; Dēlos, *Delos*. (2) Names of trees: as, Fāgus, *a beech-tree*; pīrus, *a pear-tree*. (3) Words that are feminine in Greek: as, Methōdus, *method*. (4) Alvus, *belly*; cōlus, *distaff*; hūmus, *ground*; vanhus, *a wheat-fan*; carbāsus, *linen* (pl. carbāsa). The following are neuter: Pēlāgus, *sea*; vīrus, *poison*; vulgus, *the rabble* (sometimes masculine).

<sup>2</sup>Nouns in -ius often contract the genitive singular -īi into -ī, and the vocative -īe into -ī: as, Mercūrīi, *Mercurī*; Mercūrīe, *Mercūrī*.

<sup>3</sup>The following nouns have -um for -ōrum, in the genitive plural: Deus, *a god*; nummus, *money*; faber, *a workman*; vir, *a man*; sōcīus, *a companion, ally*.

Deus, *a god*, is declined: Sing. Nom., dēus; Gen., dēī; Dat., dēō; Acc., dēum; Voc., dēus; Abl., dēō. Plur. Nom., dēī, dēī, dēī; Gen., dēōrum, dēum; Dat., dēīs, dēīs, dēīs; Acc., dēos; Voc., dēī, dēī, dēī; Abl., dēīs, dēīs, dēīs.

Bell um, N., <i>war.</i>		Dēl os, F., <i>Delos.</i>		Ili on, N., <i>Ilium or Troy.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR <sup>1</sup> .		SINGULAR.	
<i>Nom.</i> bell um	bell ā	<i>Nom.</i> Dēl os, ūs		Ili on, um	
<i>Gen.</i> bell i	bell ōrum	<i>Gen.</i> Dēl i		Ili i	
<i>Dat.</i> bell ō	bell is	<i>Dat.</i> Dēl ō		Ili ō	
<i>Acc.</i> bell um	bell ā	<i>Acc.</i> Dēl on, um		Ili on, um	
<i>Voc.</i> bell um	bell ā	<i>Voc.</i> Dēl ē		Ili on, um	
<i>Abl.</i> bell ō	bell is	<i>Abl.</i> Dēl ō		Ili ō	

## III.—THIRD DECLENSION.

Nominative, various endings.

Genitive ending, *-is*.

*Masculine*<sup>2</sup> endings: *-er, -or, -os, -es* (increasing in the genitive), and *-o* (except *-do, -go, -io*).

*Feminine*<sup>3</sup> endings: *-do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, -x, -es* (not increasing in the genitive), *-s* impure, and *-ūs* in words of more than one syllable.

*Neuter*<sup>4</sup> endings: *-c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ur, -ūs, -ūs* (in words of one syllable).

Princeps, M., <i>chief.</i>		Trabs, F., <i>a beam.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> princeps	princīp ēs	<i>Nom.</i> trab s	trāb ēs
<i>Gen.</i> princīp is	princīp um	<i>Gen.</i> trāb is	trāb um
<i>Dat.</i> princīp i	princīp ībus	<i>Dat.</i> trāb i	trāb ībus
<i>Acc.</i> princīp em	princīp ēs	<i>Acc.</i> trāb em	trāb ēs
<i>Voc.</i> princep s	princīp ēs	<i>Voc.</i> trab s	trāb ēs
<i>Abl.</i> princīp ē	princīp ībus	<i>Abl.</i> trāb ē	trāb ībus

<sup>1</sup> Greek nouns in the plural are usually regular, those in *-os* being inflected like *dominus* in the plural, those in *-on* like *bellum*; but both classes may have *-ōn* instead of *-ōrum* in the genitive plural.

<sup>2</sup> *Exceptions to Gender* (of 3rd Decl.).—(1) *-er*: Cādāv-er, -ēris N., *a dead body*; iter, itinēris, N., *a road*; papāver, -ēris, N., *a poppy*; tuber, -ēris, N., *a swelling*; uber, -ēris, N., *an udder*; ver, vēris, N., *spring*; verber, -ēris, N., *a lash*.

(2) *-or*: Arb-or, -ōris, F., *a tree*; aequ-or, -ōris, N., *the sea*; marm-or, -ōris, N., *marble*; cor, cordis, N., *the heart*.

(3) *-es*: Comp-es, -ēdis, F., *fetter*; merc-es, -ēdis, F., *merchandise*; merg-es, -itis, F., *a sheaf*; qui-cs, -ētis, F.; rēqui-es, -ētis, F., *rest*; sēg-es, -ētis, F., *a crop*; tēg-es, -ētis, F., *a covering*; aes, aeris, N., *copper*.

(4) *-os*: Cos, cōtis, F., *a whetstone*; dos, dōtis, F., *dowry*; ōs, oësis, N., *a bone*; ōs, ōris, N., *a mouth*.

(5) *-o*: Cāro, carnis, F., *flesh*; echo, echūs, F., *echo*. (Over).

Hiems, F., *winter*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	hiems	hiēm ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hiēm is	hiēm um
<i>Dat.</i>	hiēm i	hiēm ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hiēm em	hiēm ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	hiem s	hiēm ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hiēm ě	hiēm ibus

Miles, M., *a soldier*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	mīles	mīlīt ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlīt is	mīlīt um
<i>Dat.</i>	mīlīt i	mīlīt ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mīlīt em	mīlīt ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	mīle s	mīlīt ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlīt ě	mīlīt ibus

Pes, M., *a foot*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	pes	pĕd es
<i>Gen.</i>	pĕd is	pĕd um
<i>Dat.</i>	pĕd i	pĕd ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	pĕd em	pĕd ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	pe s	pĕd ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	pĕd ě	pĕd ibus

Flos, M., *a flower*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	fĕlōs	fĕlōr ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	fĕlōr is	fĕlōr um
<i>Dat.</i>	fĕlōr i	fĕlōr ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fĕlōr em	fĕlōr ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	fĕlōs	fĕlōr ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	fĕlōr ě	fĕlōr ibus

<sup>3</sup>(1) -o: Ord-o, -inis, M., *arrangement*; card-o, -inis, M., *hinge*; iŕg-o, -ōnis, M., *a mattock*; marg-o, -inis, M., *margin* (of a river).

(2) -is: Amnis, -is, M., *a river*; collis, -is, M., *hill*; cin-is, -ĕris, M., *ashes*; crīn-is, -is, M., *hair*; ens-is, -is, M., *a sword*; fascis, -is, M., *bundle*; ŕnis, -is, M. and F., *end*; follis, -is, M., *bellows*; fun-is, -is, M., *a rope*; ign-is, -is, M., *fire*; lāp-is, -īdis, M., *a stone*; mens-is, -is, M., *a mouth*; orb-is, -is, M., *a circle*; pān-is, -is, M., *bread*; pisc-is, -is, M., *a fish*; post-is, -is, M., *a post*; pulv-is, -ĕris, M., *dust*; sangu-is, -inis, M., *blood*; torr-is, -is, M., *fire-brand*; ungu-is, -is, M., *a nail*; vect-is, -is, M., *crowbar*; verm-is, -is, M., *a worm*.

(3) -x: Calix, -īcis, M., *a cup*; codex, -īcis, M., *a book*; cortex, -īcis, M., *bark of a tree*; grex, grĕgis, M., *flock*; pollex, -īcis, M., *thumb*; silex, -īcis, M., *flint*; vertex, -īcis, M., *top*.

(4) -es: Acīnāces, -is, M., *a scimitar*.

(5) -s impure: Mons, montis, M., *a mountain*; dens, dentis, M., *tooth*; fons, fontis, M., *a fountain*; pons, pontis, M., *bridge*; bidens, bidentis, M., *a mattock*; rudens, rudentis, M., *a rope*.

(6) -as: As, assis, M., *a small coin*; elephas, elephantis, M., *an elephant*; vas, vasis, N. (in singular of 3rd; plural, vāsa, -ōrum, of the 2nd), *a vessel*; fas, indecl., N., *right*; nefas, indecl., N., *wrong*.

<sup>4</sup>(1) -l: Sal, sālis, M., *salt*; sol, sōlis, M., *sun*.

(2) -n: Lien, liĕnis, M., *spleen*; ren, rĕnis, M., *kidney*; splen, splĕnis, M., *spleen*; pecten, pectĕnis, M., *comb*.

(3) -ur: Fur, fŕris, M., *thief*; turfur, ŕris, M., *bran*; turtur, ŕris, M., *a turtle-dove*; vultur, -ŕris, M., *a vulture*.

(4) -us: Pĕcus, -ŕdis, F., *a single head of cattle*; lĕpus, -ĕris, M., *a hare*; grus, grŕis, M., *a crane*; sus, sŕis, M., *a pig*; mus, mŕris, M., *a mouse*.

Opūs, N., *a work.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ōpūs	ōpēr ā
<i>Gen.</i> ōpēr īs	ōpēr um
<i>Dat.</i> ōpēr ī	ōpēr ībus
<i>Acc.</i> ōpūs	ōpēr ā
<i>Voc.</i> ōpūs	ōpēr ā
<i>Abl.</i> ōpēr ē	ōpēr ībus

Corpūs, N., *a body.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> corpūs	corpōr ž
<i>Gen.</i> corpōr īs	corpōr um
<i>Dat.</i> corpōr ī	corpōr ībus
<i>Acc.</i> corpūs	corpōr ā
<i>Voc.</i> corpūs	corpōr ā
<i>Abl.</i> corpōr ē	corpōr ībus

Rēgĭo, F., *a district.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rēgĭo	rēgĭōn ēs
<i>Gen.</i> rēgĭōn īs	rēgĭōn um
<i>Dat.</i> rēgĭōn ī	rēgĭōn ībus
<i>Acc.</i> rēgĭōn em	rēgĭōn ēs
<i>Voc.</i> rēgĭo	rēgĭōn ēs
<i>Abl.</i> rēgĭōn ē	rēgĭōn ībus

Virgo, F., *a maiden.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> virgo	virgĭn ēs
<i>Gen.</i> virgĭn īs	virgĭn um
<i>Dat.</i> virgĭn ī	virgĭn ībus
<i>Acc.</i> virgĭn em	virgĭn ēs
<i>Voc.</i> virgo	virgĭn ēs
<i>Abl.</i> virgĭn ē	virgĭn ībus

Victor, M., *a conqueror.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> victor	victōr ēs
<i>Gen.</i> victōr īs	victōr um
<i>Dat.</i> victōr ī	victōr ībus
<i>Acc.</i> victōr em	victōr ēs
<i>Voc.</i> victor	victōr ēs
<i>Abl.</i> victōr ē	victōr ībus

Sol, M., *the sun.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> sōl	sōl ēs
<i>Gen.</i> sōl īs	sōl um
<i>Dat.</i> sōl ī	sōl ībus
<i>Acc.</i> sōl em	sōl ēs
<i>Voc.</i> sōl	sōl ēs
<i>Abl.</i> sōl ē	sōl ībus

Consul, M., *a consul.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> consūl	consūl ēs
<i>Gen.</i> consūl īs	consūl um
<i>Dat.</i> consūl ī	consūl ībus
<i>Acc.</i> consūl em	consūl ēs
<i>Voc.</i> consūl	consūl ēs
<i>Abl.</i> consūl ē	consūl ībus

Passer, M., *a sparrow.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> passer	passēr ēs
<i>Gen.</i> passēr īs	passēr um
<i>Dat.</i> passēr ī	passēr ībus
<i>Acc.</i> passēr em	passēr ēs
<i>Voc.</i> passer	passēr ēs
<i>Abl.</i> passēr ē	passēr ībus

Pater, M., *a father.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> pater	pātr ēs
<i>Gen.</i> patr is	pātr um
<i>Dat.</i> patr ī	pātr ibus
<i>Acc.</i> patr em	pātr ēs
<i>Voc.</i> pater	pātr ēs
<i>Abl.</i> patr ĕ	pātr ibus

Iudex, M., *a judge.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> iudex	iūdic ēs
<i>Gen.</i> iudic is	iūdic um
<i>Dat.</i> iudic ī	iūdic ibus
<i>Acc.</i> iudic em	iūdic ēs
<i>Voc.</i> iudex	iūdic ēs
<i>Abl.</i> iudic ĕ	iūdic ibus

Rex, M., *a king.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rex	rēg ēs
<i>Gen.</i> rēg is	rēg um
<i>Dat.</i> rēg ī	rēg ibus
<i>Acc.</i> rēg em	rēg ēs
<i>Voc.</i> rex	rēg ēs
<i>Abl.</i> rēg ĕ	rēg ibus

Radix, F., *a root.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> radix	rādic ēs
<i>Gen.</i> radic is	rādic um
<i>Dat.</i> radic ī	rādic ibus
<i>Acc.</i> radic em	rādic ēs
<i>Voc.</i> radix	rādic ēs
<i>Abl.</i> radic ĕ	rādic ibus

Dux, M. or F., *a leader.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> dux	dūc ēs
<i>Gen.</i> dūc is	dūc um
<i>Dat.</i> dūc ī	dūc ibus
<i>Acc.</i> dūc em	dūc ēs
<i>Voc.</i> dux	dūc ēs
<i>Abl.</i> dūc ĕ	dūc ibus

Lex, F., *a law.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> lex	lēg ēs
<i>Gen.</i> lēg is	lēg um
<i>Dat.</i> lēg ī	lēg ibus
<i>Acc.</i> lēg em	lēg ēs
<i>Voc.</i> lex	lēg ēs
<i>Abl.</i> lēg ĕ	lēg ibus

Hostis, M. or F., *an enemy.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> host is	host ēs
<i>Gen.</i> host is	host ium
<i>Dat.</i> host ī	host ibus
<i>Acc.</i> host em	host ēs (-is)
<i>Voc.</i> host is	host ēs
<i>Abl.</i> host ĕ	host ibus

Nubes, F., *a cloud.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> nūbēs	nūb ēs
<i>Gen.</i> nūb is	nūb ium
<i>Dat.</i> nūb ī	nūb ibus
<i>Acc.</i> nūb em	nūb ēs
<i>Voc.</i> nūb ēs	nub ēs
<i>Abl.</i> nūb ĕ	nūb ibus

Turris, F., *a tower.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	turr ĩs	turr ěs
<i>Gen.</i>	turr ĩs	turr ĩum <sup>3</sup>
<i>Dat.</i>	turr ĩ	turr ĩbus
<i>Acc.</i>	turr em (-im) <sup>1</sup>	turr ěs
<i>Voc.</i>	turr ĩs	turr ěs
<i>Abl.</i>	turr ě (-ĭ) <sup>2</sup>	turr ĩbus

Ignis, M., *fire.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	ign ĩs	ign ěs
<i>Gen.</i>	ign ĩs	ign ĩum
<i>Dat.</i>	ign ĩ	ign ĩbus
<i>Acc.</i>	ign em	ign ěs (-is)
<i>Voc.</i>	ign ĩs	ign ěs
<i>Abl.</i>	ign ě (-ĭ)	ign ĩbus

Mare, N., *the sea.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	măřě	măř ĩă <sup>4</sup>
<i>Gen.</i>	măř ĩs	măř ĩum
<i>Dat.</i>	măř ĩ	măř ĩbus
<i>Acc.</i>	măřě	măř ĩă
<i>Voc.</i>	măřě	măř ĩă
<i>Abl.</i>	măř ĩ	măř ĩbus

Animal, N., *an animal.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	ăňĭmăł	ăňĭmăł ĩă
<i>Gen.</i>	ăňĭmăł ĩs	ăňĭmăł ĩum
<i>Dat.</i>	ăňĭmăł ĩ	ăňĭmăł ĩbus
<i>Acc.</i>	ăňĭmăł	ăňĭmăł ĩă
<i>Voc.</i>	ăňĭmăł	ăňĭmăł ĩă
<i>Abl.</i>	ăňĭmăł ĩ	ăňĭmăł ĩbus

Calcar, N., *a spur.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	calcar	calcăr ĩă
<i>Gen.</i>	calcăr ĩs	calcăr ĩum
<i>Dat.</i>	calcăr ĩ	calcăr ĩbus
<i>Acc.</i>	calcar	calcăr ĩă
<i>Voc.</i>	calcar	calcăr ĩă
<i>Abl.</i>	calcăr ĩ	calcăr ĩbus

Urbs, F., *a city.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	urb s	urb ěs
<i>Gen.</i>	urb ĩs	urb ĩum
<i>Dat.</i>	urb ĩ	urb ĩbus
<i>Acc.</i>	urb em	urb ěs
<i>Voc.</i>	urb s	urb ěs
<i>Abl.</i>	urb ě	urb ĩbus

<sup>1</sup> The following nouns have the acc. sing. in *-im*: *Amussis, a carpenter's square*; *tussis, a cough*; *sitis, thirst*; *ravis, hoarseness*; *vis, force, strength*; these nouns and also neuters in *-e, -al, -ar* have abl. sing. in *-ĭ*.

<sup>2</sup> The following nouns have the acc. sing. in *-im* or *-em*, and abl. sing. in *-i* or *-e*: *Clavis, a key*; *febris, fever*; *messis, harvest*; *navis, a ship*; *puppis, a stern of a vessel*; *restis, a rope*; *secŭris, an axe*; *sementis, sowing*; *strigilis, strigil*.

<sup>3</sup> The following nouns have the genitive plural in *-ium*: (1) Neuters in *-e, -al, -ar*; (2) monosyllables in *-x* or *-s* impure; (3) nouns in *-es* or *-is*, not increasing in the genitive; (4) nouns ending in *-ns* or *-rs*.

<sup>4</sup> Neuters in *-e, -al, -ar* have *-ia* in pl. nom., acc., voc.

Nox, F., *night*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	nox	noct ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	noct is	noct ium
<i>Dat.</i>	noct ī	noct ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	noct em	noct ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	nox	noct ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	noct ě	noct ibus

<sup>1</sup> Amans, M. or F., *a lover*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	āman s	āmant ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	āmant is	āmant ium
<i>Dat.</i>	āmant ī	āmant ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	āmant em	āmant ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	āman s	āmant ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	āmant ě (-ī)	āmant ibus

Bos, M., *an ox*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	bōs	bōv ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	bōv is	{ bōv um bō um
<i>Dat.</i>	bōv ī	{ bō bus bū bus
<i>Acc.</i>	bōv em	bōv ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	bōs	bōv ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	bōv ě	{ bo bus bū bus

Vis, F., *strength*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	v is	vīr ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	v is <sup>1</sup>	vīr ium
<i>Dat.</i>	v ī <sup>1</sup>	vīr ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	v im	vīr ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	v is	vīr ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	v ī	vīr ibus

Sus, M. or F., *swine*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	sūs	sū ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	sū is	sū um
<i>Dat.</i>	sū ī	{ sū ibus sū bus
<i>Acc.</i>	sū em	sū ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	sūs	sū ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	sū ě	{ sū ibus sū bus

Nix, F., *snow*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	nix	nīv ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	nīv is	nīv ium
<i>Dat.</i>	nīv ī	nīv ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	nīv em	nīv ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	nix	nīv ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	nīv ě	nīv ibus

<sup>1</sup> The genitive and dative singular of vis are rare.



Senex, M., <i>an old man.</i>		Iupiter, M., <i>Jupiter.</i>		Iter, N., <i>a journey.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i> sēnex	sēn ēs	<i>Nom.</i> Iūpīter	<i>Nom.</i> īter	ītīnēr ā	
<i>Gen.</i> sēn is	sēn um	<i>Gen.</i> Iōv is	<i>Gen.</i> ītīnēr is	ītīnēr um	
<i>Dat.</i> sēn ī	sēn ībus	<i>Dat.</i> Iōv ī	<i>Dat.</i> ītīnēr ī	ītīnēr ībus	
<i>Acc.</i> sēn em	sēn ēs	<i>Acc.</i> Iōv em	<i>Acc.</i> īter	ītīnēr ā	
<i>Voc.</i> sēnex	sēn ēs	<i>Voc.</i> Iūpīter	<i>Voc.</i> īter	ītīnēr ā	
<i>Abl.</i> sēn ě	sēn ībus	<i>Abl.</i> Iōv ě	<i>Abl.</i> ītīnēr ě	ītīnēr ībus	

## GREEK PROPER NAMES.

Neocles, M., <i>Neocles.</i>		Themistocles, M., <i>Themistocles.</i>		Salamis, F., <i>Salamis.</i>	
SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
<i>Nom.</i> Nēocl es		<i>Nom.</i> Thēmistōcl ēs		<i>Nom.</i> Sălām is	
<i>Gen.</i> Nēocl is (-ī)		<i>Gen.</i> Thēmistōcl is or i		<i>Gen.</i> Sălāmīn is (-os)	
<i>Dat.</i> Nēocli		<i>Dat.</i> Thēmistōcl ī		<i>Dat.</i> Sălāmīn ī	
<i>Acc.</i> Nēocl em		<i>Acc.</i> Thēmistōcl em -ēn		<i>Acc.</i> Sălāmīn ā	
<i>Voc.</i> Nēocl es		<i>Voc.</i> Thēmistōcl ēs		<i>Voc.</i> Sălām is	
<i>Abl.</i> Nēocl ě		<i>Abl.</i> Thēmistōcl ě		<i>Abl.</i> Sălāmīn ě	

## IV.—FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nominative endings, -ūs, -ū.

Genitive ending, -ūs.

Gender Rule: Nouns in -ūs are masculine<sup>1</sup>; those in -ū are neuter.

Fructus, M., *fruit.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> fruct ūs	fruct ūs	<i>Acc.</i> fruct um	fruct ūs
<i>Gen.</i> fruct ūs	fruct ūum	<i>Voc.</i> fruct ūs	fruct ūs
<i>Dat.</i> fruct ūī	fruct ībus <sup>2</sup>	<i>Abl.</i> fruct ū	fruct ībus

<sup>1</sup>Exceptions to Gender of Fourth Declension.—The following are feminine: *Acus, a needle*; *colus, a distaff* (also of the 2nd); *domus, a house*; *porticus, a portico*; *tribus, a tribe*; *Idūs* (pl.), *the Ides of the month*; *Quinquātrūs, the feast of Minerva*; *penus, store* (when of this declension); *mānus, a hand*.

<sup>2</sup>The following have *ūbus* instead of *ībus* in the dative and ablative plural: *Artus, a joint*; *portus, a harbor*; *tribus, a tribe*; *veru, a spit*; and all dissyllables in -cus: *as, iacus, a lake*.

Domūs, F., *a house.*Cornu, N., *a horn.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	dōm ūs	dōm ūs	<i>Nom.</i>	corn ū	corn ūā
<i>Gen.</i>	dōm ūs	dōm ūum (-ōrum)	<i>Gen.</i>	corn ūs	corn ūum
<i>Dat.</i>	dōm ūī (-ō)	dōm ūibus	<i>Dat.</i>	corn ū	corn ūibus
<i>Acc.</i>	dōm um	dōm ōs (-ūs)	<i>Acc.</i>	corn ū	corn ūā
<i>Voc.</i>	dōm ūs	dōm ūs	<i>Voc.</i>	corn ū	corn ūā
<i>Abl.</i>	dōm ō (-ū)	dōm ūibus	<i>Abl.</i>	corn ū	corn ūibus

## V.—FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nominative ending, -ēs.

Genitive ending, -ēī.

Gender Rule : Nouns are feminine.<sup>1</sup>Rēs, F., *a thing.*Dies, M. or F., *a day.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	r ēs	r ēs	<i>Nom.</i>	dī ēs	dī ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	r ēī	r ērum	<i>Gen.</i>	dī ēī	dī ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	r ēī	r ēbus	<i>Dat.</i>	dī ēī	dī ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	r em	r ēs	<i>Acc.</i>	dī em	dī ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	r ēs	r ēs	<i>Voc.</i>	dī ēs	dī ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	r ē	r ēbus	<i>Abl.</i>	dī ē	dī ēbus

Respublica, F., *the state.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rēspublīc ā	rēspublīc aē
<i>Gen.</i> rēīpublīc aē	rērumpublīc ārum
<i>Dat.</i> rēīpublīc aē	rēbuspublīc īs
<i>Acc.</i> rempublīc am	rēspublīc as
<i>Voc.</i> rēspublīc ā	rēspublīc aē
<i>Abl.</i> rēpublīc ā	rēbuspublīc īs

<sup>1</sup> *Exceptions to Gender of Fifth Declension.*—Dies, *a day*, is masc. or fem. in sing.; in the plural masc.; mēridīes, *mid-day*, only used in the singular, is masc.

## VI.—IRREGULAR NOUNS.

## INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

Indeclinable nouns are neuter and are used only in the nominative and accusative and generally only in the singular. They are as follows :—*Fas*, *right*; *nēfas*, *wrong*; *māne*, *morning*; *instar*, *a model*; *pondo*, *weight*; *sēcus*, *sex*; *nihil*, *nothing*; *ōpus*, *need*.

## DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

1. The following nouns are used only in the *singular* :—

(1) Names of *persons and places* : as, *Roma*, *Rome*; *Cicero*, *Cicero*.

(2) *Abstract nouns* : as, *Fides*, *faith*; *iustitia*, *justice*.

(3) Names of *materials* : as, *Aurum*, *gold*; *ferrum*, *iron*.

(4) Single words : as, *Meridies*, *mid-day*; *specimen*, *example*; *supell-ex (-ectilis)*, *furniture*; *ver*, *spring*; *vesper*, *evening*.

2. The following nouns are used only in the *plural* :—

(1) Class words : as, *Māiōres*, *ancestors*; *gemīnī*, *twins*; *libērī*, *children*.

(2) Many names of cities : as, *Āthēnae*, *Athens*; *Thēbae*, *Thebes*, *Delphi*, *Delphi*.

(3) Many names of festivals : as, *Bacchanālia*, *Olympia*.

(4) Single words : as, *Arma*, *arms*; *divītiāe*, *riches*; *exsēquīae*, *funeral rites*; *exūviae*, *spoils*; *īdūs*, *Ides of the month*; *indūtiāe*, *a truce*; *insīdiāe*, *ambuscade*; *mānes*, *shades of the dead*; *mīnae*, *threats*; *moenia*, *walls*; *mūnīa*, *duties*; *nuptīae*, *a wedding*; *rēliquīae*, *remains*.

3. The following words have *one meaning in the singular and a different one in the plural* :—

## SINGULAR.

*aedes* (F.), Gen., *aedis*, *a temple*.

*āqua* (F.), *water*.

*auxilium* (N.), *help*.

*hōnum* (N.), *a good thing*.

## PLURAL.

*aedes*, *aedium*, *a house*.

*āquae*, *a watering-place*.

*auxilia*, *auxiliaries*.

*bōna*, *goods*.

## SINGULAR.

carcer (M.), *a dungeon.*  
 castrum (N.), *a fort.*  
 codicillus (M.), *a bit of wood.*  
 comitium (N.), *a place of assembly.*

cōpia (F.), *plenty.*  
 fides (F.), *a harp-string.*  
 finis (M. or F.), *an end.*

fortūna (F.), *fortune.*  
 grātia (F.), *favor.*  
 hortus (M.), *a garden.*  
 impēdimentum (N.), *a hindrance.*

littēra (F.), *a letter of the alphabet.*  
 lōcus (M.), *place; pl., lōca (N.).*  
 lūdus (M.), *sport.*  
 nātālis (M.), *birthday.*  
 ōpera (F.), *a task.*  
 ōpis (F.), *genitive, help.*  
 pars (F.), *a part.*

plāga (F.), *region.*  
 rostrum (N.), *a beak, prow of a vessel.*  
 sal (M. or N.), *salt.*  
 tabella (F.), *a tablet.*

## PLURAL.

carcēres, *barriers of a race-course.*  
 castra, *a camp.*  
 codicilli, *tablets.*  
 comitia, *a political assembly, elections.*

cōpiae, *troops.*  
 fīdes, *lyre.*  
 fines (M.), *boundaries or territories.*

fortūnae, *possessions.*  
 gratiae, *thanks.*  
 horti, *pleasure-grounds.*  
 impēdimenta, *baggage of an army.*

littērae, *an epistle.*  
 lōci (M.), *passages in books.*  
 lūdi, *public games.*  
 nātāles, *descent, ancestry.*  
 ōpērae, *day laborers.*  
 ōpes, *wealth, resources.*  
 partes, *a part in a play or a party in politics.*

plāgae, *snares.*  
 rostra, *political platform or hustings.*  
 sāles (M.), *witticisms, wit.*  
 tabellae, *documents.*

The following nouns are wanting in some of the cases:—

(1) Nom., Dat., Voc. Sing. : —, ōpis, —, ōpem, —, ōpe, *help;*  
 —, vīcis, —, vīcem, —, vīce, *change.*

(2) Nom., Gen., Voc. Sing. : —, —, prēcī, prēcem, —, prēcē, *prayer.*

(3) Nom. and Voc. Sing. : —, dāpis, dāpī, dāpem, —, dāpe, *food;*  
 —, frūgis, frūgī, frūgem, —, frūge, *fruit.*

(4) Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plural : Most nouns of the fifth declension, except spēs, *hope*, and rēs, *a thing*. So also far, *corn*; mel, *honey*; fel, *bile*; pūs, *matter of a wound*; rus, *the country*; tus, *incense*.

(5) Genitive plural : many monosyllables : *Nex, murder* ; *pax, peace* ; *pix, pitch* ; *cor, heart* ; *cos, a whetstone* ; *ros, dew* ; *sal, salt* ; *sol, the sun* ; *lux, light*.

## IIETEROCLITIC NOUNS.

Some nouns have two or more forms of declension. Thus :

*Cölus* (F.), *a distaff*, and many names of plants and trees are of the second ; but they may have those forms that end in -us of the fourth decl. also.

*Iügërum* (N.), *an acre*, is of the second declension in the singular, but of the third in the plural.

*Vas* (N.), *a vessel* (Gen., *vāsīs*), is of the third declension in the singular and of the second in the plural.

Festivals in -alia (as *Bacchanālia*) are neuter plurals of the third declension, but have the genitive plural in -ōrum, not in -iūm.

*Ancile* (N.), *a shield*, is of the third (like *māre, the sea*) ; but the genitive plural is -ōrum, instead of -iūm.

*Rëquies* (F.), Gen. *rëquiētis, rest*, is of the third, but has *rëquiem* and *rëquiē* of the fifth.

*Fāmes* (F.), Gen. *fāmis*, is regularly of the third, but has *fāmē* of the fifth, not *fāmē* of the third.

For *dōmus* (F.), *a house*, see p. 238.

Many words have two forms, one belonging to one declension and another to another. Thus :

*Luxuriā* (F.), *luxury* ; *mātēria* (F.), *matter, timber* ; *saevitiā* (F.), *cruelty*, are of the first ; while *luxuries* (F.), *mātēries* (F.), *saevities* (F.), are of the fifth. So also, *eventus* (M.), *an event* ; *cōnātus* (M.), *an attempt*, are of the fourth ; while *eventum* (N.), and *cōnātum* (N.), are of the second.

*Iuventus* (F.), Gen. *iuventūtis, the youth of a country* ; *iūventas* (F.), Gen. *iuventātis, goddess of youth* ; *iūventa* (F.), *time of youth*.

*Sēnectus* (F.), Gen. *senectūtis, time of old age* has the poetical form *senecta* (F.) ; so *paupertas* (F.), Gen. *paupertatis, poverty* has the poetical *pauperies* (F.), Gen. -ēi.

## HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

Some nouns have two different genders in the singular. Thus :

The following have one form in -us, masculine, and one form in -um, neuter : Baltēus, or -um, *a belt* ; iugūlus, -um, *the throat* ; clipēus, -um, *a shield* ; collus, -um, *neck* ; bacūlus, -um, *a staff* ; cubitus, -um, *elbow*.

The following have a different gender in the singular and plural respectively :

Balnēum (N. sing.), balneae (F. pl.), *bath* ; caelum (N. sing.), caeli (M. pl.), *heavens* ; carbāsus (F. sing.), carbāsa (N. pl.), *sail* ; delīcium (N. sing.), delīciae (F. pl.), *delight* ; rastrum (N. sing.), rastrī (M. pl.), *harrows* ; epūlum (N. sing.), epūlae (F. pl.), *banquet* ; frēnum (N. sing.), *bit*, frēni (M.) or frēna (N.) ; lōcus (M. sing.), lōca (N. pl.), *places* ; iōcus (M. sing.), *jest* ; iōci (M. pl.), or iōca (N. pl.).

## VII.—ADJECTIVES.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Bonus, *good*.

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bōn ūs	bōn ā	bōn um
<i>Gen.</i>	bōn ī	bōn ae	bōn ī
<i>Dat.</i>	bōn ō	bōn ae	bōn ō
<i>Acc.</i>	bōn um	bōn am	bōn um
<i>Voc.</i>	bōn ē	bōn ā	bōn um
<i>Abl.</i>	bōn ō	bōn ā	bōn ō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	bōn ī	bōn ae	bōn ā
<i>Gen.</i>	bōn ōrum	bōn ārum	bōn ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bōn īs	bōn īs	bōn īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bōn ōs	bōn ās	bōn ā
<i>Voc.</i>	bōn ī	bōn ae	bōn ā
<i>Abl.</i>	bōn īs	bōn īs	bōn īs

Aeger, *sick*.

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	aeger	aegr ā	aegr um
<i>Gen.</i>	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ī
<i>Dat.</i>	aegr ō	aegr ae	aegr ō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegr um	aegr am	aegr um
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegr ā	aegr um
<i>Abl.</i>	aegr ō	aegr ā	aegr ō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ā
<i>Gen.</i>	aegr ōrum	aegr ārum	aegr ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs
<i>Acc.</i>	aegr ōs	aegr ās	aegr ā
<i>Voc.</i>	aegr ī	aegr ae	aegr ā
<i>Abl.</i>	aegr īs	aegr īs	aegr īs

Tener, *tender*.

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	těner	těněr ā	těněr um
<i>Gen.</i>	těněr ī	těněr ae	těněr ī
<i>Dat.</i>	těněr ō	těněr ae	těněr ō
<i>Acc.</i>	těněr um	těněr am	těněr um
<i>Voc.</i>	těner	těněr ā	těněr um
<i>Abl.</i>	těněr ō	těněr ā	těněr ō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	těněr ī	těněr ae	těněr ā
<i>Gen.</i>	těněr ōrum	těněr ārum	těněr ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	těněr īs	těněr īs	těněr īs
<i>Acc.</i>	těněr ōs	těněr ās	těněr ā
<i>Voc.</i>	těněr ī	těněr ae	těněr ā
<i>Abl.</i>	těněr īs	těněr īs	těněr īs

## IRREGULAR<sup>1</sup> ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

### Unus, *one*.

#### SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūn ūs	ūn ā	ūn um
<i>Gen.</i>	ūn ius	ūn ius	ūn ius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūn ī	ūn ī	ūn ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūn um	ūn am	ūn um
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	ūn ō	ūn ā	ūn ō

### Uter, *which of two?*

#### SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūter	ūtr ā	ūtr um
<i>Gen.</i>	ūtr ius	ūtr ius	ūtr ius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūtr ī	ūtr ī	ūtr ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūtr um	ūtr am	ūtr um
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	ūtr ō	ūtr ā	ūtr ō

### Alius, *other*

#### SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	āli us	āli ā	āli ud
<i>Gen.</i>	āli us	āli us	āli us
<i>Dat.</i>	āli ī	āli ī	āli ī
<i>Acc.</i>	āli um	āli am	āli ud
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	āli ō	āli ā	āli ō

---

<sup>1</sup>Nine adjectives are irregular: *Alius*, -a, -ud, *another*; *nullus*, -a, -um, *no one*; *solus*, *alone*; *tōtus*, *whole*; *ullus*, *any*; *unus*, *one*; *alter*, *ēra*, -*erum*, *the other*; *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*, *which* (of two); *neuter*, -*tra*, *trum*, *neither*. The genitive of *alter* is *alterius*; otherwise it is declined like *uter*. In each the plural is regular.



## ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

(1) Of three terminations :—

*Acer, sharp.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācēr	ācr īs	ācr ě
<i>Gen.</i>	ācr īs	ācr īs	ācr īs
<i>Dat.</i>	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācr em	ācr em	ācr ě
<i>Voc.</i>	ācēr	ācr īs	ācr ě
<i>Abl.</i>	ācr ī <sup>1</sup>	ācr ī	ācr ī

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ācr ěs	ācr ěs	ācr iǎ
<i>Gen.</i>	ācr ium	ācr ium	ācr ium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācr ībus	ācr ībus	ācr ībus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācr ěs	ācr ěs	ācr iǎ
<i>Voc.</i>	ācr ěs	ācr ěs	ācr iǎ
<i>Abl.</i>	ācr ībus	ācr ībus	ācr ībus

(2) Of two terminations :—

*Mitis, mild.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	mīt īs	mīt ě	<i>Nom.</i>	mīt ěs	mīt iǎ
<i>Gen.</i>	mīt īs	mīt īs	<i>Gen.</i>	mīt ium	mīt ium
<i>Dat.</i>	mīt ī	mīt ī	<i>Dat.</i>	mīt ībus	mīt ībus
<i>Acc.</i>	mīt em	mīt ě	<i>Acc.</i>	mīt ěs	mīt iǎ
<i>Voc.</i>	mīt īs	mīt ě	<i>Voc.</i>	mīt ěs	mīt iǎ
<i>Abl.</i>	mīt ī	mīt ī <sup>1</sup>	<i>Abl.</i>	mīt ībus	mīt ībus

<sup>1</sup> All adjectives of three endings in the nom. like *acer* and all adjectives of two endings in the nom. like *mītis* have abl. singular in *-i*; nom. neut. pl. in *-ia*; gen. pl. in *ium*. But comparatives and adjectives of one ending in nom. have abl. sing. in *-i* or *e*. Comparatives have nom. pl. neuter in *-a*, gen. pl. in *-um*. Adjectives of one termination from nominative in *x* or *s* impure like *audax* or *oriens* have the nom. pl. in *-ia* and gen. pl. in *-ium*. Plus is the only comparative irregular in declension.

Mitior, *milder.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> mītiōr	mītiūs	<i>Nom.</i> mītiōr ēs	mītiōr ā
<i>Gen.</i> mītiōr īs	mītiōr īs	<i>Gen.</i> mītiōr um	mītiōr um
<i>Dat.</i> mītiōr ī	mītiōr ī	<i>Dat.</i> mītiōr ībus	mītiōr ībus
<i>Acc.</i> mītiōr em	mītiūs	<i>Acc.</i> mītiōr ēs	mītiōr ā
<i>Voc.</i> mītiōr	mītiūs	<i>Voc.</i> mītiōr ēs	mītiōr ā
<i>Abl.</i> mītiōr ē (-ī)	mītiōr ē (-ī)	<i>Abl.</i> mītiōr ībus	mītiōr ībus

Plus, *more.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> —	plus	<i>Nom.</i> plūr ēs	plūr ā
<i>Gen.</i> —	plur is	<i>Gen.</i> plūr ūm	plūr ūm
<i>Dat.</i> —	—	<i>Dat.</i> plūr ībus	plūr ībus
<i>Acc.</i> —	plus	<i>Acc.</i> plūr ēs	plūr ā
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	<i>Voc.</i> plūr ēs	plūr ā
<i>Abl.</i> —	plur e	<i>Abl.</i> plūr ībus	plūr ībus

## (3) Adjectives of one termination :—

Audax, *bold.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> audax	audax	<i>Nom.</i> audāc ēs	audāc iā
<i>Gen.</i> audāc īs	audāc īs	<i>Gen.</i> audāc ūm	audāc ūm
<i>Dat.</i> audāc ī	audāc ī	<i>Dat.</i> audāc ībus	audāc ībus
<i>Acc.</i> audāc em	audax	<i>Acc.</i> audāc ēs	audāc iā
<i>Voc.</i> audax	audax	<i>Voc.</i> audāc ēs	audāc iā
<i>Abl.</i> audāc ī (-ē)	audac ī (-ē)	<i>Abl.</i> audāc ībus	audāc ībus

Felix, *bold.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> fēlix	fēlix	<i>Nom.</i> fēlic ēs	fēlic iā
<i>Gen.</i> fēlic īs	fēlic īs	<i>Gen.</i> fēlic ūm	fēlic ūm
<i>Dat.</i> fēlic ī	fēlic ī	<i>Dat.</i> fēlic ībus	fēlic ībus
<i>Acc.</i> fēlic em	fēlix	<i>Acc.</i> fēlic ēs	fēlic iā
<i>Voc.</i> fēlix	fēlix	<i>Voc.</i> fēlic ēs	fēlic iā
<i>Abl.</i> fēlic ī (-ē)	fēlic ī (-ē)	<i>Abl.</i> fēlic ībus	fēlic ībus

Vetus, *old.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> větŭs	větŭs	<i>Nom.</i> větĕr ěs	větĕr ě
<i>Gen.</i> větĕr ěs	větĕr ěs	<i>Gen.</i> větĕr um	větĕr um
<i>Dat.</i> větĕr ě	větĕr ě	<i>Dat.</i> větĕr ěbus	větĕr ěbus
<i>Acc.</i> větĕr em	větŭs	<i>Acc.</i> větĕr ěs	větĕr ě
<i>Voc.</i> větŭs	větŭs	<i>Voc.</i> větĕr ěs	větĕr ě
<i>Abl.</i> větĕr ě (-ě)	větĕr ě (-ě)	<i>Abl.</i> větĕr ěbus	větĕr ěbus

Oriens, *rising.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ōriens	ōriens	<i>Nom.</i> ōriĕnt ěs	ōriĕnt ě
<i>Gen.</i> ōriĕnt ěs	ōriĕnt ěs	<i>Gen.</i> ōriĕnt ěum	ōriĕnt ěum
<i>Dat.</i> ōriĕnt ě	ōriĕnt ě	<i>Dat.</i> ōriĕnt ěbus	ōriĕnt ěbus
<i>Acc.</i> ōriĕnt em	ōriens	<i>Acc.</i> ōriĕnt ěs	ōriĕnt ě
<i>Voc.</i> ōriens	ōriens	<i>Voc.</i> ōriĕnt ěs	ōriĕnt ě
<i>Abl.</i> ōriĕnt ě (-ě)	ōriĕnt ě (-ě)	<i>Abl.</i> ōriĕnt ěbus	ōriĕnt ěbus

## VIII.—NUMERALS.

For the declension of unus, see p. 244.

Duo, <i>two.</i>			Trēs, <i>three.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> dŭo	dŭ ae	dŭo	<i>Nom.</i> trēs	tr ě
<i>Gen.</i> dŭ ōrum	dŭ ārum	dŭ ōrum	<i>Gen.</i> tr ěum	tr ěum
<i>Dat.</i> dŭ ōbus	dŭ ābus	dŭ ōbus	<i>Dat.</i> tr ěbus	tr ěbus
<i>Acc.</i> dŭ ōs (duo)	dŭ ās	dŭo	<i>Acc.</i> trēs	tr ě
<i>Voc.</i> dŭo	dŭ ae	dŭo	<i>Voc.</i> trēs	tr ě
<i>Abl.</i> dŭ ōbus	dŭ ābus	dŭ ōbus	<i>Abl.</i> tr ěbus	tr ěbus

Mille, *a thousand.*

In the singular indeclinable. In plural: *Nom.* and *Acc.* Millě or milia; *Gen.* millěum or milium; *Dat.* and *Abl.* millěibus or milibus.

## IX.—PRONOUNS.

## (i) PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

Ego, I.		Tu, thou, you (sing.).	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ěgo	nōs	<i>Nom.</i> tū	vōs
<i>Gen.</i> mẽi	nostrum, nostrī	<i>Gen.</i> tūi	vestrum, vestrī
<i>Dat.</i> mīhi	nōbīs	<i>Dat.</i> tībi	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	<i>Acc.</i> tē	vōs
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	<i>Voc.</i> tū	vōs
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs	<i>Abl.</i> tē	vōbīs

## Sui, of himself.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	Wanting	Wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	sūi	sūi
<i>Dat.</i>	sībi	sībi
<i>Acc.</i>	sē	sē
<i>Voc.</i>	Wanting	Wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	sē	sē

## (ii) DEMONSTRATIVE AND PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## Hic, this (near the speaker).

	SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hōc
<i>Gen.</i>	hūius	hūius	hūius
<i>Dat.</i>	huīc	huīc	huīc
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc
	PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

Iste, *that* (near you).

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	istĕ	istă	istud
<i>Gen.</i>	istĭus	istĭus	istĭus
<i>Dat.</i>	istĭ	istĭ	istĭ
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	istĭ	istae	istă
<i>Gen.</i>	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istĭs	istĭs	istĭs
<i>Acc.</i>	istōs	istās	istă
<i>Abl.</i>	istĭs	istĭs	istĭs

Ille, *that* (near him, her, it).

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	illĕ	illă	illud
<i>Gen.</i>	illĭus	illĭus	illĭus
<i>Dat.</i>	illĭ	illĭ	illĭ
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	illĭ	illae	illă
<i>Gen.</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illĭs	illĭs	illĭs
<i>Acc.</i>	illos	illās	illă
<i>Abl.</i>	illĭs	illĭs	illĭs

*Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ěā	īd
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius
<i>Dat.</i>	ěī	ěī	ěī
<i>Acc.</i>	ěum	ěam	id
<i>Abl.</i>	ěō	ěā	ěō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ěī (īi)	ěae	ěā
<i>Gen.</i>	ěōrum	ěārum	ěōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ěīs (īis)	ěīs (īis)	ěīs (īis)
<i>Acc.</i>	ěōs	ěās	ěā
<i>Abl.</i>	ěīs (īis)	ěīs (īis)	ěīs (īis)

*Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	ěādem	īdem
<i>Gen.</i>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	ěīdem	ěīdem	ěīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	ěundem	ěandem	īdem
<i>Abl.</i>	ěōdem	ěādem	ěōdem

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	{ ěīdem īīdem	ěaedem	ěādem
<i>Gen.</i>	ěōrundem	ěārundem	ěōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	{ ěīsdem īīsdem	{ ěīsdem īīsdem	{ ěīsdem īīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	ěosdem	ěasdem	ěādem
<i>Abl.</i>	{ ěīsdem īīsdem	{ ěīsdem īīsdem	{ ěīsdem īīsdem

Ipse, *self, himself.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ipsē	ipsā	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

## (iii) RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Qui, *who.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cuī	cuī	cuī
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quībus	quībus	quībus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quībus	quībus	quībus

## (iv) INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quis, *who?*

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quae	quid
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cuī	cuī	cuī
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	quībus	quībus	quībus
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quībus	quībus	quībus

## X.—REGULAR VERBS.

<i>Principal</i> <i>Parts</i>	{	1. Conjugation: āmo, āmārē, āmāvī, āmātum.
		2. " mōnēo, mōnērē, mōnūī, mōnītum.
		3. " rēgo, rēgērē, rexī, rectum.
		4. " audīo, audīrē, audīvī, audītum.

## ACTIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

1. ām o	mōn ēo	rēg o	aud īo
2. ām ās	mōn ēs	rēg īs	aud īs
3. ām āt	mōn ēt	rēg īt	aud īt

PLURAL.

1. ām āmus	mōn ēmus	rēg īmus	aud īmus
2. ām ātis	mōn ētis	rēg ītis	aud ītis
3. ām ānt	mōn ēnt	rēg unt	aud īunt



## IMPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. ăm ābam	mõn ēbam	ręg ēbam	audī ēbam
2. ăm ābās	mõn ēbās	ręg ēbās	audī ēbās
3. ăm ābāt	mõn ēbāt	ręg ēbāt	audī ēbāt

## PLURAL.

1. ăm ābāmus	mõn ēbāmus	ręg ēbāmus	audī ēbāmus
2. ăm ābātis	mõn ēbātis	ręg ēbātis	audī ēbātis
3. ăm ābant	mõn ēbant	ręg ēbant	audī ēbant

## FUTURE.

## SINGULAR.

1. ăm ābo	mõn ēbo	ręg am	audī am
2. ăm ābīs	mõn ēbīs	ręg ēs	audī ēs
3. ăm ābīt	mõn ēbīt	ręg ēt	audī ēt

## PLURAL.

1. ăm ābīmus	mõn ēbīmus	ręg ēmus	audī ēmus
2. ăm ābītis	mõn ēbītis	ręg ētis	audī ētis
3. ăm ābunt	mõn ēbunt	ręg ent	audī ent

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. ămāv ī	mõnũ ī	rex ī	audīv ī
2. ămāv isti	mõnũ isti	rex isti	audīv isti
3. ămāv it	mõnũ it	rex it	audīv it

## PLURAL.

1. ămāv īmus	mõnũ īmus	rex īmus	audīv īmus
2. ămāv istis	mõnũ istis	rex istis	audīv istis
3. { ămāv ērunt	{ mõnũ ērunt	{ rex ērunt	{ audīv ērunt
{ ămāv ēre	{ mõnũ ēre	{ rex ēre	{ audīv ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. āmāv ēram	mōnū ēram	rex ēram	audīv ēram
2. āmāv ērās	mōnū ērās	rex ērās	audīv ērās
3. āmāv ērāt	mōnū ērāt	rex ērāt	audīv ērāt

## PLURAL.

1. āmāv ērāmus	mōnū ērāmus	rex ērāmus	audīv ērāmus
2. āmāv ērātis	mōnū ērātis	rex ērātis	audīv ērātis
3. āmāv ērant	mōnū ērant	rex ērant	audīv ērant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. āmāv ēro	mōnū ēro	rex ēro	audīv ēro
2. āmāv ēris	mōnū ēris	rex ēris	audīv ēris
3. āmāv ērīt	mōnū ērīt	rex ērīt	audīv ērīt

## PLURAL.

1. āmāv ērīmus	mōnū ērīmus	rex ērīmus	audīv ērīmus
2. āmāv ērītis	mōnū ērītis	rex ērītis	audīv ērītis
3. āmāv ērint	mōnū ērint	rex ērint	audīv ērint

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

1. ām em	mōn ēam	rēg am	audī am
2. ām ēs	mōn ēās	rēg ās	audī ās
3. ām ēt	mōn ēāt	rēg āt	audī āt

## PLURAL.

1. ām ēmus	mōn ēāmus	rēg āmus	audī āmus
2. ām ētis	mōn ēātis	rēg ātis	audī ātis
3. ām ent	mōn ēant	rēg ant	audī ant

## IMPERFECT

## SINGULAR.

1. ām ārem	mōn ērem	rēg ērem	aud irem
2. ām ārēs	mōn ērēs	rēg ērēs	aud irēs
3. ām ārēt	mōn ērēt	rēg ērēt	aud irēt

## PLURAL.

1. ām ārēmus	mōn ērēmus	rēg ērēmus	aud irēmus
2. ām ārētis	mōn ērētis	rēg ērētis	aud irētis
3. ām ārent	mōn ērent	rēg ērent	aud irent

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. āmāv ērim	mōnū ērim	rex ērim	audīv ērim
2. āmāv ēris	mōnū ēris	rex ēris	audīv ēris
3. āmāv ērit	mōnū ērit	rex ērit	audīv ērit

## PLURAL.

1. āmāv ērimus	mōnū ērimus	rex ērimus	audīv ērimus
2. āmāv ēritis	mōnū ēritis	rex ēritis	audīv ēritis
3. āmāv ērint	mōnū ērint	rex ērint	audīv ērint

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. āmāv issem	mōnū issem	rex issem	audīv issem
2. āmāv issēs	mōnū issēs	rex issēs	audīv issēs
3. āmāv isset	mōnū isset	rex isset	audīv isset

## PLURAL.

1. āmāv issēmus	mōnū issēmus	rex issēmus	audīv issēmus
2. āmāv issētis	mōnū issētis	rex issētis	audīv issētis
3. āmāv issent	mōnū issent	rex issent	audīv issent

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

2. ām ā	mōn ē	rĕg ē	aud ī
---------	-------	-------	-------

## PLURAL.

2. ām āte	mōn ēte	rĕg ĭte	aud ĭte
-----------	---------	---------	---------

## FUTURE.

## SINGULAR.

2. ām āto, <i>you shall love.</i>	mōn ēto	rĕg ĭto	aud ĭto
--------------------------------------	---------	---------	---------

3. ām āto, <i>he shall love.</i>	mōn ēto	rĕg ĭto	aud ĭto
-------------------------------------	---------	---------	---------

## PLURAL.

2. ām ātōte, <i>you shall love.</i>	mōn ētōte	rĕg ĭtōte	aud ĭtōte
----------------------------------------	-----------	-----------	-----------

3. ām anto, <i>they shall love.</i>	mōn ento	rĕg unto	aud ĭunto
----------------------------------------	----------	----------	-----------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	āmā re	mōnē re	rĕgĕ re	audī re
<i>Perf.</i>	āmāv isse	mōnŭ isse	rex isse	audīv isse
<i>Fut.</i>	āmā tūrus esse	mōnī tūrus esse	rec tūrus esse	audī tūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	āma ns	mōne ns	rĕg ens	audī ens
<i>Fut.</i>	āmā tūrus, -a, -um	mōnī tūrus, -a, -um	rec tūrus, -a, -um	audī tūrus -a, -um

## SUPINE.

āmā tum	mōnī tum	rec tum	audī tum
---------	----------	---------	----------

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	āma ndi	mone ndi	rĕg endi	audī endi
<i>Dat.</i>	ama ndo	mone ndo	rĕg endo	audī endo
<i>Acc.</i>	ama ndum	mone ndum	rĕg endum	audī endum
<i>Abl.</i>	ama ndo	mone ndo	rĕg endo	audī endo

## PASSIVE VOICE—INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

1. <i>ăm̄o r</i>	<i>mõnẽ or</i>	<i>rẽg or</i>	<i>audĩ or</i>
2. { <i>ăm̄a ris</i> <i>ăm̄a re</i>	{ <i>mõnẽ ris</i> <i>mõnẽ re</i>	{ <i>rẽgẽ ris</i> <i>rẽgẽ re</i>	{ <i>audĩ ris</i> <i>audĩ re</i>
3. <i>ăm̄a tur</i>	<i>mõnẽ tur</i>	<i>rẽgĩ tur</i>	<i>audĩ tur</i>

## PLURAL.

1. <i>ăm̄a mur</i>	<i>mõnẽ mur</i>	<i>rẽgĩ mur</i>	<i>audĩ mur</i>
2. <i>ăm̄a mĩnĩ</i>	<i>mõnẽ mĩnĩ</i>	<i>rẽgĩ mĩnĩ</i>	<i>audĩ mĩnĩ</i>
3. <i>ăm̄a ntur</i>	<i>mõnẽ ntur</i>	<i>rẽgu ntur</i>	<i>audĩ untur</i>

## IMPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. <i>ăm̄a bar</i>	<i>mõnẽ bar</i>	<i>rẽgẽ bar</i>	<i>audĩ ẽbar</i>
2. { <i>ăm̄a b̄aris</i> <i>ăm̄a b̄are</i>	{ <i>mõnẽ b̄aris</i> <i>mõnẽ b̄are</i>	{ <i>rẽgẽ b̄aris</i> <i>rẽgẽ b̄are</i>	{ <i>audĩ ẽb̄aris</i> <i>audĩ ẽb̄are</i>
3. <i>ăm̄a b̄atur</i>	<i>mõnẽ b̄atur</i>	<i>rẽgẽ b̄atur</i>	<i>audĩ ẽb̄atur</i>

## PLURAL.

1. <i>ăm̄a b̄amur</i>	<i>mõnẽ b̄amur</i>	<i>rẽgẽ b̄amur</i>	<i>audĩ ẽb̄amur</i>
2. <i>ăm̄a b̄amĩnĩ</i>	<i>mõnẽ b̄amĩnĩ</i>	<i>rẽgẽ b̄amĩnĩ</i>	<i>audĩ ẽb̄amĩnĩ</i>
3. <i>ăm̄a b̄antur</i>	<i>mõnẽ b̄antur</i>	<i>rẽgẽ b̄antur</i>	<i>audĩ ẽb̄antur</i>

## FUTURE.

## SINGULAR.

1. <i>ăm̄a bor</i>	<i>mõnẽ bor</i>	<i>rẽḡa r</i>	<i>audĩa r</i>
2. { <i>ăm̄a b̄eris</i> <i>ăm̄a b̄ere</i>	{ <i>mõnẽ b̄eris</i> <i>mõnẽ b̄ere</i>	{ <i>rẽgẽ ris</i> <i>rẽgẽ re</i>	{ <i>audĩẽ ris</i> <i>audĩẽ re</i>
3. <i>ăm̄a b̄itur</i>	<i>mõnẽ b̄itur</i>	<i>rẽgẽ tur</i>	<i>audĩẽ tur</i>

## PLURAL.

1. <i>ăm̄a b̄imur</i>	<i>mõnẽ b̄imur</i>	<i>rẽgẽ mur</i>	<i>audĩẽ mur</i>
2. <i>ăm̄a b̄imĩnĩ</i>	<i>mõnẽ b̄imĩnĩ</i>	<i>rẽgẽ mĩnĩ</i>	<i>audĩẽ mĩnĩ</i>
3. <i>ăm̄a b̄antur</i>	<i>mõnẽ b̄antur</i>	<i>rẽgẽ ntur</i>	<i>audĩẽ ntur</i>

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. āmā tus sum	mōnī tus sum	rec tus sum	audī tus sum
2. āmā tus ēs	mōnī tus ēs	rec tus ēs	audī tus ēs
3. āmā tus est	mōnī tus est	rec tus est	audī tus est

## PLURAL.

1. āmā tī sūmus	mōnī tī sūmus	rec tī sūmus	audī tī sūmus
2. āmā tī estis	mōnī tī estis	rec tī estis	audī tī estis
3. āmā tī sunt	mōnī tī sunt	rec tī sunt	audī tī sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. āmā tus ēram	mōnī tus ēram	rec tus ēram	audī tus ēram
2. āmā tus ērās	mōnī tus ērās	rec tus ērās	audī tus ērās
3. āmā tus ērat	mōnī tus ērat	rec tus ērat	audī tus ērat

## PLURAL.

1. āmā tī ērāmus	mōnī tī ērāmus	rec tī ērāmus	audī tī ērāmus
2. āmā tī ērātis	mōnī tī ērātis	rec tī ērātis	audī tī ērātis
3. āmā tī ērant	mōnī tī ērant	rec tī ērant	audī tī ērant

## FUTURE-PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. āmā tus ēro	mōnī tus ēro	rec tus ēro	audī tus ēro
2. āmā tus ēris	mōnī tus ēris	rec tus ēris	audī tus ēris
3. āmā tus ērit	mōnī tus ērit	rec tus ērit	audī tus ērit

## PLURAL.

1. āmā tī ērīmus	mōnī tī ērīmus	rec tī ērīmus	audī tī ērīmus
2. āmā tī ērītis	mōnī tī ērītis	rec tī ērītis	audī tī ērītis
3. āmā tī ērunt	mōnī tī ērunt	rec tī ērunt	audī tī ērunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

1. ām ēr	mōnē ār	reg ār	audī ār
2. {ām ēris	{mōnē āris	{rēg āris	{audī āris
{ām ēre	{mōnē āre	{rēg āre	{audī āre
3. ām ētur	mōnē ātur	rēg ātur	audī ātur

## PLURAL.

1. ăm ămur	mǎnĕ ămur	rĕg ămur	audĭ ămur
2. ăm ămĭnĭ	mǎnĕ ămĭnĭ	rĕg ămĭnĭ	audĭ ămĭnĭ
3. ăm entur	mǎnĕ antur	rĕg antur	audĭ antur

## IMPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. ămā rer	mǎnĕ rer	rĕgĕ rer	audĭ rer
2. { ămā rĕris	{ mǎnĕ rĕris	{ rĕgĕ rĕris	{ audĭ rĕris
{ ămā rĕre	{ mǎnĕ rĕre	{ rĕgĕ rĕre	{ audĭ rĕre
3. ămā rĕtur	mǎnĕ rĕtur	rĕgĕ rĕtur	audĭ rĕtur

## PLURAL.

1. ămā rĕmur	mǎnĕ rĕmur	rĕgĕ rĕmur	audĭ rĕmur
2. ămā rĕmĭnĭ	mǎnĕ rĕmĭnĭ	rĕgĕ rĕmĭnĭ	audĭ rĕmĭnĭ
3. ămā rentur	mǎnĕ rentur	rĕgĕ rentur	audĭ rentur

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. ămā tus sim	mǎnĭ tus sim	rec tus sim	audĭ tus sim
2. ămā tus sis	mǎnĭ tus sis	rec tus sis	audĭ tus sis
3. ămā tus sit	mǎnĭ tus sit	rec tus sit	audĭ tus sit

## PLURAL.

1. ămā tĭ sĭmus	mǎnĭ tĭ sĭmus	rec tĭ sĭmus	audĭ tĭ sĭmus
2. ămā tĭ sĭtis	mǎnĭ tĭ sĭtis	rec tĭ sĭtis	audĭ tĭ sĭtis
3. ămā tĭ sint	mǎnĭ tĭ sint	rec tĭ sint	audĭ tĭ sint

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. ămā tus essem	mǎnĭ tus essem	rec tus essem	audĭ tus essem
2. ămā tus essĕs	mǎnĭ tus essĕs	rec tus essĕs	audĭ tus essĕs
3. ămā tus esset	mǎnĭ tus esset	rec tus esset	audĭ tus esset

## PLURAL.

1. ămā tĭ essĕmus	mǎnĭ tĭ essĕmus	rec tĭ essĕmus	audĭ tĭ essĕmus
2. ămā tĭ essĕtis	mǎnĭ tĭ essĕtis	rec tĭ essĕtis	audĭ tĭ essĕtis
3. ămā tĭ essent	mǎnĭ tĭ essent	rec tĭ essent	audĭ tĭ essent

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

2. <i>ăm</i> <i>ăre</i>	<i>măn</i> <i>ere</i>	<i>ręg</i> <i>erě</i>	<i>aud</i> <i>ire</i>
-------------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------

## PLURAL.

2. <i>ăm</i> <i>ămīni</i>	<i>măn</i> <i>ēmīni</i>	<i>ręg</i> <i>imīni</i>	<i>aud</i> <i>imīni</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

## FUTURE.

## SINGULAR.

2. <i>ăm</i> <i>ător</i> , <i>you shall be loved.</i>	<i>măn</i> <i>ător</i>	<i>ręg</i> <i>itor</i>	<i>aud</i> <i>itor</i>
----------------------------------------------------------	------------------------	------------------------	------------------------

3. <i>ăm</i> <i>ător</i> , <i>he shall be loved.</i>	<i>măn</i> <i>ător</i>	<i>ręg</i> <i>itor</i>	<i>aud</i> <i>itor</i>
---------------------------------------------------------	------------------------	------------------------	------------------------

## PLURAL.

3. <i>ăm</i> <i>antor</i> , <i>they shall be loved.</i>	<i>măn</i> <i>entor</i>	<i>ręg</i> <i>untor</i>	<i>aud</i> <i>iuntor</i>
------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>ăm</i> <i>ări</i>	<i>măn</i> <i>eri</i>	<i>ręg</i> <i>i</i>	<i>audi</i> <i>ri</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>ămă</i> <i>tus esse</i>	<i>mănī</i> <i>tus esse</i>	<i>rec</i> <i>tus esse</i>	<i>audi</i> <i>tus esse</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>ămă</i> <i>tum iri</i>	<i>mănī</i> <i>tum iri</i>	<i>rec</i> <i>tum iri</i>	<i>audi</i> <i>tum iri</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i> <i>ămă</i> <i>tus</i>	<i>mănī</i> <i>tus</i>	<i>rec</i> <i>tus</i>	<i>audi</i> <i>tus</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>ăm</i> <i>andus</i>	<i>măn</i> <i>endus</i>	<i>reg</i> <i>endus</i>	<i>audi</i> <i>endus</i>

## SUPINE.

<i>ămă</i> <i>tū</i>	<i>mănī</i> <i>tū</i>	<i>rec</i> <i>tū</i>	<i>audi</i> <i>tū</i>
----------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

## XI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

*Sum, I am.*    *Possum, I am able, I can.*    *Prosum, I help, I benefit.*

<i>Principal parts</i>	{	<i>sum,</i> <i>fūi,</i> <i>esse.</i>
		<i>possum,</i> <i>pōtūi,</i> <i>posse.</i>
		<i>prosum,</i> <i>profūi,</i> <i>prodesse.</i>



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

1. sum	possum	prōsum
2. ěs	pōtes	prōdes
3. est	pōtest	prōdest

## PLURAL.

1. sūmus	possūmus	prōsūmus
2. estis	pōtestis	prōdestis
3. sunt	possunt	prōsunt

## IMPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. ěram	pōtěram	prōděram
2. ěras	pōtěras	prōděras
3. ěrat	pōtěrat	prōděrat

## PLURAL.

1. ěrāmus	pōtěrāmus	prōděrāmus
2. ěrātis	pōtěrātis	prōděrātis
3. ěrant	pōtěrant	prōděrant

## FUTURE.

## SINGULAR.

1. ěro	pōtěro	prōděro
2. ěris	pōtěris	prōděris
3. ěrit	pōtěrit	prōděrit

## PLURAL.

1. ěřimus	pōtěřimus	prōděřimus
2. ěřitis	pōtěřitis	prōděřitis
3. ěrunt	pōtěrunt	prōděrunt

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. fūi	pōtūi	prōfūi
2. fūisti	pōtūisti	prōfūisti
3. fūit	pōtūit	prōfūit

## PLURAL.

1. fūimus	pōtūimus	prōfūimus
2. fūistis	pōtūistis	prōfūistis
3. { fūerunt fūere	{ pōtūerunt pōtūere	{ prōfūerunt prōfūere

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. fūeram	pōtūeram	prōfūeram
2. fūerās	pōtūerās	prōfūerās
3. fūerat	pōtūerat	prōfūerat

## PLURAL.

1. fūeramus	pōtūerāmus	prōfūerāmus
2. fūerātis	pōtūerātis	prōfūerātis
3. fūerant	pōtūerant	prōfūerant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. fūero	pōtūero	prōfūero
2. fūeris	pōtūeris	prōfūeris
3. fūerit	pōtūerit	prōfūerit

## PLURAL.

1. fūerīmus	pōtūerīmus	prōfūerīmus
2. fūerītis	pōtūerītis	prōfūerītis
3. fūerint	pōtūerint	prōfūerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

1. sim	possim	prōsim
2. sis	possis	prōsis
3. sit	possit	prōsit

## PLURAL.

1. sīmus	possīmus	prōsīmus
2. sītis	possītis	prōsītis
3. sint	possint	prōsint

## IMPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. <b>essem</b>	possem	prodessem
2. <b>essēs</b>	possēs	prodessēs
3. <b>esset</b>	posset	prodesset

## PLURAL.

1. <b>essēmus</b>	possēmus	prodessēmus
2. <b>essētis</b>	possētis	prodessētis
3. <b>essent</b>	possent	prodescent

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. <b>fūerim</b>	pötüerim	prōfūerim
2. <b>fūeris</b>	pötüeris	prōfūeris
3. <b>fūerit</b>	pötüerit	prōfūerit

## PLURAL.

1. <b>fūerimus</b>	pötüerimus	prōfūerimus
2. <b>fūeritis</b>	pötüeritis	prōfūeritis
3. <b>fūerint</b>	pötüerint	prōfūerint

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. <b>fūissem</b>	pötüissem	prōfūissem
2. <b>fūissēs</b>	pötüissēs	prōfūissēs
3. <b>fūisset</b>	pötüisset	prōfūisset

## PLURAL.

1. <b>fūissēmus</b>	pötüissēmus	prōfūissēmus
2. <b>fūissētis</b>	pötüissētis	prōfūissētis
3. <b>fūissent</b>	pötüissent	prōfūissent

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

2. <b>ēs</b>	None.	prōdes
--------------	-------	--------

## PLURAL.

2. <b>estē</b>	None.	prōdestē
----------------	-------	----------

## FUTURE.

## SINGULAR.

2. esto, <i>thou shall be.</i>	None.	prōdesto
3. esto, <i>he shall be.</i>	None.	prōdesto

## PLURAL.

2. estōte, <i>ye shall be.</i>	None.	prōdestōte
3. suntō, <i>they shall be.</i>	None.	prōsuntō

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i> esse	posse	prōdesse
<i>Perfect.</i> fuisse	pōtuisse	prōfuisse
<i>Future.</i> fūturus esse	—	prōfūturus esse

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i> —	pōtens	—
<i>Future.</i> fūturus, -a, -um	—	prōfūturus, -a, -um

## Defective Verbs.

mēmīnī,	mēmīnisse,	<i>I remember.</i>
coepī,	coepisse,	<i>I begin, or I began.</i>
ōdī,	ōdisse,	<i>I hate.</i>
nōvī,	nōvisse,	<i>I know.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i> mēmīnī, -isti, etc.	coepī	ōdī	nōvī
<i>Pluperf.</i> mēmīnēram, -ēras, etc.	coepēram	ōdēram	nōvēram
<i>Fut. Pf.</i> mēmīnēro, -ēris, etc.	coepēro	ōdēro	nōvēro

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i> mēmīnērim, -ēris	coepērim	ōdērim	nōvērim
<i>Pluperf.</i> mēmīnissem, -issēs	coepissem	ōdissem	nōvissem

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Future.</i> {	2. Sing.	mēmēnto	Wanting.	Wanting.	Wanting.
	2. Plu.	mēmēntōte	"	"	"

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect.</i>	mēmīnisse	coepisse	ōdisse	nōvisse
<i>Future.</i>	Wanting.	coeptūrus esse	ōsūrus esse	Wanting.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perf.</i>	} Wanting.	coeptus	ōsus	nōtus
<i>Pass.</i>				
<i>Fut.</i>	} Wanting.	coeptūrus	ōsūrus	Wanting.
<i>Act.</i>				

## Irregular Verbs—VŌLO, NŌLO, MĀLO.

<i>Principal Parts</i>	{	vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭi, <i>I will, I wish, I am willing.</i>
		nŏlo, nolle, nŏlŭi, <i>I am unwilling.</i>
		mālo, malle, mālŭi, <i>I prefer.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

1. vŏlo	nŏlo	mālo
2. vis	nŏn vis	māvis
3. vult	nŏn vult	māvult

## PLURAL.

1. vŏlŭmus	nŏlŭmus	mālŭmus
2. vultis	nŏn vultis	māvultis
3. vŏlunt	nŏlunt	mālunt

## IMPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. vŏlēbam	nŏlēbam	mālēbam
2. vŏlēbas	nŏlēbas	mālēbas
3. vŏlēbat	nŏlēbat	mālēbat

## PLURAL.

1. vŏlēbāmus	nŏlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
2. vŏlēbātis	nŏlēbātis	mālēbātis
3. vŏlēbant	nŏlēbant	mālēbant

## FUTURE.

## SINGULAR.

1. vōlam	nōlam	mālam
2. vōlēs	nōlēs	mālēs
3. vōlet	nōlet	mālet

## PLURAL.

1. vōlēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
2. vōlētis	nōlētis	mālētis
3. vōlent	nōlent	mālent

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. vōlūī	nōlūī	mālūī
2. vōlūistī	nōlūistī	mālūistī
3. vōlūit	nōlūit	mālūit

## PLURAL.

1. vōlūīmus	nōlūīmus	mālūīmus
2. vōlūistis	nōlūistis	mālūistis
3. { vōlūērunt vōlūēre	{ nōlūērunt nōlūēre	{ mālūērunt mālūēre

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. vōlūēram	nōlūēram	mālūēram
2. vōlūērās	nōlūērās	mālūērās
3. vōlūērat	nōlūērat	mālūērat

## PLURAL.

1. vōlūērāmus	nōlūērāmus	mālūērāmus
2. vōlūērātis	nōlūērātis	mālūērātis
3. vōlūērant	nōlūērant	mālūērant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. vōlūēro	nōlūēro	mālūēro
2. vōlūēris	nōlūēris	mālūēris
3. vōlūērit	nōlūērit	mālūērit

## PLURAL.

1. vöľüëřĩmus	nöľüëřĩmus	mäľüëřĩmus
2. vöľüëřĩtis	nöľüëřĩtis	mäľüëřĩtis
3. vöľüëřĩnt	nöľüëřĩnt	mäľüëřĩnt

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

1. vëľĩm	nöľĩm	mäľĩm
2. vëľĩs	nöľĩs	mäľĩs
3. vëľĩt	nöľĩt	mäľĩt

## PLURAL.

1. vëľĩmus	nöľĩmus	mäľĩmus
2. vëľĩtis	nöľĩtis	mäľĩtis
3. vëľĩnt	nöľĩnt	mäľĩnt

## IMPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. vellem	nollem	malle
2. vellës	nollës	mallës
3. vellet	nollet	mallet

## PLURAL.

1. vellëmus	nollëmus	mallëmus
2. vellëtĩs	nollëtĩs	mallëtĩs
3. vellent	nollent	mallent

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. vöľüëřĩm	nöľüëřĩm	mäľüëřĩm
2. vöľüëřĩs	nöľüëřĩs	mäľüëřĩs
3. vöľüëřĩt	nöľüëřĩt	mäľüëřĩt

## PLURAL.

1. vöľüëřĩmus	nöľüëřĩmus	mäľüëřĩmus
2. vöľüëřĩtis	nöľüëřĩtis	mäľüëřĩtis
3. vöľüëřĩnt	nöľüëřĩnt	mäľüëřĩnt

## PLUPERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

1. völäüissem	nöläüissem	mälüissem
2. völäüissēs	nöläüissēs	mälüissēs
3. völäüisset	nöläüisset	mälüisset

## PLURAL.

1. völäüissēmus	nöläüissēmus	mälüissēmus
2. völäüissētis	nöläüissētis	mälüissētis
3. völäüissent	nöläüissent	mälüissent

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

2. None.	nōlī	None.
----------	------	-------

## PLURAL.

2. None.	nōlite	None.
----------	--------	-------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	velle	nolle	malle
<i>Perfect.</i>	völäüisse	nöläüisse	mälüisse

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	völäns (used as an adj. = <i>willing</i> .)	nöläns (used as an adj. = <i>unwilling</i> .)	None.
-----------------	------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------	-------

Fero, *I carry.*

*Principal Parts*—Fēro, ferre, tūlī, lātum.

## PRESENT.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
--------	-------	--------	-------

*Singular.*

1. fēro	fēram	fēror	fērār
2. fers	fēras	{ ferris ferre	{ fērāris fērāre
3. fert	fērat	fertur	fērātur



*Plural.*

1. fērīmus	fērāmus	fērīmur	fērāmur
2. fertis	fērātis	fērīmīnī	fērāmīnī
3. fērunt	fērant	fēruntur	fērantur

IMPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

*Singular.*

1. fērēbam	ferrem	fērēbar	ferrer
2. fērēbās	ferrēs	{ fērēbāris fērēbāre	{ ferrēris ferrēre
3. fērēbat	ferret	fērēbātur	ferrētur

*Plural.*

1. fērēbāmus	ferrēmus	fērēbāmur	ferrēmur
2. fērēbātis	ferrētis	fērēbāmīnī	ferrēmīnī
3. fērēbant	ferrent	fērēbantur	ferrentur

PERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

*Singular.*

1. tūlī	tūlērim	lātus sum	lātus sim
2. tūlisti	tūlēris	lātus ēs	lātus sis
3. tūlit	tūlērit	lātus est	lātus sit

*Plural.*

1. tūlīmus	tūlērimus	lātī sūmus	lātī sīmus
2. tūlistis	tūlēritis	lātī estis	lātī sitis
3. { tūlērunt tūlēre	tūlērint	lātī sunt	lātī sint

PLUPERFECT.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.

*Singular.*

1. tūlēram	tūlīssēm	lātus ēram	lātus essem
2. tūlērās	tūlīssēs	lātus ērās	lātus essēs
3. tūlērat	tūlīssēt	lātus ērat	lātus esset

*Plural.*

1. tŭlĕrāmus	tŭlissēmus	lātī ĕrāmus	lātī essēmus
2. tŭlĕrātis	tŭlissētis	lātī ĕrātis	lātī essētis
3. tŭlĕrant	tŭlissent	lātī ĕrant	lātī essent

## FUTURE.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJ.

## INDIC.

## SUBJ.

*Singular.*

1. fĕram	None.	fĕrār	None.
2. fĕrēs		{ fĕrĕris	
		{ fĕrĕre	
3. fĕret		fĕrĕtur	

*Plural.*

1. fĕrēmus	None.	fĕrēmur	None.
2. fĕrētis		fĕrēmīnī	
3. fĕrent		fĕrentur	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDIC.

## SUBJ.

## INDIC.

## SUBJ.

*Singular.*

1. tŭlĕro	None.	lātus ĕro	None.
2. tŭlĕris		lātus ĕris	
3. tŭlĕrit		lātus ĕrit	

*Plural.*

1. tŭlĕrīmus	None.	lātī ĕrīmus	None.
2. tŭlĕrītis		lātī ĕrītis	
3. tŭlĕrint		lātī ĕrunt	

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

*Singular.*

2. fer

ferre

*Plural.*

2. ferte

fĕrīmīnī

FUTURE.

ACTIVE.

*Singular.*

2. *ferto, you shall carry.*  
 3. *ferto, he shall carry.*

PASSIVE.

*fertor*  
*fertor*

*Plural.*

2. *fertōte, ye shall carry.*  
 3. *fērunto, they shall carry.*

*Wanting.*  
*fēruntor*

INFINITIVE.

ACTIVE.

*Present.* *ferre*  
*Perfect.* *tūlisse*  
*Future.* *lātūrus, a, um, esse*

PASSIVE.

*ferrī*  
*lātus esse*  
*lātum irī*

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.* *fērens*  
*Perfect.* *Wanting.*  
*Future.* *lātūrus, -a, -um*

*Wanting.*  
*lātus, -a, -um*  
*fērendus, -a, -um*

SUPINE.

*Active.* *iātum.*

*Passive.* *lātū.*

*Fio, I become.*

*Principal Parts*—*Fio, fīrī, factus sum.*

PRESENT

PERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

*Singular.*

1. <i>fio</i>	<i>fīam</i>	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>
2. <i>fīs</i>	<i>fīās</i>	<i>factus ēs</i>	<i>factus sis</i>
3. <i>fit</i>	<i>fīat</i>	<i>factus est</i>	<i>factus sit</i>

*Plural.*

1. <i>fīmus</i>	<i>fīāmus</i>	<i>facti sūmus</i>	<i>facti sīmus</i>
2. <i>fītis</i>	<i>fīātis</i>	<i>facti estis</i>	<i>facti sītis</i>
3. <i>fīunt</i>	<i>fīant</i>	<i>facti sunt</i>	<i>facti sint</i>

## IMPERFECT.

INDIC.      SUBJ.

1. fīēbam	fīērem
2. fīēbās	fīērēs
3. fīebat	fīēret

## PLUPERFECT.

INDIC.      SUBJ.

factus ēram	factus essem
factus ērās	factus essēs
factus ērat	factus esset

*Singular.**Plural.*

1. fīēbāmus	fīērēmus	facti ērāmus	facti essēmus
2. fīēbātis	fīērētis	facti ērātis	facti essētis
3. fīēbant	fīērent	facti erant	facti essent

## FUTURE.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

1. fīam	None.
2. fīēs	
3. fīet	

*Singular.*

factus ēro	None.
factus ēris	
factus ērit	

*Plural.*

1. fīēmus	facti ērīmus
2. fīētis	facti ērītis
3. fīent	facti ērunt.

## IMPERATIVE.

fī

fite

## INFINITIVE.

*Present.* fīērī      *Perfect.* factus esse      *Future.* factū irī

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perfect.* factus, -a, -um      *Future.* faciendus, -a, -um

## SUPINE.

factū

Eo, *I go.*

*Principal Parts*—Eo, ire, ivi or ii, Itum.

PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Singular.</i>			
1. eo	eam	ivi or ii	iverim or ierim
2. is	ias	ivisti or iisti	iveris or ieris
3. it	eat	ivit or iit	iverit or ierit
<i>Plural.</i>			
1. imus	eamus	ivimus or iimus	iverimus or ierimus
2. itis	eatīs	ivistis or iistis	iveritis or ieritis
3. eunt	eaunt	{ ivērunt or iērunt ivēre or iēre	iverint or ierint

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Singular.</i>			
1. ibam	irem	ivēram or iēram	ivissem or iissem
2. ibās	irēs	ivērās or iērās	ivissēs or iissēs
3. ibat	iret	ivērat or iērat	ivisset or iisset
<i>Plural.</i>			
1. ibāmus	irēmus	ivērāmus or iērāmus	ivissēmus or iissēmus
2. ibātis	irētis	ivērātis or iērātis	ivissētis or iissētis
3. ibant	irent	ivērant or iērant	ivissent or iissent

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Singular.</i>			
1. ibo	None.	ivēro or iēro	None.
2. ibis		ivēris or iēris	
3. ibit		ivērit or iērit	
<i>Plural.</i>			
1. ibimus		ivērīmus or iērīmus	
2. ibitis		ivērītis or iērītis	
3. ibunt		ivērīnt or iērīnt	

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*

2. ī

2. ito

3. ito

*Plural.*

2. ite

2. itōte

3. ēunto

## FUTURE.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* ire  
*Perf.* ivisse or iſſe  
*Fut.* itūrus, -a, -um, esse

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres. Act.* iens (gen. ēuntis)  
*Fut. Act.* itūrus, -a, -um  
*Fut. Pass.* ēundus, -a, -um

## SUPINES.

*Active.* itum.*Passive.* itūEdo, *I eat.**Principal Parts*—Edo, ēdēre, ēdī, ēsum.

## PRESENT.

## PERFECT.

INDIC. SUBJ.

INDIC. SUBJ.

1. ēdo ēdam  
 2. ēdis, ēs ēdās  
 3. ēdit, est ēdat

*Singular.*

ēdī ēdērim  
 ēdisti ēdēris  
 ēdit ēdērit

1. ēdīmus ēdāmus  
 2. ēdītis, estis ēdātis  
 3. ēdunt ēdant

*Plural.*

ēdīmus ēdērimus  
 ēdistis ēdēritis  
 { ēdērunt ēdērint  
 { ēdēre

## IMPERFECT.

## PLUPERFECT.

INDIC. SUBJ.

INDIC. SUBJ.

1. ēdēbam ēdērem or essem  
 2. ēdēbās ēdērēs or essēs  
 3. ēdēbat ēdēret or esset

*Singular.*

ēdēram ēdissem  
 ēdērās ēdissēs  
 ēdērat ēdisset

*Plural.*

1. ēdēbāmus ēdērēmus or essēmus  
 2. ēdēbātis ēdērētis or essētis  
 3. ēdēbant ēdērent or essent

ēdērāmus ēdissēmus  
 ēdērātis ēdissētis  
 ēdērant ēdisset

## FUTURE.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

INDIC.

SUBJ.

*Singular.*

1. ědam
2. ědēs
3. ědet

None.

ěděro  
 ěděris  
 ěděrit

None.

*Plural.*

1. ědēmus
2. ědētis
3. ědent

None.

ědērīmus  
 ědērītis  
 ědērīnt

None.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*

2. ědě

*Plural.*

ěďte

## FUTURE.

*Singular.*

2. ědīto
3. ědīto

*Plural.*

ědītōte  
 ědunto

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* ěděre or esse  
*Perf.* ědisse  
*Fut.* ěsūrus, a, um, esse

*Pres.* ědens  
*Fut.* ěsūrus, a, um

Aio, I say, or I affirm.

## INDICATIVE.

*Pres.* āio, ais, ait, — — āiunt  
*Impf.* āiēbam, āiēbās, āiēbat, āiēbāmus, āiēbātis, āiēbant  
*Perf.* — — āit

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres.* — — āiat — — āiant

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* āiens

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

## ACCUSATIVE.

1. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative : as, *Puella rosam laudat, The girl praises the rose.*

2. Many verbs that are intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, especially verbs of *emotion, taste and smell* : as, *Sequāni Ariovisti crudelitatem horrebant, The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus. Haec oratio antiquitatem olet, This speech smacks of antiquity. Piscis mare sapit, The fish tastes of the sea.*

3. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, naming, regarding and showing*, take two accusatives in the active : as, *Populus Romanus Ciceronem consulem creavit, The Roman people elected Cicero consul.* Here *Ciceronem* is the direct object and *consulem* is a part of the predicate, and is called the *predicate accusative*.

In the passive these verbs take two nominatives : the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative : as, *Cicero consul a populo Romano creatus est, Cicero was elected consul by the Roman people.*

4. Verbs of *asking*,<sup>1</sup> *teaching*, and *concealing*, take two accusatives in the active, one of the person and another of the thing : as, *Pater filium musicam docuit, The father taught his son music.*

In the passive the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained : as, *Filius musicam a patre doctus est, The son was taught music by his father.*

5. Many verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred origin or meaning (*cognate accusative*) : as, *Turpissimam vitam vivit, He lives a very base life. Mirum somnium somniavit, He dreamed a wonderful dream. Proelium pugnat, He fights a battle.*

---

<sup>1</sup>*Peto, I ask, and postulo, I demand, take the accusative of the thing and ablative of the person with a or ab, from* : as, *Pacem a Romanis petiverunt, They asked peace from the Romans, or They asked the Romans for peace. Librum ab amicis postulavit, He demanded a book from his friends. Quaero, I ask, takes an accusative of the thing and an ablative of the person with a (or ab), e (or ex), de* : as, *Causam e viro quaesivit, He asked a reason from the man (or, He asked the man for a reason).*



6. The accusative neuter of a pronoun or of a numeral adjective, is sometimes joined to an intransitive verb to denote, not the proper object, but the compass and extent of the action : as, *Īdem gloriatur, He makes the same boast. Id lætor, I rejoice at this.*

7. Many intransitive verbs, especially those that express motion, compounded with the prepositions *ad (to), circum (around), per (through), praeter (past), trans (across), or super (above),* take an accusative after them : as, *Cato rostra advolat, Cato flies to the hustings. The accusative depends on the preposition and the sentence might be written, Cato ad rostra volat.*

8. Transitive verbs compounded with *trans (transduco, transporto, traicio)* may take two accusatives in the active, one depending on the verb, and the other on the preposition : as, *Hannibal copias Ibērum traduxit, Hannibal led his forces across the Iberus. This might also be expressed, Hannibal copias trans Iberum duxit, or Hannibal copias trans Iberum traduxit. In the passive the direct object of the verb becomes the subject, and the subject of the active becomes the ablative of agent with a or ab: as, Ab Hannibale copiae Iberum tractae sunt, His forces were led across the Iberus by Hannibal.*

9. An adjective or a verb may take an accusative to define its meaning : as, *Puer caput vulneratur, The boy is wounded in the head. Imperator dextram manum ictus est, The general was struck on the right hand. Ille est patri vultum similis, He is like his father in face. This is called the accusative of specification or nearer definition.*

10. The accusative is used in exclamations with or without an interjection : as, *Me miserum, O wretched me! O malam fortunam, What evil fortune!*

#### DATIVE.

1. The indirect object of a transitive verb is put in the dative : as, *Puer epistolam puellae donat, The boy gives the girl a letter (a letter to the girl).*

2. Adjectives implying *nearness, likeness, fitness, kindness,* or the opposite idea, take a dative : as, *Urbs propinqua flumini est, The city is near a river. Canis similis lupo est, A dog is like a wolf.*

Castris idoneus locus est, *The place is suitable for a camp.* Erat vir mihi amicissimus, *He was a man very friendly to me.* Omni aetati mors est communis, *Death is common to every time of life.*

3. The dative is used in Latin with many verbs that in English have a direct object. This is most common with verbs signifying *to please, favor, trust, assist* and their opposites; also *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, spare, pardon, be angry*: as, Res omnibus placuit, *The affair pleased all.* Fortuna fortibus favet, *Fortune favors the brave.* Pāret legibus consul, *As consul he obeys the laws.* Tibi irascor, *I am angry with you.*<sup>1</sup>

4. A verb that governs a dative in the active can only be used impersonally in the passive: as, Tibi imperatur, *You are commanded* (literally, *It is commanded to you*). Mihi creditur, *I am believed* (Do not say Imperaris or credor).

5. Verbs compounded with bene, male, and satis, govern a dative: as, Optimo viro maledixit, *He reviled a most excellent man.* Mihi nunquam satisfecit, *He never satisfied me.*

6. Transitive verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, con (for cum), in, inter, ob (*on, against*), post, prae (*before*), sub (*under*), or super (*above*), often govern the accusative of the direct object and the dative of the indirect: as, Populus Romanus bellum Gallis intulit, *The Roman people made war on the Gauls.*

In the passive the direct object of the active becomes the subject, and the indirect object is retained: as, Bellum Gallis a populo Romano illatum est, *War was made on the Gauls by the Roman people.*

7. Intransitive verbs compounded with the above-named prepositions often take a dative: as, Caesar exercitui praefuit, *Caesar*

---

<sup>1</sup>The chief verbs that govern a dative are: Placeo (*please*), displiceo (*displease*), libet (*it pleases*), faveo (*favor*), fido and confido (*trust*: dat. of person but abl. of thing), resisto (*resist*), obsto (*stand in the way of*), credo (*trust*, with dat. of person and accusative of thing; in sense of *believe*, dat. of person), persuadeo (*persuade*), suadeo (*recommend*), impero (*command*), mando (*entrust*), obedio (*obey*), pareo (*obey*), repugno (*oppose*), obsisto (*meet*), occurro (*meet*), nubo (*weâ*, said of a woman; properly *to veil one's self for*), servio (*be a slave to*), minor (*threaten*: dat. of person and acc. of thing, or acc. of person and abl. of thing), parco (*spare*), ignosco (*pardon*). Exceptions:—Iuvo, adiuvo (*help*), delecto (*delight*), laedo, offendo (*harm*), iubeo (*order*), veto and prohibeo (*forbid*), rego, gubernatio (*rule, direct*), govern the accusative.

*commanded the army.* Consulis consilii obstat, *He opposes the plans of the consul.*

8. The dative is used with the verb *sum*, *I am*, to express possession : as, *Mihi est liber*, *I have a book* (literally, *There is a book to me*).

9. The compounds of *sum* (except *possum*, *I can*) govern the dative : as, *Tibi adsum*, *I aid you*. *Amicis prodest*, *He helps his friends*.

10. *Opus est*, and *usus est* (*there is need*), are generally used impersonally with the dative of the person to whom there is need, and the ablative of the thing needed : as, *Cibo mihi opus est*, *I have need of food* (literally, *There is need to me with food*). *Viginti denariis tibi usus est*, *You have need of twenty denarii*.

11. The agent is expressed in the passive periphrastic conjugation by the dative : as, *Parentes nobis amandi sunt*, *Our parents should be loved by us*. (See p. 172, 3.)

12. The dative is used to express *purpose, intention, or destination* : as, *Malo est hominibus avaritia*, *Avarice is an evil* (literally, *for an evil*) *to men*. *Quinque cohortes castris praesidio reliquit*, *He left five cohorts to guard the camp* (literally, *for a guard to the camp*). This is called the *dative of purpose*.

13. The dative is often used in Latin instead of the English possessive : as, *Omnes flentes Caesari sese ad pedes proiecerunt*, *All threw themselves at Caesar's feet in tears*.

14. A dative is often used of the person specially interested in an action : as, *Quid mihi Celsus agit?* *Tell me, what is Celsus about?* This use is confined to personal pronouns. It is called the *ethic dative*.

## GENITIVE.

1. A noun used to limit or define another noun, and not meaning the same thing, is put in the genitive. This relation is generally expressed in English by the preposition *of* : as, *Libri Ciceronis*, *The books of Cicero*. *Libra auri*, *A pound of gold*.

2. The genitive is often used in the predicate with *sum* to express possession : as, *Haec domus est mei patris*, *This house belongs to*

*my father.* This genitive may be used to express our *task, duty, custom, characteristic, mark, token*: as, *Iudicis est verum sequi, It is the duty of a judge to follow the truth* (literally, *To follow the truth is of a judge*). *Hoc est praeceptōris, This is the task of an instructor.* *Sapientis est res adversas aequo animo ferre, It is the characteristic of a wise man to bear adversity with resignation* (literally, *with an even mind*).<sup>1</sup>

3. The genitive expresses the whole of which a part is taken: as, *Pars militum, A part of the soldiers.* *Unus militum, One of the soldiers.* *Decem millia passuum, Ten thousand paces* (= ten Roman miles). *Decem vestrum, Ten of you.* *Quinque nostrum, Five of us.* This is called the *partitive genitive*. (Do not use *nostrum* and *vestrum* in partitive genitive. See p. 104, note.)

4. A noun in the genitive (called the *genitive of quality*) is often added to another noun to denote a quality: as, *Vir est summae fortitudinis, He is a man of the highest courage.* The word in the genitive expressing the quality has invariably an adjective with it. Thus, *A man of wisdom* is not *Vir sapientiae*, but *Vir sapiens*. When a word expressing quality is without an adjective and cannot be turned as in the last example, *praeditus* (*endowed with*) is used with the ablative: as, *Homo virtute praeditus, A man of valour* (literally, *A man endowed with valour*).

5. When the price for which a thing is *bought* or *sold* is not stated definitely, price is usually expressed by the genitive, especially with the words *magni* (*at a great price*), *maximi* (*at a very great price*), *parvi* (*at a low price*), *pluris* (*at a greater price*), *minoris* (*at a less price*), *tanti* (*at so great a price*), *quanti* (*at as high a price* or *at how high a price*): as, *Hortos tanti quanti tu emit, He bought gardens at as high a price as you.* *Frumentum pluris vendo, I sell corn at a higher price.*<sup>2</sup>

6. The genitive is used with nouns derived from verbs to denote the subject of the verb implied in the governing noun: as, *Morsus*

<sup>1</sup> With possessive pronouns this genitive is not used, but the neuter of the corresponding possessive adjective: as, *Tuum (not tui) est vidēre, It is your duty to see.*

<sup>2</sup> Do not use *multi* or *maioris* or *plurimi*, for *At a high, at a higher, at a very high, price.*

canis, *The bite of a dog*. Here canis is the subject of the implied mordet, *he bites*. This is called the *subjective genitive*.

7. The genitive is also used with nouns derived from verbs to denote the object of the verb implied in the governing noun: as, Timor mortis, *The fear of death*. Here mortis is the object of the implied timet, *he fears*. This is called the *objective genitive*.

8. A genitive is often added to another noun to define and limit: as, Virtus iustitiae, *The virtue of justice*. This is called the *genitive of definition*.

9. Adjectives are followed by a genitive when they express *plenty, want*, or the opposite: as, Plenus hostium, *Full of the enemy*. Expers rationis, *Devoid of reason*. So, also, adjectives derived from verbs: as, Tenax propositi, *Firm of purpose*. Cupidus pecuniae, *Eager for money*.

10. Verbs of *plenty* and *want* take the genitive: as, Eget pecuniae, *He is in need of money*.

11. Verbs signifying to *remember*,<sup>1</sup> *forget*, *pity*,<sup>2</sup> like meminī (*remember*), reminiscor (*remember*), obliviscor (*forget*), misereor (*pity*), miserescō (*pity*), often take the genitive: as, Miserēre laborum, *Pity our sufferings*. Huius diei meminero, *I shall remember this day*.

12. Verbs of *accusing, acquitting, condemning, reminding* and *admonishing* take, in the active, the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing: as, Te impietatis absolvo, *I acquit you of impiety*. Arguit me furti, *He accuses me of theft*. Cives eum proditiōnis accusavērunt, *The citizens accused him of treachery*.

In the passive, these constructions become respectively, Tu ab me impietatis absolvēris, Furti ab eo arguor, Ab civibus is proditiōnis accusatus est.

13. Miseret (*it excites pity*), poenitet (*it makes repent*), pudet (*it shames*), taedet (*it wearies*), piget (*it annoys*), are used impersonally with the accusative of the person affected and the genitive

<sup>1</sup>Verbs of forgetting and remembering often take the accusative, especially of things. Recordor, *I recollect*, has usually the accusative.

<sup>2</sup>Miseror, -āri, -ātus sum (*express pity for*) takes the accusative: as, Casum suum miseratur, *He bewails his misfortune*.

of the object causing the feeling : as, *Eorum nos miseret, We pity them* (literally, *It pities us of them*).

14. The impersonals interest and rēfert, *it is of importance*, take the genitive of the person to whom the matter is of importance : as, *Clodii intererat Milonem perire, It was of importance to Clodius that Milo should die*. But if the person is represented in English by a personal pronoun, the ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun is used in Latin : as, *Id meā interest, This is of importance to me*. The degree of importance is expressed either by an adverb (*multum, plurimum, much, very much*), or by the genitive of price (as, *magni, parvi, pluris, etc.*) : as, *Multum meā interest, It is of great importance to me*. *Magni tuā interest, It is of great importance to you*.

#### ABLATIVE.

1. The ablative expresses *separation or motion from* ; hence it is used with verbs signifying to *desist from, relieve from, deprive of, need*,<sup>1</sup> *be without, free from* ; as, *Conatu destitit, He desisted from the attempt*. *Levā me hoc onere, Relieve me of this burden*. *Se oculis privavit, He deprived himself of his eyes*. *Non egeo medicinā, I do not want medicine*. *Cibo caret, He is without food*.

2. Adjectives signifying *want or freedom from* take the ablative : as, *Animus liber curā, A mind free from care*. *Puer est expers<sup>2</sup> metu, The boy is without fear*. *Urbs est nuda praesidio, The city is destitute of defence*.

3. The ablative of origin is used with verbs (chiefly participles like *natus, satus, born from* ; *editus, genitus, descended from* ; *ortus, sprung from*) with the preposition *a* (or *ab*), *e* (or *ex*), *de* when implying remote ancestry, or with the simple ablative for immediate ancestry : as, *Belgae a Germanis orti sunt, The Belgae are descended from the Germans*. *Ille optimis parentibus ortus est, He is born of very noble parents*.

4. The agent after a passive verb is regularly expressed by the ablative with *a* or *ab* : as, *Vir a sociis laudatur, The man is praised by his comrades*.

<sup>1</sup>Egeo and indigeo govern also the genitive. (See p. 281, 10.)

<sup>2</sup>This governs the genitive also. (See p. 281, 9.)

5. *Cause, manner, means and instrument* are denoted by the ablative without a preposition : as, *Puer pallidus irā fuit, The boy was pale with rage* (abl. of cause ; not often used without an adj.). *Magno fletu Caesarem orant, they beseech Caesar with much weeping* (abl. of manner ; not often used without an adj.). *Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, He encouraged the minds of the Gauls by his words* (abl. of means). *Puerum gladio vulneravit, He wounded the boy with a sword* (abl. of instrument).

6. The ablative is used with an adjective in the comparative when *quam* (*than*) is omitted : as, *Lupus saevior cane est, The wolf is fiercer than the dog.* *Lupum saeviozem cane aestimo, I consider the wolf fiercer than the dog.*

Note that *quam* can only be omitted when the word after it would be in the nominative or accusative, if *quam* were expressed.

7. The ablative is used with the comparative of the adjective to express the amount of difference : as, *Puer uno anno senior quam frater erat, The boy was one year older* (literally, *older by one year*) *than his brother.* This is called the *ablative of difference.*

8. Price with verbs of *buying* and *selling* is expressed by the ablative when the price is definitely stated : as, *Viginti talentis unam orationem vendidit Isocrates, Isocrates sold one speech at twenty talents.* *Multo sanguine haec victoria nobis stat, This victory costs us much blood* (literally, *Stands to us at much blood*).

9. The following adjectives govern the ablative : *Dignus* (*worthy*), *indignus* (*unworthy*), *contentus* (*contented*), *praeditus* (*endowed with*), *frētus* (*relying on*), *liber* (*free from*) : as, *Miles coronā dignus est, The soldier is worthy of a crown.* *Puer est ingenio praeditus, The boy is endowed with ability.*

10. The deponents *utor* (*I use*), *fruor* (*I enjoy*), *fungor* (*I discharge*), *potior* (*I obtain*), *vescor* (*I eat*), govern the ablative : as, *Plurimis rebus fruimur et utimur, We enjoy and use many things.* *Magnā praedā est potitus, He obtained large booty.* *Lacte et carne vescebantur, They used to live on milk and flesh.*

11. *Opus est* and *usus est* (*there is need*) are generally used impersonally with the *dative of the person* to whom there is need, and the *ablative of the thing* needed : as, *Cibo mihi opus est, I have need of food* (literally, *There is need to me with food*).

12. An ablative (called the *abl. of quality*) is often used, like the genitive,<sup>1</sup> to express *quality*, especially when external qualities of dress or appearance are mentioned: as, *Homo magno capite, ore rubicundo, magnis pedibus, A man with a big head, red face, and big feet. Caesar erat excelsā staturā, Caesar was of lofty stature.* The abl. of quality should not be used without an adjective.

13. An ablative (called the *abl. of respect*) is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true: as, *Pauci numero erant, They were few in number. Est Medus genere, He is a Mede by birth.*

### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

14. The *ablative absolute* is a phrase consisting of a noun in the ablative case with a participle, adjective, or noun in agreement with it: as, *Coniuratio facta est Tarquinio regnante, A conspiracy was formed in the reign of Tarquin. His rebus dictis rediit, He returned after saying these things. Consule Planco, In the consulship of Plancus.*

### RULES FOR EXPRESSING TIME.

1. *A point of time* is expressed by the ablative: as, *Hieme noctes sunt longae, In winter the nights are long.*

2. *Within a period of time* is expressed either by the simple ablative or by the accusative with *inter* or *intra*: as, *Paucis diebus, inter paucos dies, intra paucos dies, Within a few days.*

3. *Many years after* is *multis annis* (abl.) *post*,<sup>2</sup> or *post*<sup>3</sup> *multos annos*; *many years before* is *multis annis* (abl.) *ante*,<sup>2</sup> or *ante*<sup>3</sup> *multos annos*: as, *Multis annis post urbs expugnata est, The city was taken many years after.*

4. *Duration of time* is expressed by the accusative: as, *Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit, Romulus reigned for thirty-seven years.* Often *per*, *through*, is used if definite duration is to be expressed: as, *Per totam noctem dormiebat, He slept the live-long night.*

5. *Ago* is expressed by *abhinc*, followed by the words expressing time in the accusative or ablative: as, *Abhinc decem dies* (or

<sup>1</sup> See Genitive (p. 280, 4).

<sup>2</sup> In these cases *post* and *ante* are adverbs.

<sup>3</sup> In these cases *post* and *ante* are prepositions.



ab hinc decem diebus) Caesar castra movit, *Ten days ago Caesar moved his camp.*

6. *Old* or *of age* is expressed by the participle *natus* with the accusative: as, *Homo est triginta annos natus*, *The man is thirty years old* (literally, *has been born thirty years*); or without *natus*, as *Homo est triginta annorum* (p. 280, 4). *More than thirty years* may be expressed by *Natus plus (quam) triginta annos*.

### RULES FOR EXPRESSING PLACE.

1. *Place to which* is generally expressed by the *accusative* with the prepositions *ad* or *in*, unless before the names of towns or small islands: as, *Ad Galliam, in urbem contendit*, *He hastens to Gaul, to the city*. With the names of towns and small islands *place to which* is regularly expressed by the accusative without a preposition<sup>1</sup>: as, *Romam, Corinthum, Karthaginem, Aeginam contendit*, *He hastens to Rome, Corinth, Carthage, Aegina*. So also *domum* (*home*), *rus* (*to the country*), are used without a preposition: as, *Domum, rus ambulat*, *He walks home, to the country*. *Ad domum Ciceronis ambulat* would mean *He walks to the house of Cicero*.

2. *Place from which* is regularly expressed by the *ablative* with the prepositions, *a, ab, e, ex, or de*, unless before the names of towns and small islands; as, *Ab Gallia, ex urbe, de provincia excessit*, *He departed from Gaul, out of the city, from the province*. But, with the names of towns and small islands, *from* is regularly expressed by the *ablative without a preposition*: as, *Romā, Corintho, Karthagine, Aeginā, contendit*, *He hastens from Rome, Corinth, Carthage, Aegina*. So also: *Domo, from home*; *rure, from the country*.

3. To express *place in which*, a preposition is required, unless with the names of towns and small islands: as, *In Gallia, in urbe vivit*, *He lives in Gaul, in the city*. But to express *place in which* with the names of towns or small islands, the so-called *locative*<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>When *ad* is used before the name of a town it means *towards*, or *in the neighborhood of*: as, *Ad Romam contendit*, *He hastens towards Rome*. *Ad Romam pugnatum est*, *The battle was fought in the neighborhood of Rome*.

<sup>2</sup>A case which became obsolete in later Latin

case is used. This case has the form of (*a*) the genitive, if the noun is of the first or second declension singular; (*b*) the ablative, if the noun is of the third declension singular or if the noun is plural: as, Romae, *at Rome*; Corinthi, *at Corinth*; Karthagine, *at Carthage*; Athenis, *at Athens* (from Athenae, nom. pl.); Delphis, *at Delphi* (Delphi, nom. pl.); Curibus, *at Cures* (Cures, nom. pl.). So also: Domi, *at home*; humi, *on the ground*; belli, *in war*; ruri, *in the country*; militiae, *on military service, abroad*.

4. When urbs or oppidum is used in apposition to the name of a town, the preposition should be expressed: as, Ad urbem Romam contendit, *He set out for the city of Rome*. Ex urbe Romā properavit, *He hastened from the city of Rome*. In urbe Romā vixit, *He lived in the city of Rome*. (Note.—The *City of Rome* is Urbs Roma, not Urbs Romae.)

#### EXTENT OF SPACE.

1. *Space over which* motion takes place is expressed by the accusative: as, Tria millia passuum ambulavit, *He walked three miles*.

2. *Space of measurement* answering to the questions, *How high? how deep? how broad? how long?* may be expressed by the acc. or gen. Thus: *A tree a hundred feet high*, Arbor alta centum pedes (acc. of extent of space) or Arbor centum pedum (gen. of qual.).

3. *Space which lies between* is expressed by the accusative or ablative: as, Abest decem millia passuum, *It is ten miles off*. Quinque millibus passuum distat, *It is five miles distant* (lit. by five miles).

#### INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Is the soldier here?* is Adestne miles? *Is not the soldier here?* is Nonne miles adest? *The soldier is not here, is he?* is Num miles adest?

Questions not introduced by interrogative pronouns or adverbs are usually introduced by one of the interrogative particles -ne, nonne, num. -Ne simply asks for information; nonne expects the answer *Yes*, and num the answer *No*.

2. Questions introduced by interrogative pronouns or adverbs do

not require an interrogative particle: as, *Why are you laughing?* Quid rides? *Where are you coming from?* Unde venis?

3. *Yes* or *no* in answer to a question is usually expressed by repeating some word in the question: as, *Is the soldier present?* Yes (*No*). Adestne miles? Adest (Non adest).

4. *An* is often used to introduce a rhetorical question: as, *Have you doubts of their honor?* An de eorum fide dubitatis?

5. *Whether . . . or* is *Utrum* (rarely *-ne*) . . . *an*, and *whether . . . or not*, *utrum . . . annon*: as, *Whether is he reading or writing?* Utrum legit an scribit? *Are you slaves or freemen?* Servine estis an liberi? *Whether will he come or not?* Utrum veniet annon?

6. *Tell me who you are* is *Dic mihi quis sis*. *I will ask him what he is reading*, Rogabo eum quid legat.

N.B.—A question dependent upon a verb of *saying* or *asking* has the verb in the subjunctive. Such a question is called an *indirect question*, while an independent question is called a *direct question*.

7. *Whether* in an indirect question is *num*: as, *He is asking me whether I am tired*, Rogat num fessus sim. *Whether . . . or not* in an indirect question is *Utrum . . . necne*: as, *Ask him whether he will come or not*, Roga eum utrum venturus sit necne.

## COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS.

1. Commands are expressed by the imperative mood: as, *Consult for yourselves*, Vos vobis consulite.

2. Prohibitions (addressed to individuals) are expressed most usually by *noli* or *nolite* with the infinitive, or by *nē* with the perfect subjunctive: as, *Don't scold*, Nōli obiurgare (*Noli* is the imperat. of *nolo*, *I am unwilling*). *Don't do it*, Ne hoc feceris.

NOTE.—*Ne* with the imperat. or with the pres. subjunc. is common in poetry and in general prohibitions: as, *Be not wroth, great priestess*, Ne saevi, magna sacerdos. *Do not learn many things, but much*, Ne multa discas sed multum.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. The subjunctive is used in exhortations: as, *Let us always be the same*, Semper iidem simus.

2. The subjunc. is used in commands: as, *Let him come tomorrow*, *Cras veniat*. (See last section.)

3. The subjunc. is used where a question is asked in doubt: as, *What shall I say?* *Quid dicam?* *What should I have said?* *Quid dicerem?* This is called the *deliberative subjunctive*.

4. The subjunc. is used to soften an assertion: as, *You would ask me what God is*, *Roges me quid sit deus*. *Then you would have said*, *Tunc diceres*.

5. Wishes and prayers are expressed by the subjunc. usually preceded by *utinam* (*O that*). The negative is *nē*. Thus: *Utinam veniat*, *May he come* (future and possible). *Utinam adesset*, *O that he were here now* (unaccomplished in present). *Utinam ne copias eduxisset*, *O that he had not led out his forces* (unaccomplished in past).

#### THE INFINITIVE.

1. Many verbs take an inf. to complete their meaning: as, *He had learned to talk*, *Loqui didicerat*. *You know how to win*, *Hannibal*; *you do not know how to use a victory*, *Vincere scis*, *Hannibal*; *victoriā ūti nescis*. Such verbs are called *modal verbs*.

The principal modal verbs are:

*Audeo* (*dare*), *cogo* (*compel*), *conor* (*endeavor*), *constituo* and *statuo* (*determine*), *cunctor* (*hesitate*), *cupio* (*desire*), *debeo* (*ought*), *desino* (*cease*), *disco* (*learn*), *dubito* (*hesitate*), *incipio* (*begin*), *mālo* (*prefer*), *nescio* (*not know how*), *nōlo* (*be unwilling*), *obliviscor* (*forget*), *patior* (*allow*), *paro* (*prepare*), *possum* (*be able*), *scio* (*know how*), *soleo* (*be accustomed*), *vereor* (*fear*), *volo* (*be willing*).

2. The subject of the inf. is in the acc.: as, *Your coming is very pleasing to me*, *Te venire mihi pergratum est*.

#### ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

1. The English *that*-clause after a verb meaning *to say* or *think* is expressed in Latin by the acc. with the inf.: as, *He says that he is coming*, *Dicit se venire*. *He said that he was coming*, *Dixit se venire*. *He says that he came*, *Dicit se venisse*. *He said that he came (or had come)*, *Dixit se venisse*. *He says that he will come*, *Dicit se venturum*. *He said that he would come*, *Dixit se venturum*.

N.B.—The *esse* of the fut. inf. act. may be omitted.

2. Such a statement, depending upon a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique narration* (as opposed to the simple form, which is called *direct narration*).

3. The tense of an inf. in oblique narration is the tense of the verb it represents in direct narration.

NOTE.—This idiom is quite different from the English and should be carefully mastered. The rule for finding the tense of the inf. may be stated thus: In turning English oblique into Latin, find first the English direct. *The tense of the English main verb in direct, is the tense of the Latin inf. in indirect.* Thus: *He said that all men erred*, Dixit omnes homines errare (direct = *all men err*). *He said that he was a Roman citizen*, Dixit se civem Romanum esse (direct = *I am a Roman citizen*, Civis Romanus sum).

4. Verbs meaning to *hope*, *promise*, *undertake*, have in Latin the fut. inf. and not as in English the pres.: as, *He hopes to live long*, Sperat se diu victurum. *I promised to come soon*, Pollicitus sum me brevi venturum.

Note that the proper pronoun must be expressed before the inf.

5. *He said that he would not come* is Negavit se venturum (not dixit non).

Note that the *he* of the *that*-clause, when referring to the subject of the principal clause, is *se*; referring to some one else, it would be *eum*: as, *They said that he would come*, Dixerunt eum venturum.

6. *He is said to be rich* is Dicitur esse dives, not Dicitur eum esse divitem.

#### SUPINE. GERUNDIVE.

1. The supine in *-um* is used to express *purpose*, but only with verbs of motion: as, Ludos visum ierunt, *They went to see the games*. Questum iniurias eo, *I am going to complain of wrongs*.

2. The gerundive of verbs that govern the acc. is to be used instead of the gerund with an object: as, Consilium inibant urbis delendae, *They formed a plan for destroying the city* (not urbem delendi).

But the gerund is used if the verb does not govern the acc.: as, Magnam gloriam victis parcendo paravit, *He won great glory by sparing the vanquished*.

3. To express *duty, obligation, or necessity* use the gerundive + *sum* (*passive periphrastic*): as, *Urbs defendenda est, The city must be defended.* *Est mihi ambulandum, I must walk* (agent usually in dat.). *Nonne inimicis a nobis parcendum est? Ought we not to spare our enemies?* (agent expressed by *a* or *ab* to avoid ambiguity).

### PARTICIPLES.

1. Use the pres. participle, only of an action simultaneous with that of the main verb: as, *Haec moriens dixit, This he said while dying.*

2. The fut. part. act. is used to express a *purpose*: as, *Venio agros visurus, I am coming to see the lands.*

3. Use the fut. part. act. + *sum* to express *I am about to, intend to*: as, *Dic mihi quid facturus sis, Tell me what you intend to do* (*active periphrastic*).

4. For the perf. part. act. (which is wanting) use (*a*) abl. absolute or (*b*) *cum* + subjunc. or (*c*) *postquam* + perf. ind.: as, *Having killed his enemy he spoke thus, Hoste interfecto* (or *Hostem cum interfecisset* or *Hostem postquam interfecit*), *haec locutus est.*

NOTE. — *He killed and stripped his enemy*, is *Hostem interfectum spoliavit* (not *Hoste interfecto eum spoliavit*).

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

1. Latin tenses are divided into *Primary* and *Secondary* (or *Historical*), as follows: —

Primary Tenses.	{	Pres.,	<i>āmat, he loves.</i>
		Perfect,	<i>āmāvit, he has loved.</i>
		Future,	<i>āmābit, he will love.</i>
		Future Perf.,	<i>āmāverit, he will have loved.</i>
Secondary (or Historical) Tenses.	{	Imperf.,	<i>āmābat, he was loving.</i>
		Perfect,	<i>āmāvit, he loved.</i>
		Pluperf.,	<i>āmāverat, he had loved.</i>

2. A primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; a secondary tense in the principal clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent clause: as, *Venio ut urbem videam, I am coming that I may see*

*the city* (primary sequence). Veniebam ut urbem vidērem, *I was coming that I might see the city* (secondary sequence). This is called the *Law of the Sequence of Tenses*.

NOTE.—The Latin perfect has the force both of the English present perfect (*i.e.*, perf. with *have*) and of the English past. When the Latin perfect is a pres. perf., it is a *primary* tense; when a past, a *secondary*: as, Veni ut urbem videam, *I have come to see the city* (primary). Veni ut urbem viderem, *I came to see the city* (secondary).

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. A clause joined to a principal verb by an interrogative pronoun or conjunction is called an *indirect question*, and an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive: as, Quaesivit cur haec fecissem, *He inquired why I had done this*.

2. For the fut. subjunc. act. in an indirect question, use the fut. part. + sum: as, Scio quid facturus sit, *I know what he will do*. Sciebam quid facturus esset, *I knew what he would do* (secondary sequence.)

3. For a fut. subjunc. pass. use futurum sit (or esset) + ut: as, Sciunt quare futurum sit ut is necetur, *They know why he will be killed*. Rogaverunt quando futurum esset ut pons conficeretur, *They asked when the bridge would be finished* (secondary sequence).

NOTE.—Use quando, not cum, for *when* in an interrogative sentence.

4. *Whether* in an indirect question is num or (rarely) -ne: as, Dic mihi num eādem quae ego sentias, *Tell me whether you have the same opinion as I*. Quaesivi salvusne esses, *I inquired whether you were safe*.

5. *Whether . . . or* in alternative questions is Utrum (rarely -ne) . . . an in indirect as well as in direct questions (see p. 287,5); but *or not* is necne in indirect, annon in direct. Thus:

*I know whether this is true  
or false,*

Scio { utrum hoc verum an falsum sit.  
verumne sit.an falsum.

*I ask whether he intends to go or not,* Rogo utrum iturus sit necne.

6. *Tell me if he is well* is Dic mihi num (not si) valeat.

7. *I told them what he ought to do* is *Eis dixi quid* (not *quod*) *ei faciendum esset*, because the dependent clause (*quid ei faciendum esset*) implies in direct narration the question, *What ought he to do?*

8. An English abstract noun is often expressed by an indirect question: as,

<i>I know</i>	{	<i>the size of the island.</i> <i>the extent of the danger.</i> <i>the nature of the soil.</i> <i>the origin of the war.</i> <i>the position of the enemy.</i>	Scio	{	<i>quanta insula sit.</i> <i>quantum periculum sit.</i> <i>quale solum sit.</i> <i>unde bellum ortum sit.</i> ✓ <i>in quo loco hostes sint.</i>
---------------	---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------	---	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### UT-CLAUSE WITH VERBS OF ASKING.

1. Verbs of *asking, commanding, striving* and *effecting* take in English an infinitive, but in Latin a clause introduced by *ut* with the subjunctive: as, *Oro te ut hoc facias, I beg you to do this.*

2. If there is a *not* with the infinitive in English, *nē* is used for *ut non*: as, *Puero imperavi ne domo exiret, I ordered the boy not to go from home* (secondary sequence).

3. So also *that no one*, is *ne quis*; *that no*, *ne ullus*; *that nothing*, *ne quid*; *that never*, *ne unquam*; as, *Orant ne quis excedat, They beg that no one may leave.*

4. *Neve* or *neu* is used in a second such clause; as, *Te rogo ut bono animo sis neve perturbēris, I beg you to be of good cheer and not to be troubled. Neither . . . nor* would be *neve* (*neu*) . . . *neve* (*neu*): as, *Rogo te neve dōles materiam neve caedas, I beg of you neither to hew timber nor cut it.*

5. *Iubeo* (*I order*), *veto* (*I forbid*), *prohibeo* (*I prevent*), *patior* (*I suffer*), *volo* (*I wish*), *cogo* (*I compel*), *nolo* (*I am unwilling*), *sino* (*I allow*), *cupio* (*I desire*), take the infinitive: as, *Puerum iussi domo non exire, I ordered the boy not to go away from home. Vetuit me hoc facere, He forbade me to do this.*

6. *Statuo, constituo, decerno* (*I determine*), take the infinitive when the infinitive is used in English, otherwise *ut* or *ne* with the subjunctive: as, *Caesar statuit in Italiam redire, Caesar decided to return to Italy*; but *Caesar statuit ut legiones in Italiam redirent, Caesar decided that his legions should return to Italy. Imperator decrevit ne quis ex castris exiret, The commander resolved that no one should leave the camp.*



7. *He persuaded them to come*, is *Eis ut venirent persuasit*.  
 But: *He persuaded them that the enemy was near*, is *Adesse hostes eis persuasit*.

## NOUN CLAUSES.

1. A noun-clause introduced by *ut* is used as the subject of an impersonal verb like *accidit*, *fit*, *it happens*; *futurum est*, *the result will be*; *accedit*, *it is added*; *sequitur*, *proximum est*, *it follows*; *fieri (non) potest*, *it is (in) possible*; *reliquum est*, *restat*, *it remains*; *tantum abest* (see p. 297,7): *as*, *Accidit ut nemo abesset*, *It happened that no one was absent*. *Ad Appi Claudii senectutem accedebat ut caecus esset*, *There was added to the old age of Appius Claudius the fact that he was blind*. *Sequitur ut erres*, *It follows that you are wrong*.

2. Noun clauses are often introduced by *quod* (= *the fact that*) with the indicative expressing an admitted fact: *as*, *Magnum est hoc quod victis pepercit*, *This is an important matter that he spared the vanquished*. *Gaudeo quod vales*, *I rejoice that you are well*.

3. Nouns akin in meaning to the verbs of p. 292, 1, may take an appositive *ut*-clause to define them: *as*, *Vetus est lex ut idem amici semper velint*, *It is an old law that friends should always have the same aim* (literally, *wish the same thing*). Such nouns are: *animus*, *consilium* (*purpose*), *condicio* (*condition*), *negotium* (*business*), *sententia* (*view*).

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

### A. FINAL CLAUSES.

1. An adverbial clause introduced by *ut* or *ne* with the subjunctive, is used in Latin to express a purpose: *as*, *Edo ut vivam*, *I eat to live*. *Hoc dico ne te laedam*, *I say this not to offend you*.

Such clauses of purpose are called *final clauses*.

2. In final clauses the present is used after primary tenses, the imperfect after secondary: *as*, *Occludit portas ut hostes excludat*, *He shuts the gates to keep out the enemy* (primary sequence). *Occlusit portas ut hostes excluderet*, *He shut the gates to keep out the enemy* (secondary sequence).

3. For *That no one, that no, that nothing, that never*, use *Ne quis, ne ullus, ne quid, ne unquam*: as, *Porta clausa est ne quis exiret, The gate was shut that no one might go out. Clamant ne ullum verbum audiatur, They are shouting that no word may be heard. Abii ne quid vidērem, I went away that I might see nothing. Hoc facite ne unquam vituperent, Do this that they may never revile.*

4. *Quo* is used for *ut* when there is a comparative in the final clause: as, *Puto aliquid puero dandum esse quo sit studiosior, I think that something should be given to the boy that he may be more zealous. Caesar castella communit quo facilius Helvetios prohibēre possit, Caesar erects forts that he may the more easily keep back the Helvetii.*

5. The relative *qui* (called *qui final*) is used with the subjunc. to express a *purpose*: as, *Misit legatos qui pacem peterent, He sent ambassadors to sue for peace (qui=ut ii). So also relative adverbs like ubi (where), unde (whence), often express a purpose*: as, *Domum ubi habitaret lēgit, He chose a house where he might dwell (or to dwell in; ubi=ut ibi).*

6. With verbs of *preventing*, a final clause is often introduced by *quominus* (=by which the less=in order that not) with the subjunc.: as, *Nihil obstat quominus scribas, Nothing prevents you from writing (i.e., by which you should the less write). Notice, however, that prohibeo (the common word for to prevent) takes the inf.*: as, *Eos egredi prohibuit, He prevented them from going out.*

7. After verbs of *preventing*, *quin* may be used in the same sense as *quominus*, if there is a negative or a virtual negative in the sentence: as, *Non prohibēri poterat quin hoc faceret, He could not be prevented from doing this. Vix inhiberi potuit quin saxa iacēret, He could not be restrained from throwing stones.*

8. After verbs of *fearing*, a final clause is used, introduced by *ut* or *ne*: as, *Vereor ut veniat, I am afraid that he will not come. Vereor ne veniat, I am afraid that he will come. (Here ut and ne apparently change their meanings, ut=that . . . not; ne=that.) Note that the English future after a verb of fearing is expressed by the subjunctive—in the present if the main verb is in a primary tense, in the imperfect if the main verb is in a secondary tense*: as, *Timeo*

ut labores sustineas, *I am afraid that you will not endure your sufferings.* Timēbam ne ea evenirent, *I was afraid that these things would happen.*

9. *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace* may be expressed as follows :—

- (1) Legatos misit ut pacem peterent (ut final).
- (2) Legatos misit qui pacem peterent (qui final).
- (3) Legatos misit ad pacem petendam (ad with accusative of gerundive).
- (4) Legatos misit pacis petendae causā (causā with the genitive of gerundive).
- (5) Legatos misit ad pacem petendum (ad with gerund).
- (6) Legatos misit pacem petendi causā (causā with genitive of gerund).
- (7) Legatos misit pacem petitum (supine after verb of motion).
- (8) Legatos misit pacem petituros (future participle active expressing a purpose).

10. For *et ne* in a second clause of purpose use *neu* or *neve* (p. 292,4).

## B. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

1. An adverbial clause is often used to express the *result* of what is described in the main clause. Such clauses are called consecutive clauses, or clauses of consequence or result : as, *Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut rex ipse fūgērit, Such fear seized all that the king himself fled.* *Tam caecus fuit ut me non vidēret, He was so blind that he did not see me.*

2. The rule for the sequence of tenses in consecutive clauses is the same as in English, except that (after a secondary tense) the imperfect subjunctive is used of a continuous act : as, *Tantus timor omnes occupavit ut perturbati sint, Such fear seized all that they were panic stricken.* But : *Tam callidus erat ut Romānos saepe eludēret, He was so skilful that he often eluded the Romans.*

3. *That not* in a consecutive clause is not *ne*, as in a final clause (p. 293, A, 1), but *ut . . . non* : as, *Longe aberam ut me non videret. I was far away so that he did not see me.* So, too, *Ut nemo, ut nullus, ut nihil, ut nunquam*, are used for *That no one, that no, that*

*never, that nothing*: as, *Talis erat ut nemo ei crederet, He was of such a character that no one believed him.* *Verres Siciliam per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo potuerit, Verres so harried Sicily for three years that it could not in any way be restored to its original condition.* *Ita improbus fuit ut nihil eum a scelere revocaverit, He was so wicked that nothing ever called him away from crime.*

4. Consecutive clauses are often used after demonstrative words like *talis, such*; *tantus, so great*; *sic, ita, tam, so*; *adeo, to such a degree*: as, *Tanta vis probitatis est ut etiam in hoste diligamus, So great is the force of honesty that we love it even in an enemy.* *Tarquinius sic Servium diligebat ut is eius vulgo haberetur filius, Tarquin so loved Servius that the latter was commonly regarded as his son.* *Hoc eum adeo terruit ut vix hodie prodire audeat, This so terrified him that he scarcely now ventures to go forth.*

5. The relative *qui* (called *qui consecutive*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a consecutive clause: as, *Non is sum qui hoc faciam, I am not the one to do this (qui=ut ego).* The consecutive relative is found in the following constructions:—

(a) With certain *indefinite expressions* like *sunt qui (there are some who)*; *reperiuntur qui (there are found those who)*: as, *Sunt qui putent nihil sibi litteris opus esse, There are some who think that they have no need of literature.* *Nihil est quod dicere velim, There is nothing that I wish to say.*

(b) After *dignus (worthy)*, *indignus (unworthy)*, and *idoneus or aptus (fit)*; as, *Dignus est qui ametur, he is worthy to be loved.*

(c) After *quam* with a comparative: as, *Maiores est quam cui resisti possit, He is too great to be resisted (=greater than to whom it can be resisted).* [*Possum* is used impersonally only when an infinitive passive is joined to it.]

6. Instead of *qui non*, *quin* is often used when the verb in the principal clause has a negative or virtual negative<sup>1</sup>: as, *Nemo est quin sciat, There is no one but knows.* *Negari non potest quin turpe sit fidem fallere, It cannot be denied that it is dishonorable to*

<sup>1</sup> Words like *vix, scarcely*, and question forms that expect the answer 'No.'

*break one's word.* Non dubitat quin animus sit immortalis, *He does not doubt that the soul is immortal.* Num quis<sup>1</sup> ignorat quin haec vera sint? *Is any one ignorant that this is the truth?*

NOTE.—Dubito has two meanings in Latin: (1) *Hesitate*, (2) *doubt*: as, Dubitat loqui, *He hesitates to speak.* Desinite dubitare num hoc utile sit, *Cease to doubt whether this is expedient.* Non dubito quin vir summo ingenio sit, *I do not doubt that he is a man of the highest ability.*

7. A consecutive ut-clause sometimes depends on the phrase tantum abest followed by a noun-clause introduced by ut: as, Tantum abest ut nostra miremur ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes, *So far am I from admiring my own productions that Demosthenes himself does not satisfy me.*

### C. CAUSAL CLAUSES.

1. Causal adverbial clauses state the cause or reason for a fact mentioned in the principal clause. In English they are usually introduced by *because*: as, Tacent quia periculum metuunt, *They are silent because they fear danger.*

2. Causal clauses are usually introduced by quod, quia (*because*), quoniam (=quum iam, *since now, seeing that*), and by quum (*since*).

3. Quod,<sup>2</sup> quia, quoniam are followed by the indicative when the reason they introduce is given on the speaker's own authority; they are followed by the subjunctive, when the reason they introduce is given on the authority of some one else, or is not a reason assigned by the speaker (p. 307, 11): as, Patriā expulsus est quia iustus erat, *He was banished from his country because he was just.* (The reason given is vouched for by the historian as being the true one.) But, Patriā expulsus est quia iustus esset, *He was banished because (as was alleged) he was just.* Socrates accusatus est quod corrumperet iuventutem, *Socrates was accused because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth.* [Corrumpebat would mean that the historian vouched for the truth of the charge.]

4. Quum (cum), in the sense of *since*, always takes the subjunctive: as, Haec quum ita sint, abibo, *Since this is so, I shall go away.*

<sup>1</sup> Quis is any after si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto.

<sup>2</sup> Quod is common after queror (*I complain*), laudo (*I praise*), gaudeo (*I rejoice*), doleo (*I grieve*).

5. The relative *qui* (called *qui causal*) is often used with the subjunctive to introduce a *causal* clause: as, *Pecâsse videor qui a te decesserim*, *It seems that I have done wrong since I have departed from you* [*qui=cum ego*]. *Qui* is often strengthened by *quippe*, utpote, *indeed, as being*: as, *Multa de me questus est, quippe qui a me incensus esset*, *He complained at length of me, inasmuch as he had been exasperated by me*. *Qui causal* is often used after exclamations: as, *Me miserum qui hæc fecerim*, *Wretched that I am for doing this*.

6. *Non quod, non quo* with the subjunctive are often used to introduce a rejected reason: as, *Hoc laudo non quod honestum sit, sed quod utile est*, *I praise this not because it is honorable, but because it is expedient*. So, *De consilio meo non scripsi, non quo celandum esset, sed quia, etc.*, *I did not write to you about my plan, not because it required to be concealed, but because, etc.* So, too, *non quin, not but that*: as, *Non quin me ames sed quod abire cupio*, *Not but that you love me, but because I wish to go*.

#### D. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

1. Temporal adverbial clauses define the *time* of the action of the main verb: as, *Haec feci dum potui*, *I did this while I could*.

2. The temporal conjunctions *ubi, ut (when), postquam* or *posteaquam (after), simul ac* (or *simul atque* before a vowel or *h*), *ut primum, quum primum (as soon as)*, are followed by the indicative (usually the perfect or historical present). The English commonly requires the pluperfect: as, *Simul atque hæc audivit, abiit*, *As soon as he had heard this, he went away*. *Postquam id animadvertit, Caesar in proximum collem copias subducit*, *After he had noticed this, Caesar withdraws his forces to the nearest hill*. *Ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida incendunt*, *When they thought they were ready, they set fire to the towns*. *Ea res ut Helvetiis nuntiata est, eum causam dicere coegerunt*, *When this fact was reported to the Helvetii, they compelled him to plead his cause*. *Nostri simul in arido constiterunt, impetum fecerunt*, *Our men, as soon as they had set foot on dry ground, made an attack*.

3. *Dum, donec, quamdiu, quoad*, meaning *while, as long as*, take the indicative: as, *Dum vivo, spero*, *While I live, I hope*. *Vixit,*

dum vixit, bene, *He lived well, while he lived.* Quoad potuit, restitit, *He held out, as long as he could.*

4. Dum (not donec, quoad, or quamdiu) is often used with a present indicative instead of the English past when the time of the dum-clause includes the time of the action of the main verb: as, Dum ea Romani parant, iam oppidum oppugnabatur, *While the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.*

5. Dum, donec, quoad, meaning *until*, take the indicative, when they express *time* alone: as, Hoc feci dum mihi licuit, *I did this as long as it was allowed me.* Dum rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit, *There was silence till Marcellus returned.* Milo in Senatu fuit eo die quoad senatus dimissus est, *Milo was in the senate on that day till it was dismissed.*

6. Dum, donec, quoad take the subjunctive when they express some further idea of *purpose* or *expectation*: as, Dum naves convenirent, exspectavit, *He waited till the ships should assemble* (Purpose). Exspectate dum consul aut dictator fiat Kaeso, *Wait till Kaeso become consul or dictator* (Expectation). Differant dum ira defervescat, *Let them put off till their anger cools* (Purpose). Impetum hostium sustinuit quoad ceteri pontem interrumperent, *He withstood the attack till the rest should break down the bridge* (Purpose).

7. Priusquam and antequam take the indicative when they mark simple *priority* of time: as, Priusquam lucet, adsunt, *They are here before it is light.* Filios convocavit antequam mortuus est, *He called his sons together before he died.*

8. Priusquam and antequam take the subjunctive when they express some further notion of *intention* or *prevented result*: as, Priusquam pugnaretur, nox intervēnit, *Night came on before the battle was fought* (Result prevented). Priusquam se hostes ex terrore reciperent, in fines eorum exercitum duxit, *Before the enemy recovered from their panic, he led his army into their territories* (Intention).

NOTE.—Antequam and priusquam are often written in two words: as, Ante rorat quam pluit, *It drops before it rains.*

9. Quum (cum) takes the *indicative*

(a) When denoting *contemporaneous* time : as, Quum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, *When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders of one of the two parties.* Quum verba faciunt, maiores extollunt, *When they speak, they extol their ancestors.* Nondum profectus erat, quum haec gerebantur, *He had not yet departed when these things were taking place.* Veniam quum potero, *I shall come, when I can.* When the verb in the main clause is future, the fut. perf. is used in the dependent clause if the act in the dependent clause is over before that described in the main clause begins : as, Quum epistolam tuam accepero, ad te scribam, *I shall write you when I get your letter.*

In these sentences quum is a relative adverb of time corresponding to a suppressed tum in the main clause.

(b) When equivalent to *quoties, as often as, whenever* : as, Quum impetum fecerant, hostes cedere cogeantur, *Whenever they made an attack, the enemy were forced to retire.* Quum rosam vidi, tum ver esse arbitror, *whenever I see a rose, then I judge that it is spring.* Note that in this sense quum takes the perfect indicative for the English present, and the pluperfect for the English past.

10. Quum<sup>1</sup> takes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in historical narrative (*i.e.*, when the verb in the principal clause is in the perfect or historical present) : as, Decessit Agesilaus quum in portum venisset, *Agesilaus died when he had entered the harbour.* Cum hostes adessent, in urbem pro se quisque ex agris demigrant, *On the approach of the enemy, they move each as he best can from the country to the city.*

## E. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

1. Conditional clauses express a condition on which the statement of the main clause depends. The conditional clause is usually introduced by *si (if)* or *nisi (unless)*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Note that quum with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is a substitute for the perfect participle active. Thus: *Having said this, he went away*=(1) Quum haec dixisset, abiit. (2) His rebus dictis abiit. (3) Postquam haec dixit abiit. (4) Haec locutus abiit.



2. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:—

(1) *Present and past conditions.* In these nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition. They have usually the indicative in both clauses, but they may have the imperative in the main clause or the subjunctive used imperatively: as,

Pecuniam si habet, dat,	<i>If he has money, he gives it.</i>
Pecuniam si habes, da,	<i>If you have money, give it.</i>
Pecuniam si habet, det,	<i>If he has money, let him give it.</i>
Pecuniam si habebat, dabat,	<i>If he had money, he gave it.</i>

(2) *Future conditions.* These are divided into two classes:—

(a) Where the condition is likely to be fulfilled. Here the future indicative is used in both clauses, but the future-perfect indicative is used in the *si*-clause if the action of the verb in that clause is to be represented as over before that of the main verb begins: as,  
 Pecuniam si habebit, dabit, *If he has (literally shall have) money, he will give it.*

Litteras si accepero, ad te scribam, *If I get (literally shall have got) a letter, I shall write you.*

(b) Where the condition is unlikely to be fulfilled: as,  
 Pecuniam si habeat, det, *If he should (in the future) have money, he would give it.*

(3) *Conditions contrary to fact.* This class contains all conditional sentences in which the condition is represented as not fulfilled. There are two types:—

(a) When the condition is not fulfilled in the present: as,  
 Pecuniam si haberet, daret, *If he had money (now), he would give it (now).*

(b) When the condition was not fulfilled in the past: as,  
 Pecuniam si habuisset, dedisset, *If he had had money (in the past), he would have given it (in the past).*

Often (a) and (b) are combined: as,  
 Si id fecisset, viveret, *If he had done this (in the past), he would be living (now).*

3. The indicative, not the subjunctive, must be used in the main clause of the conditional sentence when the principal verb in the conditional clause is

(a) In the periphrastic conjugation, active or passive (p. 172, 174): as, *Id facturus fuit, si adfuisset, He would have done it, if*

*he had been here.* Nisi litteras misisset, agros relicturi erant, *If he had not sent the letter, they would have left their lands.* Consilia si processissent, interficiendus fuit, *If the plans had succeeded, he must have been put to death.*

(b) Possum (*I can*), debeo (*I ought*), oportet (*it is needful*): as, Totus exercitus deleri potuit, si persecuti essent victores, *The whole army might have been destroyed, if the victors had followed up.*

4. Sive . . . sive (seu . . . seu) are used for alternative conditions: as, Seu credis seu non credis, verum est, *Whether you believe it or not, it is true.*

CAUTION.—Distinguish *whether . . . or* in alternative questions, and *whether . . . or* in alternative conditions. Thus: Utrum credam necne, tu nescis, *Whether I believe or not, you do not know* (noun clause, object of nescis). But: Sive credo, sive non credo, tu quidem credis, *Whether I believe or not, you at least believe* (alternative adverbial conditions).

5. Nisi negatives a whole clause, si non, some particular word: as, Nemo saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit, *No one dances when he is sober unless perchance he is insane.* Si manebit, laudabo; si non manebit, culpabo, *If he stays, I shall praise him; if he does not stay, I shall blame him.*

6. A second conditional clause of contrary meaning to the first is introduced, if affirmative, by *sin* (*but if*); if negative, by *si non*, with a verb, or with *si minus* (*if not*) without a verb: as,

Si manebit, laudabo; sin abibit, culpabo, *If he stays I will praise him; but, if he goes, I will blame him.*

Si manebit, laudabo; si non manebit, culpabo.

Si manebit, laudabo; si minus, culpabo, *If he stays I will praise him; if not, I will blame him.*

7. *Provided that* is expressed by *dum*, *modo*, or *dummodo*, with the subjunctive (with *ne*, *not*, in negative clauses): as, Oderint, dum metuant, *Let them hate provided that they fear.* Veniant dummodo ne maneant, *Let them come, provided they do not stay.*

## F. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. Concessive clauses are those that make some concession in spite of which the statement of the main clause is true. They are

usually introduced in English by *though*. These clauses may be divided into those which state

(a) An admitted fact. These are introduced by *quamquam* with the indicative : as, *Romani, quamquam proelio fessi erant, tamen procedunt, The Romans, although they were weary with fighting, nevertheless advance.* *Caesar, quamquam eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen suspicabatur, Caesar, though he had not yet learned their plans, was nevertheless suspicious.*

(b) A mere supposition. These are introduced by *licet, ut, quamvis*, which always have the subjunctive : as, *Quamvis pericula impendeant tamen ea subibo, Though dangers may threaten still I will encounter them.*

2. *Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi* follow the rules for *si*. (See p. 300-302.)

3. Note that *quamvis* has often an adverbial force : as, *Quamvis facētus sit, ille est odio, However witty he is, he is hated.*

Note that *odio esse* is used for the passive of *odisse*, *to hate*.

4. The relative *qui* with the subjunc. (called *qui concessive*) is often used concessively : as, *Caesar, qui hæc vidēret, tamen aciem instruxit, Though Caesar saw this, he drew up his line.*

5. *Quum* with the subjunc. sometimes has a concessive force : as, *Quum dicas te esse Graecum, es Romanus, Though you say that you are a Greek, you are a Roman.*

## G. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

1. A comparative adverbial clause expresses agreement (or the opposite) with the statement of the main clause : as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes, You shall reap according as you do (literally shall have done) your sowing.*

2. There are two classes of comparative sentences :—

(a) When the comparison is stated as a *fact* : as, *Omnia sicut acta sunt, memoravit, He narrated everything just as it was done.*

(b) When the comparison is stated as a mere supposition : as, *Honores petunt quasi honesti sint, They seek office as if they were honorable (which they are not).*

Those of the (*a*) type take the indicative, those of the (*b*) type, the subjunctive.

3. The following are the common comparative conjunctions that are usually found with the subjunctive: *Tanquam, tanquam si, quasi, velut* or *velut si (as if)*: *as, Tanquam hoc difficile sit, As if this were hard. Velut si Asia sit clausa, sic nihil perfertur ad nos, Just as if Asia were closed, no news reaches us.*

NOTE.—These conjunctions prefer the subjunc. of 2 (*b*), p. 301, to that of 3 (*a*), p. 301.

4. *The . . . the* before comparatives is expressed by (*a*) *Quo . . . eo*, or by *quanto . . . tanto*: *as, Quo (or quanto) quisque est melior, eo (or tanto) difficilius suspicatur, The better a man is, the more difficulty he has in suspecting*, or by (*b*) *Ut quisque . . . ita*, with superlatives: *as, Ut quisque vir optimus est, ita difficillime suspicatur. This may also be rendered, In proportion to a man's goodness, he has difficulty in suspecting.*

5. Distinguish the use of *as* in the following:

*He did as he was told, Ut imperatum est, sic fecit. Eadem ac tu peto, I have the same object as you* (comparative clause).

*He is not so mad as to think this, Non tam insanus est ut hoc putet* (consecutive clause).

*He ran fast so as to be in time, Celeriter cucurrit ut tempori veniret* (ut final).

*He collected as many forces as possible (or as he could), Quam maximas copias (potuit) coegit.*

## ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

1. Adjective clauses stand in the relation of adjectives to some word in the principal sentence. They are introduced by the relative pronoun (*qui, quae, quod*), or by correlatives (*qualis, quantus, quot*), or by adverbs (*unde, ubi*).

2. The relative clause in its simple use takes the indicative: *as, Nuntii qui missi erant, rediērunt, The messengers who had been sent returned.*

So also the correlatives *qualis, quantus, quot*, and the adverbs *ubi, unde*: as, *Non sum qualis eram, I am not what I was.* *Ad locum rediērunt unde profecti erant, They returned to the spot from which they had set out.* *In eodem oppido est sepultus ubi natus erat, He was buried in the same town in which he had been born.*

3. The relative pronoun is often omitted in English when it is the object of a verb, but is never so omitted in Latin: as, *Verba quae locutus es, vera sunt, The words you have spoken are true.*

4. The antecedent of the relative is often omitted: as, *Sunt qui putent hoc esse verum, There are some who think that this is true.*

5. *He was the first to come* is *Primus vēnit.* *This is the goal I am aiming at, Hoc peto.* *Such a great danger as this, Hoc tantum periculum.*

### INDIRECT (OR OBLIQUE) NARRATION.

1. A statement depending on a verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing*, or the like, is said to be in *indirect* or *oblique* narration. Thus:

#### DIRECT.

Ego civis Romanus sum.  
*I am a Roman citizen.*

Romulus, inquit, urbem condidit.  
"Romulus," he said, "founded a city."

#### INDIRECT.

Dixit se civem Romanum esse.  
*He said that he was a Roman citizen.*

Dixit Romulum urbem condidisse.  
*He said that Romulus had founded a city.*

NOTE.—If the actual words of a speaker or writer are quoted, they are introduced by *inquit, he says* or *he said*, usually following the first word. If the speech is reported in indirect narration, *dicit, dixit, or ait* is used.

2. All dependent adjectival and adverbial clauses are in the subjunctive in indirect narration: as,

#### DIRECT.

Darius, qui rex Persarum est, advēnit.  
*Darius, who is the king of the Persians, is approaching.*

#### INDIRECT.

Darium, qui rex Persarum esset, advenire dixit.  
*He said that Darius, who was the king of the Persians, was approaching.*

(For tense of *advenire* see p. 289, 3, note, and for tense of *esset* see p. 290, 2.)

NOTE.—The future-perf. ind. of direct becomes plupf. subjunc. in indirect after a past tense : as, *Dixit eum, qui id fecisset, poenas daturum*, *He said that the man who did that, would be punished* (direct = *qui id fecerit, the man who does that*, see p. 301, 2, (2), (a).

3. Indirect commands are in the subjunctive (usually the imperfect ; but sometimes the present takes the place of the imperative of the direct command) : as,

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
<i>Ite, inquit, create consules.</i>	<i>Irent, crearent consules.</i>
<i>“Go,” says he, “elect consuls.”</i>	<i>He ordered them to go and elect consuls.</i>

4. Indirect questions asking for information (and representing the second person in direct), are usually in the subjunctive (the imperfect or pluperfect when the principal verb is secondary) : as,

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
<i>Quid agis? inquit; cur non antea pugnam commisisti?</i>	<i>(Dixit) quid ageret? cur non antea pugnam commisisset?</i>
<i>“What are you about?” says he.</i>	<i>(He asked) what was he about? Why</i>
<i>“Why have you not begun the battle before?”</i>	<i>had he not begun the battle before?</i>

5. Indirect rhetorical questions representing the first or third person in direct are generally expressed by the accusative and infinitive : as,

DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
<i>Num Romam repulsi ibimus?</i>	<i>Num se Romam repulsos esse ituros?</i>
<i>Shall we if repulsed go to Rome?</i>	<i>Would they if repulsed go to Rome?</i>

6. Pronouns of the first and second persons are usually changed to those of the third person. Thus :

<i>ego, nos</i>	become <i>se</i>
<i>meus, noster</i>	“ <i>suus</i>
<i>tu, vos</i>	“ <i>ille, illi</i>
<i>tuus, vester,</i>	“ <i>illius, illorum</i>
<i>hic, iste</i>	“ <i>ille, is</i>

7. Adverbs of present time become after a secondary tense adverbs of past time : as,

nunc ( <i>now</i> )	becomes iam, tunc ( <i>then</i> ).
heri ( <i>yesterday</i> )	“ pridie ( <i>the day before</i> ).
hodie ( <i>to-day</i> )	“ illo die ( <i>that day</i> ).
cras ( <i>to-morrow</i> )	“ postridie ( <i>the next day</i> ).
hic ( <i>here</i> )	“ ibi ( <i>there</i> ).

8. It should be noted that, Si habeam, dem (p. 301) becomes Dixit se daturum, si haberet. Si haberem, darem becomes Dixit se daturum fuisse, si haberet. Si mansissem, interfectus essem becomes Dicit or dixit, futurum fuisse ut interficeretur, si mansisset.

It may also be noted that Debellatum erit, *The war will then be over*, becomes Dixit debellatum fore.

9. Se and suus in indirect usually refer to the subject of the principal verb, is or ille to some one different from that subject : as, Caesar Catoni dixit verba eius sibi displicere, *Caesar told Cato that his (Cato's) words displeased him (Caesar)*.

10. If a pronoun is required in indirect to refer to the subject of a subordinate clause, ipse may be used : as, Rogavit eos ut dederent qui ipsos prodidissent, *He asked them to surrender men who had betrayed them*.

11. The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause when an indirect statement is only implied and not expressed : as, Noctu ambulabat quod somnum capere non posset, *He used to walk about at night because he could not sleep* (as was reported). Ei, qui primus conscendisset, praemium proposuit, *He offered a reward to the one who should first scale the wall*.

NOTE.—Such a use of the subjunctive is called *virtual oblique*.

12. Indirect narration is often used in a principal clause without a verb of saying : as, Rhenum transiit: Gallos enim sibi bellum intulisse, *He crossed the Rhine: for (he said) the Gauls had made war on him*.

13. The following exceptions to the rules of indirect may be noticed :—

(a) Certior factus est id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto

fecerat, dissolveretur, *He (Xerxes) was told that the intention was to break down the bridge which he had built over the Hellespont.* (Here the words quem . . . fecerat are not part of the message sent to Xerxes, but an independent statement made by the historian.)

(b) Existimavit te dicere quae sentiebas, *He supposed you said what you really thought.* (Here the quae sentiebas is regarded as the statement of something known to all, the force of which would be weakened if the direct form of expression were changed.) So, too: Quaero e vobis ut haec pauca, quae restant, audiatis, *I ask of you to hear the few words that remain.* Dico me copias, quas mecum habeo, missurum, *I say that I will send the troops which I have with me.* Rogo cur nuntius, quem misi, nondum redierit, *I ask why the messenger whom I sent has not yet returned.*

(c) Dixit hoc nuntiatum esse dum haec geruntur, *He said that word of it was brought while this was going on.* (Dum-clause unchanged, as often in oblique.)

### SPECIAL LATIN IDIOMS.

The following idioms may be noticed :—

(a) Quid facerent ego nescii, *I did not know what they ought to do* (delib. subjunc. in indirect).

(b) Laniando hostem exspiravit, *He expired mangling his enemy* (abl. of gerund used for pres. part.).

(c) Quod omnibus notum esse dixit, *And that this matter (he said) was known to all* (the relative as a connective (=et id) in indirect does not take a finite verb).

(d) Adeo territi erant ut non pugnaturi essent, *They were so terrified that they would not fight* (fut. subjunc., secondary sequence).

(e) Non dubitavi quin urbem capturus fuerit, *I did not doubt that he would have taken the city* (conditional in consecutive clause : double dependence). So : Rogo te quid facturus fueris, *I ask you what you would have done.*

(f) Laetemur potius quam queramur, *Let us rejoice rather than complain.* Addit se prius occisum iri quam me violatum iri, *He adds that he will be killed sooner than that I shall be harmed.*



# FIRST LATIN READER.

## CORNELIUS NEPOS.

### THEMISTOCLES.

I. Themistocles, Neoclis filius, Atheniensis. Huius The early life of Themistocles. vitia ineuntis adulescentiae magnis sunt emendata virtutibus, adeo ut anteferatur huic nemo, pauci pares putentur. Sed ab initio est ordiendum. Pater eius Neocles generosus fuit. Is uxorem Halicarnassiam civem duxit, ex qua natus est Themistocles. Qui cum minus esset probatus parentibus, quod et liberius vivebat et rem familiarem neglegebat, a patre exheredatus est. Quae contumelia non fregit eum, sed erexit. Nam cum iudicasset sine summa industria non posse eam exstingui, totum se dedidit rei publicae, diligentius amicis famaеque serviens. Multum in iudiciis privatis versabatur, saepe in contionem populi prodibat; nulla res maior sine eo gerebatur, celeriter quae opus erant reperiebat, facile eadem oratione explicabat. Neque minus in rebus gerendis promptus quam excogitandis erat, quod et de instantibus, ut ait Thucydides, verissime iudicabat et de futuris callidissime coniciebat. Quo factum est ut brevi tempore illustraretur.

II. Primus autem gradus fuit capessendae rei publicae bello Corcyraeo: ad quod gerendum praetor a populo factus non solum praesenti bello, sed etiam reliquo tempore ferociorem reddidit civitatem. Nam cum pecunia publica, quae ex metallis redibat, largitione magistratum quotannis interiret, ille persuasit populo ut ea pecunia classis centum navium aedificaretur. Qua celeriter effecta, primum Corcyraeos fregit, deinde maritimos praedones consectando mare tutum reddidit. In quo cum divitiis ornavit, tum etiam peritissimos belli navalis fecit Athenienses.

The Athenians build a fleet. B.C. 481.

Xerxes  
invades  
Greece.

Id quantae salutis fuerit universae Graeciae, bello cognitum est Persico. Nam cum Xerxes et mari et terra bellum universae inferret Europae cum tantis copiis, quantas neque ante nec postea habuit quisquam: huius enim classis mille et ducentarum navium longarum fuit, quam duo millia onerariarum sequebantur, terrestres autem exercitus DCC peditum, equitum CCCC millia fuerunt:—cuius de adventu cum fama in Graeciam esset perlata et maxime Athenienses peti dicerentur propter pugnam Marathoniam, miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut moenibus ligneis se munirent. Id responsum quo valeret cum intellegeret nemo, Themistocles persuasit consilium esse Apollinis, ut in naves se suaque conferrent: eum enim a deo significari murum ligneum. Tali consilio probato addunt ad superiores totidem naves triremes suaque omnia, quae moveri poterant, partim Salamina, partim Troezena deportant: arcem sacerdotibus paucisque maioribus natu ad sacra procuranda tradunt, reliquum oppidum relinquunt.

Thermopy-  
lae; Artemi-  
sium,  
B.C. 480.

III. Huius consilium plerisque civitatibus displicebat et in terra dimicari magis placebat. Itaque missi sunt delecti cum Leonida, Lacedaemoniorum rege, qui Thermopylas occuparent longiusque barbaros progredi non paterentur. Ii vim hostium non sustinuerunt eoque loco omnes interierunt. At classis communis Graeciae trecentarum navium, in qua ducentae erant Atheniensium, primum apud Artemisium inter Euboeam continentemque terram cum classiariis regiis confligit: angustias enim Themistocles quaerebat, ne multitudine circumiretur. Hic etsi pari proelio discesserant, tamen eodem loco non sunt ausi manere, quod erat periculum, ne, si pars navium adversariorum Euboeam superasset, ancipiti premerentur periculo. Quo factum est ut ab Artemisio discederent et exadversum Athenas apud Salamina classem suam constituerent.

IV. At Xerxes Thermopylis expugnatis protinus accessit astu idque nullis defendentibus, interfectis sacer-

dotibus quos in arce invenerat, incendio delevit. Cuius flamma perterriti classarii cum manere non auderent et plurimi hortarentur, ut domos suas discederent moenibusque se defenderent, Themistocles unus restitit et universos pares esse posse aiebat, dispersos testabatur perituros, idque Eurybiadi, regi Lacedaemoniorum, qui tum summae imperii praeerat, fore affirmabat. Quem cum minus quam vellet moveret, noctu de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit, ut ei nuntiaret suis verbis, adversarios eius in fuga esse : qui si discessissent, maiore cum labore et longinquiore tempore bellum confecturum, cum singulos consecrari cogeretur ; quos si statim aggrederetur, brevi universos oppressurum. Hoc eo valebat, ut ingratiis ad depugnandum omnes cogerentur. Hac re audita barbarus, nihil doli subesse credens, postridie alienissimo sibi loco, contra opportunissimo hostibus, adeo angusto mari conflictit, ut eius multitudo navium explicari non potuerit. Victus ergo est magis etiam consilio Themistoclis quam armis Graeciae.

The Greeks  
conquer at  
Salamis,  
B.C. 480.

V. Hic etsi male rem gesserat, tamen tantas habebat reliquias copiarum, ut etiam tum iis opprimere posset hostes. Iterum ab eodem gradu depulsus est. Nam Themistocles, verens ne bellare perseveraret, certiozem eum fecit id agi ut pons, quem ille in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur ac reditu in Asiam excluderetur ; idque ei persuasit. Itaque qua sex mensibus iter fecerat, eadem minus diebus triginta in Asiam reversus est seque a Themistocle non superatum, sed conservatum iudicavit. Sic unius viri prudentia Graecia liberata est Europaeque succubuit Asia. Haec est altera victoria, quae cum Marathonio possit comparari tropaeo. Nam pari modo apud Salamina parvo numero navium maxima post hominum memoriam classis est devicta.

Xerxes  
leaves  
Greece.

VI. Magnus hoc bello Themistocles fuit neque minor in pace. Cum enim Phalerico portu neque magno neque bono Athenienses uterentur, huius consilio triplex Piraei portus constitutus est iisque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitate aequiperaret, utilitate superaret.

Piraeus  
fortified ;  
the walls of  
Athens  
restored,  
B.C. 478-472

Idem muros Atheniensium restituit praecipuo suo periculo. Namque Lacedaemonii causam idoneam nacti propter barbarorum excursions, qua negarent oportere extra Peloponnesum ullam urbem muros habere, ne essent loca munita quae hostes possiderent, Athenienses aedificantes prohibere sunt conati. Hoc longe alio spectabat atque videri volebant. Athenienses enim duabus victoriis, Marathonia et Salamina, tantam gloriam apud omnes gentes erant consecuti, ut intellegerent Lacedaemonii de principatu sibi cum iis certamen fore. Quare eos quam infirmissimos esse volebant. Postquam autem audierunt muros strui, legatos Athenas miserunt qui id fieri vetarent. His praesentibus desierunt ac se de ea re legatos ad eos missuros dixerunt. Hanc legationem suscepit Themistocles et solus primo profectus est : reliqui legati ut tum exirent, cum satis alti tuendo muri exstructi viderentur, praecepit : interim omnes, servi atque liberi, opus facerent neque ulli loco parcerent, sive sacer sive privatus esset sive publicus, et undique, quod idoneum ad muniendum putarent, congererent. Quae factum est ut Atheniensium muri ex sacellis sepulchrisque constarent.

VII. Themistocles autem, ut Lacedaemonem venit, adire ad magistratus noluit et dedit operam, ut quam longissime tempus duceret, causam interponens se collegas exspectare. Cum Lacedaemonii quererentur opus nihilo minus fieri eumque in ea re conari fallere, interim reliqui legati sunt consecuti. A quibus cum audisset non multum superesse munitionis, ad ephoros Lacedaemoniorum accessit, penes quos summum erat imperium, atque apud eos contendit falsa iis esse delata : quare aequum esse illos viros bonos nobilesque mittere, quibus fides haberetur, qui rem explorarent : interea se obsidem retinerent. Gestus est ei mos, tresque legati functi summis honoribus Athenas missi sunt. Cum his collegas suos Themistocles iussit proficisci iisque praedixit, ut ne prius Lacedaemoniorum legatos dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Hos postquam Athenas pervenisse ratus

The Spartans outwitted by Themistocles.

est, ad magistratus senatumque Lacedaemoniorum adiit et apud eos liberrime professus est: Athenienses suo consilio, quod communi iure gentium facere possent, deos publicos suosque patrios ac penates, quo facilius ab hoste possent defendere, muris saepsisse, neque in eo quod inutile esset Graeciae fecisse. Nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam iam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium. Lacedaemonios autem male et iniuste facere, qui id potius intuerentur quod ipsorum dominationi quam quod universae Graeciae utile esset. Quare, si suos legatos recipere vellent, quos Athenas miserant, se remitterent, cum aliter illos nunquam in patriam essent recepturi.

VIII. Tamen non effugit civium suorum invidiam. Namque ob eundem timorem, quo damnatus erat Miltiades, testularum suffragiis e civitate eiectus Argos habitatum concessit. Hic cum propter multas virtutes magna cum dignitate viveret, Lacedaemonii legatos Athenas miserunt, qui eum absentem accusarent, quod societatem cum rege Perse ad Graeciam opprimendam fecisset. Hoc crimine absens prodicionis damnatus est. Id ut audivit, quod non satis tutum se Argis videbat, Corcyram demigravit. Ibi cum eius principes animadvertisset timere, ne propter se bellum iis Lacedaemonii et Athenienses indicerent, ad Admetum, Molossum regem, cum quo ei hospitium erat, confugit. Huc cum venisset et in praesentia rex abesset, quo maiore religione se receptum tueretur, filiam eius parvulam arripuit et cum ea se in sacrarium, quod summa colebatur caerimonia, coniecit. Inde non prius egressus est, quam rex eum data dextra in fidem reciperet, quam praestitit. Nam cum ab Atheniensibus et Lacedaemoniis exposceretur publice, supplicem non prodidit monuitque ut consuleret sibi: difficile enim esse in tam propinquo loco tuto eum versari. Itaque Pydnam eum deduci iussit et quod satis esset praesidii dedit. Hic in navem omnibus ignotus nautis escendit. Quae cum tempestate maxima Naxum ferretur, ubi tum Atheniensium erat exercitus, sensit

Themistocles ostracised, B.C. 471.

Withdraws to Coreyra and to Epirus, B.C. 466

Themistocles, si eo pervenisset, sibi esse pereundum. Hac necessitate coactus domino navis, quis sit, aperit, multa pollicens, si se conservasset. At ille clarissimi viri captus misericordia diem noctemque procul ab insula in salo navem tenuit in ancoris neque quemquam ex ea exire passus est. Inde Ephesum pervenit ibique Themistoclem exponit : cui ille pro meritis postea gratiam rettulit.

Themistocles at the court of Artaxerxes, B.C. 465.

IX. Scio plerosque ita scripsisse, Themistoclen Xerxe regnante in Asiam transisse. Sed ego potissimum Thucydidi credo, quod et aetate proximus de iis, qui illorum temporum historiam reliquerunt, et eiusdem civitatis fuit. Is autem ait ad Artaxerxen eum venisse atque his verbis epistulam misisse : "Themistocles veni ad te, qui plurima mala omnium Graiorum in domum tuam intuli, quam diu mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem tuum bellare patriamque meam defendere. Idem multo plura bona feci, postquam in tuto ipse et ille in periculo esse coepit. Nam cum in Asiam reverti vellet, proelio apud Salamina facto, litteris eum certiozem feci, id agi ut pons, quem in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur atque ab hostibus circumiretur : quo nuntio ille periculo est liberatus. Nunc autem confugi ad te exagitatus a cuncta Graecia, tuam petens amicitiam : quam si ero adeptus, non minus me bonum amicum habebis quam fortem inimicum ille expertus est. Te autem rogo, ut de iis rebus, quas tecum colloqui volo, annum mihi tempus des eoque transacto ad te venire patiaris."

The Persian king receives him kindly and assigns him three cities for his support.

X. Huius rex animi magnitudinem admirans cupiensque talem virum sibi conciliari veniam dedit. Ille omne illud tempus litteris sermonique Persarum dedit : quibus adeo eruditus est, ut multo commodius dicatur apud regem verba fecisse quam ii poterant, qui in Perside erant nati. Hic cum multa regi esset pollicitus gratissimumque illud, si suis uti consiliis vellet, illum Graeciam bello oppressurum, magnis muneribus ab Artaxerxe donatus in Asiam rediit domiciliumque Magnesia sibi constituit. Namque hanc urbem ei rex donarat, his quidem verbis, quae ei panem praeberet (ex qua regione quinquagena

talenta quotannis redibant), Lampsacum autem, unde vinum sumeret, Myunta, ex qua obsonium haberet.

Huius ad nostram memoriam monumenta manserunt duo : sepulchrum prope oppidum, in quo est sepultus, <sup>His death (about B.C. 449).</sup> statua in foro Magnesiae. De cuius morte multis modis apud plerosque scriptum est, sed nos eundem potissimum Thucydidem auctorem probamus, qui illum ait Magnesiae morbo mortuum neque negat fuisse famam, venenum sua sponte sumpsisse, cum se, quae regi de Graecia opprimenda pollicitus esset, praestare posse desperaret. Idem ossa eius clam in Attica ab amicis sepulta, quoniam legibus non concederetur, quod proditiōnis esset damnatus, memoriae prodidit.

---

## ARISTIDES.

I. Aristides, Lysimachi filius, Atheniensis, aequalis fere fuit Themistocli atque cum eo de principatu contendit : namque obtrectarunt inter se. In his autem <sup>Character of Aristides Ostracised by Themistocles. B.C. 484.</sup> cognitum est, quanto antestaret eloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeo excellebat Aristides abstinentia, ut unus post hominum memoriam, quem quidem nos audierimus, cognomine Iustus sit appellatus, tamen a Themistocle collabefactus testula illa exilio decem annorum multatus est. Qui quidem cum intellexeret reprimi concitatam multitudinem non posse, cedensque animadvertisset quendam scribentem, ut patria pelleretur, quaesisse ab eo dicitur, quare id faceret aut quid Aristides commisisset, cur tanta poena dignus duceretur. Cui ille respondit se ignorare Aristiden, sed sibi non placere, quod tam cupide laborasset, ut praeter ceteros Iustus appellaretur. Hic decem annorum legitimam poenam non pertulit. Nam postquam Xerxes in Graeciam descendit, sexto fere anno quam erat expulsus, populi scito in patriam restitutus est.

II. Interfuit autem pugnae navali apud Salamina, quae facta est prius quam poena liberaretur. Idem praetor

Fights at  
Salamis,  
B.C. 480,  
and Plataea,  
B.C. 479.

fuit Atheniensium apud Plataeas in proelio, quo barbarorum exercitus fusus Mardoniusque interfectus est. Neque aliud est ullum huius in re militari illustre factum quam huius imperii memoria, iustitiae vero et aequitatis et innocentiae multa: in primis, quod eius aequitate factum est, cum in communi classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausania, quo duce Mardonius erat fugatus, ut summa imperii maritimi ab Lacedaemoniis transferretur ad Athenienses: namque ante id tempus et mari et terra duces erant Lacedaemonii. Tum autem et intemperantia Pausaniae et iustitia factum est Aristidis, ut omnes fere civitates Graeciae ad Atheniensium societatem se applicarent et adversus barbaros hos duces deligerent sibi.

Chosen to  
settle the  
tribute to be  
paid by the  
allies,  
B.C. 477.  
His death,  
B.C. 468.

III. Quos quo facilius repellent, si forte bellum renovare conarentur, ad classes aedificandas exercitusque comparandos quantum pecuniae quaeque civitas daret, Aristides delectus est qui constitueret, eiusque arbitrio quadringena et sexagena talenta quotannis Delum sunt collata: id enim commune aerarium esse voluerunt. Quae omnis pecunia postero tempore Athenas translata est. Hic qua fuerit abstinentia nullum est certius indicium, quam quod, cum tantis rebus praefuisset, in tanta paupertate decessit, ut quî efferretur vix reliquerit. Quo factum est ut filiae eius publice alerentur et de communi aerario dotibus datis collocarentur. Decessit autem fere post annum quartum, quam Themistocles Athenis erat expulsus.

---

## HANNIBAL.

### I. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis.

The greatest  
of all mili-  
tary com-  
manders.

Si verum est, quod nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes gentes virtute superarit, non est infitiandum Hannibalem tanto praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, quanto populus Romanus antecedit fortitudine cunctas nationes. Nam quotienscumque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Romanos videtur



superare potuisse. Sed multorum obtreectatio devicit unius virtutem.

Hic autem velut hereditate relictum odium paternum erga Romanos sic conservavit, ut prius animam quam id deposuerit, qui quidem, cum patria pulsus esset et alienarum opum indigeret, numquam destiterit animo bellare cum Romanis.

Continues his father's enmity to Rome.

II. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absens hostem reddidit Romanis, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rex Antiochus fuit. Hunc tanta cupiditate incendit bellandi, ut usque a rubro mari arma conatus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum legati venissent Romani, qui de eius voluntate explorarent darentque operam consiliis clandestinis, ut Hannibalem in suspicionem regi adducerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptum alia atque antea sentire, neque id frustra fecissent, idque Hannibal comperisset seque ab interioribus consiliis segregari vidisset, tempore dato adiit ad regem, eique cum multa de fide sua et odio in Romanos commemorasset, hoc adiunxit :

“Pater meus,” inquit, “Hamilcar, puerulo me, utpote non amplius novem annos nato, in Hispaniam imperator proficiscens Karthagine, Iovi optimo maximo hostias immolavit ; quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me vellemne secum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accepissem atque ab eo petere coepissem ne dubitaret ducere, tum ille, ‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘si mihi fidem quam postulo dederis.’ Simul me ad aram adduxit, apud quam sacrificare instituerat, eamque ceteris remotis tenentem iurare iussit, numquam me in amicitia cum Romanis fore. Id ego iusiurandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetatem ita conservavi, ut nemini dubium esse debeat, quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus. Quare si quid amice de Romanis cogitabis, non imprudenter feceris, si me celaris : cum quidem bellum parabis, te ipsum frustra-beris, si non me in eo principem posueris.”

Swears eternal hatred of Rome before the altar.

III. Hac igitur qua diximus aetate cum patre in Hispaniam profectus est : cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale

Commander-  
in-Chief,  
B.C. 221;  
Saguntum,  
B.C. 219.

imperatore suffecto, equitatu omni praefuit. Hoc quoque interfecto exercitus summam imperii ad eum detulit. Id Karthaginem delatum publice comprobatum est. Sic Hannibal minus quinque et viginti annis natus imperator factus proximo triennio omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit : Saguntum, foederatam civitatem, vi expugnavit, tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit.

He crosses  
the Pyrenees  
and Alps,  
B.C. 218.

Saltum Pyrenaeum transiit ; quacumque iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis conflixit ; neminem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpes posteaquam venit, quae Italiam ab Gallia seiungunt, quas nemo umquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat (quo facto is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpico conantes prohibere transitu concidit, loca patefecit, itinera muniit, effecit ut ea elephantus ornatus ire posset, qua antea unus homo inermis vix poterat repere. Hac copias traduxit in Italiamque pervenit.

Ticinus and  
Trebia,  
B.C. 218  
Battle of the  
Trasumene  
Lake,  
B.C. 217 :  
and of  
Cannae,  
B.C. 216.

IV. Confluxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione consule cumque pepulerat. Cum hoc eodem Clastidii apud Padum decernit sauciumque inde ac fugatum dimittit. Tertio idem Scipio cum collega Tiberio Longo apud Trebiam adversus eum venit. Cum iis manum conseruit : utrosque profligavit. Inde per Ligures Appenninum transiit, petens Etruriam. Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo adficitur oculorum, ut postea numquam dextro aequae bene usus sit. Qua valetudine cum etiamtum premeretur lecticaque ferretur, C. Flaminium consulem apud Trasumenum cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multo post C. Centenium praetorem cum delecta manu saltus occupantem. Hinc in Apuliam pervenit. Ibi obviam ei venerunt duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitus uno proelio fugavit, Paulum consulem occidit et aliquot praeterea consulares, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, qui superiore anno fuerat consul.

V. Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente. In propinquis urbi montibus moratus est. Cum aliquot ibi dies castra habuisset et Capuam revertetur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Romanus, in agro Falerno ei se obiecit. Hic clausus locorum angustiis noctu sine ullo detrimento exercitus se expedivit Fabioque, callidissimo imperatori, dedit verba. Namque obducta nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvenorum deligata incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispartitam immisit. Quo repentino obiecto visu tantum terrorem iniecit exercitui Romanorum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus.

Ruse by which he escaped from Fabius. B.C. 216.

Hanc post rem gestam non ita multis diebus M. Minucium Rufum, magistrum equitum pari ac dictatorem imperio, dolo productum in proelium fugavit. Tiberium Sempronium Gracchum, iterum consulem, in Lucanis absens in insidias inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Marcellum, quinquies consulem, apud Venusiam pari modo interfecit. Longum est omnia enumerare proelia. Quare hoc unum satis erit dictum, ex quo intellegi possit, quantus ille fuerit : quamdiu in Italia fuit, nemo ei in acie restitit, nemo adversus eum post Cannensem pugnam in campo castra posuit.

Other victories.

VI. Hinc invictus patriam defensum revocatus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipionem, filium eius Scipionis, quem ipse primo apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugarat. Cum hoc exhaustis iam patriae facultatibus cupivit inpraesentiarum bellum componere, quo valentior postea congredereetur. In colloquium convenit : condiciones non convenerunt. Post id factum paucis diebus apud Zamam cum eodem confluxit : pulsus (incredibile dictu) biduo et duabus noctibus Hadrumetum pervenit, quod abest ab Zama circiter millia passuum trecenta. In hac fuga Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiati sunt ei : quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrumeti reliquos e fuga collegit : novis dilectibus paucis diebus multos contraxit.

His recall to Africa. B.C. 203. Zama. B.C. 202.

He distinguishes himself in a civil capacity.  
B.C. 200.

VII. Cum in apparando acerrime esset occupatus, Karthaginienses bellum cum Romanis composuerunt. Ille nihilo secius exercitui postea praefuit resque in Africa gessit usque ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurelium consules. His enim magistratibus legati Karthaginienses Romam venerunt, qui senatui populoque Romano gratias agerent, quod cum iis pacem fecissent, ob eamque rem corona aurea eos donarent simulque peterent, ut obsides eorum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. His ex senatus consulto responsum est : munus eorum gratum acceptumque esse ; obsides, quo loco rogarent, futuros, captivos non remissuros, quod Hannibalem, cuius opera susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nomini Romano, etiam nunc cum imperio apud exercitum haberent itemque fratrem eius Magonem. Hoc responso Karthaginienses cognito Hannibalem domum et Magonem revocarunt. Huc ut rediit, rex factus est, postquam imperator fuerat, anno secundo et vicesimo : ut enim Romae consules, sic Karthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. In eo magistratu pari diligentia se Hannibal praebuit, ac fuerat in bello. Namque effecit, ex novis vectigalibus non solum ut esset pecunia, quae Romanis ex foedere penderetur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerario reponeretur.

His surrender demanded.

He escapes,  
B.C. 196.

Deinde anno post M. Claudio L. Furio consulibus, Roma legati Karthaginem venerunt. Hos Hannibal ratus sui exposcendi gratia missos, priusquam iis senatus daretur, navem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profugit. Hac re palam facta Poeni naves duas, quae eum comprehenderent, si possent consequi, miserunt : bona eius publicarunt, domum a fundamentis disiecerunt, ipsum exulem iudicarunt.

Hannibal and Antiochus.  
B.C. 193.

VIII. At Hannibal anno tertio, postquam domo profugerat, L. Cornelio Q. Minucio consulibus, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit in finibus Cyrenaeorum, si forte Karthaginienses ad bellum Antiochi spe fiduciaque inducerentur, cui iam persuaserat, ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisceretur. Huc Magonem fratrem excivit. Id ubi Poeni resciverunt, Magonem eadem, qua fratrem,

absentem adfecerunt poena. Illi desperatis rebus cum solvissent naves ac vela ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervenit. De Magonis interitu duplex memoria prodita est : namque alii naufragio, alii a servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquerunt.

Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendo bello consiliis eius parere voluisset, quam in suscipiendo instituerat, propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis de summa imperii dimicasset. Quem etsi multa stulte conari videbat, tamen nulla deseruit in re. Praefuit paucis navibus, quas ex Syria iussus erat in Asiam ducere, iisque adversus Rhodiorum classem in Pamphylio mari conflixit. Quo cum multitudine adversariorum sui superarentur, ipse, quo cornu rem gessit, fuit superior.

Defeated by the Rhodians, B.C. 191.

IX. Antiocho fugato, verens ne dederetur, quod sine dubio accidisset, si sui fecisset potestatem, Cretam ad Gortynios venit, ut ibi, quo se conferret, consideraret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magno se fore periculo, nisi quid providisset, propter avaritiam Cretensium : magnam enim secum pecuniam portabat, de qua sciebat exisse famam. Itaque capit tale consilium. Amphoras complures complet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. Has praesentibus principibus deponit in templo Dianae, simulans se suas fortunas illorum fidei credere. His in errorem inductis, statuas aëneas, quas secum portabat, omni sua pecunia complet easque in propatulo domi abicit. Gortynii templum magna cura custodiunt, non tam a ceteris quam ab Hannibale, ne ille inscientibus iis tolleret secumque duceret.

Hannibal in Crete preserves his treasure by a stratagem.

X. Sic conservatis suis rebus Poenus, illis Cretensibus omnibus, ad Prusiam in Pontum pervenit. Apud quem eodem animo fuit erga Italiam, neque aliud quidquam egit quam regem armavit et exercuit adversus Romanos. Quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus esse robustum, conciliabat ceteros reges, adiungebat bellicosas nationes.

Hannibal at the court of Prusias, king of Bithynia, B.C. 188-183

Dissidebat ab eo Pergamenus rex Eumenes, Romanis amicissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebatur et mari et

Makes war  
on Eumenes  
of Pergamus

terra. Sed utrobique Eumenes plus valebat propter Romanorum societatem : quo magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi : quem si removisset, faciliora sibi cetera fore arbitratur. Ad hunc interficiendum talem iniit rationem. Classe paucis diebus erant decreturi : superabatur navium multitudine : dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis.

He collects  
snakes to  
fling on the  
enemy's  
decks.

Imperavit quam plurimas venenatas serpentes vivas colligi easque in vasa fictilia conici. Harum cum effecisset magnam multitudinem, die ipso, quo facturus erat navale proelium, classarios convocat iisque praecipit, omnes ut in unam Eumenis regis concurrant navem, a ceteris tantum satis habeant se defendere. Id illos facile serpentium multitudine consecuturos. Rex autem in qua navi veheretur, ut scirent, se facturum : quem si aut cepissent aut interfecissent, magno iis pollicetur praemio fore.

How he  
discovered  
the king's  
ship.

XI. Tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. Quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis, quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium in scapha cum caduceo mittit. Qui ubi ad naves adversariorum pervenit epistulamque ostendens se regem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. Tabellarius, ducis navi declarata suis, eodem unde erat egressus se recepit. At Eumenes soluta epistula nihil in ea reperit, nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent. Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiabat, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitavit. Horum in concursu Bithynii Hannibalis praecepto universi navem Eumenis adoriuntur.

Eumenes  
retires.  
His fleet  
defeated.

Quorum vim rex cum sustinere non posset, fuga salutem petit : quam consecutus non esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximo litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamenae naves cum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae

iacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt, neque quare id fieret poterat intellegi. Postquam autem naves suas oppletas conspexerunt serpentibus, nova re perterriti, cum, quid potissimum vitarent, non viderent, puppes verterunt seque ad sua castra nautica rettulerunt. Sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamenorum superavit, neque tum solum, sed saepe alias pedestribus copiis pari prudentia pepulit adversarios.

XII. Quae dum in Asia geruntur, accidit casu ut legati Prusiae Romae apud T. Quintium Flamininum consularem cenarent, atque ibi de Hannibale mentione facta ex iis unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. Id postero die Flamininus senatui detulit. Patres conscripti, qui Hannibale vivo numquam se sine insidiis futuros existimarent, legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, in iis Flamininum, qui ab rege peterent, ne inimicissimum suum secum haberet sibi dederet. His Prusias negare ausus non est: illud recusavit, ne id a se fieri postularent, quod adversus ius hospitii esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent: locum, ubi esset, facile inventuros.

The Romans demand his surrender.

Hannibal enim uno loco se tenebat in castello, quod ei a rege datum erat muneri, idque sic aedificarat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet, scilicet verens ne usu veniret, quod accidit. Huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab ianua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. Qui imperavit ei, ut omnes fores aedificii circumiret ac propere sibi nuntiaret, num eodem modo undique obsideretur. Puer cum celeriter, quid esset, renuntiasset omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti neque sibi diutius vitam esse retinendam. Quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret, memor pristinorum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum habere consuevit, sumpsit.

His death.

XIII. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus laboribus, anno acquievit septuagesimo. Quibus consulibus interierit, non convenit. Namque Atticus M.

The date of Hannibal's death uncertain. B.C. 183, 182, or 181.

Claudio Marcello Q. Fabio Labeone consulibus mortuum in annali suo scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L. Aemilio Paulo Cn. Baebio Tamphilo, Sulpicius autem Blitho P. Cornelio Cethego M. Baebio Tamphilo. Atque hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nonnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius libri sunt, Graeco sermone confecti, in iis ad Rhodios de Cn. Manlii Vulsonis in Asia rebus gestis. Huius belli gesta multi memoriae prodiderunt, sed ex his duo, qui cum eo in castris fuerunt simulque vixerunt, quamdiu fortuna passa est, Silenus et Sosilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hoc Sosilo Hannibal litterarum Graecarum usus est doctore.

## CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO, B. IV, B. V, CH. 1-23.

### INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

In the following selections from Caesar's great work on the conquest of Gaul, he narrates :

(1) The story of his successful attempt to prevent the German tribes, who held the right bank of the Rhine, from crossing the river and settling upon the left or Gallic bank.

(2) The story of his First Invasion of Britain in the end of August, B.C. 55.

(3) The story of his Second Invasion of Britain on July 20th, B.C. 54.



C. IULI CAESARIS  
COMMENTARIORUM  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
LIBER QUARTUS.

---

I. Ea, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Gneio Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus invicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, quod a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pelles haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

Usipetes and Tencteri migrate to Gaul, pressed by the Suebi.

Customs of the Suebi.

II. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam iumentis,

quibus maxime Galli delectantur quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt apud eos nata, prava atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione summi ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

The Suebi reduce the Ubii to a tributary state.

III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suebis circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum, et paulo quam sunt eiusdem generis ceteri humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum Suebi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

The Menapii are surprised by the sudden attack of the Germans.

IV. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simul-

averunt et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

The fickle character of the Gauls.

VI. Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius, quam consuerat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit: missas legationes a nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, omniaque, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius iam vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Trevirorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

Caesar discovers intrigues between the Gauls and Germans: calls a meeting of the Gallic chiefs and gets their aid against the Germans.

VII. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset,

The German deputies negotiate with Caesar

legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio : Germanos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre neque tamen recusare, si lacesantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, eictos domo ; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos : vel sibi agros attribuant vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint ; sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint : reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

who refuses  
to allow  
them to  
remain in  
Gaul.

VIII. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit ; sed exitus fuit orationis : Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent ; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare ; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint ; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considerare, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant : hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

They agree  
to give him  
an answer in  
three days ;  
and ask him  
not to ad-  
vance, but  
he refuses.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relatueros dixerunt et re deliberata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros : interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam : hos exspectari equites atque eius rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

Geography  
of the Meuse  
and the  
Rhine.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius ab eo millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatum, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur et, ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in plures defluit partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars

magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

XI. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum duodecim millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere, ne longius progrediretur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eosque pugna prohiberet, sibi ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iureiurando fidem fecissent, ea condicione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

XII. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat ab eis petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt; rursus resistantibus nostris, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossisque equis compluribusque nostris deiectis reliquos in fugam coniecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat

Caesar prepares for a battle against the Germans.

Treacherous attack of the Germans. Death of Pisc and his brother.

amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui iam proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

The deputies of the enemy apologize for the attack; they are detained. Caesar orders a general advance,

XIII. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitratur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae auferentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat; et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissime res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus illos retineri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

and surprises the Germans who after a brief resistance

XIV. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter octo millium itinere confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra irruperunt. Quo loco, qui celeriter arma

capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros impedimenta que proelium commiserunt : at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit ; ad quos consecrandos Caesar equitatum misit.

XV. Germani post tergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis se ex castris eiecerunt et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata magno numero interfecto reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes perpaucis vulneratis ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentorum et triginta millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum ; quarum illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugamborum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt : Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire : si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet ? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant,

are utterly routed by the Romans

Caesar determined to cross the Rhine, and give his reasons for so doing.

magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

In ten days the bridge is finished and Caesar crosses.

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. At Sugambri, ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata hortantibus iis, quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

After laying waste the lands of the Germans, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

XIX. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis se in fines Ubiorum recepit atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum expectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.



XX. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Caesar determines to invade Britain; his reasons for crossing.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem iubet convenire. Interim consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos a compluribus eius insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari

Sends Volusenus, who returns and reports to him.

potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

Caesar levies  
hostages  
from the  
Moriui,

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum iis obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quominus in eundem portum pervenire possent; has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

and reaches  
Britain.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam

nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis et quae ex Voluseno cognosset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

XXIV. At barbari consilio Romanorum cognito praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant; militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis audacter tela conicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitator et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe

The natives  
attack the  
Romans.

Caesar's  
device;  
bravery of  
the standard  
bearer of the  
10th legion;  
Roman  
advance.

meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero.<sup>7</sup> Hoc cum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquantur.

Rout of the enemy.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumstebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constituerunt, suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

Several states submit to Caesar.

XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides daturus quaeque imperasset sese facturos polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquiore locis arces-

sitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmata post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur: quae tamen, ancoris iactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

Fate of the  
eighteen  
cavalry  
troop ships.

XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis reliquae cum essent funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

A storm and  
high tides  
wreck  
Caesar's  
transports.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae iusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se collocti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc

Conspiracy  
of British  
chiefs.

erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt rebellione facta frumento commieatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod iis superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facta paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar sus-  
pects their  
intentions;  
forms plans  
accordingly

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat et quae gravissime afflictæ erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et quae ad eas res erant usui ex continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

Sudden  
attack of the  
British.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis

interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela coniciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuerunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita **currus** collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

The British mode of fighting.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

Caesar acts on the defensive; severe storms keep the Romans within their camp.

XXXV. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsus, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est,

Defeat and pursuit of the enemy.

secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra receperunt.

Caesar makes peace; sets sail for Gaul.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

Sudden attack of the Morini.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nolent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnauerunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vere quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

Conquest of the Morini and Menapii.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reducerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perflugio superiore anno fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius



et Lucius Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

---

### LIBER QUINTUS.

I. L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuevit, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituent.

Caesar orders a fleet to be built.

The Pirustae give hostages.

The soldiers  
praised for  
their zeal.  
Fleet order-  
ed to ren-  
dezvous at  
Portus Itius.

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citiorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invenit instructas neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

The Treveri  
and their  
rival  
chieftains.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit quaeque in Treveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam

laberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

IV. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio maneret; nihilo tamen secius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

Cingetorix  
honored  
and Indu-  
tiomarus  
offended.

V. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero millium quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus, ex quibus perpauca, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Caesar  
prepares  
to sail.

VI. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant.

Dumnorix  
gives  
trouble.

Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

Death of  
Dumnorix.

VII. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediabat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar intermissa profectio atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

VIII. His rebus gestis Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit et leni Africo proventus media circiter nocte vento intermisso cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudo navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

Caesar's  
second  
landing in  
Britain,  
54 B.C.

IX. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causa iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praecclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones

The Britons  
oppose his  
march  
inland.

ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod magna parte dici consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinquere volebat.

Bad news of the fleet.

X. Postridie eius dici mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Labienus builds new ships.

XI. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter quadraginta navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro

Cassivellauno.

adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos The people. in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgis transierant (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaeque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia remissioribus frigoribus.

XIII. Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est The island. contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appellantur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existi-

matur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

Manners  
and  
customs.

XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

More fighting; a surprise; death of a tribune.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere confixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso spatio imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

British  
mode of  
fighting.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et



pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto repulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

The Britons  
repulsed.

XVIII. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perflugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

Caesar  
crosses the  
Thames.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque

Tactics of  
Cassivel-  
launus.

impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emvtebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes submit to Caesar.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

So do other tribes.

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt.

A British "town."

Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improvise adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Four Kentish kings defeated.

Cassivellaunus treats for peace.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate depierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur et prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, per paucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

## NOTES ON NEPOS.

### THEMISTOCLES.

**Chapter I.—Huius . . . adolescentiae:** "The faults of this man's early youth." **Adolescentia:** from 17 to 30 years of age.—**Anteferatur:** for the mood and tense see p. 295, B. 2: "so that no one is superior to him," *i.e.*, even of the present day.—**Est ordiendum:** scil., **nobis:** "we must begin," *i.e.*, describe his life: p. 173, 6.—**Halicarnassiam:** "of Halicarnassus," a city of Caria, in Asia Minor.—**Qui cum . . . parentibus:** "and since he was displeasing to his parents." Note that a Latin sentence often begins with **cum** and a relative pronoun. In English the relative pronoun is best translated by a demonstrative and a connective.—**Parentibus:** dative. See Vocab. under **probo.**—**Cum:** causal: p. 297, 4.—**Liberius:** "too freely": compar. deg., often = "too."—**Quae . . . contumelia:** "but this slight." Avoid beginning an English principal sentence with a relative pronoun: see note above on **Qui cum . . . parentibus.**—**Cum . . . iudicavisset:** p. 297, 4.—**Eam:** *i.e.*, **contumeliam.**—**Diligentius:** "very diligently": compar. deg. = "very," "rather."—**Quae opus erant:** note that **opus est** is generally used impersonally. What is the construction? p. 283, 11. The thing needed, may, however, be the subject: as, **Dux nobis opus est,** "We have need of a leader."—**Excogitandis, i.e., in rebus excogitandis.**—**Verissime iudicabat:** see Vocabulary under **vere.**—**Quo factum est ut:** "and, therefore, the result was that": note that the relative adverb **quo = et eo = "and therefore."** See note on **quae contumelia** above.

**Chapter II.—Gradus capessendae rei publicae:** see Vocab. under **gradus:** "His first position in the administration of public affairs."—**Bello Corcyraeo:** "In the war with Corcyra": there was no war with Corcyra at this time. Athens was, however, involved in a war with Aegina which lasted 488-481 B.C.—**Ad quod gerendum:** express this in various ways: p. 295, 9. For the translation of **quod** see note on **quae contumelia**, Chap. I.—**Praetor, properly praeitor,** "the one who goes before," hence, "commander."—**Metallis redibat:** see Vocab. under **redeo.** Nepos refers to the silver mines of Laurium on the promontory of Sunium.—**Largitione magistratuum:** see Vocab. under **largitio:** for subjective genitive, p. 280, 6. Nepos is thinking of the distribution of corn and money by the Roman magistrates to obtain popularity.—**Interiret:** depending on **cum** causal: p. 297, 4.—**Maritimos praedones:** the Aegean sea has always been infested with pirates from early days to the present.—**In quo:** "and in doing this": see note on **quae contumelia**, Chap. I.—**Cum . . . tum:** "both . . . and."—**Divitiis ornavit:** see Vocab. under **orno.**—**Saluti . . . Graeciae:** for the two datives, see p. 279, 12. For the mood of **fuerit**, see p. 291, 1.—**Bello . . . Persico:** p. 284, 1. The Second Persian War (480 B.C.) is meant. Herodotus (vii, 144) says that the building of the ships for the war against Aegina proved the salvation

of Greece, because the Athenians were compelled to become a maritime people.—**Nam cum . . . quisquam**: this sentence is left unfinished.—**Et mari et terra**: we also find **terra marique, terra ac mari**: note the omission of **in**.—**Terrestris . . . exercitus**: Herodotus puts the infantry at 1,700,000, and the whole force, including camp followers, at 5,283,220.—**Cuius**: Darius was king of Persia when Marathon was fought (490 B.C.). He died 486 B.C., and was succeeded by his son Xerxes, who reigned from 485 to 465 B.C. In the reign of the latter were fought the battles of Thermopylae, 480 B.C.; Artemisium, 480 B.C.; Salamis, 480 B.C., and Plataeae, 479 B.C.—**Delphos**: for the case, p. 285, 1.—**Consultum**: in what different ways may this be expressed: p. 295, 9.—**Quidnam facerent**: “what, pray, were they to do”: *delib. subjunc. in indirect.* What would be the direct question? p. 288, 3, top of page.—**Respondit ut**: note that **respondeo** has here the construction of a verb of *commanding*: p. 292, 1. The meaning is “bade them in answer.”—**Id . . . valeret**: see *Vocab.* under **valeo**. For mood, p. 306, 4.—**Persuasit . . . esse**: when **persuadeo** means “to convince,” it takes the acc. with *inf.*, like other verbs of *saying*: p. 288, 1, foot of page.—**Eum . . . ligneum**: *scil.*, **Themistocles dixit**: “for (Themistocles said) that was the wooden wall meant by the god.” **Eum** is predicate and attracted to the gender of **murum**.—**Maioribus natu**: “the elders”: comparative of **senex**: cf. superlative **maximus natu**: p. 58, note.—**Ad sacra procuranda**: “to perform the religious rites.” The Acropolis of Athens contained the Parthenon, the chief temple of Athens, dedicated to Athene, the guardian goddess of the city.

**Chapter III.**—**Huius**: *i.e.*, Themistocles.—**Magis**: *scil. quam in mari*: “rather than on the sea.” There was no division among the Greeks prior to this, for the Greek congress decided that the fleet should guard the northern entrance of the Euboic channel, and that the army should make a stand at Thermopylae.—**Qui . . . occuparent, paterentur**: p. 294, 5.—**Sustinuerunt**: Leonidas and his Spartan band withstood the Persians for three days, till the enemy was treacherously led over the ridge of Oeta, and attacked the Greeks in the rear.—**At**: a particle of transition introducing a new subject; **sed** is adversative.—**Trecentarum navium**: according to Herodotus (viii, 2), the number of the Greek ships was 271: of which 127 were Athenian.—**Artemisium**: there were three battles at Artemisium on three successive days. After the news came that Leonidas had fallen at Thermopylae, and that the Persians were marching on Athens, the Greeks decided to retire to Salamis.—**Pari proelio**: “after a drawn battle” (*abl. manner*): on the first two days, the Athenians gained some advantage, but on the third, both fleets suffered heavily.—**Quod erat periculum ne: periculum erat** has the construction of verbs of *fearing*: p. 294, 8.—**Si . . . superasset**: p. 301, (3), (b). Two hundred of the Persian fleet did try to sail around Euboea, but were wrecked on the coast.—**Ancipiti periculo**: *i.e.*, in front and rear.—**Quo factum est**: see note on the same expression, Chap. I.

**Chapter IV.**—**At**: see above, Chap. III.—**Protinus**: also written **protenus**: it refers to time, “forthwith,” or to place, “onwards.” Here it means “without interruption.”—**Accessit astu**: for the more common **accessit ad astu**. **Astu** is the Greek *ἄστν* in Roman characters. The City of Athens was called *ἄστν* in opposition to the harbour towns, Piraeus,

Phalērum and Munychia.—**Nullis defendentibus**, abl. abs.: the city had no defenders but the Acropolis had.—**Cuius**: the burning city (Herodotus viii, 56).—**Domos suas**: p. 285, 1: decline *domus*: p. 238.—**Universos . . . dispersos**: equivalent to **si universi essent . . . si dispersi essent**: "if they were all united . . . if they were all separated."—**Pares**: scil. *hostibus*.—**Regi**: Eurybiades: he was admiral, not king.—**Qui . . . praeerat**, for the indicative: p. 307, 13, (a).—**Minus quam vellet**: virtual oblique: it refers to what was passing in the mind of Themistocles: p. 307, 11, note.—**De servis suis**: the preposition *de* with the abl. is often used for the partitive genitive: cf. French *de* in a partitive construction. The slave's name was Sicinnus.—**Suis verbis**: "in his own words," *i.e.*, in the words of Themistocles.—**Qui si = et si ille**: see note on **qui cum . . . parentibus**, Chap. I.—**Confecturum**: *i.e.*, Themistocles *testabatur regem esse confecturum*.—**Hoc eo valebat**: "the meaning of this was": cf. *id valeret*, Chap. II.—**Depugnandum**: note the intensive force of *de* in *depugno*, *devinco*, *decerto*.—**Angusto mari**: the bay of Salamis.

Chapter V.—**Ut posset**: distinguish in meaning from **ut potuerit**: p. 295, 2.—**Iterum**: "a second time"; **rursus**, "again," said of things repeated more than once.—**Ab eodem**: Themistocles.—**Gradu depulsus est**: "he was disconcerted," literally, "he was driven from his foothold."—**Id agi**: "that this was the intention."—**Pons**: the bridge extended from Abydos on the Asiatic side of the Hellespont to Sestos on the European, and consisted of a number of boats connected by cables.—**Quem . . . fecerat**: p. 307, 13, (a).—**Qua**: scil. *via*: so *eadem*, scil. *via*: "he returned in less than 30 days by the same route by which he had advanced." *Nepos* ("Agesilaus") makes it a year: the real time was four months. The retreat occupied 46 days.—**Sex mensibus . . . diebus triginta**: ablative of time within which: the comparative *minus* has no influence on the construction.—**Altera**: "This is a second victory."—**Quae . . . possit**: "of such importance that it may be compared to the victory of Marathon."—**Quae = talis ut**: p. 296, 5. As the land forces of the Greeks at Marathon were inferior, so the naval forces of the Greeks at Salamis were inferior.—**Tropaeo**: here = *victoria*.

Chapter VI.—**Phalerico portu**: the most ancient of the Athenian ports was Phalerum, to the east of the Piraeus. Both were connected by the "long walls" with the city.—**Triplex**: the three basins were the Piraeus proper, Munychia and Zeia.—**Moenibus circumdatus**: in the active we say either *urbem muro* (abl.) or *urbi* (dat.) *murum circumdat*: in the passive, *urbs muro* (abl.) or *urbi* (dat.) *murus circumdatur*.—**Restituit**: Themistocles both rebuilt the old walls and extended the boundaries of Athens, enclosing the newly acquired parts with new walls.—**Nacti**: from *nanciscor*.—**Qua negarent**: 296, 5, (b): "for denying":—**Quae . . . possiderent**: final: "for their enemy to acquire": p. 294, 5.—**Alio . . . atque**: "had a different object than they wished to appear: note the force of *atque* (*ac*) after words expressing *similarity* and *dis-similarity*.—**Principatu**: "the first place" (hegemony) in Greece. The Spartans had held this before the Persian wars.—**Qui . . . vetarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Desierunt**: *i.e.*, the Athenians.—**Reliqui . . . praecepit**: construe (Themistocles) *praecepit ut reliqui legati tum exirent . . . interim* (*praecepit ut*) *servi*, etc.—**Satis alti tuendo**: "high enough to

protect them."—**Sive ... esset**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Ex sacellis sepulchrisque**: this is only partially true (Thucydides, I, 193, sqq.).

**Chapter VII.**—**Dedit operam ... duceret**: "took care to spin out the time." Note that **longius** and **longissime** may be applied to time, but not **longe**: **diu** is the regular word.—**Causam interponens**: Nepos is fond of present participles; Caesar would have said **causa interposita**.—**Sunt consecuti = advenerunt**: "arrived." The others were Aristides and Habronichus.—**Imperium**: "military power" belonged to the kings of Sparta; **potestas**, "civil power," to the Ephors.—**Quibus ... haberetur**: oblique narration, hence the subjunctive: p. 305, 2.—**Qui ... explorarent**: for mood: p. 294, 5.—**Se ... retinerent = me retinere** = imperat. of direct narration: p. 306, 3.—**Gestus ... mos**: see Vocab. under **mos**.—**Praedixit = praecepit**: in this sense **praedico** follows the construction of verbs of *commanding*: p. 292, 1.—**Ut ne**: for **ne**.—**Esset remissus**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Magistratus senatumque**: referring to the board of Ephors, five in number, and to the Gerusia or Senate of Sparta, which consisted of the two kings and twenty-eight other members.—**Quod = id quod**: dependent clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—**Deos ... penates: deos publicos**, the gods generally worshipped throughout Greece, as Zeus, Apollo, etc.: **deos patrios**, the guardian gods of Athens, as **Athene**, **Poseidon**: **penates**, the gods of each family.—**Quo facilius**: p. 294, 4.—**Oppositum** agrees with the predicate **propugnaculum** by attraction.—**Bis**: at Marathon 490 B.C.; at Salamis 480 B.C.—**Qui ... intuerentur = quippe qui ... intuerentur**: p. 298, 5.—**Si ... vellent**: p. 305, 2.—**Quos ... miserant**: p. 307, 13, (a).—**Se remitterent**: direct narration = **me remittite**.

**Chapter VIII.**—**Tamen**: *i.e.*, in spite of all his successes.—**Ob eundem timorem**: *i.e.*, of his becoming too powerful.—**Testularum suffragiis**: see Vocab. under **testula**. He refers to the ostracism of Themistocles (B.C. 471), on the charge of taking bribes from the Persians. The institution of ostracism was one of the reforms of Cleisthenes. The Athenian law provided that "at any political crisis a special meeting could be called, at which the people could declare by their vote that the presence of any individual was prejudicial to the interest of the state." If six thousand citizens voted, by writing the name of any individual on a piece of tile (**testula**, Gk. *δοστρακον*), that such a person should be banished, he was required to withdraw from the boundaries of Attica, and remain in exile for ten years, or until recalled. He did not, however, lose his citizenship or property.—**Argos**: what case, gender and number? See Vocab.—**Habitatum**: supine.—**Hic**: *i.e.*, at Argos.—**Cum ... viveret**: for **cum** causal, see p. 297, 4.—**Qui ... accusarent**: for **qui** final, see p. 294, 5.—**Quod ... fecisset**: is this a charge of Nepos or of the ambassadors? p. 297, 3. What would **fecerat** mean?—**Rege Perse = rege Persarum** or **rege Persico**.—**Hoc crimine**: the charge **quod societatem ... fecisset**.—**Proditionis**: p. 281, 12.—**Quod ... videbat**: what does the indicative imply? p. 297, 3.—**Eius**: = **Corcyrae**.—**Timere ne ... indicerent**: p. 294, 8.—**Admetum cum quo**, etc.: according to Thucydides (I, 136) Admetus had been thwarted by Themistocles in pressing some demands at Athens, so that the statement here is probably incorrect.—**In praesentia**:

see Vocab. under *praesentia*.—*Quo*: p. 294, 4.—*Religione*: “reverence.”—*Receptum*: “when received.”—*In fidem reciperet*: “promised him his protection”: p. 299, 8.—*Quam*=*et eam*, scil. *fidem*: “and this pledge he redeemed”: see note on *quae contumelia*, Chap. I.—*Publice*: “in the name of the state.”—*Consuleret sibi*: see Vocab. under *consulo*.—*Enim*: scil. *dixit*.—*Propinquo*: *i.e.*, so near Greece.—*Quod . . . esset*: the sufficiency of the guard is not vouched for by *Nepos*: p. 297, 3: probably the opinion of *Admetus* stated by the author.—*Hic*: *i.e.*, at *Pydna*.—*Escendit*: others have *ascendit*. *Caesar* usually has *conscendit*.—*Naxum*: this island was in revolt against the confederacy of *Delos*. It was reduced by the Athenians to the position of a tributary state.—*Quis sit*: p. 291, 1.—*Pervenisset, conservasset*: oblique, p. 306, note.—*Viri . . . misericordia*: “pity for so illustrious a man”: objective genitive: p. 281, 7.—*Ephesum*: at that time under the rule of *Persia*.—*Exponit*: historic present.—*Gratiam rettulit*: see Vocab. under *gratia*.

**Chapter IX.**—*Xerxe regnante*: as *Xerxes* reigned 485-465 B.C. and *Artaxerxes* 465-425 B.C., and as the flight of *Themistocles* was probably in 460 B.C., his withdrawal to *Asia* was in the reign of *Artaxerxes*, not of *Xerxes*.—*Aetate proximus de iis*: “the nearest in point of time of those”: for the use of *de* see note on *de servis suis*, Chap. IV.—*Eiusdem civitatis*: *i.e.*, of *Athens*.—*Epistulam*: *Thucydides* (I, 137) gives the letter which is substantially the same as given by *Nepos*.—*Veni*: “I am come.”—*Graiorum*: partitive genitive after *qui*: p. 280, 3.—*Idem*: “I, however”: often *idem* introduces a contrast.—*Ipse*: scil. *coepi* from the *coepit* following.—*Litteris*: the statement from *nam cum* to *liberatus* does not occur in *Thucydides*. *Herodotus* (viii, 110) says that the message sent to *Xerxes* by *Sicinnus* was verbal, not written.—*Id agi*: see note on *id agi*, Chap. V.—*Quam . . . adeptus*: see note on *quae contumelia* (Chap. I): for the indicative, p. 307, 13, (a).—*Quas*=*de quibus*.—*Annum . . . tempus*, not “annual” but “a year’s time.”

**Chapter X.**—*Huius*: does not agree with *animi*.—*Admirans cupiensque*: here equivalent to *causal* clauses: “because he admired his magnanimity and wished.”—*Veniam*: “permission.”—*Commodius . . . verba fecisse*: “to have spoken with greater facility.” *In Perside*: scil. *terra*.—*Cum . . . esset pollicitus*: for *cum* causal, see p. 297, 4.—*Illud*: “the following,” referring to the clause *illum . . . oppressurum*.—*Asiam*: *i.e.*, as if to the Roman province of *Asia*, which comprised *Caria*, *Lydia*, *Mysia*, and *Phrygia* except *Lycaonia*.—*Magnesiae*: this was *Magnesia* on the *Maeander*, in *Caria*. Another *Magnesia* was in Northern *Lydia*, near *Sardis*, called *Magnesia ad Sipylum*.—*Donarat*: = *donaverat*.—*Quae . . . praeberet*: for *quae* final, see p. 294, 5: so *unde . . . sumeret* and *ex qua . . . haberet*.—*Oppidum*: *i.e.*, *Magnesia*.—*In quo*: scil. *sepulchro*. *Thucydides* (I, 138) says that the remains of *Themistocles*, according to his wish, were buried secretly in *Attica*. In the time of *Pausanias*, the tomb of *Themistocles* was pointed out near the harbour of *Piraeus*.—*Potissimum*: adverb: “above all others.”—*Neque negat*: “yet admits,” “without denying”: literally, “but he does not deny.”—*Venenum*: the common report was that his death was caused by drinking bull’s blood. *Thucydides* (I, 138) says that he committed suicide.—*Quoniam . . . concederetur*: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11, note.



## ARISTIDES.

**Chapter I.**—**Themistocli**: genitive with *aequalis*, “a contemporary.”—**De principatu**: “for the first position in the state.”—**Obtrectarunt** = **obtrectaverunt**: see Vocab. under *obtrecto*.—**In his**: “in the case of these men.”—**Quanto . . . innocentiae**: “how much eloquence outweighs integrity”: for the mood of *antestaret*: p. 291, 1: for the case of *innocentiae*, p. 278, 7.—**Quamquam . . . excellerebat**: p. 302, 1, (a).—**Quem . . . audierimus**: “at least of those whom we have heard of.” **Qui** consecutive is often used to express *limitation*; as, **quod sciam**, “As far as I know.”—**Collabefactus**: according to Grote, the rivalry arose from the fact that Aristides was opposed to the policy of Themistocles, which aimed at making Athens a sea-power.—**Testula illa**: note *illa*, “that well-known”: see note on *testularum suffragiis* (Them., viii).—**Qui quidem cum intellegeret**: “and when he observed.” Note the intensive force of *quidem* after a relative = γῆ in Greek: for *qui cum* see note on *qui cum . . . parentibus* (Them., I).—**Cedens**: “as he was retiring from the struggle.”—**Scribentem**: “as he was writing”: *i.e.*, the name of Aristides on the tablet. No name was officially proposed for ostracism, and the voter could write any name he wished. Plutarch tells the story that the man could not write, and asked Aristides to write his own name, which he did.—**Quod . . . laborasset**: *scil.* Aristides: for the subjunctive see p. 307, 11, note: see Vocab. under *laboro*.—**Postquam . . . quam**: *quam* is regularly used for *postquam* when *post* or *postquam* has just preceded. The pluperfect is used with *postquam* when a definite time is stated (as here, *sexto anno*); otherwise, the perfect indicative is used. Aristides was banished 484 B.C., and recalled 480 B.C., about the time of the battle of Salamis.—**Populi scito**: “a decree of the people” = ψήφισμα. The resolutions of the *plebs* in the *Comitia Tributa* at Rome were called *plebis scita* (*scitum*, from *scisco*, to *approve*).

**Chapter II.**—**Interfuit pugnae**: p. 278, 7. He had no command, though he was one of the ten generals the following year.—**Facta est**: it is said that he joined the Athenian army the night before the battle.—**Praetor**: here = στρατηγός, general. Contrary to usage Aristides was made sole commander of the Athenians at Plataeae, though Pausanias led the united Greeks.—**Huius imperii memoria**: “the record of this command.”—**Multa**: *scil.* *sunt illustria facta*, from the *illustre factum* before: “there are many striking instances.”—**Factum est**: join with *ut summa . . . Athenienses*: the treasury of the Confederacy of Delos was at Delos; but after the first ten years of the league (about 466 B.C.) it was transferred to Athens.

**Chapter III.**—**Quos = et eos: quo**: p. 294, 4.—**Ad . . . constitueret**: the order is: *Aristides delectus est qui constitueret quantum pecuniae quaque civitas daret ad classes aedificandas exercitusque comparandos*. *Constitueret*: p. 294, 5.—**Quantum pecuniae**: p. 280, 3.—**Daret**: p. 291, 1.—**Qua . . . abstinentia**: *abl.* of quality: p. 284, 12.—**Quam quod**: “than the fact that,” a *quod*-clause used in apposition to the subject: p. 293, 2, top of page.—**Cum . . . praefecisset**: on *cum* (though) concessive, see p. 303, 5.—**Qua efferretur**: “wherewith to be buried.”—

**Qui**: an old ablative form used in **quicum = quocum**. For the subjunctive see p. 294, 5.—**Reliquerit**: p. 295, 1.—**Ut . . . collocarentur**: according to Plutarch they received each 3,000 drachmas (about \$530 of our money).

## HANNIBAL.

**Chapter I.**—**Verum est . . . ut . . . superarit**: the construction of **verum est ut** with the subjunctive (instead of acc. with inf.) is on the analogy of **ut** after impersonal verbs and phrases like **accidit ut, verisimile est ut, falsum est ut, etc.**—**Non est infitandum**: scil. **nobis**: “we must not deny.”—**Cum eo . . . Italia**: construe, **nam quotienscumque (Hannibal) congressus est in Italia cum eo (populo)**. This is not true, as Hannibal was defeated by Marcellus at Nola in Campania, B.C. 215.—**Nisi . . . esset**: he refers to the opposition of the peace party at Carthage which was led by Hanno.—**Videtur**: Latin prefers the personal construction with verbs of *saying, seeming, etc.*—**Ut deposuerit**: construe **ut deposuerit animam priusquam (deposuit) id, i.e., odium**.—**Qui quidem**: for *causal qui*, see p. 298, 5: “since he, indeed.”—**Animo**: “in his heart,” “in intention.”

**Chapter II.**—**Ut omittam**: see Vocab. under **omitto**.—**Absens**: equivalent to a concessive clause: “though he was not with him.”—**Ut . . . conatus sit**: for mood, p. 295, 1.—**Italiae**: p. 278, 6.—**Ad quem cum**: Roman ambassadors visited Antiochus at Ephesus and found Hannibal there.—**Qui . . . explorarent darentque operam**: p. 294, 5.—**Ut . . . adducerent**: cf. in **suspicionem alicui venio**, “I am suspected by some one”: see Vocab. under **suspicio**. The Roman ambassadors pretended to be friends of Hannibal in order to make Antiochus distrust him.—**Tamquam . . . sentire**: “of entertaining, as though corrupted by them, opinions different from those he had before”: **sentire** depends on **suspicionem**: note the force of **atque** with **alia**: see note on **alio . . . atque** (Them., Chap. VI).—**Neque . . . fecissent**: supply **cum** from the preceding: “and when they were successful in their scheme, and when Hannibal discovered it and found himself excluded from the king’s privy councils, then he went to the king at a time appointed.”—**De fide sua**: scil. **erga regem Antiochum**: “of his loyalty to King Antiochus.”—**Puerulo me**: abl. abs.: p. 284, 14.—**Iovi optimo maximo**: **Nepos** substitutes “Jove, the best and the greatest” for Baal, the supreme deity of the Carthaginians.—**Vellemne**: “whether I would like”: dependent question: p. 291, 1.—**Ab eo petere . . . ne dubitaret**: p. 306, 3. Note that **dubito** in the sense of *hesitate* takes the infinitive: in the sense of *doubt*, if negative, it takes **quin** with subjunctive: p. 296, 6.—**Tenentem**: scil. **me**: “while I held my hand upon it.” It was customary when taking a solemn oath to lay one’s hands on the horns of the altar or, at least, to touch some part of it.—**In amicitia . . . fore**: = **amicum esse futurum**: “that I would never be friendly.”—**Conservavi**: a pres. perfect, “I have kept.”—**Reliquo tempore**: “for the rest of my life.”—**Eadem mente**: abl. of quality: p. 284, 12.—**Celaris = celaveris**: fut. perf.: p. 301, 2, (2), (a): so also **posueris**.

**Chapter III.**—**Hac . . . aetate**: abl. of quality depending on Hannibal understood: p. 284, 12.—**Qua diximus**: = “which we have said”: abl.

qual.—**Suffecto**: a magistrate was called **suffectus** who was elected to complete the unexpired term of another magistrate who had died or been deposed.—**Hoc**: Hasdrubal. He was assassinated by a Spaniard whose master had been killed by Hasdrubal.—**Delatum**: “reported.”—**Annis**: more commonly **annos**: see p. 285, 6.—**Proximo triennio**: p. 284, 2.—**Foederatam**: the Carthaginians held the part of Spain south of the Ebro; the Romans occupied the part north of the Ebro. Saguntum was south of the river, but was in alliance with Rome, which guaranteed her independence.—**Comparavit**: Hannibal rather divided his army into three parts.—**Saltum**: either “pass,” or “chain,” near the coast.—**Nemo unquam**: this is not correct, as we know that the Gauls often made inroads into the Roman territory through the Alpine passes. According to Polybius, Hannibal crossed by the Little St. Bernard Pass (**Alpes Graiaie**), but Livy says he crossed by Mt. Genève (**Alpes Cottiae**).—**Alpicos**: “Alpine tribes.” The mountain villagers annoyed Hannibal in his ascent, but there was no pitched battle, as Nepos would have us believe.—**Concidit**: distinguish this in meaning and derivation from **concidit**.—**Itinera muniit**: note the expression, **iter munire**, “to build a military road.”—**Ornatus**: “fully equipped.” Note the antithesis in the latter part of the sentence.

**Chapter IV.**—**Confixerat . . . pepulerat**: there was no regular battle at the Rhone, though the Romans routed the Numidian cavalry which Hannibal sent out to reconnoitre.—**Clastidii**: Nepos confuses the battle of Clastidium with that at the river Ticinus. After passing the Ticinus, Hannibal took Clastidium.—**Decernit . . . dimittit**: historic presents.—**Apud Trebiam**: Scipio was not present at Trebia, for he had not yet recovered from the wound he received at the battle of Ticinus. The battle of Trebia was fought in December, 218 B.C.—**Inde**: “after that”: in the spring of 217 B.C.—**Appenninum**: scil. **montem**.—**Dextro oculo**: Livy says (xxii, 1) that he lost the sight of one eye completely.—**Lectica**: Livy says that he was at this time carried by the only elephant left.—**C. Flaminium**: he gave his name to the **Via Flaminia**, the great road leading north from Rome which he repaired when he was *ensor*.—**Praetorem**: C. Centenius was not *praetor* but *propraetor*.—**Obviam**: see Vocab. under **obviam**.—**Paulum**: Lucius Aemilius Paulus was wounded at Cannae, 216 B.C., and refused to save himself by flight.

**Chapter V.**—**Romam**: Hannibal did not march at once on Rome after the battle of Cannae. In 211 B.C., five years after the battle of Cannae, he went there and encamped for a short time on the hills around the city.—**Fabius Maximus**: appointed dictator in 217 B.C., the year before Cannae. The escape from Maximus took place in 217 B.C., not after Cannae, as Nepos states.—**Clausus**: concessive: “though enclosed.”—**Dedit verba**: see Vocab. under **do**.—**Obducta nocte**: see Vocab. under **obduco**.—**M. Minucius Rufus**: the dilatory policy of Fabius caused the Romans to appoint Minucius, the Master of the Horse, to a command equal to that of the dictator. Half of the army was given him, and he was drawn into an engagement with Hannibal, in which he was saved only by the timely arrival of Fabius. He then resigned his command.—**Ti. Sempronius Gracchus**: this happened in 212 B.C. Marcellus, not Gracchus, was consul at this time. The correct expression is **bis consulem**, “who had

been twice consul," not *iterum consulem*, "who had been consul a second time": so also *quintum* (adv.), not *quinquies consulem*. He was cut off by Mago, at Campi Veteres, in Lucania, near Beneventum. M. Claudius Marcellus, the conqueror of Syracuse, was slain, not after, but during his fifth consulship, 208 B.C., near Venusia.—*Sustulit*: from *tollo*.—*Pari modo*: by getting him into an ambush in the neighborhood of Venusia.—*Longum est*: "it would be tedious." The indicative is often used in expressions of *necessity*, *propriety* for the subjunctive as apodosis of an implied condition as here=*si ennumerarem*...*longum esset*: cf. p. 301, 3.

Chapter VI.—*Hinc*: from Italy.—*Defensum*: p. 289, 1. This was in 203 B.C., when the Romans, having conquered Spain and confined Hannibal to Bruttium and Lucania, crossed over to Africa and threatened Carthage.—*Fugarat*=*fugaverat*.—*In praesentiarum*: see Vocab. under *praesentia*. *Quo*...*congrederetur*: p. 294, 4.—*Condiciones non convenerunt*: "the terms were not agreed upon." We might also say *de condicionibus non convenerunt*, "they did not agree on the terms."—*Incredibile dictu*: p. 175. The statement here is absurd. It is not known where Zama was. Polybius says it was five days' march west of Carthage. Others say that Hadrumetum and Zama were about one hundred miles apart.—*Biduo*: *scil. spatio*.—*Oppressit*: "crushed." *Paucis diebus*: p. 284, 2.

Chapter VII.—*Nihilo secius*: see Vocab. under *nihilo*.—*Resque*...*gessit*: "and he carried on the war."—*Consules*: the Romans marked their year by the names of the consuls. These were in office B.C. 200.—*His magistratibus*: either abl. of time *when*, or abl. absolute.—*Qui*...*agerent*: p. 294, 5.—*Quod*...*fecissent*...*donarent*...*peterent*: the subjunctives show that the words of the ambassadors were used: p. 297, 3. Note that we say either *donare coronam homini* or *donare corona hominem*.—*Cum iis*=*secum*: so *obsides eorum*=*obsides sui*.—*Ut*...*Fregellis essent*: "might be allowed to live at Fregellae."—*Ex senatus consulto*: the presiding magistrate was said *senatum consulere*, hence "an order of the senate" was called *senatus consultum*.—*Rogarent*...*foret*...*haberent*: subjunctive of dependent clauses of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—*Rex*: two magistrates called *Suffetes* were elected at Carthage for a fixed period. The word *Suffetes* is connected with the Hebrew word *Shophetim*, "judges." Nepos translates it by *reges*.—*Vectigalibus*: the *vectigalia* were taxes raised from conquered lands, crown lands, imports and exports.—*Quae*...*penderetur*: p. 296, 5; so also *reponeretur*.—*Senatus daretur*: *dare senatum*, "to grant a hearing in the senate"; for subjunctive, p. 299, 8.—*Quae comprehenderent*: p. 294, 5.—*Si possent consequi*: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—*Publicarunt*=*publicaverunt*: all moneys realized from goods confiscated became a part of the state treasury (*publicum aerarium*).

Chapter VIII.—*Consulibus*: 193 B.C.—*Africam accessit*: "landed in Africa in the territory of the Cyrenaeans."—*Si*...*inducerentur*: "in the hope that they might," etc.: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—*Antiochi spe fiduciaque*: objective genitive, p. 281, 7: "by their hope in, and reliance upon, Antiochus."—*Cui*...*persuaserat*: the truth is that Hannibal had tried to persuade Antiochus to invade Italy and had failed.—*Huc*: to Cyrene.—*Desperatis rebus*: see Vocab. under

**desperare.**—**Memoria**: “tradition”: the usual account is that he was wounded in 203 B.C. in Cisalpine Gaul, and that he died of his wound on his return to Africa.—**Interfectum**: note the *zeugma*: “he perished by shipwreck and was assassinated by his slaves.”—**Propius Tiberi**: **prope** is not usual with a dative in good Latin, the regular construction being the accusative or the ablative with **ab**: as, **tam prope urbem**, or **ab urbe**, “so near the city.” So also **propius** and **proxime**.—**Thermopylis**: Antiochus was defeated there by the Romans (191 B.C.). He then withdrew to Asia, and was in the following year defeated at Magnesia in Lydia.—**Etsi . . . videbat**: p. 303, 2.—**Praefuit . . . navibus**: p. 278, 7.—**lisque**: scil. **navibus**: abl. of instrument: p. 283, 5.—**Quo . . . superior**: *i.e.*, **ipse fuit superior in eo cornu in quo rem gessit**.

**Chapter IX.**—**Fugato**: at Magnesia (190 B.C.).—**Verens ne dederetur**: p. 294, 8.—**Si . . . potestatem**: “if he (Hannibal) had given them power over him”: *i.e.*, “if he had fallen into their hands”: p. 301, (3), (b).—**Quo . . . conferret**: p. 291, 1.—**Nisi quid providisset**: **quid**=**aliquid**: “unless he took some precaution”: p. 306, note.—**Illorum . . . his**: both pronouns refer to the Gortyni.—**Statuas aëneas**: perhaps hollow with movable heads.—**Domi**: p. 285, 3.

**Chapter X.**—**Suis rebus**: “his property.”—**Poenus**: *i.e.*, Hannibal.—**Apud quem**: “at whose court.”—**Eodem animo**: p. 284, 12.—**Minus . . . robustum**: “not strong enough.” **Minus**+**adj.**=“not.”—**Utrobique**=**terra marique**.—**Quem si removisset**: scil. Hannibal: p. 306, note.—**Erant decreturi**: “they had intended to decide the matter”: p. 290, 3, middle of page.—**Imperavit colligi**: the infinitive passive is sometimes used with **impero**. What is the regular construction? p. 292, 1.—**Cum effecisset**: “when he had collected”: p. 300, 10.—**A ceteris . . . defendere**: “to be content only to defend themselves from the others.” Note that **habeo** is used with an adverb. The expression is equivalent to **esse** with an adjective: cf.  $\epsilon\chi\omega$  in Greek.—**Id . . . consecuturos**: scil. **esse dixit**.—**In qua . . . veheretur**: p. 291, 1.—**Magno iis . . . praemio**: p. 279, 12.—**Fore**=**id futurum esse**.

**Chapter XI.**—**Deducitur**: see Vocab. under **deduco**.—**Quarum**: scil. **classium**.—**Priusquam . . . daretur**: p. 299, 7.—**Caduceo**: a herald's staff was originally an olive branch twined with garlands. Afterwards the garlands were changed to serpents. Hermes (Mercury) as the messenger of the gods is represented with a **caduceus**.—**Mittit**: historic present: hence the imperfect subjunctive **faceret**: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—**Quod . . . dubitabat**: p. 297, 3.—**Quin . . . esset scriptum**: p. 296, 6.—**Soluta**: an ordinary letter would consist of two wax tablets fastened together with a string.—**Quae . . . pertinerent**: consecutive relative: p. 296, 5.—**Posset**: p. 297, 4.—**Conici coepta sunt**: the passive of **coepi** is used when the dependent inf. is passive.—**Nova re**: “by the novelty of the attack.”—**Consilio**: “by stratagem.”

**Chapter XII.**—**Dum . . . geruntur**: p. 299, 4.—**Patres conscripti**: “the Senators”: so called because the Senate probably consisted originally of the heads of families making up the citizens of Rome: **conscripti**=“enrolled in the list of citizens.”—**Qui . . . existimarent**: **qui** causal: p. 298, 5.—**Qui . . .**

...peterent : qui final : p. 294, 5.—Dederet : supply ut before dederet from the preceding ne.—Ipsi . . . comprehenderent : for imperat. of direct : = vos, si potestis, comprehendite.—Inventuros : scil. dixit eos esse.—Ei . . . muneri : p. 279, 12.—Ne usu veniret : literally, “lest it should come in actual experience” : usu is an ablative of manner, or, if an old form for usui, a dative of purpose.—Puer ab ianua : “the door-boy,” “the slave at the door” : cp. Horace, Od. I, 29, 7 ; puer ex aula, “the hall-boy,” “the waiter.”—Consuerat = consueverat.

Chapter XIII.—Acquievit : a euphemism for mortuus est.—Septuagesimo : Hannibal was born in 247 B.C., and would have been 63, 64, 65 years of age at these dates, according as the consuls mentioned held office 183, 182, 181 respectively.—Annali suo : scil. libro : “in his chronicle.”—Nonnihil temporis : partitive genitive : “some time.”—Ad Rhodios : “addressed to the Rhodians.”—Huius : Hannibal.

---

# NOTES ON CAESAR.

## BOOK IV.

**Chapter I.**—**Qui fuit annus**: “Which was the year of the consulship of,” etc.—**Consulibus**: abl. of quality: literally, “of Pompey and Crassus consuls.”—**Quo**: “into which.”—**Quod**: “the fact that,” explaining **causa transeundi**: p. 293, 2.—**Complures annos**: p. 284, 4.—**Bello**: abl. of instr.: p. 283, 5.—**Agricultura**: p. 282, 1.—**Pagos**: “Cantons,” country districts of undefined extent: cp. French *pays*. Trace the origin of our words *pagan*, *heathen*.—**Singula millia**: “a thousand from each canton”: p. 69, 8, (a).—**Qui . . . manserunt . . . alunt**: the perfect combined with the present denotes repetition: “The rest who remain at home, maintain.”—**Domi**: p. 286, top of page.—**Anno post**: p. 284, 3.—**Ratio atque usus**: see Vocab. under **ratio**.—**Agri . . . nihil**: p. 280, 3. The **ager privatus** was “the land belonging to the individual,” as opposed to the **ager publicus**, “the land belonging to the state”: **ager separatus** was “land marked out by boundaries.”—**Longius** = **diutius** (see note on **dedit operam**, Nepos, Them. VII): **longe** may be said of space, but not of time: though **longius**, and **longissime** may be said of both.—**Frumento**: “on corn”: **vivo** like **vescor** takes the abl. of means: p. 283, 10.—**Maximam partem**: adverbial acc.—**Multum sunt**: see Vocab. under **multum**.—**A pueris**: “from boyhood”: cp. *ἐκ παιδων*.—**Nullo . . . assuefacti**: “as they are trained to no systematic performance of duty”: literally, “trained to no set duty or system.” Caesar refers to the restraints of civilized society, education, etc.: **assuefacio** is used also with the dative.—**Quod . . . faciant**: virtual oblique narration: “because, as they say, they do so.”—**Immani . . . magnitudine**: p. 284, 12.—**In eam . . . aduxerunt**: “they have brought themselves up to such hardy habits”: the imperfect subjunctive in **haberent . . . lavarentur** is irregular; we should expect the pres.: p. 295, 2.—**Locis frigidissimis**: see Vocab. under **loca**.—**Vestitus**: p. 280, 3.

**Chapter II.**—**Mercatoribus . . . habeant**: the construction is, **mercatoribus est aditus ad eos** (*i.e.*, Germanos) **magis eo** (consilio) **ut habeant** (eos) **quibus vendant** (ea) **quae ceperint bello**: **eo**: “for this reason.”—**Quibus**: final = **ut eis**: p. 294, 5.—**Quae . . . ceperint** = **taliam quae ceperunt**: p. 296, 5.—**Quam quo** = **quam eo quod**, “than for the reason that”: for subjunctive desiderent: p. 297, 3.—**Quin etiam**: see Vocab. under **quin**.—**Impenso . . . pretio**: see Vocab. under **impensus**.—**Summi . . . laboris**: p. 280, 4.—**Equestribus proeliis**: “in cavalry engagements.”—**Pedibus**: “on foot.”—**Eodem . . . vestigio**: see Vocab. under **vestigium**.—**Eorum moribus**: “according to their notions”: abl. of cause.—**Inertius**: “more indolent” or “more unskilful.”—**Quamvis pauci**: “however few.”

**Chapter III.**—**Publice**: “as a nation” opposed to **privatim**, “as an individual.”—**Quam latissime**: p. 143, note.—**A suis finibus**: “on the side of their territories”: so below a Suebis.—**Hoc . . . posse**: “by this

(they suppose) is shown the fact that a great number of states cannot withstand their power": the subject of *significari* are the words *magnum... posse*.—*Agri*: subject of *dicuntur*: note the personal use: see note on *videtur* (Nep., Hannibal, Chap. I).—*Succedunt*: see Vocab. under *succedo*.—*Ut... Germanorum*: see Vocab. under *captus*.—*Paulo*: join with *humaniores*. Note that *propterea quod* like the simple *quod* takes the indicative when stating facts: p. 297, 3.—*Moribus assuefacti*: "made familiar with Gallic habits": see note on *nullo... assuefacti* (Caes., B. IV, Chap. I).—*Cum*: "although," answered by *tamen*: p. 303, 5.—*Ac... redegerunt*: "and they reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength," *i.e.*, than they originally had. The distinction between *multum* and *multo* is this: the former is used with verbs, and the latter with comparative adjectives and adverbs.

Chapter IV.—*Causa*: "condition."—*Multis... locis*: *in* is omitted with *locus* when qualified with an adjective.—*Vi contendere*: "to dispute a passage by force."—*Reverti*: note that the forms of *revertor* from the present are passive in form, and from the perfect are active.—*Tridui*: scil. *spatii*: p. 280, 4.—*Equitatu*: abl. of instrument or of accompaniment with *cum* omitted.—*Priusquam... certior fieret*: p. 299, 8.—*Reliquam partem*: p. 284, 4.—*Eorum copii*: "with their supplies": *i.e.*, the supplies of the Menapii.

Chapter V.—*Quod sunt*: p. 297, 3.—*Student*: see Vocab. under *studeo*.—*Nihil... existimavit*: "he thought that no confidence at all should be placed in them": *nihil*=an emphatic *non*.—*Est... consuetudinis*: "now this is a characteristic of Gallic custom": p. 279, 2.—*Uti... cogant... quaerant... circumstat... cogant*: explanatory of *hoc*.—*Audierit aut cognoverit*: indirect questions, p. 291, 1. The latter verb implies personal experience. Note the change in number in *circumstat* and *cogant*. The questions are put by the individuals comprising the *vulgus*. Decline *vulgus*: p. 230, foot note.—*Rebus*: "the facts" they hear from the merchants.—*Auditionibus*: "hearsays."—*In vestigio*: see Vocab. under *vestigium*.—*Quorum... poenitere necesse est*: "of which they are bound to repent at once": *eos poenitere* is the subject of *necesse est*, literally, "of which that they repent is necessary."—*Plerique*: scil. *viatores*.—*Ficta respondeant*: depending on *cum*: see Vocab. under *fictus*.

Chapter VI.—*Qua... cognita*: the relative serves as the connecting link of the two chapters: "now as he knew this custom": see note on *quae contumelia* (Nepos, Them., Chap. I).—*Ne... occurreret... proficiscitur*: note that *proficiscitur* is a historic present, and has the force of a secondary tense in sequence: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—*Ea... facta*: scil. *fuisse*.—*Uti... discederent... quae postulassent*: p. 305, 2.—*Fore parata*: *fore* with a perf. part. pass. in indirect represents a fut. perf. in direct.—*Qua spe*: "and by hope of this": cp. *hoc metu* (Caes., B. V, Chap. XIX).—*Clientes*: "dependents" on certain persons belonging to patrician families of Rome who acted as *patroni* or counsellors in the law courts for the *clientes*. Hence perhaps our present meaning. Caesar means that the Treveri were the protectors of the Eburones and



Condruſi.—**Ea quae cognoverat**: the relative is merely explanatory to **ea**, and not a part of Caesar's thoughts; hence, the indicative: p. 307, 13, (a), (b).—**Imperato**: "levied": abl. absolute. What two meanings has **impero**?

Chapter VII.—**Quibus in locis**: Caesar often repeats the antecedent in the relative clause.—**Haec**: here refers to what comes after: "as follows."—**Neque priores . . . inferre**: in direct speech we should have: **nos Germani neque priores . . . inferimus**.—**Lacessantur**: a reported speech generally depends on an historical tense and the subjunctives are usually imperfect or pluperfect. Here Caesar uses the present or perfect subjunctive (**possederint**) as more vivid.—**Quin . . . contendant**: "still (they say) they do not decline to fight, if they are attacked."—**Quin**: p. 294, 7.—**Resistere neque deprecari**: the infinitives are explanatory of **consuetudo**, and might have been replaced by **ut** with the subjunctive: p. 293, 3.—**Attribuant . . . patiantur**: what would these be in direct narration? : p. 306, 3.—

Chapter VIII.—**Quae visum est**: scil. **respondere**: literally, "which it seemed good to reply."—**Si . . . remanerent**: the tense is due to **respondit**: p. 307, 8. The succeeding present subjunctives give vividness to the narrative.—**Verum**: "fair," "just."—**Qui . . . potuerint**: the perfect gives vividness and includes the present: "since they (hitherto) have not been capable, and are not (now) capable": **qui** causal: p. 298, 5.—**Tantae praesertim**: **praesertim** strengthens a previous statement by adding a fresh reason: "which can be granted rightly, and that too, to so vast a horde."

Chapter IX.—**Post diem tertium**: "the third day from that time": "the next day but one," as the Romans reckoned inclusively.—**Propius se**: see note on **propius Tiberi** (Nepos, Hannibal, Chap. VIII).—**Ne . . . quidem**: *i.e.*, no more than their other demands.—**Aliquot diebus ante**: abl. of difference: so also with **post**: p. 283, 7; 284, 3.—**Interponi**: "was introduced": **interponere** means, "to throw an obstacle in the way": cf. **hoc decreto interposito**: "this decree having put an end to the discussion."

Chapter X.—**Mosa . . . influit**: the reading in the text is Kraner's suggestion. At present both the Meuse and the Rhine flow into the German Ocean, and are connected by the Waal. The Meuse can be said to flow into the Rhine only by regarding the Meuse when joining the Waal as "flowing into the Rhine."—**Insulam . . . Batavorum**: the word **Batavi** still exists in the form **Betuwe** (meaning "good meadow"), a name applied to one of the islands in the Rhine.—**Ex Leopontiis**: "in the country of the Leopontii": the name of the people is put here, as we often find in Caesar, for the country. The source of the Rhine is in Mount St. Gothard.—**Longo spatio**: "after a long distance": abl. abs.—**Citatus fertur**: "flows with a swift stream."—**Sunt qui . . . existimantur**: note the indicative with **sunt qui**, referring to a definite antecedent. Distinguish in

meaning the expressions **sunt qui credunt** and **sunt qui credant**: p. 296, 5, (a).—**Piscibus . . . ovis . . . vivere**: see note on **frumento vivunt** (Caes., B. IV, Chap. I).—**Capitibus**: here **caput** is “the mouth” of a river: other writers use it in the sense of “the source.”

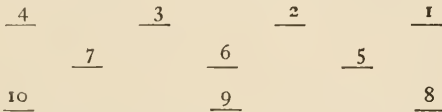
**Chapter XI.**—**Amplius . . . millibus**: abl. of extent or difference: p. 283, 7; 286, 3. Note that **amplius**, **plus**, **minus** in such cases have no influence on the construction.—**Ut . . . constitutum**: see Caes., B. IV, Chap. IX.—**Uti . . . praemitteret**: the construction is **uti praemitteret (nuntios) ad eos equites qui antecessissent agmen**: the **qui** clause is a consequence relative clause (p. 296, 5).—**Pugna prohiberet**: p. 282, 1.—**Potestatem faceret**: see Vocab. under **potestas**.—**Fidem fecisset**: “would give them assurance”: note that the verb either agrees with the nearest nominative or the expression **principes ac senatus** may be taken together as equivalent to a noun of multitude.—**Quae . . . ferretur**: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11.—**Daret**: equivalent to imperative **da** in direct narration: p. 306, 3.—**Eodem illo pertinere**: “pointed in that same direction”: see Vocab. under **pertineo**.—**Eodem illo pertinere** is explained by the substantival clause **ut**.—**Qui abessent**: virtual oblique: p. 307, 11.—**Convenirent = convenite** of the direct: p. 306, 3.—**Mittit**: scil. **nuntios**: note the historical present as seen in the sequence of the subsequent verbs: p. 290, 2, foot of page.—**Qui nuntiarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Et . . . sustinerent**: scil. **hostes**: “and to hold the enemy in check.”—**Quoad . . . accessisset**: p. 306, note.

**Chapter XII.**—**At**: see note on **at** (Nepos, Them., Chap. III).—**Ubi primum**: p. 298, 2.—**Quorum . . . quinque millium numerus**: note the double genitive after **numerus**: for **quinque millium**: p. 280, 4.—**Cum . . . haberent**: p. 297, 4.—**Octingentos**: see note on **amplius . . . millibus** (Caes., B. IV, Chap. XI).—**Quod ii . . . redierant**: p. 297, 3.—**Nihil timentibus nostris**: **nihil** may be taken as either the object of **timentibus**, or as an emphatic **non**.—**Indutiis**: dat. of purpose: p. 279, 12.—**Rursus resistentibus**: scil. **nostris**: “and when our men had come once more to a halt.”—**Consuetudine sua = ex consuetudine sua**: “according to their custom.”—**Subfossis . . . deiectis**: these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate in time: “after stabbing our horses from beneath, and, in consequence, unhorsing many of our men.”—**Deiectis**: scil. **de equis**.—**Prius . . . quam . . . venissent**: the object of the Romans would be to reach the main body of the army: p. 299, 8.—**Interficiuntur**: historical present.—**Genere natus**: p. 282, 3.—**Quoad potuit**: p. 298, 3.—**Cecidisset**: distinguish from **cecidisset**.—**Id**: “this mishap.”

**Chapter XIII.**—**Neque iam**: “no longer.”—**Sibi**: p. 279, 11.—**Qui . . . intulissent**: dependent clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2: so **augerentur . . . reverteretur**.—**Summae dementiae esse**: “was the height of madness,” predicate genitive: p. 279, 2.—**Quantum . . . auctoritatis**: p. 280, 3.—**Essent consecuti**: p. 291, 1.—**Nihil spatii = nihil temporis**: p. 280, 3.—**Ne . . . praetermitteret**: explanatory of **consilio**: “not to let pass a battle day,” *i.e.*, a favorable chance for bringing on a battle.—**Pugnae** may be either (1) a genitive like **tempus committendi proelii**, or (2) a dative of purpose.—**Quod**: explaining **res**; “the fact that.”—**Postridie**

**eius diei mane**: “early next day.”—**Postridie**=**posterī die**: a locative of time.—**Simul . . . simul**=**et . . . et**: “both . . . and.”—**Sui purgandi causa**: “to clear themselves.” Notice that though **sui** is plur., **purgandi** is sing.—**Quod . . . commississent**: “for having contrary to what had been agreed upon and to what they themselves had asked, begun a battle on the day previous”: the subjunctives are those of oblique narration, representing what the Germans said: p. 305, 2. With **contra atque**: cf. **alter ac**. We should have expected **contra id quod esset dictum**.—**De indutiis fallendo impetrarent**: “that they might obtain their object in regard to the truce by deception”: this final clause depends on **venerunt**, and is in apposition to **sui purgandi causa**, which is equivalent to an **ut**-clause.—**Oblatos**: scil. **fuisse**.

**Chapter XIV.**—**Acie triplici instituta**: “drawing up his men in a triple line.” The whole legion was so arranged in three lines that intervals of the first line were covered by the second. The first line consisted of four cohorts, the second of three and the third of three. Each interval was equal to the front of a cohort. The men stood usually ten deep, so that a cohort presented a front of between thirty and forty men, according to the number in a legion. The cohorts were arranged thus:



Cohorts 1, 2, 3, 4 would first engage the enemy, and if they failed, or were tired, 5, 6, 7 would advance through the intervals and take their place, while the first line would reform and get breath. The third line was held in reserve and only brought into action if the first two lines proved unsuccessful.—**Millium**: scil. **passuum**: an omission for the sake of euphony, and only used with the form **millium**.—**Prius . . . quam . . . possent**: the subjunctive implies Caesar’s *purpose* in making the march: p. 299, 8.—**Discessu suorum**: scil. **principum**: “by the withdrawal of their chiefs.”—**Perturbantur**: equivalent to **perturbantur dubitatione**: “were distracted with doubt”: an historic present as shown by sequence of tense.—**Ne . . . an . . . an**: for **utrum . . . an . . . an**.—**Uno loco**: for omission of **in**, see note on **multis locis**, B. IV, Chapter IV.—**Puerorum mulierumque**: “consisting of women and children”: genitive of definition: p. 281, 8.

**Chapter XV.**—**Suos**: their wives and children.—**Ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni**: either where the Waal (which flows into the Meuse) leaves the Rhine, or where the Waal joins the Meuse.—**Fuga desperata**: Cicero uses **desperare fugam**; Caesar always **desperare de fuga** except in the ablative absolute.—**Ex tanti belli timore**: “freed from the alarm of so serious a war”; or concessive, “great though the alarm of the war had been.”—**Quadringentorum . . . millium**: gen. of description.—**Apud eum** = **in castris**: “with him.”

**Chapter XVI.**—**Iustissima**: “most valid.”—**Quod** explains **illa**: “namely that.”—**Suis . . . voluit**: “he wished them to have fears for the

safety of their own dominions as well.”—**Timere** may take a dative of the person or thing for the safety of which fear is entertained.—**Quoque** : *i.e.*, as well as make others fear for their safety.—**Accessit quod** : “there was added the fact that” : p. 293, 2.—**Qui . . . postularent** : p. 294, 5.—**Intulissent** : after the virtual oblique narration implied in **postularent** : p. 305, 2.—**Dederent** : **ut** is often omitted after verbs of *command*.—**Cur . . . postularet?** : “Why should he demand that anything should be under his rule or authority?”—**Imperii . . . potestatis** : scil. **esse** = “belong to.” The former refers to *military* authority, which was practically unlimited outside the city ; the latter is *official* power delegated to one by virtue of his office.—**Quod . . . premerentur** : the subjunctive of oblique narration introduced by **orabant** : “because (as they alleged) they were being hard pressed” : p. 307, 11.—**Si . . . prohiberetur** : “if he was prevented from doing so by being engrossed with political affairs” : with **prohibeo** we have **quominus**, **ne** or the infinitive as here : p. 294, 6.—**Transportaret** : *i.e.* (**Ubii orabant ut**) **exercitum transportaret** : “(the Ubii asked that) he would merely lead his army across the Rhine,” *i.e.*, make merely a military demonstration.—**Id . . . futurum** : “that this would be enough to aid them (for the present), and to give them hope for the future.”—**Sibi = Ubiis**.—**Ad** : “as regards.”—**Opinionem eius exercitus** : **exercitus** = objective genitive to **opinionem** : “the opinion that others had of his army.”—**Nomen atque opinionem** = “prestige.”—**Ariovistulo pulso et . . . facto** : translate the participles by nouns ; “by the defeat of Ariovistus and the occurrence of the very recent battle.”—**Opinione et amicitia populi Romani** : **populi Romani** is objective genitive to **opinione** and subjective to **amicitia** : “by the reputation the Roman people had and the friendship they had for the Roman people.”—**Tuti** : passive in meaning from **tueor** : occasionally deponent verbs have perf. participles in a passive sense.

**Chapter XVIII.**—**Diebus decem quibus** : “in ten days from the time that timber began to be collected” : abl. of time within which : p. 284, 2. **Coepa erat** : p. 146, 4.—**Quibus . . . petentibus** : “to whose request for peace and friendship” : = **quibus quum peterent**.—**Fuga comparata, hortantibus iis** : these ablative absolutes are not co-ordinate ; the latter depends on the former : “had made preparations for flight owing to the advice of those of the Tencteri and Usipetes.”—**Finibus suis exceserant** : **excedo** may take either acc. or abl., or abl. with **ex**.—**In solitudinem ac silvas** : a hendiadys : “into the uninhabited forest.”

**Chapter XIX.**—**Succis** : “cut down and destroyed” : it was now some time before harvest. Caesar did not wish so much to use the corn as to prevent the Ubii from obtaining it.—**Uti . . . demigrarent** : depends on the idea of *ordering* contained in **nuntios dimisisse** : “telling them to” : p. 292, 1. Translate this into direct narration.—**Hunc** : “that this was the rendezvous.”—**Delectum** : here is “a place for holding a levy,” a rendezvous. Usually it means “a levy.”—**Medium . . . regionum** : “that lies almost in the centre of the districts that the Suebi held.”—**Quarum rerum causa** : “for which.” Note the repetition of the antecedent with the relative—**Ut . . . liberaret** : these clauses are in apposition to **omnibus rebus his**.—**Satis . . . profectum** : scil. **fuisse** : “that enough had been successfully accomplished.”

**Chapter XX.**—**Exigua . . . reliqua** : abl. abs. : “when but little of the summer was left.”—**Ad septentriones vergit** : see *Vocab.* under *vergo*.—**Quod . . . intellegebat** : p. 297, 3.—**Si . . . deficeret** : so *adisset*, *perspexisset*, *cognovisset* : p. 305, 2.—**Magno . . . adisset** : “he thought it would be of great advantage to him merely to have visited the island” : the clauses *si*, *adisset*, *perspexisset*, *cognovisset* are subjects of *fore*.—**Sibi usui** : p. 279, 12.—**Quisquam . . . quicquam** : p. 132, 3.—**Contra Gallias** : the divisions of Gaul : *Belgica*, *Celtica*, *Aquitania*.—**Incolerent** : p. 291, 1. So also *haberent*, *uterentur*, *essent*.

**Chapter XXI.**—**Priusquam . . . faceret** : “before he made the attempt,” “before running the risk” : p. 299, 8.—**In Morinos** : see note on *ex Lepontiis*, B. IV, Chap. X.—**Inde** : the country of the *Morini* : see *Vocab.* under *Morini*.—**Qui polliceantur** : p. 294, 5.—**Dare** : there is usually a future infin. with an accusative of a noun or pronoun with verbs of *promising*, etc., p. 289, 4.—**Ut . . . permanerent** : “to adhere to that policy.”—**Commium** : the *Atrebat*es were defeated at the *Sambre* (B. II, 23). Some escaped and settled in *Berkshire*. *Commius* was probably selected owing to the fact that being king on the continent he would have more influence over his countrymen in *Britain*.—**Magni . . . habebatur** : p. 280, 5.—**Huic . . . civitates** : the order is *imperat huic (ut) adeat civitates quas possit (adire)* : for the omission of *ut*, see note on *dederent*, B. IV, Chap. XVI.—**Possit** : virtual oblique.—**Fidem sequantur** : “be loyal to” : literally, “support the protection of (*i.e.*, given by) the Roman people.”—**Quantum** : neut. sing. adj. with partitive genitive = “as much of opportunity as,” etc. Translate : “as far as he had an opportunity.”—**Qui . . . auderet** : causal : “inasmuch as he did not dare” : p. 298, 5.—**Revertitur . . . renuntiat** : historical presents, as seen by the sequence in *perspexisset* : p. 290, 2, at foot of page.

**Chapter XXII.**—**Dum . . . moratur** : p. 299, 4.—**Qui . . . excusarent** : p. 294, 5.—**Superioris temporis** : p. 280, 4.—**Quod . . . fecissent** : virtual oblique : p. 307, 11.—**Populo Romano** : dative, “against the Roman people” : probably in imitation of the Greek *μάχεσθαι τινι*.—**Seque . . . pollicerentur** : construe *legatique venerunt qui pollicerentur se facturos (esse) ea quae imperasset* : the pluperfect of the indirect corresponds to the fut. perf. of the direct narration : “whatever you shall have ordered us to do, we will do.”—**Has . . . occupationes** : “this business consisting of such trifles” : p. 281, 8.—**Britanniae** : = *bello Britannico* : “to his expedition against *Britain*.”—**Quibus** refers to the hostages : *eos* to the *Morini*.—**In fidem** : see *Vocab.* under *fides*.—**Quicquid . . . habebat** : “all the war ships he had” : partitive genitive.—**Ab millibus passuum octo** : “eight miles off” : distance is expressed in *Caesar* by accusative, ablative, or ablative with *ab* as here.—**Quominus** : = *ut eo minus* : p. 294, 6.

**Chapter XXIII.**—**Tempestatem** : “weather,” good or bad, according to the context.—**Tertia vigilia** : the night was divided into *four* watches. *Caesar* started (with the infantry) from *Port Itius*, which some say was *Boulogne* : others, *Wissant*. The *portus superior* was *Ambletuse*. He

landed on the 27th of August, probably at Deal.—**Solvit**: scil. **naves**: “he set sail.”—**Cum . . . esset administratum**: “since this was somewhat slowly carried out.”—**Id** refers to the embarkation of the cavalry.—**Hora diei circiter quarta**: about 9.45 a.m., as the first hour at this season was at 5.3 a.m. and sun-set at 7.—**Expositas**: here for **collocatas, instructas**.—**Ita** join with **continebatur**: “was so closely bounded by precipitous mountains.”—**In litus**: “to the beach,” “to the water’s edge.” The cliffs of Dover answer the description.—**Ad egrediendum**: scil. **ex navibus**: “for disembarking.”—**Dum . . . convenirent**: idea of *expectation* is implied: p. 299, 6.—**Monuitque . . . administrarentur**: the first and second **ut** = “as”: the third is closely connected with **quae**; hence **ut quae** = **quippe quae**, so that **ut** must be understood with **administrarentur**: “and he enjoined upon them that everything should be carried out at the slightest hint and at the right time, as the mode of warfare, and, most of all, the marine service required, subject as it was to sudden and uncertain changes”: for the omission of **ut** see note on **dederent** (B. IV, Chap. XVI).—**Aperto ac plano litore**: see note above on **tertia vigilia**.

**Chapter XXIV.**—**At**: see note on Them., Chap. III.—**Quo genere**: scil. **militum**: p. 283, 10. Tacitus (Agr. 12), however, says: **in pedite robur: quaedam nationes in curru proeliantur**.—**Prohibebant**: a *conative* imperfect: “tried to prevent.”—**Quod . . . poterant**: p. 297, 3.—**Militibus**: join with **disiliendum erat**: “the soldiers had to leap down.”—**Autem**: the order of the clauses is inverted; **cum illi**, “whereas they (the Britons)” should come first and should be answered by **militibus autem**: “the soldiers on the other hand.”—**Ignotis locis, impeditis manibus**: abl. abs.: “in ignorance of the locality, and with hands encumbered.”—**Ex arido**: “from the dry land,” “standing on dry ground.”—**Omnino**: with **imperiti**: “totally unpractised in this kind of warfare”: p. 281, 9.—**Non . . . utebantur**: “did not show the same spirit and eagerness as they had been accustomed to display in engagements with foot soldiers.” The Romans had not before this been trained to fight while wading in the water or against warriors mounted on chariots.

**Chapter XXV.**—**Inusitator**: “somewhat novel.”—**Motus ad usum expeditior**: “and their movement in actual service less difficult,” *i.e.*, than those of the merchantmen. The war ship (**navis longa**) though longer than the merchantman (**navis oneraria**) was not so wide, and could be more easily handled because it was of lighter burden. It was fitted with oars as well as sails.—**Ad latus apertum**: “on the right flank of the enemy”: the shield protected the left side.—**Usui nostris**: p. 279, 12.—**Paulum modo**: “only a little.”—**Atque** at the beginning of a new sentence is rare, and usually makes a strong contrast between what follows and what precedes: “and then.”—**Qui . . . aquilam ferebat**: = **aquilifer**: “the eagle bearer.” The eagle (**aquila**) was the standard of the Roman legion, as the **signa** and **vexilla** were the standards of the cohorts and centuries.—**Nisi vultis = si non vultis**.—**Praestitero**: “I intend to perform” = (**quidquid accidet**), **praestitero**: “(whatever happens) I shall have performed.”—**Inter se**: “each other,” the Latins have no reciprocal pronoun corresponding to the Greek *ἀλλήλους*.—**Hos . . . conspexissent**: “and when those on board the nearest ships had been the first to see

them": with *ex navibus*, cp. *ex equis pugnare*: "to fight on horse-back."

**Chapter XXVI.**—*Nostrī tamen . . . hostes vero*: the clauses are inverted: see note on *autem*, B. IV, Chap. XXIV.—*Atque alius alia ex navi*: after *atque* supply *quod* from the previous clause: "and further, because some from one ship and some from another."—*Aliquos singulares*: "some isolated men."—*Ubi . . . conspexerant*: "whenever they saw": in *iterative* action, the pres., imperf., and future of the principal clause have respectively the perf., plupf., and fut. perf. in the subordinate clause. Note the force of the imperfects.—*Ab latere aperto*: see Caesar, B. IV, Chap. XXV, note on *ad latus apertum*.—*Plures*: agrees with *hostes* and in contrast to *paucos*.—*Quos conspexerat*: "whomever he saw": see note above on *ubi conspexerant*.—*Submittebat*: give the force of impf.—*Suis copiis consecutis*: "and when all their comrades had come up to them."—*Neque . . . potuerunt*: "and yet were not able."—*Hoc . . . defuit*: "this was the only thing that Caesar lacked to maintain his previous good fortune."

**Chapter XXVII.**—*Simul atque . . . receperunt*: p. 298, 2.—*Ex fuga*: "after the flight."—*Obsides daturōs*: scil. *se esse*.—*Imperasset*: p. 305, 2.—*Supra*: see B. IV, Chapter XXI.—*Demonstraveram*: perf. more usual.—*Praemissum*: scil., *fuisse*.—*Cum . . . deferret*: "since he was bearing the commands of Caesar in the character of ambassador": p. 297, 4.—*Ut ignosceretur*: scil. *multitudini ab eo*: "that the common people would be pardoned by him": p. 278, 4.—*Quod . . . intulissent*: "of their having waged war against him": virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—*Ultrō*: "of their own accord."—*Arcessitam*: "as they had to be brought."

**Chapter XXVIII.**—*His rebus*: "on these terms," or "by these means."—*Post diem quartum quam*: *post* is regarded as governing *diem*, but really belongs to *quam*, forming *postquam*. The regular construction would be *quarto die postquam*.—*Superiore portu*: probably Ambleteuse, north from Boulogne.—*Leni vento*: abl. abs.—*Solverunt*: scil. *ancoras*: "set sail."—*Sui . . . periculo*: "peril to themselves."—*Cum completerentur*: "when they were nevertheless getting filled with water in spite of the fact that they dropped their anchors."—*Tamen* opposes *ancoris iactis*.—*Adversa nocte*: "in the face of night."

**Chapter XXIX.**—*Nocte*: night of August 30th, 55 B.C.—*Qui dies*: regularly the construction would be: *quo die luna consuevit*, etc., the highest or spring tides occur a day after new moon and a day after full moon.—*Incognitum*: in the Mediterranean there are no tides or very slight ones at certain points. One would suppose that Caesar's soldiers would have observed the tide on the west coast of France, the previous year, when they were fighting the Veneti.—*Exercitum transportandum curaverat*: see *Vocab.* under *curo*.—*Quae . . . deligatae*: "which were riding at anchor."—*Funibus . . . amissis*: "owing to the loss of their ropes, anchors, and the rest of their tackling": causal abl. absolute. The abl. absolute is often equivalent to a causal clause.—*Id quod . . . accidere*: "as was unavoidable."

able.”—**Quod**: acc. subject of **accidere**; the phrase **quod accidere** is subject of **necesse est**.—**Quibus possent**: = **ut eis possent**: “on which they could be conveyed home”: consequence clause: p. 296, 5.—**Usui**: p. 279, 12.—**Omnibus constabat**: “it was agreed by all”: dative of indirect object. We also find **inter omnes constare**.—**Hiemari oportere**: “that winter had to be passed.”—**In hiemem**: “to last till winter.”

**Chapter XXX.**—**Principes**: subject of **duxerunt**.—**Hoc . . . quod**: “for the reason that”: p. 293, 2.—**Hoc**: abl. of means.—**Etiam angustiora**: “even narrower” than usual.—**Optimum . . . producere**: “thought the best thing to do was to renew the war, to keep our men from corn supplies and to prolong the campaign to the winter.”—**Factu**: p. 175.—**His superatis . . . interclusis**: conditional abl. absolute: “if these were defeated and prevented from returning”=**Si superati essent . si interclusi essent**.—**Reditu**: abl. of separation: p. 282, 1.—**Suos . . . deducere**: “to call back their men” from the interior to the sea-coast.

**Chapter XXXI.**—**Ex eventu navium**: “from the accident to his vessels”: objective genitive: p. 281, 7.—**Ex eo, quod**: “from the fact (namely) that”: p. 293, 2.—**Quod accidit**: “which actually did occur”: for the indicative see p. 307, 13 (a).—**Subsidia**: “resources.”—**Cotidie**: said of daily repetition: **in dies, in dies singulos, in diem**, said of daily increase or decrease.—**Quae . . . naves earum=earum navium quae**: antecedent expressed in relative clause.—**Cum . . . administraretur**: either impersonal or with **res** understood as subject.—**Reliquis . . . effecit**: literally: “he so arranged that it might be suitably sailed with the rest”: “he made sailing possible with the rest.”—**Navigari**: impersonal.

**Chapter XXXII.**—**Dum . . . geruntur**: p. 299, 4.—**Frumentatum**: p. 289, 1. Caesar had with him in Britain the 7th and 10th legions.—**Interposita**: “having arisen.”—**Hominum**: “inhabitants.”—**Ventitaret**: frequentative: “were coming to and fro.”—**Portis**: what were the names of the gates of a Roman camp?—**In statione**: “on sentry duty.”—**Quam consuetudo ferret**: “than was usual”: **ut** consecutive is sometimes omitted after **quam**: p. 296, 5 (c).—**In ea parte . . . quam in partem**: the antecedent repeated in the relative clause.—**Id quod erat**: “the truth,” “what really was the fact.” See note, Chap. XXXI, on **quod accidit**.—**Aliquid novi . . . consilii**: “some new design”: partitive genitive: p. 280, 3.—**Cohortes**: with **iussit**.—**In stationibus**: see **in statione** above.—**In stationem succedere**: see **Vocab.** under **statio**.—**Nam quod**: “for since”: **nam** is to be taken with **delituerant** and **quod** with **erat**.—**Incertis ordinibus**: abl. abs.: “since their lines were broken”: see **ordo** in **Vocab.**—**Circumdederant**: scil. **nostros**.

**Chapter XXXIII.**—**Ex essedis**: “on war chariots”: cp. **ex equo pugnare**.—**Pugnae**: = **pugnandi**.—**Per omnes partes**: *i.e.*, up and down between the two armies.—**Ipsa terrore equorum**: “by the very terror caused by their horses”: subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Ordines**: scil. **hostium**.—**Cum . . . insinuaverunt**: “whenever they work their way”: note the iterative use of **cum**: see note on **ubi . . . conspexerant**, B. IV, Chap. XXVI.—**Turmas**: refers to the divisions of the British horse.—



**Illi** : the warriors, though some take it to mean the retainers (**clientes**) : cp. Tacitus (Agr. 12) : **Auriga honestior** : **clientes propugnans**.—In **declivi ac praecipiti loco** : “when the ground is sloping and even steep” : since the verb **esse** has no pres. part. the prepositional abl. abs. (abl. + prep.) is used for it.—**Brevi** : scil. **tempore** : “in an instant.”

**Chapter XXXIV.**—**Quibus rebus** : either (1) causal ablative, “owing to these facts,” “wherefore”; (2) ablative of means with **perturbatis** : “to our men confused by these attacks from the fact that the mode of fighting was new.”—**Namque** = Greek *καὶ γάρ* : “and (this was evident) for,” etc.—**Quo facto** : concessive abl. abs. : “though this happened.”—**Ad lacesendum** : scil. **hostes** : “for skirmishing with the enemy.”—**Quae . . . continerent** : consecutive relative : p. 296, 5.—**Quanta . . . daretur** : “what a splendid opportunity was presented of securing booty and of freeing themselves for ever.”—**Liberandi** : sing., though **sui** is plur.—**Daretur** : subjunctive : p. 291, 1, and p. 307, 11.—**His rebus** : “by these representations,” referred to in the previous sentence.

**Chapter XXXV.**—**Idem** : subject of **fore** and explained by the clause **ut . . . effugerent** : “that they (the Britons) would escape owing to their speed.” They had greater mobility than the Romans.—**Diutius** : join this with **non** : “they could no longer withstand.”—**Quos tanto spatio . . . potuerunt** : “and pursuing them so far as their strength and speed allowed.”—**Quos = et eos**.—**Cursu et viribus** : abl. of instrument : p. 283, 5.—**Occiderunt** : scil. **nostri milites**. Distinguish in meaning **occiderunt**.

**Chapter XXXVI.**—**Numerum obsidum duplicavit** : = **duplicem numerum obsidum imperavit** : hence **his** is a dative.—**Quem . . . imperaverat** : see Book IV, Chap. XXVII.—**Propinqua die aequinoctii** : causal abl. abs. The date of the equinox was September 24th. As Caesar landed August 27th and left about September 24th, we can see how stubbornly the Britons must have fought, as he got no further than the shore.—**Infirmis navibus** : a causal abl. abs.—**Hiemi . . . subiciendam** : scil. **esse** : “that his voyage ought not to be exposed to a storm.”—**Eosdem . . . portus** : see note on **tertia vigilia** (B. IV, Chap. XXII).

**Chapter XXXVII.**—**Ex navibus** : refers to the **duae onerariae** referred to at the end of Chap. XXXVI.—**Proficiscens** : “in the act of setting out” = **cum proficisceretur**.—**Non ita magno** : “with not so very large a number” : this use of **ita** is confined to negative sentences.—**Si . . . nollent** : dependent clause of oblique narration after **iusserunt** : p. 307, 11.—**Orbe facto** : in cases of extreme danger the Romans formed a circle with their baggage in the centre while the soldiers faced the enemy. We should say “forming a square.”—**Suis auxilio** : p. 279, 12.—**Amplius horis** : the ordinary construction would be **horas** : see note on **amplius . . . millibus**, B. IV, Chap. XI.

**Chapter XXXVIII.**—**Siccitates** : the plural may refer to successive periods or to the dryness in different localities.—**Quo se recipere non haberent** : “did not know where to retreat” : with this meaning of **habere** compare that of the Greek *ἐχω* : *οὐκ εἶχον ὅπου τράπωμαι*. Note that **quo se recipere** would be a deliberative subjunctive in direct = **quo nos recipiamus**? “to what place are we to retreat?”—**Quo perfugio . . .**

fuerant usi: quo is attracted into the case of perfugio: "which (*i.e.* the swamps) they had used as a refuge."—Omnino: "in all."—Ex litteris: "in accordance with Caesar's despatch."—Supplicatio: either a thanksgiving for national success as here or a day of humiliation for national disaster.

## BOOK V.

Chapter I.—In Italiam:=in Galliam Cisalpinam: Italy Proper did not till 27 B.C. include *Liguria, Gallia Cisalpina* and *Illyricum*, though as here it often was applied to all the country south of the Alps. Caesar usually spent his winters at Lucca or Ravenna.—Consuerat:=consu-  
 everat.—Imperat (ut) curarent: note the historic present imperat shown by the sequence of tense.—Possent: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—Quam quibus:=quam (eas naves) quibus.—In nostro mari: the Mediterranean.—Atque id: scil. facit.—Propter crebras commutationes: refers to the varying currents in the channel.—Ad onera: scil. transportanda from the transportandam following.—In reliquis . . . maribus: the different parts of the Mediterranean went under various names.—Actuarias: "as rowing vessels," note that impero can take an inf. if that inf. is pass. What would be the regular construction? p. 292, 1.—Usui: p. 279, 12.—Conventibus: Caesar as proconsul held *assizes* or *courts of justice* in the chief cities of Northern Italy.—Qui doceant: p. 294, 5.—Paratos satisfacere:=paratos ad satisfaciendum: the inf. with esse paratos is on the analogy of velle, which is equivalent to paratos esse.—Fecerint: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—Qui . . . aestiment . . . constituent: p. 294, 5: litis aestimatio in criminal law is the assessment of the amount of damages a convicted person has to pay.

Chapter II.—Citeriorem Galliam: otherwise called *Gallia Cisalpina*.—Ad exercitum: wintering in Belgium (Book IV, Chap. XXXVIII).—Singulari militum studio: abl. abs.—Cuius: attracted into the case of the antecedent: quod would be regular.—In summa . . . inopia: prepositional abl. abs.: see note on in praecipiti ac declivi loco (B. IV, Chap. XXXIII); "though they were in the greatest need of all kinds of materials."—Neque . . . possint: "and they were almost ready to be launched in a few days": literally, "and there was not much short of that point but that they might be launched." We should expect ut instead of quin: p. 293, 1, A.—Deduci: see Vocab. under deduco.—Huic rei: "for carrying out this object," *i.e.*, collecting the fleet at *Portus Itius*.—Expeditis: "in fighting trim," *i.e.*, without heavy baggage.—Ad concilia: *i.e.*, the assembly of the Gallic tribes which Caesar held at Samarobriua (*Amiens*).

Chapter III.—Alter: "the latter," *i.e.*, Cingetorix.—In officio: see Vocab. under officium.—Ab amicitia . . . defecturos: see Vocab. under deficio.—Gererentur: dep. clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2.—Cogere: depends on instituit at the end of the sentence.—Per aetatem: might mean that they were too old or too young.—In silvam . . . abditis: abdo with in and accusative involves the idea of removal as well as concealment: "having been removed to the Ardennes wood and concealed there."—Quoniam . . . non possent: Caesar is not stating their real motive,

but what they alleged to be their motive : p. 297, 3.—Note the meaning of **consulere** with a dative: see Vocab. under **consulo**.—**Sese . . . noluisse** : the inf. depends on the notion of *saying* contained in **legatos mittit**.—**Quo facilius** : p. 294, 4.—**Laberetur** : “would fall away from their allegiance,” “would revolt.”

**Chapter IV.**—**Dicerentur . . . deterreret** : p. 291, 1.—**Nominatim** : “personally,” in the summons: the selection of the rest would be left to Indutiomarus.—**Consolatus** : “reassured him” in regard to the safety of his son and relatives who were to accompany Caesar to Britain.—**Principibus . . . convocatis hos** : note the irregularity for **principes . . . convocatos** without the redundant **hos**.—**Quod = namque id**.—**Cum . . . tum** : “both . . . and.”—**Merito eius** : “as a reward for (by reason of) his service” : p. 281, 7.—**Eius** : Cingetorix.—**Se** : Caesar.—**Magni interesse** : p. 282, 14.—**Qui . . . fuisset** : subjunctive of causal relative : p. 298, 5; and of oblique narration : p. 305, 2 : “and since he had already been unfriendly disposed towards us.”—**Inimico . . . animo** : abl. of quality : p. 284, 12.—**Hoc dolore** : “at this grievance.”

**Chapter V.**—**Equitatus** : the nobility who served as cavalry.—**Numero** : abl. of respect : p. 284, 13.—**Perspexerat** : “he had observed.”—**Obsidum loco** : “as hostages.”

**Chapter VI.**—**Magni animi, magnae . . . auctoritatis** : p. 280, 4.—**Accedebat huc quod** : “to this was added the fact that,” “there was the further consideration that” : p. 293, 2.—**Huc = ad hoc . . . neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa** : see Vocab. under **deprecor** : “and they did not dare to send envoys to Caesar to contradict this or to beg for mercy at his (Caesar’s) hands.”—**Omnibus . . . precibus** : “by all kinds of entreaties.”—**Navigandi** : objective genitive depending on **insuetus** : p. 281, 7.—**Timeret . . . diceret** : the reasons given by Dumnorix were not regarded by Caesar as real reasons : p. 297, 3.—**Quod . . . diceret = quod religionibus impediretur, ut dicebat** : “because (as he said) he was prevented by religious scruples.” Perhaps because Britain was the centre of Druidism.—**Territare** : historical inf.—**Non . . . fieri dixit** omitted before oblique narration.—The clause **ut . . . spoliaretur** is the subject of **fieri** : so also in the next part of the sentence the clause **ut . . . necaret** is in apposition to **consilium**.—**Interponere** : the historical inf.—**Ex usu** : see Vocab. under **usus**.—**Communi consilio** : cf. **publico consilio** : see Vocab. under **consilium**.

**Chapter VII.**—**Caesar** : subject of **statuebat**.—**Quod . . . tribuebat** : so **quod . . . videbat** below : p. 297, 3.—**Quibuscumque rebus posset** : virtual oblique : p. 307, 11.—**Longius** : “too far.”—**Prospiciendum** : scil. **statuebat** : “he made up his mind that he should adopt measures.”—**Temporis = anni**.—**Dabat operam** : see Vocab. under **opera**.—**Milites peditesque = pedites equitesque** : the cavalry in a legion numbered 300, the infantry 4,200.—**Omnium impeditis animis** : “when the attention of all was taken up” with the embarkation.—**Retrahi que imperat** : see note on **actuaris** (B. V, Chap. I).—**Si vim faciat neque pareat** : virtual oblique : p. 307, 11.—**Pro sano** : “as a sane man.”—**Qui . . . neglexisset** : see note on **qui . . . fuisset** (B. V, Chap. IV).

Chapter VIII.—**Portus**: see note on *tertia vigilia* (B. IV, Chap. XXIII).—**Pro tempore et pro re**: “as time and circumstances demanded.”—**Pari numero . . . quem . . . reliquerat**: instead of *quem* we should have expected *atque* or *ac*: “with the same number of cavalry as he had left”: Caesar took half of his whole force of cavalry with him.—**Aestu**: the ebb tide carrying the ships from the shore.—**Eam partem insulae**: see note on *aperto ac plano littore* (B. IV, Chap. XXIII).—**Annotinis**: “those of the year before”: in Chap. I he calls them *veteres*.—**Sui . . . commodi**: either a phrase governed by *causa* understood, “for the sake of his own convenience,” or a descriptive genitive depending on *quas*.—**Quisque**: *i.e.*, merchants or the like.—**Amplius octingentae**: note that *amplius*, *plus*, *minus* have no influence on the construction: see on *amplius . . . millibus*, B. IV, Chap. XI.—**Superiora**: “farther up the country.”

Chapter IX.—**Consedissent**: p. 291, 1.—**Qui . . . essent**: p. 294, 5.—**Praesidio navibus**: p. 279, 12.—**De tertia vigilia**: *de* with a word of *time* originally means, “starting from” a point: hence “after the third watch was set.”—**Navibus**: “for his ships,” dative of remote object with *metuo*, *timeo*.—**Quod . . . relinquebat**: p. 297, 3.—**Ut videbantur**: “apparently”: note the personal use of *videor*.—**Testudine facta**: see Vocab. under *testudo*.—**Fugientes**: acc. after *prosequi*: *eos* governed by *vetuit*.—**Quod . . . ignorabat . . . volebat**: p. 297, 3.—**Munitioni castrorum**: “for the construction of the camp”: cf. *castra munire*, “to encamp.”

Chapter X.—**Postridie eius diei**: literally, “on the day following that day”: *postridie* = *posterius die*, a locative of time: *eius diei*: genitive of description: (see note, B. IV, Chap. XIII).—**Aliquantum itineris**: p. 280, 3.—**Extremi**: “the rear of the enemy.” Others take it to mean “the rear of the expeditionary force” of Caesar. In that case *iam in conspectu* means “still in sight of Caesar,” who remained behind in the camp.—**Qui nuntiarent**: p. 294, 5.—**Subsisterent . . . possent**: subjunctives of dep. clause of oblique narration: p. 305, 2.

Chapter XI.—**Resistere**: “halt.”—**Coram perspicit**: “he in person sees.”—**Sic ut**: literally, “to the extent that”: cf. use of *tantum*.—**Magno negotio**: “with great trouble.”—**Fabros**: “ship carpenters”; a corps of *fabri*, “wrights,” skilled in mechanical arts, was attached to each legion, under a *praefectus fabrum*.—**Quam plurimas posset**: virtual oblique: as many as Labienus thought he could build: p. 307, II.—**Iis legionibus**: “with the aid of those legions”: abl. of instrument: p. 283, 5.—**Quae sunt apud eum**: not an integral clause of oblique narration: p. 307, 13, (a).—**Multae operae ac laboris**: p. 280, 4.—**Subduci**: see Vocab. under *subduco*.—**Ne . . . intermissis**: “not even the night time making any interruption in the continuance of the labor of the soldiers.”—**Eodem**: “to the same position,” *i.e.*, to the camp by the river.—**Summa . . . administrandi**: “the supreme command in, and conduct of, the war.”—**Communi consilio**: “by common consent”: cf. *publico consilio*.—**Circiter . . . octoginta**: *i.e.*, from near Deal, where he probably landed.

Chapter XII.—**Quos = et eos**: the subject of *proditum* (*esse*) is the clause *quos natos (esse) in insula*: “and they state that the tradition is

that they were indigenous," literally, "born in the island itself."—**Pars**: scil. **incolitur**.—**Iis nominibus civitatum**: = **nominibus earum civitatum**: "by the names of those states."—**Quibus . . . ex civitatibus**: for the repetition of the antecedent with the relative, see note on **quibus in locis** (B. IV, Chap. VII).—**Aere**: "bronze," a mixture of copper and tin and different from brass, a mixture of copper and zinc.—**Taleis ferreis**: "iron bars."—**Plumbum album**: "tin": Caesar here reverses the facts.—**Praeter fagum atque abietem**: probably Caesar did not meet with these, and hence denied their existence. They are certainly plentiful now in Britain.—**Animi voluptatisque causa**: "for amusement and pleasure."—**Loca**: see note on **locis frigidissimis** (B. IV, Chap. I).

**Chapter XIII.**—**Inferior**: scil. **angulus**: this is Land's End, off the coast of Cornwall.—**Alterum**: scil. **latus**.—**Dimidio minor**: Great Britain is said to contain 84,000 square miles: Ireland 36,000 square miles.—**Pari spatio transmissus**: literally: "of the same interval of space across as from Gaul to Britain": **transmissus** is a genitive depending on **pari spatio**, abl. of description: p. 284, 12.—**Mona**: the Isle of Man answers the description, though Anglesey is called **Mona** in Tacitus.—**Subiectae**: "adjacent." He probably refers to the Hebrides, Orkney, and Shetland islands off the coast of Scotland; but is, of course, wrong with regard to their position.—**Bruma**: a contraction for **brevima** = **brevissima**: scil. **dies**: 21st December.—**Ex aqua**: "by the water clock" (**clepsydra**), made on the principle of the sand-glass.—**Ut . . . opinio**: "as their belief is."—**Angulus**: *i.e.*, at Kent.

**Chapter XIV.**—**Lacte et carne vivunt**: **vivo** takes the construction of **vescor**: abl. of means.—**Hoc**: scil. **vitro**: "thereby," "by this."—**Horridiore . . . aspectu**: abl. of quality: cf. **capillo . . . promisso**: p. 284, 12.—**Deni duodenique**: "companies of ten or twelve": he probably refers here to the pre-Aryan race of Britain. Join **inter se** with **communes**: "common to one another."—**Quo**: literally "whither," "to whose house." Translate "by whom."—**Deducta est**: "was led home as a bride": cf. **ducere uxorem in matrimonium**.

**Chapter XV.**—**Ut**: consecutive: "with the result that." Note that the perfect subjunctive expresses a single fact: p. 295, 2.—**Compluribus interfectis**: *i.e.*, of the Britons.—**Insecuti**: *i.e.*, **nostri milites Britannos cupidius insecuti**.—**Imprudentibus nostris**: "while our men were off their guard."—**In statione**: see note on **in statione**, B. IV, Chap. XXXII.—**Subsidio**: "as a reinforcement": p. 279, 12.—**His primis**: a regular system of promotion prevailed in the Roman army, and the first cohort contained the most experienced veteran soldiers.—**Novo genere pugnae**: the light armed infantry of the Britons, armed with only broadsword and targe, and the charioteers were more mobile than the legionary soldiers.—**Tribunus militum**: there were six to each legion, each having under him ten centurions. See Vocab. under **tribunus**.

**Chapter XVI.**—**Quod . . . possent . . . auderent**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11: the feelings of the soldiers, not of Caesar, are represented.—**Cedentes**: scil. **hostes** governed by **insequi**.—**Illi**: *i.e.*, the Britons.—**Cederent . . . desilirent . . . contenderent**: virtual oblique narration: p. 307, 11.—**Dispari . . . proelio**: "in an unequal mode of fighting"; when

the Roman ranks were broken, the Britons were more effective soldiers owing to their greater mobility: cf. note on **novo genere pugnae** (B. V, Chap. XV).—**Equestris . . . ratio**: “whereas when the fighting was between cavalry, the danger was equalized whether they were retreating or pursuing.”—**Cedentibus et insequentibus**: scil. **Britannis**: p. 278, 6.—**Rari magnisque intervallis**: “scattered and with wide intervals between the detachments.”—**Exciperent**: “relieved.”—**Integri et recentes**: “the unwounded and fresh.”

**Chapter XVII.**—**Lenius**: “with less energy.”—**Sic uti . . . non ab-sisterent**: “so vehemently that they did not abstain from attacking the companies and legions” —**Subsidio**: ablative: p. 278, foot note.—**Prae-cipites . . . egerunt**: “drove in headlong flight.”—**Sui colligendi**: “of recovering themselves,” “of rallying.”—**Ex hac fuga**: “after this rout.”—**Summis . . . copiis**: “with their full strength.”

**Chapter XVIII.**—**Uno omnino loco**: “at one ford and no more.”—**Alteram**: “opposite.”—**Cum capite . . . exstarent**: “though they had only their heads above water.”—**Capite**: abl. of difference: p. 283, 7.

**Chapter XIX.**—**Contentionis**: “of rivalry.”—**Itinera nostra serva-bat**: “dogged our march.”—**Ex via**: “from the high road”; the imper-fects express repeated action.—**Magno periculo nostrorum equitum**: subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Hoc metu**: see note on **qua spe** (B. IV, Chap. VI).—**Relinquebatur ut**: “the only thing left to do was that Caesar”: p. 293, 1, top of page.—**Neque . . . discedi . . . pateretur**: “should neither allow any wide departure from the main column of the legions.”—**Discedi**: an impersonal infinitive.—**Et tantum . . . noceretur**: “and that so much injury should be inflicted upon the army by way of devastating the fields and causing conflagration.” Note the impersonal use of **noceretur**: p. 278, 4.—**Quantum . . . poterant**: “as the legionary soldiers were able to effect by their exertions on the march,” literally, “by their exertions and march” (hendiadys).

**Chapter XX.**—**Civitas**: the Trinobantes inhabited Essex and the southern part of Suffolk. Their chief town was Camalodunum (now Colchester), afterwards a Roman colony.—**Caesaris fidem secutus**: “having accepted the protection of Caesar,” said of the inferior. The superior was said **recipere in fidem**.—**Ipse**: “while he himself.”—**Ab iniuria Cassivellauni**: “from injury on the part of Cassivellaunus”: subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Qui praesit . . . obtineat**: p. 294, 5.

**Chapter XXI.**—**Ab . . . prohibitis**: “secured from all wrong-doing on the part of the soldiers”: subjective genitive: p. 280, 6.—**Cenimagni**: see Vocab. for the position of these tribes.—**Convenerit**: “have mus-tered”: dependent clause in oblique narration: p. 305, 2; part of the news given to Caesar.—**Cum . . . munierunt**: “whenever they fortify”: see note on **ubi . . . conspexerant**: B. IV, Chap. XXVI.

**Chapter XXII.**—**Dum . . . geruntur**: p. 299, 4.—**His**: the petty kings of Kent.—**Castra navalia**: see Vocab. under **castra**.—**Multum aestatis**: p. 280, 3.—**Extrahi**: “be wasted on delays.”

Chapter XXIII.—*Deductis*: see Vocab. under *deduco*.—*Duobus commeatibus*: “in two relays”: p. 283, 5.—*Quae...portaret*: “such as carried”: consecutive relative: p. 296, 5.—*Et prioris commeatus*: *i.e.*, “both those of the first relay after landing their troops.”—*Prioris commeatus*: genitive of description: p. 280, 4.—*Quas*: supply *eae* before *quas* in apposition to *quae*: the *inanes* are (1) the first relay; (2) those built by Labienus.—*Aequinoctium*: about September 21st.—*Secunda...vigilia*: “at the beginning of the second watch,” about 9 p.m.

---

## EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE.

---

### BASED ON NEPOS AND CAESAR.

---

N.B.—No exercise should be attempted until the text has been mastered. The exercises on Nepos should be done orally.

#### EXERCISE I.

#### Themistocles, Chapter I.

1. Neocles, the father of Themistocles, married a lady of Halicarnassus.  
 2. A lady of Halicarnassus married<sup>1</sup> Neocles, the father of Themistocles.  
 3. None of his countrymen can be considered superior to him. 4. In early youth he neglected his property. 5. His property was neglected by him. 6. Did he not devote himself to public affairs? 7. Let us begin from the beginning of his life. 8. He transacted many important affairs. 9. Many important affairs were transacted by them. 10. This reproach was not removed by Themistocles without great exertion. 11. He became so great that no one was considered equal to him. 12. He was so careless of his property that his father disinherited him. 13. He lived a dissolute life, and was disinherited by his father. 14. He was so ready in speaking that he often appeared in private trials.

<sup>1</sup>*Nubo* (with dative, p. 278, foot note).

## EXERCISE II.

**Themistocles, Chapter I.**

1. He had great vices and great virtues. 2. His virtues were more numerous than his vices. 3. In serving his friends, he served himself. 4. He soon began to speak in the courts. 5. He explained in words very easily the measures which he saw to be necessary. 6. Could he not conjecture very truly what was about to be? 7. He was found to be a man of the greatest energy. 8. He judged that energy was necessary for the transaction of business. 9. Will he not devote himself to his friends in early youth? 10. Hence it happened that the Athenians thought that no one had ever been born equal to him.

## EXERCISE III.

**Themistocles, Chapter II.**

1. The people elected Themistocles general in the war. 2. They built a fleet of one hundred vessels. 3. This fleet was built by them with the money which came in from the mines. 4. When he had built this fleet, he pursued the pirates. 5. The fleet was of great service to Greece during the Persian war. 6. It consisted of two hundred ships. 7. When the city was abandoned, the people put all their possessions on board of their ships. 8. After this report was brought to Athens, the citadel was committed to the elders. 9. The fleet of the Persians consisted of war ships and transports. 10. The messengers who were sent to Delphi brought the following reply. 11. The Athenians were more skilful in naval battles than the other Greeks. 12. The number of the ships with which the Persians crossed the sea was twelve hundred.

## EXERCISE IV.

**Themistocles, Chapter II.**

1. The king of Persia carried on war against Greece by land and sea. 2. War was carried on by the king against Greece. 3. The Athenians sent men to Delphi to consult the priestess. 4. What shall we do? 5. They asked what they should do. 6. The priestess gave an answer, but no one knew what it meant. 7. Themistocles ordered them to leave the city and put all their goods on board of their ships. 8. The elders will protect the citadel, but the rest will go on board of the ships. 9. He persuaded them to obey the command of the god. 10. He persuaded them that all their property should be removed to Salamis. 11. The



elders moved to the citadel to protect themselves. 12. Their plan was to abandon the city to the Persians. 13. Themistocles said that their ships were the wooden walls of which the god spoke.

## EXERCISE V.

**Themistocles, Chapter III.**

1. We are opposed to this plan, but they are in favor of it. 2. The Athenians decided to carry on war by land and sea. 3. Leonidas, King of Sparta, was sent to seize the pass of Thermopylae. 4. The Lacedaemonians seized the pass to prevent the barbarians from advancing into Greece. 5. Men were sent along with Leonidas to prevent the advance of the enemy. 6. The Greek fleet of three hundred vessels engaged the Persian fleet at Artemisium. 7. The two fleets then moored nearer the island of Salamis to meet the attack of the Persians. 8. Our fleet will be stationed between Euboea and Greece. 9. They left Artemisium to avoid being surrounded by the forces of the king. 10. We did not dare to depart for fear that the enemy would surround us with all their forces.

## EXERCISE VI.

**Themistocles, Chapter III.**

1. The result was that the Athenians did not remain at Artemisium. 2. There is danger that the enemy will surround them. 3. If they had remained there, the enemy would have surrounded them. 4. If they remain there, they will all perish. 5. There was a danger that they would be defeated in this battle. 6. Had the Persian fleet sailed round the island of Euboea, they would have surrounded the Athenian fleet. 7. They were threatened by danger from two sides. 8. The result was that they decided to sail to the city. 9. Had they not withstood the Persians at the pass, we should all have perished. 10. The object of Themistocles was to reach Athens. 11. Had they fought with all their fleet, they would have defeated the Persians.

## EXERCISE VII.

**Themistocles, Chapter IV.**

1. After taking Thermopylae, the king will destroy the city with fire. 2. Themistocles advised them to protect themselves. 3. I advised him not to destroy our homes with fire. 4. You will be a match for the forces of the king if they are all scattered. 5. He will advise his comrades to remain where they are. 6. As the enemy are in flight, I advise you not

to remain here but to pursue them. 7. When the army of the king was defeated by Themistocles, the Persians had at once (*statim*) to withdraw from Greece. 8. I do not believe that there is any treachery. 9. Has not Themistocles himself sent me a faithful slave? 10. A messenger came by night to tell the king the designs of the Greeks. 11. He will come from Themistocles who commands their fleet, and the king will believe that the Greeks will be defeated.

## EXERCISE VIII.

**Themistocles, Chapter IV.**

1. He said to the king that the city would be destroyed by fire. 2. "We shall all perish," said he, "if we remain in this place." 3. He said that they would all perish if they remained in that place. 4. The king was not influenced by the words of the Persian commander. 5. A faithful slave was sent to say that the Greeks were in flight. 6. "You will finish the war," said he, "if you defeat us now." 7. They said that he would finish the war if he defeated them. 8. If we attack the enemy we shall crush them. 9. He said that if they attacked the enemy they would crush them. 10. He engaged the enemy in battle in a place so unfavorable that they were not able to extend their line. 11. The place was favorable to us but unfavorable to them. 12. He said that he could not influence the king. 13. They were so terrified by the flames that they would not remain.

## EXERCISE IX.

**Themistocles, Chapter V.**

1. The object of the king was to conquer Greece. 2. Though Greece had been liberated, the Greeks were afraid that the king would return. 3. His forces were so great that he could easily have conquered us. 4. He was informed by Themistocles that the bridge would be destroyed. 5. He is afraid that we will return. 6. The bridge which is built over the river will be broken down within ten days. 7. You did not return though you promised to do so. 8. The king of Persia had a very great fleet. 9. Was not the king defeated in battle by the Athenians? 10. Do you think that Europe will succumb to Asia? 11. His foresight was such that none of the Athenians can be compared to him.

## EXERCISE X.

**Themistocles, Chapter VI.**

1. This harbor, as it was small, the Athenians did not use. 2. They built another harbor to protect the city. 3. He surrounded the city with walls

so high that they protected the city. 4. They declared that it was unnecessary to build such high walls. 5. The walls that had been built could not protect any city. 6. The man was sent to say that the walls were not being built. 7. He had no sufficient reason for saying this. 8. He said in our presence that he would send an ambassador to declare that the walls were not being built. 9. By this victory he will gain such glory that none can be called his equal. 10. He knew that ambassadors would be sent by the enemy to deny this. 11. He gained such pre-eminence by his victory that he was easily the first man in Athens.

## EXERCISE XI.

## Themistocles, Chapter VI.

1. He carried out his plans without sparing any one. 2. In carrying out his plans no one was spared. 3. The result was that they undertook to build a wall. 4. Since all knew that the walls were being built by the Athenians, why did he deny the fact? 5. He instructed all to build walls high enough to keep out the enemy. 6. The result was that their walls protected them. 7. After the walls began to be built, the enemy sent ambassadors to the Athenians. 8. He alone went as ambassador to order the Athenians to desist. 9. When you have not forbidden us to build, shall we desist from the work? 10. The result was that all, whether slave or freeman, desisted from building the walls.

## EXERCISE XII.

## Themistocles, Chapter VII.

1. It is right that you should send men in whom you have confidence. 2. They said that it would not be right to send men in whom they had no confidence. 3. Whenever he went to the magistrates, he requested them to hold him as a hostage. 4. "Do not," said he, "let the ambassadors of the enemy go till I am sent back." 5. We have, according to the common rights of all nations, protected our homes with walls. 6. That you may the more easily protect your city, you have surrounded it with walls. 7. The fleet of the king has often suffered shipwreck near the city. 8. You are doing wrong, since you do not take into consideration what will be of advantage to all Greece. 9. If you wish to recover your own ambassadors, send me back again to Athens. 10. He wished to protract the time as long as possible.

## EXERCISE XIII.

**Themistocles, Chapter VIII.**

1. They condemned him for treachery in his absence. 2. Ambassadors were sent to accuse him of treachery. 3. They will take refuge at the court of the king as he is our friend. 4. The king received them under his protection because he had been himself a suppliant. 5. He promised to give the captain of the ship a gift when he reached Ephesus. 6. The captain did not allow anyone to disembark till he had landed Themistocles. 7. After he had ordered Themistocles to consult for his own safety, he landed him at Ephesus. 8. He knew that it was unsafe to land at the island of Naxos, as there was an Athenian army there. 9. As you have made me this promise, I will tell you who I am. 10. If you save me from my enemies, I will show my gratitude. 11. When they reached the house the king had fled.

## EXERCISE XIV.

**Themistocles, Chapter IX.**

1. He said that he had done much harm to the king. 2. He had informed the king that the bridge would be destroyed. 3. The object of the enemy is to destroy the bridge. 4. He was informed that the enemy intended to surround him. 5. My object in doing this is to free you from fear. 6. He will tell the king to receive you as a friend. 7. Do you know that you will have in me a good friend of your king? 8. Everybody knows that I have been driven from Greece because I am a friend of the king. 9. He talked over the matter with me after he learned that I had returned home. 10. When you come here, stay at my house.

## EXERCISE XV.

**Themistocles, Chapter X.**

1. He will devote himself to literature for a year. 2. It is said that he was so learned in the Persian tongue that he spoke it more readily than many a Persian. 3. It will be said that he received presents from the king. 4. The king promised to give him a city from which he might obtain bread. 5. Another city was given him to supply him with wine. 6. There are some who say that he died of poison. 7. Did he take poison because he could not make good the promises he had made to the king? 8. If you are willing to adopt my plans, I will supply you with forces to crush the Greeks. 9. As I have made this promise to you, I will make it good. 10. There are some who say that he was buried in Attica. 11. Others say

that it was not lawful to bury any one accused of treason in Attica, and that he was buried at Magnesia.

## EXERCISE XVI.

## Aristides, Chapter I.

1. Why do you consider me worthy of punishment? 2. I asked him why he considered me worthy of punishment. 3. Although he was the only man among them surnamed the Just, he was condemned to exile. 4. The citizens restored him to his native land six years after he was expelled. 5. We can easily see how much Themistocles surpassed him in ability. 6. It is said that Aristides asked a citizen why he was being condemned to exile. 7. When they were asked what crime Aristides had committed, they replied that he was surnamed the Just. 8. I am not pleased with this man because he is called the Just. 9. The punishment for such a crime was exile for ten years. 10. He knew that he could not check an excited populace.

## EXERCISE XVII.

## Aristides, Chapter II.

1. The battle was fought before he returned. 2. We shall all participate in the battle. 3. Before the supreme command was transferred to Aristides, the Athenians defeated a large army of the barbarians. 4. The result will be that the supreme command will be transferred (use *futurum esse ut*) to the Athenians. 5. He performed many illustrious acts in that war, but none was more illustrious than this. 6. In consequence of the victory, the Athenians became the leaders of the Greeks. 7. The result of this was that he was defeated by us. 8. Almost all the states of Greece joined the Athenian alliance. 9. When the battle was fought, they selected him as general. 10. Before that time the supreme power was in the hands of the Lacedaemonians.

## EXERCISE XVIII.

## Aristides, Chapters II, III.

1. This man was chosen to repel the barbarians. 2. They asked him to determine how many ships each state should contribute. 3. The allies contributed yearly a large amount of money to the common treasury. 4. What place do you wish to be the treasury? 5. They afterwards transferred it from Delos to Athens. 6. His poverty was so great that he left no money to his children. 7. Though he was in charge of important

business he died in poverty. 8. How many ships have you built? 9. His daughters will be maintained at the public expense. 10. Must we choose such a one as leader? 11. Order them to raise two hundred talents.

## EXERCISE XIX.

**Hannibal, Chapter I.**

1. Hannibal surpassed all other commanders in valor as much as the Romans surpassed all other nations. 2. He was vanquished by the envy of his own countrymen. 3. We do not doubt that he almost vanquished Rome. 4. Even after his countrymen exiled him, he never ceased to hate us. 5. If he had not been a great leader he would not have defeated you so often. 6. Does he not need help from others? 7. His hatred against the Romans was so great that it never left him. 8. Though he fought for fifteen years in Italy, he was never defeated by us. 9. Will you drive a man of such valor from the country, my countrymen?

## EXERCISE XX.

**Hannibal, Chapter II.**

1. No one doubted that he was a powerful king. 2. Do not conceal it from them. 3. Tell him that you have bribed Hannibal to be our friend. 4. They had been sent by the Romans to discover the disposition of the king. 5. Prepare war against Rome and make me your leader. 6. I am afraid that he has other views. 7. When they went to the king at the appointed time, they told him that they could never be the friends of Rome. 8. There is no doubt they will do this to no purpose. 9. I shall always be of the same mind as I am now.

## EXERCISE XXI.

**Hannibal, Chapter III.**

1. Will he set out with his father for Spain? 2. After the death of his father, he commanded the cavalry. 3. When Hasdrubal was killed Hannibal became commander of the whole army. 4. Do you think that he can take it by storm? 5. Within three years all the tribes of Spain were subdued by him. 6. After raising three very large armies, he crossed the Alps, a feat which no commander had ever performed before him. 7. Leaving one army in Spain, and sending another to Africa, he led a third into Italy. 8. After defeating the Alpine tribes who attempted to obstruct his march, he built a road across the mountains. 9. He defeated all the nations whom he engaged in battle.

## EXERCISE XXII.

**Hannibal, Chapter IV.**

1. When the Romans first met him in battle they were defeated. 2. Scipio was wounded in the battle fought near that city. 3. Hannibal met the Romans a second time in battle and defeated them. 4. Two Roman consuls were killed by him in the same year. 5. After crossing the Apennines he was attacked with a disease of the eyes (of one of his eyes), of which he never afterwards had the proper use. 6. It is said that he was carried in a sedan chair. 7. Do you think that anyone ever routed so many Roman generals? 8. The consul of the previous year was defeated by him in battle and fled. 9. After crossing the Alps, he routed one consul at Ticinus, and both in the following year at Trasimenus. 10. After defeating two armies, he seized the mountain passes.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

**Hannibal, Chapter V.**

1. Shall we now set out for Rome? 2. We shall be resisted by no one. 3. Will he dupe our general again? 4. Have you heard how he extricated himself? 5. So terrified were the Romans that no one left the camp. 6. All know how great a general he is. 7. He has defeated all our generals. 8. Whenever he pitched his camp, no one dared to oppose him. 9. He met no resistance after the battle of Cannae. 10. Not many days after this battle, he ambushed and defeated another army.

## EXERCISE XXIV.

**Hannibal, Chapter VI.**

1. He will be recalled from Italy to carry on war in Africa. 2. When the two leaders met they could not agree upon terms of peace. 3. As it was impossible to agree, the Carthaginians had to fight. 4. I am afraid they have ambushed our army. 5. As the resources of the country are exhausted, I wish to make peace. 6. Collecting an army, he met the Romans at Zama. 7. Within two days his army marched to Hadrumetum. 8. By making peace now, I shall be stronger by and by (say, *in a short time*). 9. If I escape now, I shall engage them again when I can. 10. He collected another army from the soldiers who had escaped.

## EXERCISE XXV.

**Hannibal, Chapter VII.**

1. Let us send envoys to demand his surrender. 2. These wars were carried on by the Romans for many years. 3. Ambassadors were sent

from Carthage to Rome to sue for peace. 4. The ambassadors thanked the Romans because they had brought the war to an end. 5. After the war was over, they recalled him. 6. Being elected chief magistrate, he showed the same diligence in peace as he had previously displayed in war. 7. They begged the Romans to return their hostages. 8. After making this request we returned home. 9. Two men are elected annually at Carthage to govern the country. 10. The new imposts will supply money to pay the Romans.

## EXERCISE XXVI.

**Hannibal, Chapter VIII.**

1. Antiochus was persuaded by Hannibal to set out for Italy. 2. If the Romans had attacked Carthage with a fleet of five ships, the city would have been taken. 3. When he learned that Hannibal was approaching the river, he marched to meet him with a large army. 4. If he had been punished in the same way, he would never have undertaken this war against us. 5. Despairing of success, he set sail for Italy, but was killed soon after by his slaves. 6. Would he ever have formed this plan had he known that we would desert him? 7. In carrying out his plans, he was willing to obey me, and I will never desert him. 8. Though he was defeated in battle, he escaped in safety from the field (*acies*). 9. No one will ever persuade him to desert the city of Carthage.

## EXERCISE XXVII.

**Hannibal, Chapter IX.**

1. Hannibal was afraid that the Cretans would surrender him to the Romans. 2. When he came to Crete, he considered what he would do. 3. When he was in great danger, he formed the following plan. 4. I never thought that they would take my money from me. 5. He knew that the Cretans would carry off the gold if they were able. 6. Let them find out, if they can, where I have deposited it. 7. I will pretend that the gold has been deposited in this temple. 8. Do you suppose the Cretans will believe you? 9. They will carry away this money unless we prevent it. 10. The fame of Cretan avarice has gone forth to all the earth.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

**Hannibal, Chapter X.**

1. When he reaches Pontus he will win over all the tribes of that great country. 2. All through his life he had no object but to make war on



Rome. 3. He knew that it was impossible to gain a victory over the king by arms alone. 4. In winning over these tribes, his object was to collect a large army. 5. Is not the enemy superior both in men and in ships? 6. This done, he ordered the fleet to attack. 7. I will take care that you know in what ship the king is. 8. If you kill the king you shall have a great reward. 9. He said that if they killed the king they should have a great reward. 10. Calling the marines together, he told them that he would crush the enemy by stratagem. 11. Take the king prisoner, but do not kill him.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

**Hannibal, Chapter XI.**

1. Both sides launched their vessels, and the battle began. 2. The marines did not know where the king was. 3. Tell us when we shall attack their fleet. 4. I kept wondering what he found in the letter. 5. The king did not hesitate to open the letter. 6. There can be no doubt that he will be unable to withstand our attacks. 7. They could not understand why the whole fleet attacked the ship of the king. 8. Do you think that he will rout the enemy by such a stratagem? 9. By seeking your own safety you have vanquished your fleet. 10. He said that he was seeking the king in order to give him the letter.

## EXERCISE XXX.

**Hannibal, Chapter XII.**

1. Hannibal happened to be at that time at the court of Prusias. 2. When the ambassadors were dining with the consul, mention was made of him. 3. So long as this man lives, he will be our enemy. 4. Seize him, if you can; you will easily find out where he is. 5. The boy happened to see the envoys coming. 6. He ordered him to find out if the doors were all beset. 7. O that we may find him! 8. Let us beg the king to surrender our enemy. 9. O that we had sent an envoy to them. 10. When the boy returned, he told Hannibal that all the doors of the house were beset. 11. He knew then that he must surrender or die.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

**Hannibal, Chapter XIII.**

1. It is not agreed whether he died in the year 183 B.C. or not. 2. There are some who say that he died in the consulship of Claudius and Fabius. 3. He died at the age of seventy, and in the same year as Scipio.

4. He wrote several books of his campaigns in Asia. 5. It is said that these books were written in Greek. 6. Hannibal employed two Greeks as instructors. 7. It is impossible to decide which of the two is the better general. 8. Though occupied with such important affairs he had time to write books. 9. We can easily see by comparing the deeds of these two that Hannibal was a greater general than Scipio.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter I.**

1. Next year a large number of Germans crossed the Rhine. 2. For several years the Suebi had harassed them and prevented them from tilling their lands. 3. The men who serve in the field are supported by those who remain at home. 4. No one is allowed to remain longer than a year in one place. 5. They spend a large part of their time in hunting. 6. The boys are not trained to any duty and they do nothing against their will. 7. On account of this daily exercise they become men of extraordinary strength. 8. They have no clothing except the skins of the animals they capture in the chase. 9. Even in the coldest weather they bathe in the rivers. 10. They are so powerful that they send forth every year from home a hundred thousand armed men.

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter II.**

1. All the booty they take in war they sell to the merchants, for they import nothing. 2. The Gauls take especial delight in imported horses, while those of the Germans are small and deformed. 3. Caesar tells us that the Germans often leap from their horses in battle. 4. To render these horses more active, they train them daily. 5. They train their horses to remain in one place, so that the riders may be able to find them where they leave them. 6. To prevent the people from becoming effeminate, they do not import wine. 7. They wish to have some one to whom they may sell what they can export. 8. The animals they use at home are small. 9. Do not think that any one uses a saddle. 10. They think that nothing is more disgraceful than to flee from the battle.

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter III.**

1. It is said to be their special glory to have extensive territory. 2. We must make them weaker than ourselves. 3. After they had driven their

enemies from the territory (*abl. abs.*), they made them tributary. 4. They are more civilized than the people of the other states. 5. Though they often attempted to expel us from our lands, they were unable to do so. 6. If they had been more civilized, would they have been weaker? 7. The river Rhine is the boundary on one side; on the other, the lands of the Suebi. 8. This nation is the most civilized of all the Germans. 9. Are they not rather weaker than their neighbors? 10. Though the most powerful nation of all Germany, they did not wish a neighboring nation near them. 11. They did not expel a neighboring tribe, but made it subject.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IV.

1. For several years we have withstood them. 2. Driven from our homes we have been wandering about Germany for three years. 3. They prevented us from crossing by placing forces on each side of the river. 4. He pretended to be going home, but returned within a few days. 5. After seizing our city they expelled us before our forces arrived. 6. After proceeding a journey of many days, they were informed that you had crossed the river. 7. Tell us if they have completed the work in one night. 8. He learned that they intended to cross the river and occupy these villages the rest of the winter. 9. They seized our ships and crossed the river that night. 10. They were so alarmed at his approach that they returned home.

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter V.

1. What have you heard of (*de*) this matter? 2. I asked him what he had heard of the matter. 3. From what district do you come? 4. I asked him from what district he had come. 5. I must not answer you according to your wishes. 6. He compelled the man to repent of his act. 7. Do they listen to every traveller who visits them? 8. They are fickle in forming their plans and very eager for change. 9. Do not be the slave of hearsay. 10. These idle tales often influence them in forming their plans.

EXERCISE XXXVII.—(*Review.*)

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapters I-V.

1. The people of this tribe were eager for hunting. 2. They live on flesh and milk, are clothed (*vestio*) with skins, and even in winter bathe in their rivers. 3. They do not allow the merchants to bring wine into the

country because they believe it enfeebles the constitution. 4. The horses that the Germans employ are small. 5. We buy them at a high price. 6. After devastating the lands of their neighbors they made them tributaries. 7. After wandering throughout Germany for three years, they came to a land which the Menapii inhabited. 8. So alarmed were they at the approach of the Germans that they stationed guards to prevent them from crossing. 9. The Germans had no ships, and therefore could not cross the river. 10. Pretending to return home, they suddenly turned, fell upon the Menapii, and seized their ships.

## EXERCISE XXXVIII.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VI.

1. On learning that ambassadors had been sent to him by the enemy, he set out for the camp. 2. To avoid meeting the enemy, he marched more quickly than usual. 3. They said that they had been induced to cross the Rhine by the Gauls, who had sent ambassadors to them. 4. They declared that everything they had in the camp was in the hands of the enemy. 5. After levying a troop of cavalry from them, he decided to carry on war with the enemy. 6. On his arrival there, he ascertained that the chiefs whom Caesar had summoned had assembled. 7. Several ambassadors came to Caesar to ask him why he was carrying on war against them. 8. On his arrival at the army he was informed that the Germans had been induced to make war upon him. 9. After the departure of the ambassadors from the camp, he induced the soldiers to undertake the war against the Germans. 10. Caesar found out that the Germans were withdrawing from the Rhine into the territory of the Condrusi. 11. He decided to summon the chiefs to calm the feelings of the Gauls. 12. He soon had to face a severer war than he expected.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VII.

1. Corn began to be collected. 2. He began to pick out cavalry. 3. While Caesar was advancing, deputies met him from the German army. 4. They said that they could be useful friends to the Romans, if Caesar would allow them to hold lands in that place. 5. The Germans have waged war on the Roman people for many years. 6. No one makes war on us without being defeated. 7. Do not refuse to give us lands. 8. No one can conquer the Suebi in war, for they are the bravest men in the world. 9. We can easily defend ourselves if we are assailed by others. 10. We have never been the first to make war on others, still we do not refuse to assert our rights, if we are attacked.

## EXERCISE XL.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VIII.

1. If you remain in this place, there will be no friendship between you and me. 2. It is not right for those who cannot protect their own lands to seize those of others. 3. There are no vacant lands in Gaul on which you can settle. 4. If you are willing, you will be allowed to settle in the territory of the Ubii. 5. The ambassadors have come to my camp to complain of the wrongs done by you. 6. Why do you complain of the wrongs done by the Ubii and not ask aid from me. 7. If he had complained of wrongs done by us, would he have asked aid from us? 8. If he had seized the lands of others, he would now possess them. 9. You will not be allowed to hold lands in Gaul, especially since you cannot protect them with your arms. 10. You may, if you wish, settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose deputies have come to my headquarters to seek my aid.

## EXERCISE XLI.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapters IX and X.

1. We shall report to our people what you have asked. 2. When you have deliberated on these matters, return to our camp. 3. Do not move your camp nearer our lines. 4. You will never be able to obtain this request from me. 5. Our cavalry had been sent a few days before across the river to plunder. 6. This river divides into several branches and forms many islands, which are inhabited by savage tribes. 7. This river rising in the Alps flows a long distance in a rapid course. 8. After forming this island, it flows for about eighty miles before it empties into the ocean. 9. When the deputies did not gain their request, they returned to their camp. 10. He suspected that the cavalry that had gone across the Meuse to collect forage several days before would soon return. 11. Caesar says that the inhabitants of these islands live on fish.

EXERCISE XLII.—(*Review.*)

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapters VI-X.

1. On his arrival at the army, he learned that the enemy had been ordered to leave the Rhine. 2. After collecting a supply of corn, he set out against the Germans, who were a few days' march from his camp. 3. We have not been the first to make war upon you; still, we never decline to fight if we are attacked. 4. We can be serviceable to the Romans, if they are willing to be friends with us. 5. Allow us to retain the lands we

have already won with the sword. 6. The Suebi are the only ones in the world to whom we are willing to yield. 7. Not even the gods are a match for the Suebi. 8. The envoys said that they would ask him not to advance nearer. 9. This river, after receiving a tributary from the Rhine, forms many large islands, inhabited by fierce tribes whose diet consists of fish and eggs of birds.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XI.

1. He sent forward envoys to tell the soldiers not to fight. 2. When the deputies were returning, they met Caesar on the march. 3. We beg of you to wait till we shall send word to the Ubii. 4. He said that the cavalry would soon return, if an opportunity was granted them. 5. Caesar, knowing the reason why the delay was asked for, told the deputies to meet him next day. 6. I asked you to settle the matter within the space of three days. 7. I order you to hold out as long as you can, if the enemy attack you. 8. Do not attack them, but hold out until I come. 9. Since a delay of three days has been granted, I shall not advance any further to-day. 10. I shall not advance more than four miles to-day, but to-morrow assemble to hear my demands.

## EXERCISE XLIV.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XII.

1. As soon as the enemy caught a glimpse of us, they were thrown into disorder. 2. We were five thousand in number, though they were only eight hundred. 3. We had no fear of the enemy on that day, for they had asked for a truce. 4. After stabbing many of our horses, they put our cavalry to flight. 5. The brave Piso came to the rescue of his brother, who was surrounded by the enemy. 6. He inspired such terror that our men did not stop till they reached their camp. 7. The enemy attacked our lines so quickly that they threw our men into confusion. 8. We did not think that they would attack us, as they had asked for an armistice a little before. 9. In this battle Piso, while rescuing his brother from peril, was thrown from his horse and killed. 10. As soon as his brother noticed that Piso had fallen, he rushed forward against the enemy and was slain.

## EXERCISE XLV.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIII.

1. We will neither hear the ambassadors nor accept their terms. 2. He ordered all the forces after they were led out of the camp to follow him at

once. 3. It is the height of folly to listen to terms from men who have once been guilty of treachery. 4. Caesar decided to wait till the Gauls formed their plans. 5. When a number of the enemy came to the camp to apologize for their conduct, he seized them at once. 6. He started at once with all his forces against the enemy, after he had seized their deputies. 7. They tried to secure a truce by treachery, but Caesar ordered them to be seized because they had attacked him the day before. 8. When all these matters were arranged, it luckily happened that the enemy came in great numbers to the camp. 9. The Romans knew what prestige they had gained by this battle. 10. No opportunity should be granted the Gauls to form new plans.

## EXERCISE XLVI.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIV.

1. After covering a distance of eight miles, he reached the camp of the enemy. 2. He gave the enemy no time to form their plans or to take up arms. 3. He reached the camp of the enemy before they knew that he was coming. 4. They did not know whether they should defend the camp or seek safety by flight. 5. When Caesar came to the camp of the enemy, the Germans were so alarmed at his sudden arrival that the women and children took to flight. 6. While the cavalry was pursuing the enemy, the rest of the soldiers burst into the camp and quickly put to rout those who had taken up arms to defend themselves. 7. So terrified were the enemy that they did not stop till they had crossed the Rhine. 8. Caesar sent forward the cavalry to make an attack against the enemy.

## EXERCISE XLVII.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XV.

1. When the Germans heard the shouts in the rear, they threw away their arms. 2. After they have thrown away their arms, they will fly to the river. 3. When they saw that a large number of their comrades had fallen, they despaired of their own safety. 4. When they reached the river, many of them plunged in and perished. 5. Many who plunged into the river were drowned in the strong current. 6. Our soldiers to a man returned to our camp in safety, though the loss of the enemy was very great. 7. So many of the Germans were now killed that the rest threw down their arms in despair. 8. Rushing out of the camp they plunged into the river, where they were overwhelmed by the force of the current. 9. When the Germans said they feared the cruelty of the Gauls, Caesar allowed them to remain with him.

EXERCISE XLVIII.—(*Review.*)

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XI-XV.

1. He sent forward cavalry to devastate the lands of the enemy. 2. He gave them an opportunity of sending ambassadors to Rome. 3. You shall have the same terms as were proposed by Caesar. 4. I sent a man to order the soldiers to throw away their arms. 5. They did not desist from flight till they came in sight of our camp. 6. When his brother saw him fall in battle, he rushed against the enemy. 7. We ought to hear the envoys, and listen to the terms they propose. 8. When these matters had been arranged, the Germans came to our camp for the purpose of clearing themselves of this charge. 9. We could not find out what the Germans were intending to do in regard to this matter. 10. When they reached the river many threw themselves headlong into it and perished in the current.

## EXERCISE XLIX.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVI

1. The Germans were easily influenced to cross the Rhine. 2. Caesar thought that when the barbarians learned the power of the Roman people, they would be anxious for their own safety. 3. He sent messengers to demand the surrender of those who had taken part in the war. 4. They earnestly prayed him to bring aid to them, because they were attacked by their enemies. 5. Unless you unite your forces with those of the Gauls, you will not defeat your enemies in battle. 6. Caesar decided to cross the Rhine in order that the Germans, who had come into Gaul, might fear for their own interests. 7. On the arrival of the deputies, they said that they did not think that Caesar had any right to claim authority across the Rhine. 8. They thought that the friendship of Caesar would be of great help to them in future, if they could obtain it.

## EXERCISE L.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVIII.

1. Caesar led his army across the Rhine on the eighteenth day after he began to build the bridge. 2. When he had completed the bridge, he left soldiers at both ends to protect it. 3. When the ambassadors of the enemy asked him to grant them peace, he ordered them to bring hostages to him. 4. He urged the barbarians to hide themselves in the woods. 5. When the enemy asked for peace, he told them that they must obey him. 6. After leaving all their lands, they hid themselves in the woods, to which



they had carried all their goods. 7. When he had led his army across the river, ambassadors came from the enemy to ask him for peace. 8. When the deputies arrived from several states, he promised them peace and friendship.

## EXERCISE LI.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIX.**

1. When the enemy heard that the bridge had been built over the river, they sent messengers in every direction to order their friends to move everything from the towns. 2. When he had delayed a few days in this district, he found out that the enemy had departed to their homes on learning that the Romans had built a bridge. 3. When this was done, those who could bear arms met together in the territory occupied by the Suebi, and there awaited the return of the Romans. 4. When the bridge was built, the enemy urged the women and children to take refuge in the woods. 5. He afterwards went into the territory of the Ubii, whom he had promised to free from the oppression of the Suebi. 6. The place selected by them was about the centre of the district which the enemy held. 7. Caesar thought that he had fully accomplished the objects of his expedition, when he had inspired the Germans with fear and protected the Ubii from wrong. 8. After taking vengeance on the Sugambri and spending in all eighteen days across the Rhine, he returned to Gaul.

## EXERCISE LII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XX.**

1. Since Caesar was not able to find out from the Gallic traders the nature and extent of the island, he decided to visit it in person. 2. If he reached the coast of Britain, he would be able to discover the harbors that were suitable for mooring his war vessels. 3. The Gallic traders who alone were accustomed to go there, had not been able to tell him anything about the inhabitants of the island. 4. He therefore decided to go to the island personally to get a knowledge of the customs and institutions of the people. 5. He decided to go to Britain to prevent the inhabitants from sending aid to the Gauls. 6. Can the merchants tell us anything about this district?

EXERCISE LIII.—(*Review.*)**Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XV-XX.**

1. As he learned that the Germans could easily be induced to enter Gau<sup>1</sup>, he decided to bridge the Rhine and carry on war against them.  
2. When the deputies of the Germans came to our camp, they told Caesar

that they did not think that he had any jurisdiction across the Rhine. 3. After the completion of the bridge many deputies came from the states bordering on the Rhine, asking him to make peace with them. 4. After tarrying a few days in that district, to cut down the grain, he advanced against the Ubii. 5. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons had supplied aid to the Gauls. 6. Knowing nothing personally of the extent of the island, he resolved, even if little of the summer remained, to go and find out what manner of people dwelt on it.

## EXERCISE LIV.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXI.**

1. Before he set out for Britain, he ordered his lieutenant to cross the channel in a war ship. 2. He instructed his lieutenant to explore the sea coast of Britain, and to report to him the character and size of its harbors. 3. The lieutenant soon returned since he did not dare to entrust himself to the savages. 4. When he advised the ambassadors of the enemy to give hostages and obey the commands of the Roman people, they said that they would execute all his orders. 5. When he was assembling his fleet with the intention of crossing the channel, the inhabitants of Britain, learning of his design through traders, sent deputies to him. 6. After five days the lieutenant returned to Caesar and told him all he had learned of the sea coast of the island.

## EXERCISE LV.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXII.**

1. The Morini excused themselves for making war on the Romans on the ground that they were savages. 2. Very opportunely deputies came to Caesar from the Morini, while he was collecting his ships to convey his troops. 3. They said that they had made war on the Roman people because they were unacquainted with our custom. 4. Caesar promised to take them under his protection. 5. Caesar had no desire to carry on war against the Gauls, for he wished to cross as quickly as possible to Britain. 6. The wind prevented the eighteen ships, in which the cavalry were being transported, from reaching the harbor. 7. When they had promised to execute all his orders, and had collected a large force of cavalry, Caesar set sail with the seventh and tenth legions and a fleet of eighty ships. 8. After giving his lieutenant an army to lead against the enemy, he decided to hold the port with a sufficient garrison.

## EXERCISE LVI.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIII.

1. He waited at anchor till he obtained weather suitable for sailing. 2. He decided to wait at anchor till the other ships, which had set sail from the upper port, should arrive. 3. He advised his soldiers to carry out all his instructions promptly and according to command. 4. We must wait till the weather is favorable for embarkation. 5. When he had obtained a place suitable for disembarkation, he moored his ships along the shore. 6. When the cavalry had embarked on the vessels that he had collected in the harbor, Caesar gave the signal for sailing. 7. Finding the enemy ready to hurl their weapons from the steep cliffs upon him as he landed, he decided that he must wait till the rest of the army arrived. 8. Then he weighed anchor, and with favorable wind and tide he proceeded to a more open place on the coast.

## EXERCISE LVII.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIV.

1. The barbarians sent their cavalry ahead to prevent our men from disembarking. 2. We could not land because the water was so shallow that the ships could not approach the shore. 3. We were compelled to form our line among the waves because the ships had to be brought to in deep water. 4. When we leaped down from the vessels into the water, the enemy spurred on their horses down to the shore, and hurled their darts at us. 5. Our men were so terrified by the enemy that they did not show the same spirit that they were accustomed to exhibit in battles. 6. When the savages heard of Caesar's plan, they sent their cavalry and charioteers ahead to prevent his landing. 7. The enemy, who were thoroughly familiar with the ground, advanced into the water to meet us.

## EXERCISE LVIII.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXV.

1. The war ships advancing a short distance from the transports were moored on the right of the enemy. 2. When the enemy were dislodged by the arrows of our men, they withdrew from their position. 3. The eagle-bearer ordered the men to leap down from the ships into the water if they did not wish to let the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy. 4. Do not permit such a disgrace, my comrades. 5. The form and appearance of the Roman galleys were so unusual to the barbarians that they fell back in

alarm when Caesar moored his vessels on their right flank. 6. When the standard bearer saw that the soldiers were hesitating, he charged them not to betray the eagle to the enemy. 7. With a loud voice, he declared that he at any rate would do his duty to his country, and leaping into the water he advanced against the enemy.

## EXERCISE LIX.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXVI.

1. As our men disembarked singly, they rallied round any standard they met. 2. When we saw that our men were disconcerted, we sent assistance to them. 3. We were unable to overtake the retreating enemy for we had no cavalry in the army. 4. The enemy, as they knew the ground, could attack our men *en masse* as they disembarked singly from their ships. 5. We were not able to follow the enemy very far, for the cavalry had been prevented from crossing by the wind. 6. As soon as the men who had taken up their position on shore formed in line, they made a fierce attack on the enemy.

## EXERCISE LX.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter I.

In this tribe no one is allowed by law to remain longer than a year on his own land, and private property is, therefore, a thing unknown amongst them. One half of the population till the land, and the other half serve in the army. Those who remain at home this year to till the land, serve in the field next year. In this way systematic training in war is never relaxed. The inhabitants of this state are of gigantic stature, live on flesh and milk, and are clothed with the skins of the animals they capture in the chase—a sport in which they spend a great portion of their time. Every day the young men are trained (*exerceo*) in exercises which render them so hardy that even in the depth of winter they wear only the scanty covering of skins, and bathe in the rivers. To such a pitch of bodily strength have they brought themselves that they are regarded the most warlike of all the Germans.

## EXERCISE LXI.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter II.

The inhabitants of this state prohibit by law the importation of wine, because they believe it weakens the body and renders men effeminate. Traders, in fact, are seldom permitted to enter their boundaries, and then rather to purchase the booty captured from the enemy than to sell any-

thing to the natives. They do not take pride in the expensive horses of which the Gauls are so fond, but the native horses, though small and unshapely, are still capable of great exertions, owing to their daily training. All the inhabitants ride without saddles, quickly dismount to fight on foot, while the horses stand still and afford a ready refuge in case their riders are hard pressed by the enemy. In this way the cavalry often escape from the field in safety, and owing to their superior training they exhibit great daring even against great odds.

## EXERCISE LXII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter III.**

The inhabitants of those states of Germany bordering on the Rhine are more civilized than those of the other states of that nation, owing to the fact that they trade with the merchants and conform to the habits of the Gauls, who dwell on the opposite bank of the river. Most of the states are small, but that of the Ubii is larger and more highly civilized than the others. The Suebi made repeated attempts to dispossess the Ubii of their lands, but though they were unsuccessful in this, they merely made them weaker than they were before, while permitting them to retain possession of their own lands. All the Germans consider it a mark of the greatest distinction to have extensive tracts of waste lands on the side of their neighbors, for they fancy in this way they can protect their lands against their enemies.

## EXERCISE LXIII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IV.**

Although the Usipetes withstood the attack of the Suebi for several years, they were finally driven from their lands by their enemies. Wandering about Germany for the space of three years, they came to a district inhabited by the Menapii, who occupied lands on both sides of the Rhine. In consternation at the approach of such a host, the Menapii posted a guard on the east side of the river to prevent the Usipetes from crossing. The Usipetes tried by every possible means to cross the river, but were unable to do so owing to the scarcity of boats and the vigilance of the Menapii, who had sentinels stationed along the river. The Usipetes had, therefore, recourse to the following stratagem. Pretending to return home, they advanced three days in that direction; then turning suddenly round, they surprised the Menapii, who were caught napping, cut them to pieces, captured the ships of the latter, crossed the river and seized their property before the rest of their countrymen could come to the aid of the Menapii. In this way, they maintained themselves in this district during the rest of the winter.

## EXERCISE LXIV.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter V.

When our soldiers came to a town of the Gauls, the inhabitants often compelled them to stop, even against their will, and to tell all the news they had heard from the people through whose lands they had passed. Often, too, when merchants came into the towns of the Gauls, the common folk surrounded them and asked them such questions as the following: "Where do you come from?" "What news do you bring?" "Have you heard anything of the enemy?" After receiving replies on these points, the Gauls formed their plans, but such slaves were they to idle rumours that they often changed their plans as soon as they had formed them: so fickle are they in disposition. Often the merchants told them things without any foundation, for every one knows that the Gauls can be entrusted with no secret. Caesar, therefore, gave instructions to the merchants to tell nothing that was transpiring in the Roman camp, for he was well aware that if this were done, the enemy would quickly mass their forces.

EXERCISE LXV.—(*Review.*)

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapters I-V.

Of all the German tribes, the Suebi are the most warlike, for they have adopted the following custom in regard to war. Every year they put into the field a hundred thousand men, who are maintained by those that remain at home. Those that serve in the field this year, remain at home next year. In this way neither the tillage of the soil nor the practise of war was interfered with. The people have no private land, live on flesh and milk, are clothed with skins, and spend the greater part of their time in the chase. By this daily exercise they become hardy, and even in the dead of winter they are accustomed to bathe in the rivers. They prohibit the importation of wine, for, as they maintain, the constitution is weakened and the people are rendered effeminate by its use. Rarely do they allow even the traders to come into their country, and then only to sell them the spoil they have taken in war. When travellers come to a town of this people, everybody crowds around them and asks them all sorts of questions, but travellers invent answers, for they never entrust a secret to the Gauls, who are so fickle that they often undertake important enterprises on the vaguest rumors.

## EXERCISE LXVI.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VI.

Caesar had the suspicion that the Gauls would follow their usual practise, and he ascertained, on his arrival at headquarters, that his suspicions were

well founded. The Gauls had sent delegations to the several states of the Germans, and everything was ready for a war against the Romans. Anxious to avoid facing two powerful enemies at one time, he summoned a council of the Gallic chiefs, addressed them in kind words, and assured them that he was their friend. Though he had found out from his soldiers that the Gauls had acceded to all the demands of the Germans, and that the Germans had been induced by them to leave the Rhine and to enter Gaul to liberate it from the power of Rome, he concealed these facts from the deputies that were sent to him. At once he raised a detachment of cavalry and made preparations for war against the Germans.

## EXERCISE LXVII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VII.**

At once Caesar selected his cavalry, and began his march to the spot where he had heard the Germans were encamped. After marching several days, he met the enemy, who sent an embassy to him. One of the ambassadors spoke as follows: "We have not been the aggressors in this war, and we have always followed the traditions of our ancestors, never to attack a nation unless it first attacks us; if, however, we are attacked we never shrink from battle, and we never ask our foes for quarter. We came into Gaul on the invitation of the Gauls themselves. To you, Romans, we can be of service, but you ought to allow us either to retain the lands we have obtained by right of conquest, or to assign us other lands in Gaul. The Suebi alone are a match for us in arms, for there is no other people in the world whom we cannot defeat."

## EXERCISE LXVIII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter VIII.**

It is not fair that you should seize the lands of others since you are not able to protect your own borders. There are no unoccupied lands in Gaul, and, therefore, it would be impossible to give lands to so large a number of people without doing wrong to others. So long as you remain on this side of the Rhine you and I cannot be friends, for it would not be right that my friends, the Gauls, should be without protection against the wrongs committed by the Germans. You may, if you wish, settle in the lands of the Ubii, whose ambassadors are in my camp complaining of the wrongs done by the Suebi. They have asked my aid in this war against the Suebi.

## EXERCISE LXIX.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter IX.**

The ambassadors of the Germans who came to the Roman camp requested that a delay of three days be given them to discuss the proposals

of the Roman commander. They told Caesar that all his proposals had to be laid before their people. If this time were given for discussing the proposals, they would return to his headquarters, and they requested, in the meantime, that he would not advance any further into their territory. Caesar knew well the reason why this delay was asked for. The enemy had few cavalry with them, for the greater part of the horse had been sent across the Meuse for the purpose of obtaining fodder, and they were waiting for its arrival. On its arrival, there was no doubt but that the Germans would attack the Roman camp. This was the reason why the delay was asked for by the Romans.

## EXERCISE LXX.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter X.**

The Rhine is a river of Germany, which takes its rise in the Alps, and for a long distance it flows with a rapid current through the lands of several states. It divides, as it approaches the sea, into several branches, and forms large islands which are inhabited by a fierce and barbarous people, who live chiefly on fish and the eggs of birds. It receives a tributary called the Meuse, which has its cradle in the Vosges Mountains, and flows into the Rhine about eighty miles from the sea. The Waal, also, is a tributary of the Rhine. The island of the Batavi is formed by the junction of the Meuse and Rhine. The Vosges Mountains begin in the territory of the Gauls, but extend to the frontiers of Germany, and in these mountains several rivers take their rise.

## EXERCISE LXXI.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XI.**

After these days, according to agreement, the ambassadors met Caesar on his arrival at a place about twelve miles from their own encampment. When Caesar did not grant their demands, they earnestly begged him that he would not advance further into their lands. They also entreated him to send some of his officers in advance, to keep his soldiers in check and to prevent them from making an attack against their people. They further requested him to allow them an opportunity to send ambassadors to their neighbors, for they said that if their neighbors would accede to their demands they also themselves would accept the proposals Caesar made. Caesar knew well that the object of this proposal was to gain time until the cavalry, which the enemy had been waiting for, should arrive. He told the envoys that he should advance four miles further to get water,



and bade as many as possible on the next day to assemble at headquarters, but he sent orders to his advanced guard not to attack the enemy till he should be on the field in person.

## EXERCISE LXXII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XII.**

The enemy, as we have said, had sent most of their cavalry across the Meuse, and these had not yet returned. They, therefore, had not more than eight hundred cavalry in camp, while our men numbered five thousand. When our men were least of all expecting it, the enemy made a vigorous attack on them, and at once threw our ranks into confusion. According to their custom they dismounted, stabbed our horses, unhorsed the riders, drove the rest in flight and made such havoc that the advanced guard of our cavalry did not stop till they came up with the main body of the infantry. Among those who fell in this skirmish was Piso, a man most valiant. He met his death in an attempt to rescue his brother, who had been surrounded by the enemy.

## EXERCISE LXXIII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIII.**

At the very time when the Germans were sending ambassadors and suing for peace, they treacherously, without provocation, made an attack on the Roman lines. From what Caesar knew of the fickleness of the Gauls, he realized what the effect of defeat would be. He considered it would be the height of folly to wait till the enemy were reinforced by the arrival of their cavalry, and he thought it wise to allow the enemy no time to perfect their plans. Calling a council of war, he gave orders to his officers to bring on the battle early next day. Even then the Germans exhibited the same treacherous spirit as they had on the day before, for they came in numbers to the Roman camp for the purpose, as they alleged, of clearing themselves of the charge of beginning a battle. Caesar, ordering the arrest of all the deputies, then left the camp, and commanded his cavalry to follow closely the main body of the infantry.

## EXERCISE LXXIV.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XIV-XV.**

Caesar, by the rapidity of his march, gave no time to the enemy to form their plans, for he covered the distance of eight miles, which lay between his camp and the enemy, before they were aware of his advance. On his arrival, therefore, they were utterly at a loss what to do. On his arrival,

indignant at the treachery the enemy had displayed the day previous, Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a general attack on the camp of the Germans. When once the Romans entered the camp, they began an indiscriminate massacre of the enemy. Some of the latter retreated to the baggage waggons, where they held out a short time; others took to flight, and in their haste they threw away their arms and military standards. Many of the Germans did not stop in their flight till they reached the river Rhine, and in their attempts to swim across perished in the stream. Our men, however, returned to the camp without much loss.

## EXERCISE LXXV.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XVI.**

When Caesar noticed that the Germans were easily induced by the Gauls to cross the Rhine and to make war on the Roman people, he resolved to lead his forces across the river to make the Germans understand the extent of the power of the Roman army. Another reason was this, that a part of the Germans who had as yet refrained from taking part in the war, had formed a junction with those who had crossed the river. When Caesar demanded the surrender of the aggressors in this war, they sent the following reply: "If you consider it wrong for the Germans to cross the Rhine, why do you claim any power in our territory? When the Ubii sent ambassadors to you, and earnestly implored you to send aid to them, nothing would have prevented you from doing so, had you been in Gaul at that time. Your army has such a name and reputation that even the most distant tribes of Germany feel protected by your alliance with it."

## EXERCISE LXXVI.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XVIII, XIX.**

The bridge across the Rhine was built with such speed that the whole work was completed within ten days, from the time that the timber began to be collected from the neighboring district. When our army crossed, many chiefs came to the headquarters of Caesar to offer submission; others, however, left their lands and took all their effects to the woods. The lands of the latter Caesar caused to be devastated with fire and sword; but those of the inhabitants who were well affected, he willingly spared. When the Suebi, the most powerful of the German tribes, learned that the bridge had been built, they called a council of war, and resolved to collect as many men as possible to await the arrival of the Romans, and to fight a pitched battle in a central part of their territories. Caesar, however, did not march against them, for he considered that all the objects aimed at had

been attained. He had struck terror into the hearts of the Germans, he had wreaked vengeance on the Sugambri, and had saved the Ubii from attack. After cutting down the bridge, he returned to Gaul.

## EXERCISE LXXVII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XX.**

Caesar decided to visit Britain before winter set in, to prevent the Britons from assisting the Gauls. He thought it would be of advantage to ascertain the size of the island, the kind of the inhabitants, and the extent of their power, for almost nothing was known to Rome. Merchants had told him that if he visited it, he would find on the sea coast a people possessing ships and harbors. The ships they use both for visiting the localities that lie opposite the island, and for making war on their enemies. Their skill in war, accordingly, was considerable, and time would fail me to enumerate the wars they have carried on. They live under institutions which have been extolled by almost all who have investigated them, and no one has ever visited the island without learning something which proved of advantage to himself.

## EXERCISE LXXVIII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XX-XXI.**

Roman merchants had occasionally touched at Britain, but they were unable to give any information as to the size of the island, the qualities of the harbors, the character or habits of the inhabitants. Caesar desired to look at these with his own eyes, and the fleet which had been used in the Venetic war<sup>1</sup> was ordered to assemble in the channel. He directed Caius Volusenus, an officer whom he could trust, to take a galley and reconnoitre the coast of the island, while he himself followed to Boulogne,<sup>2</sup> where his vessels were waiting for him. The gathering of the flotilla and the object had been reported to Britain, and envoys from various tribes were waiting there with offers of hostages and humble protestations. Caesar received them graciously, and sent back with them a Gaul surnamed Commius, whom he had made chief of the Atrebates, to tell the people that he was coming over as a friend, and that they had nothing to fear.

<sup>1</sup> *bellum Veneticum.*    <sup>2</sup> *portus Itius.*

—*Froude's Caesar (Adapted).*

## EXERCISE LXXIX.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XX-XXI.**

When Caesar was on the point of setting out for Britain, he summoned from all sides traders, to ascertain the size of the island and the character

of the inhabitants that dwell there. From these he learned very little, for they were very chary of risking their lives among the barbarians who inhabited the island. He, therefore, selected Caius Volusenus, an officer in whom he had the greatest confidence, and commanded him to reconnoitre the island in a war-ship, as far as his opportunities would allow him to do so. When the officer had inspected the coast, he returned five days after his departure, and reported the results of his observations to Caesar. Summer had almost closed, and there was slight hope of finishing the campaign that year, as the winter in these northern climates sets in early. He mustered all the men-of-war he could, and proceeded with all speed to carry on war against the Britons.

## EXERCISE LXXX.

## Caesar, B. IV, XXII.

Volusenus had just returned to the camp after an absence of five days, unable to find anything of importance about Britain or its people. The ships that had arrived at port were unable to carry over more than two legions, but for Caesar's purpose they were sufficient. Leaving Sabinus and Cotta in charge of the rest of the army, he despatched Rufus to the coast to look after the vessels. The general, thinking that nothing should interfere with his design of crossing into Britain, also started at once for the port from which there was the shortest sea passage to Britain, and there he awaited for several days the arrival of the cavalry. But the latter did not come up till after Caesar left Gaul, for they were wind bound about eight miles, so that they could not reach the harbor from which they intended to sail.

## EXERCISE LXXXI.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXIII.

"I have called you together, officers, in order that I may convey my wishes to you personally. All arrangements are completed; the troops will embark during the present watch. As soon as wind and tide are favorable, I shall give you the signal for embarkation. Thereupon let all embark, weigh anchor, and set sail at once. When you have gone forward about seven miles, you will see a large island; there the ships of the enemy are stationed. Hem them in on all sides, and, if possible, let not a single man escape. Meantime let all await on the open shore till the signal is given."

Turn the above also into oblique narration.

## EXERCISE LXXXII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XXIII-XXIV.**

When he obtained fair weather, he set sail about midnight and reached Britain at 10 a.m. On his arrival at the island, many difficulties presented themselves to him. In the first place, the shore was not suitable for disembarkation, for it was so steep that the enemy could hurl from the cliffs their darts on our soldiers, who had taken up their position on the shore. Our ships, too, could be moored only in deep water owing to their size, and, therefore, the soldiers were compelled to leap down from their vessels into the water, form in line, and meet the onset of the enemy. Besides, the soldiers knew little of the locality, while the enemy knew every shoal. Under these circumstances our men did not exhibit the bravery that usually characterized them on such occasions.

## EXERCISE LXXXIII.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapters XXIII, XXIV.**

A council of war was called, and the general addressed his staff as follows: "I consider it a fortunate thing that we have had fair weather for the expedition; still you must not imagine that the campaign will be an easy one. I recognize the magnitude of the difficulties you will have to face. You will meet in battle the fiercest foe you have yet encountered—a foe, too, that knows every foot of the ground; you will need to disembark in deep water, where it will be difficult for you to keep your footing. Everything must be done punctually and simultaneously, for naval evolutions, even more than other evolutions of war, require instant despatch. The land we are approaching is almost unknown to you; of this, however, rest assured, the inhabitants are brave, and will stubbornly contest every foot of our advance. You will, therefore, have to stand your ground, and exhibit that bravery which you have so often displayed in former battles."

## EXERCISE LXXXIV.

**Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXV.**

The ships of war were moored on the right of the enemy, and by their unusual form caused dismay to the barbarians, for they had never seen vessels so large. The vessels were then rowed forward, and the soldiers, along with the artillery, were sent ashore to dislodge the enemy from their position which they had taken up on the heights. When the Britons saw our men advancing, some of them came to a halt, others retreated. At first our men hesitated to leap down from the vessels, on account of the

depth of the water, but the standard-bearer of the tenth legion, after uttering a prayer for the success of the enterprise, advanced against the foe. "Let us not," said he, "betray the eagle to the enemy, for this would be disgraceful to a Roman." Then all, with a cheer, leaped down from the ships and advanced against the enemy.

## EXERCISE LXXXV.

## Caesar, B. IV, Chapter XXVI.

The difficulty of disembarkation was very great, owing to the depth of water. Our men could not obtain a firm foothold, nor could they rally round their own standard, for they disembarked not in a body, but singly. The enemy, on the other hand, knew every foot of the ground, and, with their horses at full speed, attacked our men, who were hampered in their movements by the waves and by the heavy weight of their armor. Caesar at once despatched some ships manned with soldiers to the aid of the landing party. As soon as they reached the shore they attacked and put the enemy to flight. They were unable, however, to advance very far, owing to the want of cavalry, which latter had not made the island, owing to the storm.

## EXERCISE LXXXVI.

Over this river there was a bridge, and beside the bridge the general resolved to post a garrison at once. He put in charge of this garrison a member of his staff (*legatus*), with instructions that it was of the utmost consequence to the safety of the country to hold out as long as possible. But the enemy were indignant that we should have the audacity to pitch a camp right in the heart of their country; and mustering their forces to the number of twenty thousand men, they proceeded at once to assault the place. The garrison held out with difficulty; nevertheless they did hold out; and after several days the enemy, losing hope of making a capture, withdrew from the field.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1892.*

## EXERCISE LXXXVII.

Caesar determined to cross over to Britain, because the Belgians of South Britain had sent help to their kinsmen in Gaul, with whom he was fighting. So he set sail to Britain with a small army. When the Britons, who were watching for him, saw his fleet draw near the shore, they came down and kept the Romans from landing, till a brave standard-bearer leapt from a galley into the water among the Britons. When the Roman soldiers saw him in the midst of their foes they followed him to save the standard, and at last made good their landing, and drove the Britons up

into the country. Then 'Caesar marched through most of the people of Kent, fought several battles and forced the tribes near him to give hostages and sue for peace. But he was not able to profit by his success. He was afraid of the bad weather in the channel, for it was getting late in the year, so he went back to Gaul.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1894.*

## EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

The spring had not yet passed when the Roman armament sailed for Britain. Caesar took with him five legions and an equal (*par*) number of cavalry, the usefulness of which had been proved in the late expedition. These legions were left under Labienus to provide for the security of Gaul. The landing was effected, without opposition, at the same spot as in the previous summer; and Caesar, leaving two cohorts to protect his naval station, repaired with the main body to a spot not far from the shore, where he constructed a camp to which he might retreat in case of defeat. This, it is thought, is the foundation of the famous (*celeber*) station of Rutupiae, whose ruins attest to this day the greatness of Roman military works.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1895.*

## EXERCISE LXXXIX.

Having finished the German war, Caesar resolved, for many reasons, that he must cross the Rhine, a very broad, deep, and rapid river, which divides Gaul from Germany. His strongest reason was that seeing the Germans were easily induced to make inroads into Gaul, he wished to show them that the Romans had both the power and the courage to carry the war into their country. Accordingly he made the necessary preparations, and caused a bridge to be constructed over the river, by which to transport his troops.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1895.*

## EXERCISE XC.

Before the task was completed, a deputation of chiefs arrived, bringing word that their warriors were encamped in good numbers about eight miles distant, and desiring our general to appoint the time and place for a council. He ordered them to meet him on the next day near his camp. In the morning the little army moved in battle order to the place of council, and at the appointed hour the deputation appeared. The orator declared that the war had arisen without any fault of theirs; they desired that there should be peace between us and his people; and to show their good will, at once delivered eighteen prisoners whom they had brought with them, promising that we should receive the rest as soon as they could collect them.

—*Junior Matriculation, Toronto University, 1897.*

# VOCABULARY.

## LATIN-ENGLISH.

### ABBREVIATIONS.

The references in the Vocabulary are to the pages and sections of this book and to the chapters of Nepos and Caesar. Thus: 82, 5=page 82, § 5; N. T. 3=Nepos, Themistocles, Chapter III; N. A.=Nepos, Aristides; N. H.=Nepos, Hannibal; c. iv, 2=Caesar, Book IV, Chapter II.

abl. . . . .	ablative.	intr. . . . .	intransitive.
acc. . . . .	accusative.	irreg. . . . .	irregular.
adj. . . . .	adjective.	M. . . . .	masculine noun.
adv. . . . .	adverb.	N. . . . .	neuter noun.
cf. . . . .	compare.	num. . . . .	numeral.
comp. . . . .	comparative.	ord. . . . .	ordinal.
conj. . . . .	conjunction.	p. . . . .	page.
dat. . . . .	dative.	part. . . . .	participle.
defec. . . . .	defective.	pass. . . . .	passive.
dem. . . . .	demonstrative.	perf. . . . .	perfect.
dep. . . . .	deponent.	pl. or plur. . . . .	plural.
dim. . . . .	diminutive.	prep. . . . .	preposition.
distrib. . . . .	distributive.	pro. . . . .	pronoun.
F. . . . .	feminine noun.	rel. . . . .	relative.
gen. . . . .	genitive.	sc. . . . .	scilicet (one may under-
impers. . . . .	impersonal.	sing. . . . .	singular. [stand].
indecl. . . . .	indeclinable.	sup. . . . .	superlative.
indef. . . . .	indefinite.	tr. . . . .	transitive.
interrog. . . . .	interrogative.	v. . . . .	verb.

The quantity of vowels long or short by position and of diphthongs (which are all long) and of final short syllables, is not given.



# VOCABULARY.

## A.

**a, ab,** prep. with abl. (**a** only before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants); from (85, 2; 156, 4; 158, 2); by (71, 2); **puer a ianua**, the door-keeper, porter (N. u. 12); **a pueris**, from boyhood (c. iv, 1); **a suis finibus**, on the side of their territories (c. iv, 3); **a Suebis**, on the side of the Suebi (c. iv, 3); **ab milli-bus passuum octo**, eight miles off (c. iv, 22); **ab aperto latere**, on the exposed flank (the right side) (c. iv, 26); **a Pirustis**, on the side of the Pirustae (c. v, 1).

**ab-do, -dĕre, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, v. tr.**, hide.

**ab-dūco, -dūcere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr.**, lead away, withdraw.

**āb-ĕo, -ĭre, -ĭvi (-ĭi), -ĭtum, v. intr.**, go away.

**ab-hīnc, adv.**, ago; **abhinc decem annos** or **abhinc decem annis**, ten years ago (82, 5).

**ab-icĭo, -icĕre, -iĕcĭ, -iectum, v. tr.**, throw away.

**āb-ĭēs, -ĭētis, F.**, a fir-tree, spruce.

**abs-cĕdo, -cedere, -cessi, -cesum, v. intr.**, go away, leave off.

**absen-s, -tis** (pres. part. of **absum**), adj., absent.

• **ab-sisto, -sistĕre, -stĭtĭ, v. intr.**, desist; **ab signis legionibusque non absistere**, not to stop short of the standards of the legions (c. v, 17).

**ab-solvo, -solvĕre, -solvĭ, -sōlūtum, v. tr.**, acquit.

• **abs-tinentĭ-a, -ae, F.**, disinterestedness.

**ab-sum, -esse, -fūi, v. intr.**, be absent, distant from; **abesse a bello**, to take no part in war; **abesse decem millia passuum**, to be ten miles off; **neque multum abesse quin**, to be not far from (c. v, 2).

**ac** (used before consonants); another form of **atque** (used before vowels), which see.

• **ac-cĕdo, -cĕdĕre, -cessi, cesum, v. intr.**, go towards, reach; **accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus**, all the ships reached Britain (c. v, 8); **impers., accĕdit, -cĕdĕre, -cessit**, it is added; **accessit etiam**

**quod**, there was also added the fact that (c. iv, 16); **accedebat huc ut**, to this was added the fact that (c. v, 16).

**ac-cĕlĕro, -cĕlĕrāre, -cĕlĕrāvī, v. intr.**, hasten towards.

• **ac-ceptus, -a, -um**, (perf. part. pass. of **accipio**, used as an) adj., agreeable to.

**accerso**, see **arcesso**.

**ac-cĭdo, -cĭdĕre, -cĭdĭ, happen**; usually **impers.**; **accidit, accidĕre, accĭdit**, it happens; **opportunissime res accidit**, an opportunity most favorably was presented (c. iv, 13); **opportune accidisse arbitratus**, thinking that this had happened fortunately (c. iv, 22); **accidit ut**, it happened that (c. iv, 29).

**ac-cĭdo, -cĭdĕre, -cĭdĭ, -cĭsum, v. tr.**, cut into.

**ac-cĭpio, -cĭpĕre, -cĕpĭ, ceptum, v. tr.**, receive; **id accipere**, to hear this (N. h. 2).

• **ac-commōdo, -commōdāre, -commōdāvī, -commōdātum, v. tr.**, fit to.

**ac-cūrātĕ, adv.**, carefully.

• **ac-cūrāt-us, -ā, -um**, (perf. part. of **accuro**, used as an) adj., careful.

**ac-curro, -currĕre, -currĭ, -cursum, v. intr.**, run to.

**ac-cūso, -cusāre, -cusāvī, -cusātum, v. tr.**, accuse, blame.

**āc-er, -ris, -re, adj.**, keen, sharp, severe (comp., **acrior**; sup., **acerrimus**).

**ācĭ-ēs, -ĕi, F.**, edge, line of battle; **aciem instruere**, to draw up a line of battle; **aciem constituere**, to draw up a line (of ships) (N. h. 11).

**ac-quiĕsco, -quiĕscĕre, -quiĕvī, -quiĕtum, v. intr.**, repose in death, sleep one's last sleep.

**ācriter, adv.**, fiercely, keenly (comp., **ācrius**; sup., **ācerrime**); **acriter pugnatum est**, a keen battle was fought; **acerrime occupari**, to be very actively employed (N. h. 7).

**actūārĭ-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, impelled by oars, furnished with oars.

• **āc-us, -ūs, F.**, a needle, pin.

**āc-ūtus, -ūtā, -ūtum, adj.**, sharp, keen.

**ād**, prep. (with acc.), to, against, towards, near to, at, besides; **ad voluntatem**, to suit their wishes; **ad laborem ferendum**, as regards enduring fatigue (c. iv, 2); **ad extremum**, at last (c. iv, 4); **ad haec**, in reply to this (c. iv, 8); **ad pristinam fortunam**, to complete his former good fortune (c. iv, 26); **ad diem**, on the right day, punctually (c. v, 1); **ad Cantium**, opposite Kent (c. v, 13); **ad solis occasum**, at sunset (c. v, 8); **ad hunc modum**, in this way.

**ad-aequo**, -aequāre, -aequāvī, -aequātum, v. tr., make equal.

**ad-do**, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, v. tr., add.

**ad-dūco**, -dūcēre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead to, bring to (of persons), induce; **in suspicionem regi adducere**, to bring under the suspicion of the king (N. n. 2).

**ād-ēo**, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -ītum, v. tr. and intr., approach, visit, reach.

**ād-ēō**, adv., to this point, so, such, to that degree.

**ad-ficiō**, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., treat, visit with; **morbo adfectus**, attacked with disease; **supplicio (poenā) adficere**, punish.

**ad-figo**, -figēre, -fixī, -fictum, v. tr., dash down, damage; **navem adfigere**, to damage a vessel (c. iv, 31).

**ad-hībēo**, -hībēre, -hībūī, -hībītum, v. tr., summon, call in, admit; **adhibitis principibus maioribusque natu**, summoning the chiefs and elders (c. iv, 13).

**ad-huc**, adv., to this place, thus far, as yet.

**ad-iciō**, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw to, throw up; **in litus telum adici poterat**, a dart could be thrown to the water's edge (c. iv, 23); **aggerem ad munitiones adicere**, to throw up a mound against the fortifications (c. v, 9).

**ād-īgo**, -īgēre, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., drive in, hurl to.

**ād-īmo**, -īmēre, -ēmī, -emptum, v. tr., take away, deprive of.

**ād-īpiscor**, -īpiscī, -eptus sum, v. tr. dep., attain to, acquire, obtain.

**ād-ītus**, -ītūs, M., approach, landing-place; **mercatoribus est aditus**, merchants go there (c. iv, 2).

**ad-iungo**, -iungēre, -iunxī, -iunctum, v. tr., join to, add.

**ad-iūvo**, -iūvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, v. tr., aid, help, assist.

**Admēt-us**, -ī, M. **Admetus**, king of the Molossi, a people of Thrace. He protected Themistocles when a suppliant. Thucydides (i, 136) says that Themistocles took the son of Admetus in his arms and seated himself as a suppliant at the hearth, adding that the step he adopted was the strongest mode of entreaty known in the country. The historian also adds that Admetus was at variance with Themistocles.

**ad-mīnister**, -mīnistrī, M., a servant, assistant.

**ad-mīnistr-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., do, manage; **cum paulo tardius administratum esset**, when this was done somewhat slowly (c. iv, 23); **republicam administrare**, to carry on the government.

**ad-mīror**, -mīrārī, -mīrātus sum, v. tr. dep., wonder at, admire.

**ad-mitto**, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīsum, v. tr., allow, permit; **facinus admittere**, to commit a crime; **dedecus admittere**, to be guilty of a disgrace (c. iv, 25).

**ad-mōdum**, adv., very much, greatly; with numbers, fully, at least.

**ad-mōnēo**, -mōnēre, -mōnūī, -mōnītum, v. tr., advise, warn, remind.

**ād-ōlescens**, -ōlescentis, M., a youth.

**ād-ōlescentī-a**, -ae, F., youth.

**ād-ōlesco**, -ōlescēre, -ōlēvī, -ultum, v. intr., grow up, reach adult age.

**ād-ōrīor**, -ōrīrī, -ortus sum, v. tr. dep., rise up against, attack, assail.

**ad-plīco**, -plicāre, -plicāvī (-plīcūī), -plicātum (-plicītum), v. tr., lean against; **ad societatem Atheniensium se applicare**, to attach themselves to an alliance with the Athenians (N. A. 2). (Also written **applicō**.)

**Adrumēt-um**, -ī, N., **Adrumetum**, a city of Africa Propria, south of Carthage. (See **Hadrumetum**.)

**ad-sidū-us**, -ā, -um, adj., incessant, unbroken, diligent.

**ad-sisto**, -sistēre, -stītī, -stītum, v. intr., stand near or by.

**ad-spectus**, -spectūs, M., look, appearance.

**ad-suēfāciō**, -suēfācēre, -suēfēcī, -suēfactum, v. tr., accustom.

**ad-suēfact-us**, -ā, -um, adj., accustomed to; **Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti**, they have become familiar with the Gallic customs (c. iv, 3).

ad-suesco, -suescēre, -suēvī, -suētum, v. tr., accustom to (acc. of person and abl. of thing).

ad-sum, -esse, -fūi, v. intr., be present, near; aid.

ad-tribūo, -tribūēre, -tribūi, -tribūtum, v. tr., assign, show.

adūlescens, see adōlescens.

adūlescētia, see adolēscētia.  
ad-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum, v. tr., reach.

ad-ventus, -ventūs, M., arrival.

ad-versārius, -versāriā, -versāriūm, adj., opposed, hostile.

adversāri-us, -i, M., an enemy.

ad-versūs, -ā, -um, adj., turned to, opposed to, unfavorable; nocte ad-versa, in the teeth of night, or in a foul night (c. iv, 28).

adversus, prep. (with acc.), opposed to, over against.

ad-vertō, -vertēre, -verti, -versum, v. tr., turn to; animum ad-vertēre, to notice.

ad-vōlo, -vōlāre, -vōlāvī, -vōlātum, v. tr., fly to, hasten to.

aed-es, -is, F., a temple; in plural, a house or temples.

aedifici-um, -i, N., dwelling, house.

aedific-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., build.

Aedū-i, -ōrum, M. pl., the Aedui, a tribe of Gaul (*France*).

Aedū-us, -ā, -um, adj., Aeduan.

Aegāt-ēs, -ium, F. pl., the Aegates, islands in the Mediterranean, west of Sicily.

aeg-er, -rā, -rum, adj., sick (comp. aegrīor; sup., aegerrīmus).

Aegīn-a, -ae, F., Aegina, an island in the Saronic gulf, west of Athens.

aegr-ē, adv., with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.

aegrōt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., be sick.

Aegypt-us, -i, F., Egypt, a country of north-eastern Africa.

Aemili-us, -i, M.: (1) Lucius Paulus Aemilius, a Roman consul who fell at Cannae, a village of Apulia, a district of Italy, 216 B.C.; (2) Lucius Aemilius Paulus: according to some Hannibal died in his consulship, 182 B.C.

āēnē-us, -ā, -um, adj., made of bronze or copper.

aequāl-is, -e, adj., of the same age (with dative).

aequāl-is, -is, M., a contemporary.

aequē, adv., equally, in an equal degree.

aequinocti-um, -ī, N., the equinox, either 21st March or 21st September; in Caesar, the latter.

aequipēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., equal.

aequī-tas, -ātis, F., evenness; animaequitas, contentment.

aequ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make equal.

aequ-us, -ā, -um, adj., equal, fair; aequum est, it is only fair (N. T. 7).

āēr, āēris, M., air, mist.

aerāri-um, -ī, N., treasury; in aerario reponere, to deposit in the treasury (N. II. 7).

aes, aeris, N., bronze, copper; money; aes alienum, debt (literally, money belonging to another).

aest-as, -ātis, F., summer; mediā aestate, in the middle of summer; extremā aestate, at the end of summer; primā aestate, at the beginning of summer; aestatem consumere, to spend the summer (c. v, 4).

aestimātī-o, -ōnis, F., value, valuation, esteem.

aestim-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., value, think, reckon; litem aestimare, to assess the amount of damages (c. v, 1).

aest-us, -ūs, M., tide.

aet-as, -ātis, F., period of life, life; haec aetas, the present moment (N. H. 2).

af-fēro, -ferre, attūli, allātum, v. tr., bring to, assign, report, announce.

af-fīcio, see adfīcio.

af-firmo, -firmāre, -firmāvī, -firmātum, v. tr., assert, declare.

af-flicto, -flictāre, -flictāvī, -flictātum, v. tr., damage, wreck.

af-fligo, -figēre, -fixi, -flictum, v. tr., damage; navem affligere, to damage a vessel (c. iv, 31).

Afrīc-a, -ae, F., Africa.

Afrīc-us, -i, M. (properly an adj., with ventus understood); the south-west wind, still called Africo by the Italians.

Āgāmemn-on, -ōnis, M., Agamemnon, king of Mycenae in Greece, and commander of the Greek forces at Troy.

āg-er, -rī, M., a field, land; pl., lands, territories.

ag-ger, -gēris, M., a mound.

ag-grēdiōr, -grēdī, -grēssus  
sum, v. tr. dep., 'go against, assail,  
attack.

ag-grēgo, -grēgāre, -grēgāvī,  
-grēgatum, join to; se aggregare  
(military term), fall in (c. iv, 26).

ag-men, -minis, N., an army on the  
march; a column.

āgo, āgēre, ēgī, actum, v. tr.,  
move, go, do, drive; hiemem agere,  
to pass the winter; gratias agere, to  
return thanks; id agitur, this is the  
object (N. T. 5); est actum de nobis,  
it is all over with us.

āgrīcōl-a, -ae, M., a farmer.

āgrīcultūr-a, -ae, F., agriculture.

ālo, v. tr., defective, say yes, assert,  
say (see page 275).

ālāc-er, -ris, -re, adj., active, quick,  
impetuous.

ālācrīt-as, -ātis, F., dash, haste;  
alacritate uti, to show dash (c. iv, 24).

alb-us, -ā, -um, adj., white; album  
plumbum, tin (c. v, 12).

alc-es, -is, F., the elk.

Ālexand-er, -rī, M., Alexander, the  
Great, king of Macedonia; born 356 B.C.,  
died 323 B.C.

āliās, adv., at another time, else-  
where; alius... alius, at one time... at  
another time.

ālīn-us, -ā, -um, adj., belonging to  
another; another's; strange, foreign,  
hostile; aes alienum, debt (another's  
money); alieno loco, on unfavorable  
ground; alienum tempus, an un-  
favorable time (c. v, 34).

ālīo, adv., elsewhere.

ālīquān-dū, adv., for some time;  
for a while.

ālīquādo, adv., at some time or  
other; occasionally, at last.

ālīquāto, adv., somewhat, consider-  
ably, rather.

ālīquant-us, -ā, -um, adj., con-  
siderable, some; aliquantum itin-  
eris, some distance (c. v, 10).

ālīqui, -quae, -quod, indef. pro.,  
some one, any one.

ālīquīs, -qua, -quid, indep. pro.,  
some one, any one; aliquid temporis,  
some time.

ālīquōt, indef. indeclinable pro., some,  
several.

ālīter, adv., otherwise.

ālī-us, -ā, -ud (for declension see p.  
27), pro., another, other, different; alius  
... alius, one... other; alii... alii, some...

others; alius alia ex navī, one from  
one ship, another from another (c. iv, 26).

Allōbrōg-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Allo-  
broges, a tribe of Gaul.

ālō, ālēre, ālūī, ālītum or altum,  
v. tr., rear, nourish; publice alere,  
to maintain at the public expense.

Alp-ēs, -īum, pl. F., the Alps.

Alpīc-us, -ā, -um, adj., Alpine; in  
pl. Alpici, -ōrum, Alpine tribes.

alt-er, -ēra, -ērum, adj., one of two;  
alter... alter, the one... the other; al-  
teri... alteri, the one party... the other  
party.

altītūd-o, -īnis, F., height, depth.

alt-us, -ā, -um, adj., high, deep; in  
alto, on the deep.

āma-nis, -ntis, adj., loving; as a  
noun: a lover.

Ambiān-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Ambi-  
ani, a tribe of north-eastern Gaul, from  
which the modern town, Amiens, takes its  
name.

amb-īo, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītum, v. tr.,  
go around, canvass.

Ambīvārīt-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the  
Ambivariiti, a tribe on the Mosa (*Meuse*).

amb-o, -ae, -o, adj., both.

ambūl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.  
intr., walk.

āmētī-a, -ae, F., madness, folly.

āmīcē, adv., friendly.

āmīcītī-a, -ae, F., friendship: ami-  
citiā facere, to form an alliance  
(c. iv, 16).

āmīc-us, -ā, -um, adj., friendly.

āmīc-us, -ī, M., a friend.

ā-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -mī-  
sum, v. tr., lose.

ām-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.  
love.

āmoen-us, -ā, -um, adj., beautiful  
(of scenery)

amphōr-a, -ae, F. [Gk. ἀμφορά fr.  
ἀμφί, φέρω, to carry on both sides], a  
two handled jar; summa amphora,  
the top of the jar (N. E. O).

amplē, adv., abundantly; comp. am-  
plius, more.

amplītūd-o, -īnis, F., greatness.

amplius, neut. comp. of adj., am-  
plus, more, further. Often used with  
numerals without any influence on the  
construction: amplius duo millia  
passuum, more than two miles.

ampl-us, -ā, -um, adj., large, noble,  
distinguished; amplissimo genere

**natus**, born of a most illustrious family (c. iv, 12).

**an**, interrogative participle, whether, or (p. 291, 5).

**Ancālīt-ēs**, -**ŕum**, pl. M., the Ancalites, a British tribe in Berkshire and Oxfordshire.

**an-ceps**, -**cĭpĭtis**, adj., two-fold; **anceps periculum**, a danger in front and rear (S. T. 3).

**ancōr-a**, -**ae**, F., an anchor; **navam tenere in ancoris**, to keep a ship at anchor (S. T. 8); **ancoram tollere**, to weigh anchor (c. iv, 23); **in ancoris expectare**, to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23); **ancoram iacere**, to cast anchor (c. iv, 28); **ad ancoras naves deligare**, to ride at anchor (c. v, 9).

**ancill-a**, -**ae**, F., a hand-maid, servant.

**angŭl-us**, -**ī**, M., a corner.

**angustē**, adv., narrowly, closely.

**angustĭ-ae**, -**ārum**, pl. F., defile, strait (of sea).

**angust-us**, -**ā**, -**um**, adj., narrow, contracted.

**ānīm-a**, -**ae**, F., life, soul; **animam deponere**, to relinquish his life (S. H. 1).

**ānīm-adverto**, -**advertēre**, -**adverti**, -**adversum**, v. tr., notice.

**ānīm-al**, -**ālis**, N., an animal.

**ānīm-us**, -**ī**, M., mind, soul, spirit, courage; **nunquam destitit animo**, he never ceased in his heart (S. H., magnanimi, of great courage (c. v, ); **animis impeditis**, when the attention of all was engaged (c. v, 7); **anir i voluptatisque causā**, or recreation and amusement (c. v, 1<sup>o</sup>).

**annon**, interrog. participle, or not (in the second member of a direct question, p. 130, 6).

**annotĭn-us**, -**ā**, -**um**, adj., of the year before.

**ann-us**, -**ī**, M., a year.

**annŭ-us**, -**ā**, -**um**, adj., a year's; **annuum tempus**, a year's time (S. T. 9).

**ans-er**, -**ērĭs**, M., a goose.

**ante**, (1) adv., previously, before; **paucis ante diebus**, a few days before; (p. 182, 3) (2) prep. with acc. only; before, in front of, in advance of. For **ante quam** see **antequam**.

**antēā**, adv., previously, before, once.

**ante-cēdo**, -**cēdēre**, -**cessi**, -**cessum**, v. tr., precede, surpass; **agmen antecedere**, to head the line (c. iv, 11).

**ante-fēro**, -**ferre**, -**tŭli**, -**lātum**, v. tr., excel, prefer.

**ante-pōno**, -**pōnēre**, -**pōsŭi**, -**pōsĭtum**, v. tr., prefer.

**antequam**, conj., before (p. 201, 5).

**ante-sto**, -**stāre**, -**stĭti**, no sup., v. tr. and intr., be preferred to.

**Antĭōch-us**, -**ī**, M., Antiochus, surnamed the Great, king of Syria, reigned B.C. 233-B.C. 187. After conquering the greater part of Western Asia, he was induced by Hannibal to cross over to Europe, but was defeated at Thermopylae, 191 B.C., by the Romans. Next year he was defeated near Magnesia, in Lydia, and was compelled by the Romans to pay a yearly tribute of 2,000 tal. Being unable to pay this sum, he attempted to plunder the temple of Belus, in Susiana, which so incensed the inhabitants that they killed him and his followers, 187 B.C.

**antiquĭt-as**, -**ātis**, F., old times; antiquity.

**antiqu-us**, -**ā**, -**um**, adj., old, ancient.

**antr-um** -**ī**, N., a cave.

**Ap** = **Appĭus**, a Roman praenomen (see **nomen**).

**āpĕr-ĭo**, -**ĭre** -**ŭi**, -**tum**, v. tr., open, show, reveal.

**āpĕrtē**, adv., openly.

**āpĕrt-us**, -**ā**, -**um**, adj., open, exposed, undefended; **loca aperta**, open country; **ab latere aperto**, on the exposed flank (on the right side) (c. iv, 26).

**Āpoll-o**, -**ĭnis**, M., Apollo.

**ap-pārĕo**, -**pārĕre**, -**pārŭi**, -**pārĭtum**, v. intr., attend, appear, be clear.

**ap-pār-o**, -**pārāre**, -**pārāvĭ**, -**pārātum**, v. tr., prepare, make preparations for, provide for.

**appell-o**, -**āre**, -**āvĭ** -**ātum**, v. tr., call.

**ap-pello**, -**pellĕre**, -**pŭli**, -**pulsum**, v. tr., bring to land (of ships); in passive, call at, touch at.

**Appennĭn-us**, -**ī**, M., the Apennines.

**applic-o**, see **adplico**.

**Appĭus**, a Roman praenomen (see **nomen**).

**ap-porto**, -**āre**, -**āvĭ** -**ātum**, v. tr., to bring, carry to (a place).

**ap-propĭnqu-o**, -**āre**, -**āvĭ** -**ātum** (with dat.), v. intr., approach, come near.

**apt-us**, -**ā**, -**um**, adj., fit, suitable

**āpud**, prep. (with accusative); near, at, beside; **apud urbem**, near the city; **apud Artemisium**, at Artemisium (S. T. 3); **apud Caesarem**, at the headquarters of Caesar; **apud eos**, before them (S. T. 7).

Āpŭlĭ-a, -ae, F., Apulia, a district of south-eastern Italy.

Āqu-a, -ae, F., water.

Āquātĭ-o, -ōnis, F., fetching water, watering; aquationis causā, to obtain water (c. iv, 11).

Āquĭl-a, -ae, F., an eagle. As the eagle was the ensign of the legion, aquila came to mean a standard.

Āquĭlei-a, -ae, F., Aquileia, a city in north-eastern Italy.

Āquĭlĭ-fer, -fĕrĭ, M., the eagle-bearer, the standard-bearer.

Āquĭtān-us, -ĭ, M., an Aquitanian; an inhabitant of Aquitania, a district of south-western Gaul (*France*).

Ār-a, -ae, F., an altar.

Ār-ar, -āris, M., the Arar (now the *Saone*), a tributary of the Rhodanus (*Rhone*).

Ārātr-um, -ĭ, N., a plough.

Arbĭ-er, -rĭ, M., judge; dare arbĭ-tros, to appoint arbitrators (c. v, 1).

arbĭtrĭ-um, -ĭ, N., a judgment, decision.

arbĭtr-or, -ārĭ, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., think, suppose, consider.

arb-or, -ōris, F., a tree.

arcess-o, -ĕre, -ĭvĭ, -ĭtum, v. tr., send for, summon.

arc-us, -ūs, M., a bow.

Ardŭenn-a, -ae, F., the Ardennes, a forest of north-eastern Gaul which extended through the territories of the Treveri to those of the Remi (c. v, 3).

ardŭ-us, -ā, -um, adj., steep.

argent-um, -ĭ, N., silver, money.

Arg-ĭ, -ōrum, pl. M., Argos, a city of Argolis, in the eastern part of the Peloponnesus.

Argos (only used in nom. and acc. sing.), N., see Argĭ.

argŭ-o, -ĕre, -ĭ, argŭtum, v. tr., accuse of, charge with.

ārĭd-us, -ā, -um, adj., dry. As a substantive, aridum, dry land; ex arido, on the shore (c. iv, 24).

ārĭ-es, -ĕtis, M., a battering ram.

Ariōvist-us, -ĭ, M., Ariovistus, a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater part of the country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him, 58 B.C.

Aristĭd-ēs, -ae, M., Aristides, an Athenian statesman, rival of Themistocles.

arm-ā, -ōrum, pl. N., arms; in

armis esse, to bear arms (c. v, 3); ab armis discedere, to lay down arms.

armāment-um, -ĭ, N., tackle (of a vessel).

armātŭr-a, -ae, F., armor; levis armaturae milites, light-armed soldiers (p. 130, 7).

armāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., armed.

armĭg-er, -ĕrā, -ĕrum, adj., armor-bearer.

arm-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum, v. tr., arm; regem armare, to excite a king to arms (N. II. 10); passive, armari, to put on armor; ad armandas naves, for the equipment of the vessels (c. v, 1).

ār-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum, v. tr., plough.

ar-rĭpĭo, -rĭpĕre, -rĭpŭĭ, -reptum, v. tr., seize upon, devote oneself eagerly to.

ar-s, -tis, F., art, pursuit, stratagem.

Artaxerx-es, -is, M., Artaxerxes, king of Persia B.C. 465-B.C. 425. He was a son of Xerxes. During his reign Themistocles fled from Greece and took up his abode in Asia Minor.

art-ĕ, adv., tightly, closely.

Artĕmĭsĭ-um, -ĭ, N., Artemisium, one of the promontories of Euboea.

artĭcŭl-us, -ĭ, M., little; int.

artĭfici-um, -ĭ, N., mechanical art.

art-us, -ūs, M., joint.

arv-um, -ĭ, N., a ploughed field.

ar-x, -cis, F., citadel. In Nepos (Themistocles 2 and 4), arx means the Acropolis of Athens.

a-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendĭ, -scensum, v. tr., ascend, mount; navem ascendere, to embark.

a-scensus, -scensŭs, M., ascent.

Asĭ-a, -ae, F., Asia.

a-spect-us, -ŭs, M., appearance, look, sight.

as-per, -ĕrā, -ĕrum, adj., rough, uneven, wild, fierce.

as-port-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum, v. tr., carry from.

assĭdŭ-us, -ā, -um, adj., see adsiduus.

assisto, see adsisto.

assuesco, see adsuesco.

assuefacio, see adsuefacio.

astu, indeclinable neuter sing. (Gk. ἄστυ, city); the city, *i.e.*, Athens.

at, conj., but, yet.

āt-er, -ra, -rum, adj., black, dark.

Āthēn-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Athens.

Āthēniēns-is, -e, adj., of Athens, Athenian.

atque (contracted *ac*; and *que*, before vowels, *ac*, before consonants), conj., and also, and even, and (stronger than *et*); *par atque*, the same as; *aliter atque*, different than; *contra atque*, otherwise than.

Atrēb-as, -ātis, adj., Atrebatian.

Atrēbāt-ēs, -iūm, M., the Atrebates, a people of Belgic Gaul in the modern Artois or Arras (*Flemish Atrecht*).

Atrī-us, -ī, M., Quintus Atrius, an officer in Caesar's army, who was left on the south coast of Britain to look after the fleet while Caesar marched inland on his second expedition. B.C. 54.

ātrō-x, -cis, adj., dark, terrible.

Attī-a, -ae, F., Attica, a district of the south-eastern part of Northern Greece in which Athens was situated.

Attī-us, -ī, M., Titus Pomponius Atticus, a friend of Cicero.

at-tingo, -tingere, -tīgī, -tactum, v. tr., touch on, border upon, reach; *Rhenum attingunt*, they border on the Rhine (c. iv, 3); *terram attingere*, reach land (c. v, 23).

at-tollo, -tollere, v. tr., raise.

attribuo, see *adtribuo*.

auct-or, -ōris, M., adviser, helper; *me auctore*, at my suggestion.

auctōrit-as, -ātis, F., authority, influence, power, prestige.

auctumn-us (or *autumnus*), -ī, M., autumn.

audācī-a, -ae, F., boldness, daring.

audācīter, adv., boldly.

audacter, same as *audaciter*.

aud-ax, -ācis, adj., bold, daring.

aud-ēo, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep. v. tr. and intr., dare, be bold.

aud-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., hear.

audītī-o, -ōnis, F., hearing, listening; pl., *auditiones*, tales, rumors.

aufero, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, v. tr., carry away, remove (p. 154).

augēo, augere, auxī, auctum, v. tr., increase.

aul-a, -ae, F., a hall.

Aurēlī-us, -ī, M., Caius Aurelius Cotta, a Roman consul, B.C. 200.

aurē-us, -ā, -um, adj., golden, of gold.

aurīg-a, -ae, M., a charioteer, driver.

aur-is, -is, F., an ear.

aur-um, -ī, N., gold.

Auruncūlei-us, -ī, M., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of the lieutenants of Caesar in Gaul. He fell in an ambushcade planned by Ambiorix, B.C. 54.

aut, conj., or; *aut... aut*, either... or; occasionally used by Caesar for *neque* (B. iv, 1, 2, 20).

autem, conj., but, moreover, yet, also, now. (Never put first in a clause.)

autumnus, see *auctumnus*.

auxilī-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep. (with dat.), give help.

auxilī-um, -ī, N., aid, support; in plural, *auxilī-a, -ōrum*, auxiliary troops.

āvārītī-a, -ae, F., avarice, greed.

āvers-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *averto* used as an) adj., turned away.

āvīd-us, -ā, -um, adj., eager, covetous.

āv-is, -is, F., a bird.

āv-us, -ī, M., a grandfather.

## B.

Baebī-us, -ī, M., Cneius Baebius Tamphilus, consul 182 B.C.

Balbus, see L. Cornelius Balbus under Cornelius.

barbār-ī, -ōrum, M. pl., barbarians, a name first applied by the Greeks, then by the Romans, to the people of other nations.

barbār-us, -ā, -um, adj., savage, barbarous.

Batāv-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Batavi, a people who inhabited the islands at the mouth of the Rhine, corresponding to the district of modern Holland.

bēāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., happy, prosperous.

Belg-ae, -ārum, pl. M., the Belgae, a general name applied to a warlike people of north-eastern Gaul, from the Mosa (*Meuse*) to the Sequana (*Seine*), partly Celtic, partly Teutonic. The chief tribes were the Remi, Morini, Nervii, Suessiones.

bellīcōs-us, -ā, -um, adj., warlike.

bell-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., be at war, war.

bell-um, -ī, N., war; *belli*, in war (p. 86, 3); *bellum populo Romano facere*, to make war against the Roman people (c. iv, 22).

**bēne**, adv., well, prosperously; comp., **melius**; sup., **optime**.

**bēnēfīcī-um**, -ī, N., kindness, favor.

**bēnēvōl-us**, -ā, -um, adj., benevolent, kind; comp., **benevolentior**; sup., **benevolentissimus**.

**bīb-o**, -ēre, **bībī**, no sup., v. tr., drink.

**Bibrōc-ī**, -ōrum, M. pl., the Bibrōci, a tribe of Britain which occupied Berks, Sussex, Surrey and adjoining district.

**bīdū-um**, -ī, N., a space of two days.

**bīennī-um**, -ī, N., a space of two years.

**bīn-ī**, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj., two each, two by two (p. 69, 8).

**bīpēdāl-is**, -e, adj., two feet long or thick.

**bis**, adv., numeral, twice.

**Bithyn-ī**, -ōrum, pl. M., the Bithyni; a people who dwelt in Bithynia, a district between the Propontis (*Sea of Marmora*) and the Euxine (*Black Sea*).

**Bithynī-a**, -ae, F., Bithynia (see preceding).

**Bithynī-us**, -ā, -um, adj., Bithynian; see **Bithyni**.

**bland-īor**, -īri, -ītus sum, v. intr. dep., flatter (with dative).

**Blith-o**, -ōnis, see **Sulpicius**.

**bōn-ā**, -ōrum, N. pl. of **bonus**; goods, property; **bona publicare**, to confiscate goods (N. H. 7).

**bōnīt-as**, -ātis, F., goodness, richness.

**bōn-us**, -ā, -um, adj., good; comp., **melior**; sup., **optimus**.

**bōs**, **bōvis**, M. or F., an ox, cow; pl., **bōves**, cattle.

**brāchī-um**, -ī, N., arm.

**brēv-is**, -e, adj., short, brief; **brevi** (**tempore**), in a short time, soon.

**brēvīt-as**, -ātis, F., shortness.

**brēvīter**, adv., shortly, briefly.

**Brītann-ī**, -ōrum, pl. M., Britons.

**Brītannī-a**, -ae, F., Britain.

**Brītannīc-us**, -ā, -um, adj., British.

**brūm-a**, -ae, F., the winter solstice; Dec. 21st.

**Brundūsī-um**, -ī, N., Brundisium, a town in south-eastern Italy (now *Brindisi*).

**Brūt-us**, -ī, M., Brutus.

**C.**, an abbreviation for **Caius**, a Roman praenomen; see **Aurelius**, **Caesar**, **Claudius**, **Centenius**, **Flaminius**.

**cādo**, **cādere**, **cēcīdī**, **cāsum**, v. intr., fall, be slain.

**cādūc-ūs**, -ī, M., or **cādūc-um**, -ī, N., a herald's staff.

**caec-us**, -ā, -um, adj., blind.

**caed-es**, -is, F., slaughter, murder.

**caedo**, **caedere**, **cēcīdī**, **caesum**, v. tr., cut, kill, fell.

**caelest-is**, -e, adj., heavenly; in the plural **caelestes** (supply **dei**), the gods of heaven.

**cael-um**, -ī, N., sky, heavens.

**caerīmōnī-a**, -ae, F., rite, reverence, veneration, awe.

**caerūlē-us**, -a, -um, adj., deep blue, sky-blue.

**Caes-ar**, -āris, M., **Caius** (or **Gaius**) **Julius Caesar**, born 100 B.C., died 44 B.C.; for **Caius** (or **Gaius**) a Roman praenomen; see **C**.

**cālāmīt-as**, -ātis, F., disorder, misfortune, defeat.

**calc-ar**, -āris, N., a spur.

**cāl-ēo**, -ēre, -ūī, v. intr., be warm.

**cālīd-us**, -a, -um, adj., warm.

**callīdē**, adv., skilfully; comp., **callidius**; sup., **callidissime**; **de futuris callidissime coniciebat**, he was most skilful in forecasting the future (N. T. 1).

**callīdīt-as**, -ātis, F., skill, sagacity.

**callīd-us**, -a, -um, adj., skilful.

**Camill-us**, -ī, M., **Camillus**, the deliverer of Rome from the Gauls in 389 B.C.

**camp-us**, -ī, M., plain, field; **camp-us Martius**, a plain between the walls of Rome and the Tiber, where the elections were held and all kinds of athletic sports were practised.

**cān-is**, -is, M. or F., a dog.

**Cannens-is**, -e, adj., of, or belonging to **Cannae**, a village of **Apulia**, where the Romans were defeated by **Hannibal**, 216 B.C.

**cāno**, **cānere**, **cēcīnī**, **cantum**, v. tr. and intr., sing.

**Cantāb-er**, -rī, M., a **Cantabrian**. The **Cantabri** were a mountain tribe of Spain dwelling in the Pyrennees.

**Cantābr-ī**, -ōrum, pl. M.; see **Cantaber**.



**Cantī-um**, -ī, N., Kent, a county in south-eastern England.

**cant-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., sing.

**cant-us**, -ūs, M., song.

**cāp-er**, -rī, M., a he-goat.

**cap-esso**, -essēre, -essīvi, -essī-tum, v. tr., undertake the management of; **capessere rempublicam**, to take part in the administration of the state (N. T. 2).

**cāpill-us**, -ī, M., hair; **esse promisso capillo**, to wear long hair.

**cāpio**, **cāpēre**, **cēpī**, **captum**, v. tr., take; **captus misericordia**, overcome with pity (N. T. 8); **capere consilium**, to form a plan (N. II. 9); **portum capere**, to make the harbor (c. iv, 36); so **insulam capere** (c. iv, 26; v. 8).

**capr-a**, -ae, F., a she-goat.

**captiv-us**, -ī, M., a captive, prisoner.

**capt-us**, -ā, -um (perf. part. pass. of **capio**), taken, captured, charmed, influenced.

**capt-us**, -ūs, M., capacity, idea; **ut est captus Germanorum**, according to German ideas (c. iv, 3).

**Cāpū-a**, -ae, F., Capua, the chief city of Campania, near the present village of *Santa Maria*.

**cāp-ut**, -itis, N., head; chief city; mouth of a river (c. iv, 10).

**carc-er**, -ēris, M., a prison; in plur., barriers in a race-course.

**cārē**, adv., dearly, with affection.

**cārīn-a**, -ae, F., hull of a vessel, keel.

**carm-en**, -īnis, N., song.

**car-o**, -nis, F., flesh; **carne vivere**, to live on flesh (c. v, 14).

**carp-o**, -ēre, -sī, -tum, v. tr., pluck.

**carr-us**, -ī, M., a waggon, cart.

**Carthāgīniēns-is**, -e, adj., of or belonging to Carthage, Carthaginian.

**Carthāg-o**, -īnis, F., Carthage, or Karthage, a city of Northern Africa which carried on war with Rome almost continuously from 264 B.C. to 146 B.C.

**cār-us**, -ā, -um, adj., dear, beloved, agreeable to.

**Carvīlī-us**, -ī, M., Carvilius, a petty king of Kent (c. v, 22).

**cās-a**, -ae, F., a cottage.

**cāsē-us**, -ī, M., cheese.

**Cass-ī**, -ōrum, pl. M., the Cassi, a British tribe that inhabited Hertfordshire.

**Cassī-us**, -ī, M., Caius Cassius Longus, one of the assassins of Caesar. He died 42 B.C., at Philippi.

**Cassivellaun-us**, -ī, M., Cassivellaunus, or Caswallon, the able commander-in-chief of the British army opposed to Caesar. His chief town was **Verulamium** (now *St. Albans*).

**castell-um**, -ī, N., a fortress.

**Castīc-us**, -ī, M., Casticus, a chief of the Sequani, whom Orgetorix induced to seize the supreme power in his state.

**castr-um**, -ī, N., a hut, fort; in pl., **castr-a**, -ōrum, a camp; **castra ponere**, to pitch a camp; **castra munire**, to fortify a camp, to pitch a camp; **castra habere**, to be encamped (N. II. 5); **castra movere**, to advance; **castra navalia**, an encampment on the shore for protecting the fleet and the troops while landing; sometimes connected with the ships drawn up on land (c. v, 22).

**cāsū**, (abl. of **cāsus**, used as an) adv., by chance.

**cās-us**, -ūs, M., chance, accident.

**cātēn-a**, -ae, F., a chain.

**Cātīlīn-a**, -ae, M., Lucius Sergius Catiline, an ambitious and profligate Roman of Cicero's time.

**caus-a**, -ae, F., cause, reason, pretext; **causam interponens**, alleging as an excuse (N. T. 7); **in eadem causa**, in the same position (c. iv, 4); **multis de causis**, for many reasons (c. iv, 16).

**causā**, adv. (really abl. of **causa**, with the noun depending on it in the gen.), for the sake of, on account of; **meā causā**, for my sake; **frigoris depellendī causā**, for the purpose of warding off the cold.

**cāvēo**, **cāvēre**, **cāvī**, **cautum**, v. tr. and intr., take precaution; **aliquem cavere**, to avoid any one; **in aliquem cavere**, to take means against one; **alicui cavere**, to take means for one's safety.

**cāv-um**, -ī, N., a cave.

**cēdo**, **cēdēre**, **cessi**, **cessum**, v. intr., go, yield; **insequi cedentes**, to overtake the retreating foe (c. v, 16).

**cēlēbr-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., celebrate.

**cēl-er**, -ēris, -ēre, adj., swift; comp., **celerior**; sup., **celerrimus**.

**cēlērīt-as**, -ātis, F., swiftness, speed.

**cēlērīter**, adv., quickly; comp., **celerius**; sup., **celerrime**.

cēl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., hide.  
cēn-a, -ae, F., dinner, feast.  
ceno (r., 1), dine.

Cēnimagnī -ōrum, M. pl., the Cenimagni. The word Cenimagni is said to be a corruption for Icenimagni. They inhabited Norfolk and Suffolk, north of the Trinobantes.

censō, censēre, censūi, censum, or censitum, v. tr., think, consider.

Centēnius, -ī, M., Caius Centenius, a Roman praetor who fell in an engagement with Hannibal, 217 B.C.

centum, num. adj., indecl., hundred.

centūrī-o, -ōnis, M., a centurion, a commander of a centuria, which at full complement numbered 100 men.

cerno, cernēre, crēvi, crētum, v. tr., see, perceive.

certām-en, -īnis, N., conflict, battle, struggle.

certē, adv., at least, certainly.

cert-us, -ā, -um, adj., certain, fixed, true, aliquem certiore facere, inform; certior fieri, to be informed; certus locus, a definite place; certa dies, a fixed day (c. v., 1).

cerv-us -ī, M., deer, stag.

(cētēr-us), -ā, -um (nom. sing. not found), adj., rest.

Cethēg-us, -ī, M., see Publius Cornelius Cethegus, under Cornelius.

cīb-us -ī, M., food, nourishment.

Cicēro, -ōnis, M., Marcus Tullius Cicero, the most noted of Roman orators. He lived B.C. 106-B.C. 43.

cicōnī-a, -ae, F., a stork.

Cingētōr -ix, -īgis, M., Cingetorix; (1) a Gaul attached to Caesar, and rival of Indutiomarus for the chieftainship of the Treveri (c. v., 3). (2) a British chief of Kent (c. v., 22).

cingo, cingēre, cingi, cinctum, v. tr., surround.

circā, adv. and prep. (with acc.); about, around, in the neighborhood of (see circum).

circīter, adv. (with numeral adjectives); about, nearly.

circū-ēo, see circumeo.

circūit-us, -ūs, M., circumference, circuit.

circum, prep. (with acc.), around, in the neighborhood of; circum Aquileiam, in the neighborhood of Aquileia.

circum-clūdo, -clūdēre, -clūsī, clūsūm, v. tr., enclose.

circum-do, -dāre, -dēdī, -dātum, v. tr., place around, surround; urbem muro (abl.) circumdare, or urbi (dat.) murum circumdare, to surround the city with a wall.

circum-dūco, -dūcēre, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead around, draw around.

circum-ēo, -īre, -īvi (or -īi), -ītum, v. tr., go around, visit; hiberna circumire, to inspect the winter quarters (c. v., 2).

circum-fundo, -fundēre, -fūdī, -fūsūm, v. tr., pour around; in passive, surround, hem in, crowd around.

circum-sisto, -sistēre, -stētī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., surround (p. 277, 7).

circum-sto, -stāre, -stētī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., stand around, surround (p. 277, 7).

circum-vēniō, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. tr., surround (p. 277, 7).

cis, prep. (with acc.), on this side of.

citāt-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of cito used as an) adj., rapid, swift.

cītērī-or, -ōris, adj. (p. 59, 2), on this side, hither; Gallia citerior, Gaul on this (i.e., the Roman) side of the Alps (Northern Italy), opposed to Gallia ulterior, Gaul beyond the Alps (France).

cītō, adv., rapidly, swiftly; comp., citius; sup., citissime.

cīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., urge on, hasten.

citrā, prep. (with acc.), on this side of, within.

civīl-is, -e, adj., civil; bellum civile, civil war.

civ-is, -is, M. or F., citizen, native.

civīt-as, -ātis, F., state, commonwealth; e civitate eicere, to banish (N. T. 8).

clād-es, -is, F., defeat, disaster.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., shout, exclaim.

clām-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., call, shout; clamatum est, a shout was raised (p. 164, 2).

clām-or, -ōris, M., shout.

clandestīn-us, -ā, -um, adj., secret; consilia clandestina, privy counsels (N. II. 2).

clār-us, -ā, -um, adj., bright, clear, distinguished.

**classiārī-i, -ōrum**, pl. M., soldiers serving in the fleet, marines.

**classiārī-us, -ā, -um**, adj., belonging to the fleet.

**class-is, -is**, F., fleet.

**Clastidī-um, -ī**, N., Clastidium (now *Chiasteggio*), a fortress on the Padus (*Po*), in Gallia Cisalpina. Nepos confuses the taking of this fortress with the battle of Ticinus, B.C. 218.

**Claudī-us, -ī**, M., Claudius; (1) Marcus Claudius Marcellus, born about 268 B.C., died 208 B.C., consul 222 B.C., 215 B.C., 214 B.C., 210 B.C., 203 B.C., in which year he was slain by Hannibal in battle at Venusia. He took Syracuse in 212 B.C. (2) M. Claudius Marcellus, son of No. 1, in whose year of office, 183 B.C., both Hannibal and Scipio Africanus died. (3) Appius Claudius, consul with Lucius Domitius, B.C. 54. He was brother of the infamous Clodius whom Milo murdered, and was a well known lawyer and politician of Rome.

**claudio, claudēre, clausī, clausum**, v. tr., shut, close.

**clēmentī-a, -ae**, F., kindness, mercy.

**cliē-s, -tis**, M. or F., a dependant.

**clipē-us, -ī**, M., a shield.

**cliv-us, -ī**, M., a slope.

**Cn.** = Cneius, see *Baebius*, *Pompeius*, *Servilius*.

**Cnēi-us, -ī**, M., see **Cn.**

**cōact-us, -ā, -um**, (perf. part. pass. of *cogo* used as an) adj., forced; *hac necessitate coactus*, compelled by this necessity (N. T. 8).

**coelum**, see *caelum*.

**cō-ēo, -īre, -īvī (-ī), -ītum**, v. intr., come together, assemble, meet.

**coep-ī, -isse**, v. defec. (p. 145), begin, began.

**cōercēo, -ercēre, -ercūī, -ercitum**, v. tr., check, restrain.

**cōgītātī-o, -ōnis**, F., a thinking, thought, reflection, meditation.

**cōgīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., weigh well, ponder, think, plan.

**cognātī-o, -ōnis**, F., relationship, kindred.

**cognōm-en, -inis**, N., a family name, a name. Each Roman had regularly three names, the *praenomen*, indicating the individual like our Christian name; the *nomen* indicating the *gens*, or clan, or tribe to which he belonged; the *cognomen* or family name. *Caius* (*praenomen*), *Julius* (*nomen*), *Caesar* (*cognomen*); an *agnomen* was often added for honor

or character, as *Africanus* to *Scipio*, or *Iustus* to *Aristides*; hence *cognomine* (N. A. 1) = *agnomine*.

**cōgnosco, cognoscēre, cognōvī, cognitum**, v. tr., know, learn, ascertain (p. 145, 2).

**cōgo, cōgēre, cōgēī, cōactum**, v. tr. collect, compel, oblige; *equitatum cogere*, to collect cavalry (c. v, 3).

**cōhor-s, -tis**, F., a cohort, the tenth part of a legion (see *legio*).

**cōhort-or, -ārī, -ātus sum**, v. tr. dep., exhort, encourage *animate*, urge.

**collābēfact-us, -ā, -um**, perf. part. of *collabefio*.

**collābē-fīo, -fīērī, -factus sum**, v. pass., be supplanted.

**collaud-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., praise, extol.

**collēg-a, -ae**, M., colleague, partner in office.

**col-ligo, -līgēre, -līgī, -lectum**, v. tr., collect, assemble.

**coll-is, -is**, M., a hill.

**col-lōco, -lōcāre, -lōcāvī, -lōcātum**, v. tr., station; *in matrimonium collocare*, or *collocare alone*, to give in marriage (N. A. 3); *in statione collocatī*, stationed on guard (c. v, 15).

**col-lōquī-um, -ī**, N., conversation, conference.

**cōlo, cōlēre, cōlūī, cultum**, v. tr., till, cultivate; honor, worship.

**cōlōnī-a, -ae**, F., settlement, colony.

**cōl-or, -ōris**, M., color.

**cōm-a, -ae**, F., hair.

**cōm-es, -ītis**, M., companion (on a journey).

**cōmīt-or, -ārī, -ātus sum**, v. tr. dep., attend, be a companion to.

**commēāt-us, -ūs**, M., a coming and going; supplies; *duobus commetibus*, by two relays (c. v, 23).

**commēmōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., make mention of, recall to mind, relate.

**com-mendo, -mendāre, -mendāvī, -mendātum**, v. tr., commit to protection, entrust.

**commilit-o, -ōnis**, M., fellow-soldier, comrade.

**com-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -missum**, v. tr., engage; *committere proelium cum hostibus*, to engage in battle with the enemy; in *Nep. A. 1*, commit a crime; *nihil his committere*, to entrust nothing to these (c. iv, 5).

**Commī-us**, -ī, M., *Commius*, a Gaul, chief of the *Atrebates*.

**commōdē**, adv., correctly, profitably; *commodius verba dicere*, to speak more correctly (N. T. 10).

**com-mōdus**, -mōdī, N., convenience, profit; *quas sui quisque commodi fecerat*, which each had made for his own convenience (C. v, 8).

**com-mōdus**, -mōdā, -mōdum, adj., convenient, favorable, fit, easy.

**com-mōror**, -mōrārī, -mōrātus sum, v. dep. intr., delay, stay, remain.

**com-mōvēo**, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtūm, v. tr., disturb, agitate, alarm.

**commūnic-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., share with, communicate, impart.

**commun-īo**, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., fortify strongly.

**commūn-is**, -e, adj., common, general, affable, courteous; **classis communis**, the combined fleet (N. T. 3); **communi consilio**, after joint deliberation (C. v, 11).

**commutatī-o**, -ōnis, F., change.

**commūt-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., change, alter, abandon.

**compār-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make ready, prepare; **copias comparare**, to collect forces; **re frumentaria comparata**, after collecting a supply of corn (C. iv, 7).

**compār-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., compare.

**com-pello**, -pellere, -pūli, -pulsum, v. tr., drive in a body.

**com-pērio**, -pērire, -pēri, -per-tum, v. tr., find out, discover.

**com-plēo**, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, v. tr., fill completely; **naves militibus complere**, to man ships with soldiers (C. iv, 26).

**com-plūres**, -plura, adj. pl., very many, several.

**com-pōno**, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsītum, v. tr., settle; **bellum componere**, to make peace, to put an end to the war (N. H. 6).

**comport-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring together, collect.

**com-prēhendo**, -prēhendere, -prēhendī, -prēhensum, v. tr., seize, arrest.

**com-prōb-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., approve of, ratify.

**cōnāt-um**, -ī, N., attempt.

**cōnāt-us**, -ūs, M., attempt.

**con-cēdo**, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-

sum, v. tr., yield, grant, allow; *Argos concessit*, he withdrew to Argos (N. T. 8).

**con-cīdo**, -cīdere, -cīdī, no sup., v. intr., fall completely, fall together.

**con-cīdo**, -cīdere, -cīdī, cīsum, v. tr., cut to pieces, rout utterly.

**con-cīli-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., win over, gain, reconcile.

**concīli-um**, -ī, N., a meeting, assembly; **habere concilium**, to hold a meeting (C. iv, 19).

**con-cīt-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., urge forward, arouse; **risum concitare**, to excite laughter (N. II. 11).

**con-clām-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., shout, or cry out together.

**con-curro**, -currere, -currī, -cursum, v. intr., run together, rush; **eo concursum est**, a rush was made to that point; **in navem concurrere**, to charge a vessel (N. II. 10).

**con-curs-us**, -ūs, M., assembly, attack; **ex eo concursu**, from that collision (C. v, 10).

**con-demn-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., condemn, sentence.

**con-dīcī-ō**, -ōnis, F., terms.

**con-ditio**, same as **condicio**.

**condīt-or**, -ōris, M., founder of a city.

**con-do**, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, v. tr., found, establish, build.

**con-dōn-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., forgive, pardon.

**Condrūs-ī**, -ōrum, pl. M., the *Condrusi*, a people of north-eastern Gaul, on the right bank of the *Mosa* (*Meuse*) in the district of the modern *Namur* and *Liège*.

**con-dūco**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, v. tr., bring together, hire.

**con-fercīo**, -fercīre, -fersī, -fer-tum, v. tr., pack together; to cause to take close order; **legione conferta**, owing to the legion being in close order (C. iv, 22).

**con-fēro**, -ferre, -tūli, collātum, v. tr., bring together, gather, collect; **se conferre**, to betake oneself; **facta conferre**, to compare deeds (N. H. 13).

**confertus**, see **confercio**.

**confestim**, adv., immediately; **confestim a proelio**, immediately after the battle.

**con-fīcīo**, -fīcīre, -fīcī, -fectum, v. tr., do thoroughly; **bello confecto**, when the war was over (C. iv, 16); **rem**

conficere, to complete a matter (c. iv, 11); itinere confecto, after the march was made (c. iv, 14).

con-fido, -fidēre, -fīsus sum, semi-dep., v. intr., trust thoroughly (p. 278, foot note).

con-firm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., establish, cheer up.

con-fitēor, -fitēri, -fessus sum, v. tr. dep., confess fully, avow.

con-fligo, -figēre, -fixi, -fictum, v. tr., strike; proelio configere, to engage in battle (c. v, 15).

con-fluēns, -ntis, M., of rivers; the confluence, the meeting of rivers (c. iv, 15).

con-fōdio, -fōdēre, -fōdī, -fossum, v. tr., pierce through.

con-fūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgī, -fūgitum, v. intr., flee for refuge.

con-gēro, -gērēre, -gessi, -gescum, v. tr., carry or bring together, collect.

con-grādior, -grādī, -gressus sum, v. tr., meet, charge; inter se congradi, to charge each other.

con-icio, -icēre, -icēci, -iectum, v. tr., throw together (at a point); in fugam conicere, to put to flight; se in fugam conicere, to betake oneself to flight (c. iv, 12); culpam in aliquem conicere, to cast the blame on some one (c. v, 27); in vincula conicere, to throw into prison (c. iv, 27); de futuris callidissime conicere, to forecast the future most skilfully (N. T. 1).

con-iunctim, adv., jointly in common.

con-iungo, -iungēre, -iunxi, -iunctum, v. tr., unite, join.

coniūrātī-o, -ōnis, F., league; facere coniurationem, to form a league (c. iv, 30).

coniūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., form a league.

cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., attempt; conor ut faciam, I attempt to do (p. 292, 1).

con-quirō, -quirēre, -quisivī, -quisitum, v. tr., seek after.

con-scendo, -scendēre, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., embark in, mount; in navem conscendere, to embark on a vessel (c. v, 7); in equum conscendere, to mount a horse.

con-scientī-a, -ae, F., consciousness, knowledge, feeling.

con-scisco, -sciscēre, -scivī (scīi), -scitum, v. intr., unite, agree.

consci-us, -ā, -um, adj., conscious, accessory to.

con-scribo, -scribēre, -scripsi, -scriptum, v. tr., enrol, levy troops.

conscript-us, -ā, -um (perf. part. pass. of conscribo), usually in the phrase Patres conscripti, Conscript Fathers, i.e., the Roman Senators, so called because their names were entered on the roll of the Senators.

con-secr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., consecrate.

con-sect-or, -ārī, -atus sum, v. tr., dep., follow after, pursue vigorously.

consedissent, see consido.

consens-us, -ūs, M., consent, agreement.

con-sentio, -sentire, -sensī, -sensum, v. intr., agree, conspire.

con-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus (or sēquūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., follow, overtake, gain, get; id consequi, to carry out this (N. D. 10).

con-sēro, -sērēre, -sērūi, -ser-tum, v. tr., join together, unite, bring together; proelium or pugnam or manum conserere, to engage in battle.

con-serv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., save, maintain.

con-sidēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., examine carefully, consider.

con-sido, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, v. intr., settle, halt; copiae considunt, the forces encamp (c. v, 9).

consili-um, -i, N., plan, design; wisdom, prudence; capere consilium, to form a plan (N. D. 9; c. iv, 13); inire consilium, to adopt a plan (c. iv, 5); communi consilio, after joint deliberation (c. v, 6); publico consilio, by a public plan (c. v, 1); consilio instituto, from carrying out his appointed plan (c. v, 4).

con-simīl-is, -e, adj., very like, like in every particular.

con-sisto, -sistēre, -stītī, -stītum, v. intr., stand, halt; consist of; consistit in carne, it consists of flesh; in fluctibus est consistendum, they had to keep their footing among the waves (c. iv, 24).

con-sōl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., console, comfort, cheer.

con-spect-us, -ūs, M., sight, appearance.

con-spicio, -spicēre, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., observe, see, perceive.

con-spic-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., see, get a sight of, espy.

**constanter**, adv., steadily, resolutely, uniformly.

**constantī-a**, -ae, F., firmness, constancy, resolution.

**con-sterno**, -sternēre, -strāvī, -strātum, v. tr., cover with, cover over.

**con-stītūō**, -stītūēre, -stītūī, -stītūtum, v. tr., draw up, aciem constituere, to draw up a line of battle; classem, navem, constituere, to move a fleet, a ship; die constituta, on a set day; portus constitutus est, a port was made (N. T. 6); domicilium constituere, to fix his abode (N. T. 10); his rebus constitutis, when this was arranged (c. v, 5).

**con-sto**, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, v. intr., be formed; impers. constat, it is admitted, it is certain (p. 162).

**consuerunt**=**consueverunt**.

**con-suēscō**, -suēscēre, -suēvī, -suētum, v. intr., become accustomed; in pass., be accustomed.

**con-suētūd-o**, -nis, F., custom, habit; **ex consuetudine**, according to custom (c. iv, 32).

**consueverant**, see **consuesco**.

**cons-ul**, -ūlis, M., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates chosen annually at Rome.

**consūl-āris**, -āre, adj., of, or belonging to a consul, consular.

**consūl-āris**, -āris, M., one of consular rank, one who had been consul.

**consūlāt-us**, -ūs, M., the consulship, the office of consul.

**consūl-o**, -ēre, -ūī, -ultum, v. tr., deliberate, plan; **alicui consulere**, to consult for one's benefit; **aliquem consulere**, to ask one's advice; **in aliquem consulere**, to take measures against one; **consulere sibi**, to look after himself (N. T. 8); **civitati consulere**, to take measures for the interest of the state (c. v, 3).

**consulto**, adv., on purpose, designedly; **often de consulto**; **consulto cedere**, to purposely retreat (c. v, 16).

**consult-um**, -i, N., decree, resolution, decision.

**con-sūmo**, -sūmēre, -sumpsī, -sumptum, v. tr., spend, waste; **tempus consumere**, to waste time; **aestatem consumere**, to spend the summer (c. v, 4); **magna parte diei consumpta**, after a great part of the day had been spent (c. v, 9).

**con-surgo**, -surgēre, -surrexī, -surrectum, v. intr., rise in a body, arise.

**con-tāgī-o**, -ōnis, F., contact.

**con-temno**, -temnēre, -tempsi, -temptum, v. tr., despise, hold in contempt.

**contemptus**, perf. part. pass. of **contemno**.

**con-tendo**, -tendēre, tendī, -tentum, v. intr., strive for, hasten to, push forward, fight; **apud eos contendit**, he maintained before them (N. T. 7); **in fines Sugambrorum contendit**, he marches into the territories of the Sugambri (c. iv, 18).

**contentī-o**, -ōnis, F., struggling; gaining a battle.

**con-tent-us**, -ā, -um, adj. (with abl., p. 64, 4), content with.

**con-test-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., invoke.

**con-texo**, -texēre, -texūī, -textum, v. tr., weave, bind together.

**con-ticesco**, -ticescēre, -tīcūī, no sup.; v. intr., be silent.

**contīne-ns**, -ntis (properly pres. part. of **contineo**, used as an) adj., with terra understood; literally, the uninterrupted land, the continent.

**contīnenter**, adv., constantly, continually.

**contīnentī-a**, -ae, F., self-restraint.

**con-tīnēō**, -tīnēre, -tīnūī, -tentum, v. tr., hold together, bound, restrain, hem in; **se continere**, to keep themselves together; **civitatem in officio continere**, to keep the state loyal (c. v, 3); **in officio continere**, to keep him loyal (c. v, 7).

**con-tingo**, -tingēre, -tīgī, -tactum, v. tr., touch, extend to, reach; **impers. contingit** (p. 182), it happens.

**contīnūō**, adv., immediately.

**contīnūus**, -ā, -um, adj., continuous.

**con-tīō**, -tīōnis, F., assembly; **in contionem populi prodire**, to appear before an assembly of the people (N. T. 1).

**contrā**, prep. (with acc. only), against, opposite to; **contra Gallias**, facing the divisions of Gaul (c. iv, 20).

**contrā**, adv., contrary to; **contrā atque esset dictum**, contrary to what has been said (c. iv, 13).

**con-trāho**, -trāhēre, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., draw together, collect.

**contrārī-us**, -ā, -um, adj., opposite, contrary.

**contrōversī-a**, -ae, F., dispute.

**con-tūmēlī-a**, -ae, F., slight.

con-vālesco, -vālescēre, -vālūi, no sup.; v. intr., grow strong, recover.

con-vall-is, -is, F., valley.

con-vēho, -vēhēre, -vexī, -vecum, v. tr., carry together, convey.

con-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum, v. tr. and intr., come together, assemble; with acc., interview, meet; condiciones non convenerunt, the terms were not agreed to (N. II. 6).

convēnit, impers. v. intr. (with dat.), it becomes.

con-ventus, -ventūs, M., an assembly, assize; conventum peragere, to hold an assize (C. V. 1).

con-vertō, -vertēre, -verti, -versum, v. tr., turn, turn about; in fugam convertere, to turn in flight.

con-vinco, -vincēre, -vīcī, -victum, v. tr., conquer completely; prove guilty, convict.

con-vōco, -vōcāre, -vōcāvī, -vōcātum, v. tr., summon, assemble.

co-ōrior, -ōriri, -ortus sum, v. intr. dep., of a storm; arise, spring up.

cōpi-a, -ae, F., abundance, plenty, quantity; pl., copiae, forces, supplies; summis copiis, with all his forces (C. V. 17); copias instruere, to draw up troops (C. V. 18).

cōpiōs-us, -ā, -um, adj., well supplied, rich, wealthy.

cōquo, cōquēre, coxī, coctum, v. intr., cook.

cōr, cordis, N., heart.

cōram, prep. (with abl.), face to face with, in presence of; coram populo, in presence of the people; coram perspicit, he sees in person (C. V. 11).

Corcȳr-a, -ae, F., Corcyra (now Corfu), one of the Ionian islands on the coast of Epirus and Acarnania.

Corcȳrae-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to Corcyra, Corcyraean.

Cōrinth-us, -i, F., Corinth, the chief town of Achaia, a district on the northern part of the Peloponnesus.

Cornēl-i-us, -i, M., Cornelius, (1) Publius Cornelius Scipio, consul 218 B.C., killed in Spain 211 B.C. (2) Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus (son of No. 1), born about 234 B.C., died 183 B.C. He conquered Hannibal, at Zama, 202 B.C. (3) Lucius Cornelius Scipio Asiaticus (brother of No. 2), consul 190 B.C., defeated Antiochus. (4) Caius Cornelius Cethegus, consul 197 B.C., when Philip V. of Macedonia was defeated by Flamininus at Cynoscephalae. (5) Publius Cornelius Cethegus, consul 181 B.C.

corn-ū, -ūs, N., horn, wing of an army.

cōrōn-a, -ae, F., crown.

corp-us, -ōris, N., body.

cor-rīpio, -rīpēre, -rīpūi, -reptum, v. tr., seize violently, carry off.

cor-rumpo, -rumpēre, -rūpi, -ruptum, v. tr., break in pieces, destroy, ruin, bribe (N. II. 2).

Cōr-us (or Caurus), -i, M., the N.-W. wind.

cōtidiān-us, -ā, -um, adj., daily.

cōtidiē, adv., daily.

Cott-a, -ae, M., see Aurunculeius.

cras, adv., to-morrow.

crass-us, -ā, -um, adj., thick, coarse.

Crass-us, -i, M., Marcus Licinius Crassus, surnamed Dives (the Rich), was a member of the First Triumvirate along with Caesar and Pompey (60 B.C.). He fell at Carrhae, 53 B.C., in a war against the Parthians.

crāt-is, -is, F., wicker-work, a hurdle.

crēb-er, -rā, -rum, adj., thick, numerous, frequent.

crē-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, v. tr. and intr., trust, believe, think, suppose (p. 164).

crē-mo, -māre, -māvī, -mātum, v. tr., burn.

crē-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make, elect, choose, appoint (p. 90, 2).

cre-sco, scēre, -vī, -tum, v. intr., increase, grow, grow up.

Crēt-a, -ae, F., Crete (now *Candia*), an island in the Mediterranean, south of Greece.

Crētens-is, -e, adj., of or belonging to Crete; in the plural, Cretenses, Cretans.

cri-men, -mīnis, N., charge.

crī-nis, -nis, F., hair.

crūciā-tus, -tūs, M., torture.

crūdēl-is, -ē, adj., cruel, hard-hearted.

crūdēl-ītas, -ītātis, F., cruelty, barbarity.

crūdēl-īter, adv., cruelly.

crus, crūris, N., leg.

cūbil-e, -is, N., a bed.

cūius, gen. sing. of quis or qui (p. 126).

cūiusque, gen. sing. of quisque (p. 132).

cūiusvis, gen. sing. of quivis (p. 132).

**cul-men**, -mīnis, N., height, summit, top.

**culp-a**, -ae, F., blame, fault; **culpam inicere**, to throw the blame upon (c. iv, 2); **culpam conicere**, to throw the blame (c. iv, 27).

**culp-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., blame, find fault with.

**cultūr-a**, -ae, F., culture; **agri cultura** or **agricultura**, agriculture.

**cult-us**, -ūs, M., cultivation, mode of life, civilization.

**cum**, prep. (with abl.), with, along with; enclitic with *me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quibus, as mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quibuscum* (p. 105, 8).

**cum** (also written *quum*), adv., when, after, since, although (p. 203, 297, 4; 300, 9, 10); **cum . . . tum**, both . . . and; **cum** (or *quum*) **primum**, as soon as (p. 293, 2).

**cunctātī-o**, -ōnis, F., delay.

**cunct-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., delay, hesitate, doubt.

**cunct-us**, -ā, -um, adj., all, altogether.

**cūpidē**, adj., eagerly.

**cūpidit-as**, -ātis, F., eagerness.

**cūpid-us**, -ā, -um, adj., desirous of (with genitive, p. 281, 9); **cupidus rerum novarum**, anxious for a change of government (c. v, 6).

**cūp-īo**, -ēre, -ivī (-īī), -ītum, v. tr., long for, wish, desire.

**cūr**, adv., why?, for what purpose?

**cūr-a**, -ae, F., care, anxiety.

**Cūr-ēs**, -īum, pl. F., Cures, a town near Rome.

**cūrī-a**, -ae, F., Senate house.

**Cūrī-us**, -ī, M., Curlius, a Roman name.

**cūr-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., care for; in Caesar always with acc. of object and gerundive part.; **exercitum transportandum curare**, to cause the army to be transported (c. iv, 29); **naves aedificandas curare**, to have ships built (c. v, 1).

**curro**, **currere**, **cūcurri**, **cursum**, v. intr., run; **curritur**, they ran (p. 164, 2).

**curr-us**, -ūs, M., chariot.

**cur-sus**, -sūs, M., a running (c. iv, 35); voyage; **tenere cursum**, to hold on their course (c. iv, 28; v, 5).

**cur-vus**, -vā, -vum, adj., crooked, bending, winding.

**custōdī-a**, -ae, F., guard, picket.

**custōd-īo**, -īre -ivī -ītum, v. tr., guard, watch.

**cus-tōs**, -tōdis, M., guard, watch.

**Cūrēnae-ī**, -ōrum, pl. M., the people of Cyrene, a town of Northern Africa.

## D.

**D.C.** = **sexcenti**, six hundred.

**Dāc-us**, -ī, M., a Dacian. The Dacians occupied the south-eastern part of the modern kingdom of Austria.

**damn-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., condemn, pass sentence upon; **capitis damnare**, to condemn to death (p. 281, 12).

**damn-um**, -ī, N., loss.

**Danūbī-us**, -ī, M., the Danube.

**dātus**, perf. part. of *do*.

**dē**, prep. (with abl.), of, from, concerning; **his de rebus certior factus**, being informed of these events (c. iv, 5); **de tertia vigilia**, after the third watch was set; **multis de causis**, for many reasons (c. iv, 16); **qua de causa**, and for this reason; **de oppidis demigrare**, to remove from the towns (c. iv, 19); **de improviso**, unexpectedly.

**dē-a**, -ae, F. (for declension, p. 6, 2), goddess.

**dēb-ēo**, -ēre, -ūī, -ītum, v. tr., owe; ought (p. 162, 4, note).

**dēbil-īto**, -ītare, -ītāvī, -ītātum, v. tr., weaken, enfeeble, crush.

**dē-cēdo**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., retire, leave, depart from; **e vita decessit**, he died.

**dēc-em**, indecl. card. num., ten.

**dē-cerno**, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, v. tr., decide, determine; **cum hoc eodem decernit**, he fights a decisive battle with this same one (N. H. 4); **erant decreturi**, they intended to fight (N. H. 10).

**dē-cert-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., fight earnestly, fight a pitched battle, decide by a battle.

**dēc-et**, **dēc-ēre**, **dēc-ūt**, no sup., impers., it is becoming.

**dēc-īmus**, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., tenth.

**dē-cipīo**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., catch, deceive, cheat.

**dēclār-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., make clear, announce.

**dēcliv-is** -ē, adj., sloping.



dēcōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., adorn.

dēcrēt-um, -ī, N., decree, decision; stare decreto, to abide by a decision.

dē-curro, -currēre, curri (or cū-curri, -cursum, v. intr., run down, hasten.

dēc-us, -ōris, N., ornament, honor.

dē-dēc-us, -ōris, N., disgrace; de-decus admittēre, to commit a disgraceful act (c. iv, 25).

dē-dītī-o, -ōnis, F., surrender; in deditiōnem accipere (or recipere), to receive in surrender; in deditiōnem venire, to surrender.

dē-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, v. tr., give up, surrender; totum se deditit reipublicae, he devoted himself wholly to public affairs (s. t. 1).

dē-dūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, v. tr., lead away, bring down, withdraw; navem deducere, to launch a vessel; uxorem deducere (or ducere), to lead home a wife, to marry (c. v, 14); suos deducere, to withdraw their men (c. iv, 30).

dē-fectī-o, -ōnis, F., revolt, rebellion.

dē-fendo, -fendēre, -fendī, -fen-sum, v. tr., defend, repel, guard.

dēfens-or, -ōris, M., defender.

dē-fēro, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum, v. tr., carry down or away; report, announce; summum imperium ad eum deferre, to confer the supreme command on him (s. n. 3); paulo infra deferri, to be carried a little farther down (c. iv, 36); Caesaris mandata deferre, to bear the orders of Caesar (c. iv, 27).

dē-fervesco, -fervescēre, -fer-vūī, no sup., v. intr., cool down.

dē-fess-us, -ā, -um, adj., grow weary, exhausted.

dē-fīcī-o, -fīcēre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., fail, be insufficient, run short; si tempus anni deficeret, if the time of the year was insufficient (c. iv, 20); ab amicitia populi Romani deficere, to cast off the alliance of the Roman people (c. v, 3).

dē-figo, -figēre, -fixī, -fixum, v. tr., fix, fasten, drive down.

dē-flāgr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., be burned down.

dē-flūo, -flūēre, -fluxī, -fluxum, v. intr., flow down.

dē-form-is, -e, adj., ill-shaped, unsightly (c. iv, 2).

dē-fūgī-o, -fūgēre, -fūgī, fūgī-tum, v. intr. and tr., flee from, avoid.

dē-īcī-o, -īcēre, -īēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw down, cast down; de spe deiectus, disappointed in hope; magno sui cum periculo deici, to be driven down with great danger to themselves (c. iv, 28).

dēinceps, adv., one after the other, in succession, in turns.

dēinde, adv., thereafter, afterwards, then, next.

dēlāt-us, see dēfēro.

dē-lect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., delight, please (p. 278, foot note).

dē-lect-us, -ūs, M., a selection, levy of soldiers.

dē-lēo, -lēre, -lēvi, -lētum, v. tr., destroy, annihilate, wipe out.

dē-libēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., weigh, consider; re deliberata, when they had considered the proposal (c. iv, 9).

dē-līg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., fasten; navem ad ancoram deligare, to anchor.

dē-līg-o, -ligēre, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., choose, select, levy.

dē-lītesco, -lītescēre, -lītūī, no sup., v. intr., lie hid, lie in ambush.

Delph-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., Delphi (now *Kastri*), a city of Phocis, in Northern Greece, famed for its temple and oracle of Apollo.

Dēlī-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to Delos; Delian.

Dēl-us (or Dēl-os), -ī, F., Delos (now *Dili*), the central island of the Cyclades, noted for the temple of Apollo, which served as the treasury of the states that formed the Delian confederacy.

dē-mentī-a, -ae, F., madness; summae dementiae esse, to be the height of madness (c. iv, 13).

dē-mēto, -mētēre, -messūī, -messum, v. tr., cut down, reap.

dē-mīgr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., move from, depart from, emigrate.

dē-mīnū-o, -mīnūere, -mīnūī, -mīnūtum, v. tr., lessen, impair.

dē-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send down; se animo demittere, to lose heart.

dēmo, dēmēre, dempsī, demptum, v. tr. take down or off, remove.

dē-monstr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., point out, show, state, mention: explain.

dē-mōr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., delay, linger.

dēmum, adv., at length, at last.

dēnārī-us, -ī, M., denarius, a Roman coin worth about twenty cents.

dēn-ī, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj., ten each, ten apiece, by tens.

dēnīquē, adv., at last, finally; in a word, in short.

den-s, -tis, M., tooth.

dens-us, -ā, -um, adj., thick, closely packed, crowded.

dē-nuntī-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., announce, declare, threaten, order.

dē-pello, -pellere, -pūlī, -pulsū, v. tr., drive away, dislodge, turn aside; *ab eodem gradu depulsus est*, he was driven from his foothold by the same one (N. T. 5).

dē-pērēo, -pērīre, -pērīvī (-pērīī), no sup., v. intr., be lost, perish.

dē-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsū, -pōsitū, v. tr., lay aside, cast away; *animam deponere*, to relinquish his life; *spem deponere*, to give up hope (c. v, 19).

dē-pōpūl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., lay waste, plunder.

dē-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., carry off, remove.

dē-prēc-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., beg for mercy; *neque recusandī aut deprecandī causa*, for the purpose of neither denying the fact nor of begging him for mercy (c. v, 6).

dē-pugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., fight to the last, fight a pitched battle.

dē-rōg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., withdraw, take away from, weaken.

dē-scendo, -scendēre, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., climb down, descend; *in Graeciam descendere*, to attack Greece (N. A. 1).

dē-sēro, -sērēre, -sērū, -sertum, v. tr., desert, leave.

dēsert-or, -ōris, M., deserter.

dē-sidēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., wish for, long for, want; *neque ulla omnino navis desideratur*, not a single ship is lost at all (c. v, 23).

dēsīdī-a, -ae, F., sloth, indolence, idleness.

dē-sīlīo, -sīlīre, -sīlū, -sultum, v. intr., leap down, dismount.

dē-sīno, -sīnere, -sīvī (-sīī), -sītum, v. intr., leave off, cease, stop.

dē-sisto, -sistēre, -stītī, -stītum, v. intr., leave off, give over, cease from;

*proelio desistere*, to give up the battle; *sententia desistere*, to give up the notion.

dē-spēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., give up hope, despair; *rebus desperatis*, despairing of success (N. II. 8).

dē-spīcīo, -spīcēre, -spexī, -spec-tum, v. tr., look down upon, despise.

dē-spondēo, -spondēre, -spondī, -sponsum, v. tr., promise in marriage, betroth.

dē-stringo, -stringēre, -strinxī, -strictum, v. tr., draw a sword, unsheath.

dē-sum, -esse, -fūī, v. intr., be wanting, fail, be lacking.

dē-sūper, adv., from above.

dētēr-ior, -īoris, adj., comp. (positive wanting), inferior, worse; superlative, *deterimus*.

dē-terrēo, -terrēre, -terrū, -terrītum, v. tr., frighten, frighten off, prevent; *detertere ne or quin* (p. 185, 2).

dē-tīnēo, -tīnēre, -tīnū, -ten-tum, v. tr., keep back, stop, delay, hinder.

dētrīment-um, -ī, N., injury, loss, damage.

dēturb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., cast down, drive away.

dē-us, -ī, M. (for declension, p. 13, 2), a god.

dē-vīnco, -vīncēre, -vīcī, -vīc-tum, v. tr., conquer, overcome.

dē-volv-o, -volvēre, -volvī, -vōlū-tum, v. tr., roll down.

dē-vōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., devour.

dē-vōvēo, -vōvēre, -vōvī, -vō-tum, v. tr., devote.

dēxt-er, -rā, -rum, adj., right, on the right hand.

dēxtērā or dēxtērā (with *manus* understood), adj., the right hand.

Dīān-a, -ae, F., Diana, the goddess of archery and hunting.

dīc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., dedicate, devote, offer.

dīco, dīcēre, dīxī, dictum, v. tr., say, speak, tell, appoint; *causam dicere*, to plead a cause; *de quo ante ab nobis dictum est*, of whom we have made mention before (c. v, 6).

dictāt-or, -ōris, M., dictator, a Roman magistrate appointed only in seasons of emergency and invested with absolute

power during his term of office, which was not to exceed six months.

dict-um, -ī, N., word, order, command.

dī-es, -eī, M. or F. (in sing.), M. (in pl.), day.

diffĕro, differre, distŭlī, dilā-tum, v. tr., spread, scatter; put off, delay; inter se differre, to differ from each other; multum differunt, they differ greatly (c. v, 14).

difficīle, adv., with difficulty.

difficīlis, -e, adj., difficult; comp. difficilior; sup. difficillimus.

difficult-as, -ātis, F., difficulty, trouble.

dif-fido, -fidĕre, -fisu sum, v. intr., semi-dep. (for construction, p. 278, foot note); distrust.

dif-fundo, -fundĕre, -fūdī, -fū-sum, v. tr., spread out, extend.

dīg-ītus, -ītī, M., finger.

dignit-as, -ātis, F., splendor; tribuere dignitatem, to treat with respect (c. v, 7).

dign-us, -ŕ, -um, adj., worthy of, deserving (p. 64, 4).

dī-iudīc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., decide, determine.

dī-lect-us, -ŭs, M., levy.

dilīgen-s, -tis, adj., careful, attentive.

dilīgenter, adv., earnestly, diligently.

dilīgentī-a, -ae, F., diligence, care.

dī-līgo, -līgĕre, -lexī, -lectum, v. tr., value, esteem, love.

dī-mĕtīor, -mĕtīrī, -mensus sum, v. tr. dep., measure.

dī-mīco, -mīcāre, -mīcāvī, -mīcātum, v. tr., fight; cum dimicaretur, since the battle was fought (c. v, 16).

dī-mīdī-um, -ī, N., middle, half; dimidio minor, half the size (c. v, 13).

dī-mīdīus, -mīdīa, -mīdīum, adj., half.

dī-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -mis-sum, v. tr., send away, let go, dismiss.

Dīōnŷsī-us, -ī, M., Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse.

dis (abbreviated di-), inseparable prefix; apart, asunder, in pieces.

dīs, dītis, adj., rich; comp. ditior; sup., dītissimus (p. 57, 4).

Dīs, Dītis, M., Pluto, god of the lower world.

dis-cĕdo, -cĕdĕre, -cessī, -ces-sum, v. intr., depart, withdraw, forsake;

ab armis discedere, lay down arms; discessit superior, he came off victor (N. H. 1); ab signis discedere, to desert their standards (c. v, 16).

dis-cess-us, -ŭs, M., departure.

disciplīna, -īnae, F., learning, training, system.

discīpŭl-us, -ī, M., pupil.

dis-clŭdo, -clŭdĕre, -clŭsī, -clŭsum, v. intr., keep apart, separate.

disco, discĕre, dīdīcī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., learn.

dis-crīmen, -crīmīnis, N., risk, crisis, danger.

dis-īcīo, -īcĕre, -īcī, -iectum, v. tr., drive asunder, scatter, rout; domum dīcīere, to raze a house (N. H. 7).

dis-pāl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., straggle, stray.

dis-par, -pārīs, adj., unequal, unlike; disparī proelio, in an unequal contest (c. v, 16).

dī-spergo, -spĕrgĕre, -spĕrsī, -spĕrsu sum, v. tr., scatter, disperse.

dī-spĕrus, -spĕrsā, -spĕrsu sum (perf. part. pass. of dispergo, used as an) adj., scattered.

dis-plīcĕo, -plīcĕre, -plīcŭī, -plīcītum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, foot note), displease.

dis-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pōsŭī, -pōsītum, v. tr., set in order, draw up (of forces).

dis-pŭtātī-o, -ōnis, F., discussion, debate.

dis-pŭt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., treat of, investigate, discuss.

dis-sensī-o, -ōnis, F., disagreement.

dis-sentīo, -sentīre, -sensī, -sensu sum, v. intr., differ in opinion, disagree.

dis-sīdĕo, -sīdĕre, -sīdī, -sessu sum, v. intr., disagree; dissidere ab eo, to be at variance with him (N. H. 10).

dis-sīmīl-is, -ĕ, adj., unlike (with dat., p. 277, 2); comp., dīssīmīlīor; sup., dīssīmīllīmus.

dis-sīmŭl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., disagree, conceal.

dis-solvo, -solvĕre, -solvī, -solŭtum, v. tr., break down; pontem dissolvere, to break down a bridge (N. T. 5).

dis-pāl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., wander about; be scattered.

dis-tīnĕo, -tīnĕre, -tīnŭī, -tentum, v. tr., perplex, distract.

dī-sto, -stāre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., stand apart, be separated.

dis-tribūo, -tribūēre, -tribūī, -tribūtum, v. tr., divide, assign, distribute.

district-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *distingo*, used as an) adj., occupied with, busy.

dīū, adv., long, for a long time; comp., diutius; sup., diutissime.

dī-urn-us, -ā, -um, adj., by day.

divers-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *diverto* used as an) adj., in different directions; some one way, some another way.

div-es, -itis, adj., rich; comp., divitior; sup., divitissimus.

Divīc-o, -ōnis, M., Divico, chief of the Helvetii, who led an army against Cassius, B.C. 107, and headed an embassy to Caesar, B.C. 58.

divīdo, divīdēre, divīsī, divīsum, v. tr., divide, separate.

divīn-us, -ā, -um, adj., divine; res divīna, a sacrifice (N. H. 2).

divītī-ae, -ārum, pl. F., riches, wealth; divitiis ornare, to enrich (N. T. 2).

do, dāre, dēdī, dātum, v. tr., give; in fugam dare, to put to flight; manus dare, to yield; tempore dato, at an appointed time (N. H. 2); dare verba, to deceive (N. H. 5); dare vela ventis, to set sail (N. H. 8); dare operam, to take pains (N. T. 7; C. v. 7); dare arbitros, to appoint judges (C. v. 1).

dōcēo, dōcēre, dōcūī, doctum, v. tr., teach, inform, point out.

doct-or, -ōris, M., a teacher; utī doctore, to have as a teacher (N. H. 13).

doctr-īna, -īnae, F., teaching, learning, knowledge.

doct-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *doceo* used as an) adj., learned, experienced.

dōlēo, dōlēre, dōlūī, dōlītum, v. intr. and tr., grieve, be grieved.

dōl-or, -ōris, M., grief, pain; hoc dolore exardescere, to be aroused through grief of this (C. v. 4).

dōl-us, -ī, M., craft, fraud; per dolum, by deceit (C. iv. 15).

dōmes-tīc-us, -ā, -um, adj., domestic; bellum domesticum, civil war (C. v. 9); domesticæ opes, his own resources (N. H. 10).

dōmīcīlī-um, -ī, N., abode; domicilium constituere, to fix his abode (N. T. 10).

dōmīnāt-us, -ūs, M., tyranny.

dōmīn-us, -ī, M., a master, ruler.

Dōmītī-us, -ī, M., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul with Appius Claudius, B.C. 54. He was a staunch aristocrat, and brother-in-law of Marcus Cato. He fell at Pharsalia, B.C. 48, by the hand of Antony.

dōm-o, -āre, -ūī, -ītum, v. tr., tame, subdue.

dōm-us, -ūs (for declension, see p. 62, 6), F., a house, home; domi, at home (p. 285, 3); domum, home (p. 285, 1); domo, from home (p. 285, 2).

dōnec, conj., till, until, while (p. 299, 5, 6).

dōn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., give, present.

dōn-um, -ī, N., gift, present.

dorm-īo; -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. intr., sleep, rest.

dōs, dōtis, F., marriage portion, dowry.

Drūīd-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Druids, priests of the ancient Gauls.

dūbītātī-o, -ōnis, F., doubt, hesitation.

dūbīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., doubt, hesitate.

dūbī-us, -ā, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain; non dubium est quin, there is no doubt that (p. 188, 6); sine dubio, undoubtedly.

dūcent-ī, -ae, -ā, card. num. adj., two hundred.

dūco, dūcēre, duxī, ductum, v. tr., lead, think; in matrimonium uxorem ducere or simply uxorem ducere, to marry (said of a man), (N. T. 1); nubere viro (said of a woman); tempus ducere, to spin out the time (N. T. 7); poena dignum ducere, to consider one worthy of punishment (N. A. 1).

dulc-is, -e, adj., sweet.

dum, conj., while, until (p. 298, 3; 299, 4, 5, 6); provided that (p. 202).

dummōdo, conj., provided that, if only (p. 302, 7).

Dumnor-ix, -īgis, M., Dumnorix, chief of the Aedui and brother of Divitiacus. He was always hostile to the Romans, and was killed while trying to escape from Caesar (C. v. 7).

dū-o, -ae, -o (for declension, see p. 247), adj. pl., two.

dūōdēcīm, indecl. num. adj., twelve.

dūōdēcīm-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., twelfth.

dūōdēn-ī, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj., twelve at a time, by twelves.

dūōdētrīginta, num. adj., twenty-eight.

dūōdēvīgintī, num. adj., eighteen.

dūplex, dūplīcis, adj., two-fold, double; dūplex memoria, a two-fold account (N. II. 8).

dū-plīc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., double; numerum obsidum dūplīcavit, he demanded double the number of hostages (c. iv, 36).

dūritī-a, -ae, F., hardness, hardship.

dūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., harden, make hard.

Dūrus, see Laberius.

dūr-us, -ā, -um, adj., hard, severe, difficult.

dux, dūcis, M., leader, general, guide.

## E.

ē (ē before consonants; ex, generally before vowels, sometimes before consonants), prep. (with abl.); from, out of, in accordance with, in consequence of, on; una ex parte, on one side (c. iv, 3); ex equo, on horseback; ex itinere, on the march (c. iv, 11); ex litteris, in accordance with the despatch (c. iv, 38); ex usu, of advantage (c. v, 6); ex hac fuga protinus, immediately after this defeat (c. v, 17); duabus ex partibus, on two sides (c. v, 21).

eā (properly abl. sing. fem. of is, ēa, id, agreeing with parte or via understood), adv., there, on that side.

Eburōn-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Eburones, a Belgic tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine, dependents of the Treveri.

ē-dīco, -dicēre, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., speak out, make known, announce.

ē-dīscō, -discēre, -dīdīcī, rō sup., v. intr., learn by heart, commit to memory.

ē-dītus, -ītā, -ītum, adj., high.

ēdo, ēdēre, ēdī, ēsum, v. tr. (for conjugation, p. 274), eat.

ē-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, v. tr., set forth, publish, relate.

ē-dōcēo, -dōcēre, -dōcūī, -doc-tum, v. tr., teach, instruct, inform, tell.

ē-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead out, lead forth.

ēdūc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring up, rear.

ef-fēmīn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make weak or effeminate.

ef-fēro, efferre, extūlī, ēlātum, v. tr., carry forth, bring out, publish, bury; qui efferretur, wherewith to be buried (N. A. 3).

ef-fīcīo, -fīcēre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., effect, make; opus efficere, to complete a work (c. iv, 18); with ut and subjunctive, cause that; reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effect, he caused that it might be suitably sailed with the rest, i. e., he had the rest put in sailing trim (c. iv, 31).

ef-fūgīo, -fūgēre -fūgī, -fūgītum, v. tr. and intr., escape.

ef-fundo -fundēre, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr., pour out; se effundere, to spread out, scatter.

ēgen-s, -tis, adj., needy.

ēgēn-us, -ā, -um, adj., needy, in want, destitute.

ēgēo, ēgēre, ēgūī, no sup., v. intr., be in need (for construction, pp. 281, 10; 282, 1, foot note).

ēgest-as -ātis, F., poverty, want, need.

ēgo, mēī (for declension, p. 104, 1), pers. pron. I; pl. nos, we.

ē-grēdīor, -grēdī, -gressus sum, v. intr. dep., go out; disembark; navi egredi, to disembark (c. iv, 21).

ēgrēgīē, adv., admirably, splendidly.

ēgrēgī-us, -ā, -um, adj., eminent, marked, remarkable.

ē-gress-us, -ūs, M., landing, disembarkation.

ē-īcīo, -īcēre, -īēcī, -iectum, v. tr., cast out, throw out, repel; se eicere, to rush out; e civitate eicere, to banish (N. T. 8); se ex silvis eicere, to rush out of the woods (c. v, 15).

ēius: see is (p. 250).

ēiusdem: see idem (p. 250).

ēiusmōdī (= eius modi), of such a kind, of such a sort.

ē-lābōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., suffer greatly, make great efforts.

ēlāt-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of efferro used as an) adj., proud, haughty.

ēlēgān-s, -tis, adj., elegant.

ēlēphānt-us, -ī, M., elephant.

ē-līgo, -līgēre, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., choose out, select.

ēlōquen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of eloquor used as an) adj., eloquent.

ēlōquentī, -a, -ae, F., eloquence.

**ē-mendo**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., correct, amend.

**ē-mitto**, -mittere, -misi, -misum, v. tr., send out, release.

**ēmo**, **ēmēre**, **ēmī**, **emptum**, v. tr., buy.

**ēnim** (placed after the first emphatic word in its clause), conj., for, in fact.

**ē-nūmēr-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., reckon up, count over, enumerate.

**ē-nuntī-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., tell, repeat, report.

**ēō**, adv., thither, to that place, to such a degree; correlative of **quō** before comparatives (p. 195, 4): **quō...eo**, the ...the (by how much...by that much).

**ēo**, **ire**, **ivī** (ii), **itum**, v. intr. (for conjugation, p. 273), go, march.

**ēodem**, adv., to the same place, in the same direction, to the same purpose.

**Ēphēsī-us**, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to Ephesus; Ephesian.

**Ēphēs-us**, -ī, F., Ephesus, a city of Asia Minor.

**ēhippī-a**, -ōrum, pl. N., saddle, pack.

**ēhippīāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., furnished with a saddle.

**ēphōr-us**, -ī, M., an Ephor, one of the five Spartan magistrates who were elected annually as "overseers" of the state.

**ēpistol-a**, -ae, F., a letter; **epistolam solvere**, to open a letter (N. H. 11).

**epistula**: same as **epistola**.

**ēpūl-um**, -ī, N., banquet, feast; pl. F., **ēpulae**, meal.

**ēqu-es**, -itis, M., a horseman, cavalry soldier; pl. **equites**, the knights; **equitum magister**, master of the horse, an officer next in rank to the dictator.

**ēques-ter**, -tris, -tre, adj., belonging to horsemen, cavalry.

**ēquidem**, adv., truly, indeed.

**ēquitāt-us**, -ūs, M., cavalry.

**ēqu-us**, -ī, M., horse.

**Ērätosthēn-ēs**, -is, M., Eratosthenes, a Greek of Cyrēne, in Africa, noted as a geographer. He lived B.C. 276-B.C. 192.

**ērect-us**, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **erigē** used as an) adj., high.

**ergā**, prep. (with acc.), towards.

**ergō**, conj., therefore, accordingly.

**ērigo**, **ērīgēre**, **ērēxī**, **ērectum**, v. tr., arouse.

**ē-rīpiō**, -rīpēre, -rīpūī, -reptum,

v. tr., take away from, snatch from, rescue.

**err-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., wander, err, be wrong.

**err-or**, -ōris, M., a mistake, error, fault.

**ē-rūd-īo**, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, v. tr., instruct, teach, educate, train.

**ē-rumpo**, -rumpēre, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break out, make a sortie.

**ē-ruptī-o**, -ōnis, F., attack, sortie.

**Ē-ryx**, -ŷcis, M., Eryx (now *St. Giuliano*), a mountain and town on the west coast of Sicily.

**ē-scendo**, -scendēre, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., mount, ascend; in **navem escendere**, to embark (N. T. 8).

**essēd-a**, -ae, F., a war chariot of the Britons.

**essēdārī-us**, -ī, M., a charioteer.

**essēd-um**, -ī, same as **essedā**.

**et**, conj., and; **et...et**, both...and.

**ētīam**, adv., also, even.

**ētīantum**, adv., even then.

**Ētrūrī-a**, -ae, F., Etruria (now *Tuscany*), a district of Central Italy.

**etsi**, conj., even if, although (p. 303, middle of page).

**Euboe-a**, -ae, F., Euboea (now *Negropont*), an island, east of Northern Greece.

**Eumēn-es**, -is, M., Eumenes II., King of Pergamus, a friend of the Romans, who reigned B.C. 197-B.C. 159.

**Eurōp-a**, -ae, F., Europe.

**Eur-us**, -ī, M., Eurus, the east wind.

**Eurŷbiād-es**, -ae, M., Eurybiades, an admiral of Sparta, at the time when Xerxes invaded Greece, 480 B. C.

**ē-vādo**, -vādēre, -vāsī, -vāsum, v. intr., go forth, escape from.

**ē-vēnio**, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr., pass, happen.

**ēvēnit**, it happens (p. 182, 4); **usū venit**, it turned out by chance (N. H. 12).

**ē-vent-us**, -ūs, M., result, fortune.

**ē-vert-o**, -vertēre, -vertī, -ver-sum, v. tr., overthrow, drive out, destroy.

**ē-vōc-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., call out, summon.

**ex**: see **ē**.

**exadversum**, prep. (with acc.), over against, opposite.

**ex-āgīt-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., harass, drive out.

**ex-āmin-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., test; *ad certum pondus examinatus*, of a fixed standard weight, literally, weighed to a fixed weight (c. v, 12).

**ex-ānim-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., kill.

**ex-ardesco**, -ardescere, -arsī, -arsum, v. intr., be kindled, burst forth; *hoc dolore exarsit*, he was roused through grief at this (c. v, 4).

**ex-cēdo**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., leave, depart.

**ex-cello**, -cellere, -cellūi, -cellsum, v. intr., excel, surpass.

**ex-cels-us**, -ā, -um, adj., high.

**ex-cīo**, -cīre, -cīvi, -cītum, v. tr., arouse, awake.

**ex-cīpio**, -cīpere, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. tr., catch, receive.

**ex-citāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., encouraged.

**ex-cit-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., incite, stir up, arouse.

**ex-clūdo**, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., shut out, prevent; a *navigazione excludere*, to prevent from sailing (c. v, 23).

**ex-cōgit-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., devise, plan.

**ex-crūci-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., torture, torment.

**ex-cursī-o**, -ōnis, F., attack, sortie, sally.

**ex-cūs-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., excuse, clear (of a charge).

**exempl-um**, -i, N., an example, sample, pattern.

**ex-ēo**, -ire, -ivi (or -iī), -itum, v. intr., go out; *fama exit*, the report goes abroad (N. H. 9).

**ex-ercēo**, -ercēre, -ercūi, -ercītum, v. tr., exercise, train.

**exercitāt-i-o**, -ōnis, F., training, practise, exercise.

**exercitāt-us**, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of *exercito* used as an) adj., well trained, skilled.

**exercit-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., exercise, harass.

**exercit-us**, -ūs, M., a trained band; an army; *exponere exercitum*, to land an army (c. v, 9).

**ex-haurio**, -haurire, -hausī, -haustum, v. tr., drain, exhaust; *exhaustis facultatibus*, when resources had failed (N. H. 6).

**ex-hērēd-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., disinherit.

**ex-igo**, -igere, -ēgi, -actum, v. tr., drive out, pass the time; *exacta hieme*, when winter had passed, at the end of winter.

**ex-igūt-as**, -ātis, F., shortness.

**ex-igū-us**, -ā, -um, adj., small, scanty.

**ex-ili-um**, -i, N., exile.

**ex-istimāt-i-o**, -ōnis, F., reputation.

**ex-istim-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., value, estimate, think, consider.

**ex-iti-um**, -i, N., destruction.

**ex-itus**, -itūs, M., conclusion, end.

**ex-opt-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., wish, desire.

**ex-pēd-i-o**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., extricate, disengage, set free; *impers. expedit*, it is profitable, it is useful.

**expēdit-i-o**, -ōnis, F., an expedition, foray.

**expēdit-us**, -a, -um, adj., lightly equipped, free, unincumbered, without baggage; *ad usum expeditior*, more efficient for service (c. iv, 25); *legiones expeditae*, legions without baggage (c. v, 2).

**ex-pello**, -pellere, -pūli, -pulsum, v. tr., drive out, expel.

**expēriēti-a**, -ae, F., experience, practise.

**expēriōr**, -pēriri, -pertus sum, v. tr. dep., try, attempt; *inimicum ille expertus est*, he found an enemy (N. T. 9); *experti*, having tested their power (c. iv, 3); *omnia experti*, having tried every expedient (c. iv, 4).

**expers**, -pertis, adj., free from, without (with gen., p. 281, 9).

**explico**, -plicāre, -plicāvi (-plicūi), -plicātum (-plicitum), v. tr., set forth, exhibit; *oratione explicare*, to set forth in a speech (N. T. 1); *naves explicare*, to extend ships in line (N. T. 4); *explicare imperatores*, to describe the commanders (N. H. 13).

**explōrāt-or**, -ōris, M., scout, spy.

**explōr-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., investigate, reconnoitre.

**ex-pōno**, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsitum, v. tr., place out, deploy; *disembark*; *expositae hostium copiae*, the forces of the enemy deployed (c. iv, 23); *cum essent expositi milites*, when the forces had landed (c. iv, 37); *exposito exercitu*, when the army had landed (c. v, 9).

**ex-port-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., carry out, export.

**ex-posco**, -poscēre, -pōposcī, no sup., v. tr., demand the surrender of anything.

**ex-prīmo**, -prīmēre, -pressī, -pressum, v. tr., press out, extort.

**expugnātī-o**, -ōnis, F., a storming, attack.

**ex-pugn-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., take by storm, capture.

**ex-qui-ro**, -quirēre, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, v. tr., seek for, enquire, search out, ask for.

**ex-sēquor**, -sēquī, -sēcūtus (or -sēcūūtus sum), v. tr. dep., follow out, maintain, enforce.

**ex-sisto**, -sistēre, -stītī, -stītum, v. intr., spring up, arise.

**ex-spect-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wait for, await; in *ancoris expectare*, to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23).

**ex-stinguo**, -stinguēre, -stīnxī, -stinctum, v. tr., obliterate (N. T. 1).

**ex-sto**, -stāre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., exist, be; *capite solo ex aquā exstare*, to have their heads alone out of the water (c. v, 18).

**ex-struo**, -struēre, -struxī, -structum, v. tr., build up, raise.

**ex-structus**, -ā, -um, adj., piled up.

**ex-tērus**, -tēra, -tērum, adj. (rarely used in positive), outside, foreign, strange; comp., *exterior*; sup., *extremus* or *extimus* (p. 59, 1).

**ex-terrēo**, -terrēre, -terrūī, -terrītum, v. tr., frighten, strike down with terror.

**ex-timesco**, -timescēre, -tīmūī, no sup., fear greatly, dread.

**ex-tollo**, -tollēre, no perf., no sup., v. tr., extol, lift up, raise, exalt.

**extrā**, prep. (with acc.), without, beyond, outside of.

**ex-trāho**, -trāhēre, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., draw out, withdraw; *id facile extrahere*, to waste this easily (c. v, 22).

**extrēm-us**, -ā, -um, adj. (sup. of *exterus*) of place or time, last; *hieme extrema*, at the end of winter; *ad extremum*, at last (c. iv, 4).

**ex-ul**, -ūlis, M., an exile.

**ex-ūo**, -ūēre, -ūī, -ūtum, v. tr., strip off, despoil, deprive.

**ex-ūro**, -ūrēre, -ussi, -ustum, v. tr., burn up.

## F.

**fā-ber**, -brī, M., a workman, wright.

**Fābī-us**, -ī, M., Fabius; (1) Quintus Fabius Maximus, a Roman general of eminent qualities and virtues, surnamed *Cunctator*, or "the Delayer," because he withstood Hannibal, not by fighting him, but by harassing him with marches and counter-marches and cutting off supplies. He died 203 B.C. (2) Quintus Fabius Labeo, was dictator 221 B.C. and in 217 B.C. He commanded the fleet in 189 B.C. in the war against Antiochus, and was consul for the last time in 183 B.C. when according to Nepos, Hannibal died.

**fābūl-a**, -ae, F., story, tale.

**fācēt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., affable, courteous, witty.

**fācīle**, adv., easily, readily; comp., *facilius*; sup., *facillime*.

**fācīl-is**, -ē, adj., easy; comp., *facilior*; sup., *facillimus*.

**fācīn-us**, -ōris, N., deed, act.

**fācīo**, *fācēre*, *fēcī*, *factum*, v. tr., do, make; *magnī facere*, to value highly; *pluris facere*, to value more highly; *castra facere*, to pitch a camp; *iter facere*, to make a march; *vim facere*, to do violence; *imperata facere*, to obey commands; *facere pontem*, to build a bridge (N. T. 5); *naufragium facere*, to come to grief (N. T. 7); *proelium facere*, to fight (N. T. 9); *sui potestatem facere*, to put himself in the power of any one (N. H. 9); *ut scirent facere*, to see that they knew (N. H. 10); *palam facere*, to make plain (N. H. 11); *iureiurando fidem facere*, to give a pledge on oath (c. iv, 11); *bellum populo Romano facere*, to make war against the Roman people (c. iv, 22); *rebellionem facere*, to renew the war (c. iv, 30); *pro sano facere*, to act as a sane man (c. v, 7). (For passive see *fiō*.)

**factī-o**, -ōnis, F., party, faction.

**fact-um**, -ī, N., deed, act.

**fācul-tas**, -tātis, F., opportunity, abundance; pl. *facultates*, resources, goods; *exhaustis facultatibus*, when resources were exhausted (N. H. 6).

**fāg-us**, -ī, F., beech tree.

**Fālern-us**, -ā, -um, adj., Falernian; *ager Falernus*, the Falernian territory, a district at the foot of the Massic hills, famous for its wines.

**fallo**, *fallēre*, *fēfelli*, *falsum*, v. tr., deceive.



fal-sus, -sa, -sum, adj., false.  
 fām-a, -ae, F., report, rumor, fame; fama exit, the report goes abroad (N. II. 9).  
 fāmīlī-a, -ae, F., family, servants; household; pater familias or familiae, father of a family, master.  
 fāmīlīār-is, -e, adj., belonging to a family; res familiaris, property, (N. T. 1); as a noun, familiār-is, -is, M., an intimate friend.  
 fāmīlīārīt-as, -ātis, F., intimacy, friendship.  
 fas (indecl. noun), N., right.  
 fātēor, fātēri, fassus sum, v. tr. dep., confess.  
 fāt-um -ī, N., destiny, fate.  
 fāvēo, fāvēre, fāvī, fautum, v. intr. (governs a dative), favor.  
 fēlicīt-as, -ātis, F., happiness, success, prosperity.  
 fēlicīter, adv., luckily, prosperously.  
 fēl-ix, -īcis, adj., lucky, fortunate, prosperous.  
 fēmīn-a, -ae, F., woman, female.  
 fēm-ur, -ōris, N., thigh.  
 fēr-a, -ae, F., wild beast.  
 fēr-ax, -ācis, adj., fertile.  
 fēre, adv., almost, nearly.  
 fērīo, fērīre, no perf., no sup., v. tr., strike.  
 fēro, ferro, tūlī, lātum, v. tr., bring, bear, carry, endure; ferunt, they say; fertur, it is said; auxilium ferre, to bring aid; iniurias ferre, to inflict wrongs; legem ferre, to propose a law; consuetudo fert, the custom admits of (c. iv, 32); graviter ferre, to be annoyed (c. v, 6); ut fert illorum opinio, according to their ideas (c. v, 13).  
 fērōcīter, adv., fiercely, boldly.  
 fērō-x, -cis, adj., bold, warlike.  
 ferrē-us, -ā, -um, adj., of iron, iron.  
 ferr-um, -ī, N., iron.  
 fertīl-is, -e, adj., fertile, fruitful.  
 fertīlīt-as, -ātis, F., fertility, richness.  
 fēr-us, -ā, -um, adj., wild, savage, cruel.  
 fess-us, -ā, -um, adj., weary.  
 festīn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., hasten, hurry, speed.  
 fibūl-a, -ae, F., brace.

fictīl-is, -e, adj., earthen; vasa fictilia, vessels of earthenware (N. II. 10).  
 fic-tus, -tā, -tum, (perf. part. pass. of fingo used as an) adj., idle, invented; ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondere, to invent an answer to suit their wishes (c. iv, 5).  
 fidēl-is, -e, adj., faithful, trusty.  
 fid-ēs, -ēī, F., faith, loyalty; fidem habere, to repose confidence (N. T. 7); in fidem recipere, to receive under one's protection (N. T. 8); fidei credere, to trust to their charge (N. II. 9); fidem facere, to give a pledge (c. iv, 11); fidem sequi, to be loyal to (c. iv, 21; v, 20); eos in fidem recipere, to admit them to his protection (c. iv, 22); fidem interponere, to pledge his word (c. v, 6).  
 fīdo, fidēre, fīsus sum, v. semi-dep. (for construction, p. 278, foot note), trust, confide.  
 fidūcī-a, -ae, F., trust, confidence.  
 fīgūr-a, -ae, F., form, shape.  
 filī-a, -ae, F., daughter (p. 229, foot note 2).  
 filī-us, -ī, M., son.  
 findo, findēre, fīdi, fīssum, v. tr., cleave, divide.  
 fingo, fingere, fīxī, fictum, v. tr., form, shape, suppose.  
 fīn-īo, -īre, -īvī, -itum, v. tr., finish, end; populī Romani imperium Rhenus fīnit, the Rhine is the limit of the empire of the Roman people (c. iv, 16).  
 fīn-is, -is, M. and F., end, limit; pl., fīnes, M., boundaries, territories.  
 fīnītīm-us, -ā, -um, adj., bordering upon, adjoining; in pl., fīnitīmī, -ōrum, neighbors.  
 fīo, fīērī, factus sum (pass. of facio, p. 155), become, take place; fit, it happens (p. 182, 4); certior fieri, to be informed; quo factum est ut, the result was that (N. T. 1); factus est praetor, he was elected general (N. T. 2); non sine causa fieri, to be not without a reason (c. v, 6).  
 fīrme, adv., firmly.  
 fīrmiter, adv., firmly; fīrmiter insistere, to stand firmly, to get a good footing (c. iv, 26).  
 fīrmitūd-o, -īnis, F., firmness, strength.  
 fīrm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., strengthen, make strong.  
 fīrm-us, -ā, -um, adj., strong.  
 fīāgītī-um, -ī, N., crime, wickedness

**flāgit-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., demand, ask earnestly.

**Flamīnī-us**, -ī, M., Quinctius Flaminius, a Roman general who was sent B.C. 183 to Prusias of Bithynia to demand the surrender of Hannibal.

**Flamīnī-us**, -ī, M., Caius Flaminius, a Roman general who commanded the Romans, and lost his life at Trasimēnus, 217 B.C.

**flamm-a**, -ae, F., flame.

**flect-o**, -ēre, flexūī, flexum, v. tr., bend, turn.

**flen-s**, -tis, (pres. part. of fleo, used as an) adj., weeping, in tears.

**flēo**, flēre, flēvī, flētum, v. tr. and intr., weep, lament.

**flēt-us**, -ūs, M., tears, weeping.

**flō**, flāre, flāvī, flātum, v. intr., blow.

**flōren-s**, -tis, adj., flourishing.

**flōr-ēo**, -ēre, -ūī, no sup., bloom, flourish.

**flōs**, flōris, M., flower.

**fluct-us**, -ūs, M., flood, wave.

**flum-en**, -inis, N., river.

**flūo**, flūere, fluxī, fluxum, v. intr., flow.

**flūvī-us**, -ī, M., river.

**fōdō**, fōdere, fōdī, fossum, v. tr., dig.

**foedērāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., leagued together, allied.

**foed-us**, -ēris, N., treaty.

**for**, fārī, fātus sum, v. tr. dep., speak, say.

**fore** = futurum esse (fut. inf. of sum, p. 107, 1).

**forem** = essem.

**fōr-is**, -is, F., door, gate.

**form-a**, -ae, F., form, shape.

**form-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., shape.

**for-s**, -tis, F., chance, luck.

**forsitan**, adv., perhaps.

**fortasse**, adv., perhaps, by chance.

**forte**, adv., perhaps, by chance.

**fort-is**, -e, adj., strong, brave.

**fortīter**, adv., courageously, bravely.

**fortītūd-o**, -inis, F., courage, bravery.

**fortūīto**, adv., by chance.

**fortūn-a**, -ae, F., luck, lot, chance, good fortune.

**fortūnāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., prosperous, in good circumstance.

**fōr-um**, -ī, N., market place.

**foss-a**, -ae, F., ditch, trench.

**fōvē-a**, -ae, F., pit-fall.

**frango**, frangere, frēgī, fractum, v. tr., break; frangere eum, to break his spirit (N. T. 1); Corcyraeos frangere, to break the power of the Corcyraeans (N. T. 2); frangere navem, wreck a vessel (c. iv, 29).

**frāt-er**, -ris, M., a brother.

**frāter-nus**, -nā, -num, adj., fraternal, brotherly.

**frau-s**, -dis, F., deceit, deception.

**Fregell-ae**, -ārum, pl. F., Fregellae (now *Cepprano*), a very old town of Latium, on the river Liris.

**frēm-ītus**, -ītūs, M., uproar, noise, din.

**frēquen-s**, -tis, adj., crowded, in large numbers.

**frē-tus**, -tā, -tum, adj. (with abl., p. 64, 4); relying on.

**frigīd-us**, -ā, -um, adj., cold.

**frig-us**, -ōris, N., cold.

**fron-s**, -tis, F., forehead, front; a fronte, in front.

**fruc-tus**, -tūs, M., fruit, profit, advantage.

**frūg-ēs**, -um, pl., F., crops.

**frūmentārī-us**, -ā, -um, adj., pertaining to corn; res frumentaria, a supply of corn; inopia frumentaria, want of corn.

**frūment-or**, -ārī -ātus sum, v. dep., fetch corn, forage.

**frūment-um**, -ī, N., corn.

**frū-or**, -ī, fructus (or frūītus) sum, v. intr. dep., enjoy (with abl., p. 116).

**frustrā**, adv., without effect, in vain.

**frustr-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., deceive.

**fūg-a**, -ae, F., flight.

**fūgīo**, fūgēre, fūgī, fūgītum, v. tr. and intr., flee, flee from, run away.

**fūgītīv-us**, -ā, -um, adj., fleeing; as a noun, fūgītīv-us, -ī, M., a runaway slave.

**fūg-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., put to flight, rout.

**fulg-ur**, -ūris, N., lightning, brightness.

**fund-a**, -ae, F., a sling.

**fundā-mentum**, -menti, N., foundation.

fund-itor, -itōris, M., a slinger.  
 fundo, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, v.  
 tr., pour, rout; exercitum fundere,  
 to rout an army (N. A. 2).  
 fund-us, -ī, M., see funda.  
 fund-us, -ī, M., a farm, estate.  
 fung-or, -ī, functus sum, v. intr.  
 dep. (with abl., p. 116), discharge, per-  
 form; summis honoribus fungi, to  
 fill the highest offices (N. T. 7).  
 fūn-is, -is, M., rope, cable.  
 fūn-us, -eris, N., burial, funeral; pl.,  
 funeral rites.  
 Furī-us, -ī, M., Lucius Furius, consul  
 B.C. 196.  
 fūr-or, -ōris, M., rage, madness, fury.  
 fur-tum, -tī, N., theft.  
 fūtūr-us, -ā, -um, fut. part. of sum  
 (p. 107, 1); res futura, or futura  
 (neut. pl.), the future.

## G.

G. = Gāius, another form of Caius.  
 Galb-a, -ae, M., Galba; Servius  
 Galba, great-grandfather of the Emperor  
 Galba. He served under Caesar in Gaul,  
 and was praetor B.C. 54. After Caesar's  
 death he served against Antony in the  
 war of Mutina, 43 B.C.  
 gālō-a, -ae, F., helmet.  
 Gall-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Gauls; the  
 people who inhabited Gallia Trans-  
 alpina (or Ulterior). Further Gaul  
 (France), and Gallia Cisalpina (or  
 Citerior), Hither Gaul (Northern Italy).  
 Gallī-a, -ae, F., Gaul.  
 Gallīc-us, -ā, -um, adj., Gallic.  
 gallīn-a, -ae, F., hen.  
 Gall-us, -ī, M., a Gaul, an inhabitant  
 of Gallia.  
 Garumn-a, -ae, M., the Garumna  
 (Garonne), a river of Gaul.  
 gaudēo, gaudere, gavīsum sum,  
 v. intr., semi-dep., rejoice.  
 gaudī-um, -ī, N., joy, gladness, de-  
 light.  
 Gēmīn-us, -ī, see Servilius  
 gemm-a, -ae, F., a gem.  
 gēn-er, -erī, M., a son-in-law.  
 gēnērōs-us, -ā, -um, adj., of good  
 birth, noble.  
 Gēnēv-a, -ae, F., Geneva, a town of  
 Switzerland.  
 gēnīt-us, -ā, -um (perf. part. pass. of  
 gigno), born, descended from (p. 282, 3).

gen-s, -tis, F., nation, race, tribe,  
 clan.

gēn-us, -eris, N., birth, kind; am-  
 plissimo genere natus, descended  
 from a most illustrious family (C. iv, 12);  
 toto hoc in genere pugnae, in all  
 this kind of battle (C. v, 16).

Germānī-a, -ae, F., Germany.

Germānīc-us, -ā, -um, adj., German.

Germān-us, -ā, -um, adj., German.

gēro, gērere, gessi, -gestum, v.  
 tr., carry, bear, carry on; bellum  
 gerere, to wage war; rem male  
 gerere, to conduct a matter badly  
 (N. T. 1); res gerere, to conduct a  
 campaign (N. II. 7); gestus est ei  
 mos, his wish was complied with  
 (N. T. 7); res gestae, events.

gigno, gignere, gēnūī, gēnī-  
 tum, v. intr., beget, bring forth.

glādī-us, -ī, M., sword.

glōrī-a, -ae, F., glory, fame.

Gn. = Gnēius, another form for  
 Cneius.

Gortynī-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the people  
 of Gortyna, a town of Crete.

Gracch-us, -ī, M., Gracchus; Tibe-  
 rius Sempronius Gracchus, a Roman  
 consul led into an ambush by Hannibal's  
 soldiers and slain by them (N. II. 5).

grācīl-is, -ē, adj., slender.

grād-us, -ūs, M., a step; primus  
 gradus capessendae reipublicae,  
 the first step in his political career  
 (N. T. 1); ab eodem gradu depulsus  
 est, he was driven from his foothold by  
 the same man (N. T. 5).

Graeci-a, -ae, F., Greece.

Graec-us, -ā, -um, adj., Greek.

Grāī-us, -a, -um, adj., Graian;  
 saltus Graius, the Graian pass (N. II. 3).

grand-is, -ē, adj., large, great.

grātī-a, -ae, F., favor, courtesy,  
 beauty; pl. gratiae, thanks; agere  
 gratias, to give thanks; gratiam  
 facere, to pardon; gratiam habere,  
 to feel thankful; gratiam referre,  
 to be grateful to; gratiā (abl. with  
 genitive), for the sake of.

grātūl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v.  
 intr. dep., wish joy, congratulate.

grāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., pleasing.

grāv-is, -e, adj., heavy.

grāv-itas, -itātis, F., weight, im-  
 portance.

grāviter, adv., heavily; graviter  
 ferre, feel pained (C. v, 4).

**grēx, grēgis, M.**, flock, herd, troop.  
**gūbernāt-or, -ōris, M.**, pilot, steersman.

**gust-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, taste.

## H.

**hāb-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, -ītum, v. tr.**, have, hold, possess; regard, consider; **fidem habere**, to repose confidence (N. T. 7); **secum habere**, to keep at his house (N. U. 12); **neque quidquam habetur**, nothing is regarded (C. IV, 2); **consilium habere**, to hold a meeting (C. IV, 19); **magni habere**, to value highly (C. IV, 21).

**hābit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, have possession of, inhabit, dwell in.

**Hadrumēt-um, -ī, N.**, Hadrumetum, (now *Hammelm*), a Phœnician city of Northern Africa.

**haerēo, haerēre, haesi, haesum, v. intr.**, hold fast, stick to (with abl. or dat.).

**Hālicarnassi-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, of or belonging to Halicarnassus, a city of Caria, the birthplace of Herodotus, the 'Father of History.'

**Hamilc-ar, -āris, M.**, Hamilcar, a Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal. He held the command from B.C. 247 to 229 B.C., when he fell in battle against the Vettones, a people of Spain. Hasdrubal succeeded him and held command from B.C. 229 to B.C. 221, when Hannibal was elected commander.

**Hannīb-al, -ālis, M.**, Hannibal, a celebrated Carthaginian general who lived from 247 B.C. to 183 B.C.

**Harūdes, -um, pl. M.**, Harudes, a German tribe, at the head waters of the Rhine and Danube.

**Hasdrūb-al, -ālis, M.**, Hasdrubal; (1) Son-in-law of Hamilcar who held command of the Carthaginians B.C. 229-B.C. 221, when he was assassinated by a Spaniard. (2) Brother of Hannibal, slain at the river Metaurus, B.C. 207.

**hast-a, -ae, F.**, spear.

**haud, adv.**, not at all (negating single words, especially adjectives and adverbs); with verbs chiefly in the phrase **haud scio an**, I don't know whether (P. 177, 5).

**Hellespont-us, -ī, M.**, the Hellespont (now *Dardanelles*), a strait between Europe and Asia, connecting the Sea of Marmora with the Aegean.

**Helvēti-ī, -ōrum, pl. M.**, the Helvetii, a people who occupied Western and Southern Switzerland.

**Hercūl-ēs, -īs, M.**, Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, the god of strength.

**hērēdit-as, -ātis, F.**, heirship, inheritance.

**hērī, adv.**, yesterday.

**hibern-a, -ōrum, pl. N.** (properly neut. pl. of the adj., **hibernus** agreeing with **castra** understood), winter quarters; **hiberna circumire**, to inspect the winter quarters (C. V, 2).

**Hibernī-a, -ae, F.**, Ireland.

**hic, haec, hoc**; dem. pron. this, he, she, it (for declension, p. 117); **hic... ille**, the latter... the former.

**hīc, adv.**, here, at this point.

**hiēm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.**, winter, pass the winter.

**hiēm-s, -is, F.**, winter, storm.

**hinc, adv.**, hence, from this place.

**Hispānī-a, -ae, F.**, Spain.

**histōri-a, -ae, F.**, history, narrative.

**hōdiē, adv.**, to-day.

**Hōmēr-us, -ī, M.**, Homer, a Greek epic poet, author of the Iliad and Odyssey.

**hōm-o, -īnis, M. or F.**, a human being; man; pl. **hōmines**, inhabitants.

**hōnest-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, honorable, upright, noble.

**hōn-or, -ōris, M.**, honor, respect, dignity, public office; **summīs honoribus fungi**, to fill the highest offices (N. H. 7).

**hōr-a, -ae, F.**, hour. The Romans divided the period between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal parts, each of which was called **hora**; so also with the night. The length of each **hora** would depend on the season of the year.

**Hōrāti-us, -ī, M.**, Horace, a Roman poet who lived B.C. 65-B.C. 8.

**horr-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, no sup., v. tr. and intr.**, dread, shudder at.

**horrībil-is, -ē, adj.**, dreadful, frightful.

**horrīd-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, dreadful, frightful.

**hort-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep.**, urge, cheer, encourage, incite.

**hort-us, -ī, M.**, garden.

**hos-pes, -pītis, M.**, visitor, guest, friend, host.

**hospitī-um, -ī, N.**, hospitality, friendship; **cum quo ei hospitium erat**, with whom he was on terms of friendship (N. T. 8).

**hostī-a, -ae, F.**, a victim offered in sacrifice.

host-is, -is, M., an enemy.  
 hūc, adv., hither, here, to this place.  
 hūismōdī, of this kind, of this sort.  
 hūmānit<sup>as</sup>, -ātis, F., refinement, culture.  
 hūmān-us, -ā, -um, adj., human, civilized.  
 hūmēr-us, -ī, M., shoulder.  
 hūm-ī (locative, p. 86, 3), on the ground.  
 hūmīl-is, -ē, adj., low, poor, humble.  
 hūmīlīt-as, -ātis, F., lowness; lowness in the water (c. v, 1).  
 hūm-us, -ī, F., ground.

## I.

iāc-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, no sup., v. intr., lie on the ground, lie dead.

iācīo, iācēre, iēcī, iactum, v. tr., throw, cast; *ancoram iacere*, to cast anchor (c. iv, 28).

iactūr-a, -ae, F., loss, sacrifice.

iācūl-um, -ī, N., a javelin, dart.

iam, adv., by this time; *ubi iam*, as soon as; *iam antea*, some time before; with negatives, *neque iam*, no longer (c. iv, 13).

iamdūdum, adv., now for a long time, long [p. 216, 2, (b)].

iamprīdem, adv., now for a long time, long [p. 216, 2, (b)].

iānū-a, -ae, F., door; *puer a ianua*, the porter (N. H. 12).

Ībēr-us, -ī, M., the Iberus (now *Ebro*), a river of Hispania (*Spain*).

ībī, adv., in that place, there.

ībīdem, adv., in the same place.

īco, icēre, icī, ictum, v. tr., strike, hit, smite, stab; *foedus icere*, to make a treaty.

ict-us, -ūs, M., blow, thrust.

īdcirco, adv., on this account, for this reason, therefore.

īdem, ēādem, īdem, dem. pro., the same (for decl. p. 250).

īdōnē-us, -ā, -um, adj., fit, suitable, convenient.

īd-ūs, -ūum, pl. F., the Ides; a name given to the 13th of all months, except March, May, July, October, when the 15th was so called.

īgītur, conj., therefore, accordingly, then.

ignāvī-a, -ae, F., sloth, cowardice.

ignāv-us, -ā, -um, adj., slothful, cowardly.

ign-is, M., fire.

ignōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., be ignorant of, not to know.

ignōsco, -noscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, foot note), pardon, forgive.

ignō-tus, -tā, -tum, adj., not known, unknown.

ille, illā, illud, dem. pro. (for declension, p. 116), that, that well known; he, she, it; *ille ... hic*, the former ... the latter.

illic, adv., in that place, there.

illico, adv., forthwith, immediately.

il-līg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bind on, tie on, fasten.

illō, adv., to that place, thither; *eo-dem illo*, to that same place.

il-lūdo, -lūdēre, -lūsī, -lūsum, v. tr., baffle, deceive.

illustr-is, -ē, adj., famous, distinguished; *illustriore loco natus*, born of a rather illustrious family (p. 58, 5).

illustro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make renowned or famous; in pass., become famous.

Illyric-um, -ī, N., Illyricum, a district comprising the modern *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia* and *Herzegovina*.

īmāg-o, -inis, F., an image, likeness.

īm-ber, -bris, M., a shower.

īmīt-or, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., imitate.

īm-mān-is, -ē, adj., vast, huge, enormous, immense.

Immanuentī-us, -ī, M., Immanentius, father of Mandubracius (c. v, 20).

īm-mātūr-us, -ā, -um, adj., unripe, immature.

īm-mīnū-o, -mīnūēre, -mīnūī, -mīnūtum, v. tr., diminish.

īm-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mīsūm, v. tr., send or drive into (the enemy's line); *se immittēre*, rush into.

immo, adv., on the contrary, no indeed, yes indeed; used in answers to correct or modify either by contradicting or by strengthening.

īm-mōl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., sacrifice.

īm-mortāl-is, -e, adj., undying, immortal.

īm-mūnīt-as, -ātis, F., exemption.

**im-pēdiment-um, -ī, N.**, hindrance; pl. baggage (of an army); *sarcinae*, the kit of the individual soldiers.

**im-pēd-ō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, v. tr.**, hamper, hinder; *religionibus impediti*, to be hampered by religious scruples (c. v, 6); *navigationem impedire*, to prevent sailing (c. v, 7); *animis impeditis*, when their attention was distracted (c. v, 7).

**im-pēdit-us, -ā, -um, (perf. part. pass. of impedio used as an) adj.**, hampered, impassable; *loca impedita*, inaccessible places (c. v, 19).

**im-pello, -pellere, -pūli, -pulsum, v. tr.**, drive to.

**im-pendō, -pendere, no perf.**, no sup., v. intr., overhang.

**im-pendo, -pendere, -pendi, -pensum, v. tr.**, to expend.

**impens-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, of cost; great, large, high; *impenso pretio*, at an extravagant price (c. iv, 2).

**impērāt-or, -ōris, M.**, commander-in-chief, general.

**im-pērīt-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, unskilled in, inexperienced in (with genitive, p. 281, 9).

**im-pērī-um, -ī, N.**, command, authority, government; *summam imperii transferre*, to transfer the supreme command (N. A. 2).

**impēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.** (with dat., p. 278, notes), command, order; *militēs civitatī imperare*, to levy troops from a state; *imperat mihi ut (or ne) faciam*, he orders me to do (or not to do): p. 181, 3.

**impetr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, obtain by request, obtain.

**impēt-us, -ūs, M.**, attack, assault; *facere impetum*, to make an attack (c. v, 15).

**impiēt-as, -ātis, F.**, impiety.

**im-pī-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, wicked.

**im-plico, -plicāre, -plicāvī (or -plicūi), -plicātum (or -plicitum), v. tr.**, entangle; in *morbūm implicari*, to be attacked with sickness.

**im-plōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, bewail, implore, invoke, appeal to.

**im-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsītum, v. tr.**, place on, or upon; *modūm imponere*, to make an end; *militēs in navem imponere*, to put soldiers on board.

**im-port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, bring or carry to; import.

**impraesentiārum (for in prae-**

**sentia rerum**, in the presence of things), adv., at present, for the present (N. II. 6).

**imprimis, adv.**, among the first; in the first place, chiefly, especially.

**im-prōb-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, bad, shameless.

**im-prōvīs-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, unforeseen, unexpected; *de improviso*, unexpectedly, suddenly.

**im-prūden-s, -tis, adj.**, not foreseeing, unwise; *imprudētibz nostris*, while our men were off their guard (c. v, 15).

**im-prūdēti-a, -ae, F.**, indiscretion, ignorance.

**im-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr.**, attack, assail, fight.

**im-us, -a, -um, sup. of inferus (p. 59, 1).**

**in, prep.** with (1) acc. (after words signifying motion), to, into, upon, against; (2) abl. (after words signifying rest), in, at, during, among; in *vicem*, in turns (c. iv, 1); in *hiemem*, for the winter (c. iv, 29); in *primis*, especially (c. v, 6); in *itinere*, while on the march (c. iv, 11); in *ancoris*, at anchor.

**in-ān-is, -ē, adj.**, empty, vain, useless.

**in-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr.**, advance, proceed, come to.

**incendī-um, -ī, N.**, fire.

**in-cendo, -cendere, -cendī, -censum, v. tr.**, set on fire, burn, inflame.

**in-cert-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, uncertain; *incertis ordinibus*, when their ranks were broken (c. iv, 32).

**in-cīdo, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cāsūm, v. tr.**, fall in with, attack.

**in-cīpio, -cīpere, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr.**, begin, commence.

**in-cīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, urge, arouse, encourage; *equo incitato*, with horse at full gallop (c. iv, 12); *remis incitare*, to row hard (c. iv, 25).

**in-clīn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.**, lean against.

**in-cognīt-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, unknown.

**in-cōl-a, -ae, M.**, an inhabitant.

**in-cōlo, -cōlere, -cōlūi, -cultum, v. tr.**, live in, inhabit.

**in-cōlūm-is, -ē, adj.**, safe, in safety.

**in-commōd-um, -ī, N.**, misfortune, harm, disaster, defeat.

**in-crēdībīl-is, -ē, adj.**, incredible.

**in-cursī-o**, -ōnis, F., inroad, invasion.  
**in-cūs-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., accuse, blame.  
**inde**, adv., from that place, thence; after that, then.  
**indīc-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make known, deceive, betray.  
**in-dīco**, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., proclaim, declare; bellum indīcere, to declare war.  
**in-dīcī-um**, -ī, N., sign, proof, mark, token.  
**ind-īgēo**, -īgēre, -īgūī, no sup., v. intr. (with gen. or abl., p. 281, 10; 282, 1), be in want, need; alienarum opum indigere, to be dependent on the help of others (N. H. 1).  
**in-dīgn-us**, -ā, -um, adj., unworthy (with abl., p. 64, 4).  
**in-dūco**, -ducere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., induce, persuade.  
**in-dūo**, -dūere, -dūī, -dūtum, v. tr., put on, don.  
**industri-a**, -ae, F., industry.  
**indūtī-ae**, -arum, F. pl., a truce, armistice.  
**Indūtīōmār-us**, -ī, M., Indutiomarus, a leading man among the Treveri, and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans (c. v, 2).  
**in-ēo**, -ire, -ivī (-īi), -ītum, v. tr. and intr., enter, enter upon; inire consilium, to form a plan; inire rationem, to form a plan (N. H. 10); inire consulatum, to enter upon a consulship; iniens adulescentia, the beginning of youth (N. T. 1); secunda in ita vigilia, at the beginning of the second watch (c. v, 23).  
**in-erm-is**, -ē, adj., unarmed, defenceless.  
**in-ers**, -ertis, adj., indolent, idle, inactive.  
**in-fāmī-a**, -ae, F., ill report, infamy.  
**in-fans**, -ntis, M. or F., child.  
**in-fēlix**, -fēlicis, adj., unhappy, unfortunate.  
**in-fēro**, -ferre, -tūlī illātum, v. tr., carry in, bring in; bellum hostibus inferre, to make war on the enemy (p. 278, 6); signa inferre, to advance; mala inferre, to cause misfortune (N. T. 9); bello illato, when the war was over (c. v, 12).  
**in-fēr-us**, -ā, -um, adj., below, lower; comp., inferior; sup., infimus or imus (p. 59, 1).  
**in-fīcīo**, -fīcere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., stain.

**infimus**: see inferus.  
**infinīt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., boundless, immense.  
**infirmī-tas**, -ātis, F., fickleness.  
**in-firm-us**, -ā, -um, adj., weak, feeble.  
**in-fītī-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., deny.  
**in-flūo**, -flūere, -fluxī, -fluxum, v. intr., flow into, empty into.  
**infrā**, (1) adv., below; (2) prep. (with acc.), below, beneath.  
**in-gēnī-um**, -ī, N., natural disposition, talent, ability, genius.  
**in-gen-s**, -tis, adj., huge, great, vast.  
**in-grātīis**, adj., against one's will, unwillingly.  
**in-grāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., unthankful, thankless, ungrateful.  
**in-grēdior**, -grēdi, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., enter upon.  
**in-hībēo**, -hībēre, -hībūī, -hībīt-um, v. tr., check, restrain.  
**in-icīo**, -icēre, -lēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw or cast into; metum inicere Germanis, to inspire the Germans with fear (c. iv, 18).  
**in-īmīcītī-a**, -ae, F., hatred, enmity.  
**in-īmīc-us**, -ā, -um, adj., unfriendly, hostile; as a noun, a private enemy.  
**in-īqu-us**, -ā, -um, adj., uneven; disadvantageous, unjust.  
**in-ītī-um**, -ī, N., beginning, commencement; in initio, in the beginning.  
**in-iūri-a**, -ae, F., wrong, outrage, injustice.  
**in-iuste**, adv., unjustly, wrongfully.  
**in-iust-us**, -ā, -um, adj., unjust.  
**in-nītor**, -nītī, -nīsus (or nīxus) sum, v. intr., lean on, rest on, support one's self by.  
**in-nōcen-s**, -tis, adj., harmless, innocent.  
**in-nōcentī-a**, -ae, F., uprightness, integrity.  
**in-ōpī-a**, -ae, F., want, scarcity, poverty.  
**in-ōpīnāt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., unexpected.  
**inquam** (verb defective, p. 146, 6), say.  
**in-scīen-s**, -tis, adj., not knowing, at unawares, ignorant; illis inscientibus, while they were unaware of it (N. H. 9); Caesare insciente, without the knowledge of Caesar (c. v, 7).

**in-scī-us**, -ā, -um, adj., not knowing, ignorant of a thing.

**in-sēquor**, -sēquī, -sēcūtus (or *sēquutus*) sum, v. tr. dep., overtake, attack; **insequi cedentes**, to overtake the retreating enemy (c. v, 16).

**in-sīdī-ae**, -ārum, F. pl., ambush; **per dolum et insidias**, by guile and treachery (c. iv, 13).

**in-sīdī-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., lie in wait, lie in ambush.

**in-signē**, -signis, N., sign, mark, badge, decoration.

**in-signis**, -signe, adj., noted, remarkable.

**in-sīnū-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make a way into; **se insinuare**, to make their way among (c. iv, 33).

**in-sisto**, -sistēre, -stītī, no sup., v. intr., stand, take one's position; **firmiter insistere**, to get a firm foothold (c. iv, 26).

**insōlenter**, adv., haughtily, arrogantly.

**instābil-is**, -ē, adj., unsteady.

**instan-s**, -tis, (pres. part. of *insto*, used as an) adj., present; **de instantibus**, about present affairs (N. T. 1).

**in-stītū-o**, -stītūēre, -stītūī, -stītū-tum, v. tr., draw up troops; decide upon; **sacrificare instituit**, he began to sacrifice (N. II. 2); **triplicem aciem instituere**, to draw up a triple line (c. iv, 14); **bellum parare instituit**, he decided to prepare for war (c. v, 3); **ab instituto consilio**, from carrying out his appointed plan (c. v, 4).

**in-stītūt-um**, -ī, N., custom, usage, law.

**in-sto**, -stāre, -stītī, no sup., v. intr., press on.

**in-strū-o**, -strūēre, -struxī, -struc-tum, v. tr., build, draw up; **navem instruere**, to build a ship (c. v, 2); **omnibus rebus instrui**, to be fully equipped (c. v, 5); **copias instruere**, to draw up forces (c. v, 18).

**in-suēfact-us**, -ā, -um, adj., accustomed.

**in-suēt-us**, -ā, -um, adj., unaccustomed; **navigandi insuetus**, unused to sailing (c. v, 6).

**insūl-a**, -ae, F., island.

**in-sūper**, adv., moreover, besides, above.

**intel-lēgo**, -lēgēre, -lexī, -lectum, v. tr., understand, know; **intellectum est**, it was observed (c. v, 16).

**in-tempēranti-a**, -ae, F., haughtiness, arrogance.

**inter**, prep. (with acc.), between, among, during.

**inter-cēdo**, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum, v. tr., intervene, come to pass; **bella intercesserant**, wars had sprung up (c. v, 11).

**inter-clūdo**, -clūdēre, -clūsī, -clūsūm, v. tr., hem in; **fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferre**, to bring aid to his brother surrounded by the enemy (c. iv, 12).

**inter-dico**, -dīcēre, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., forbid, exclude from.

**interdum**, adv., sometimes, meanwhile.

**intēr-ēā**, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.

**intēr-ēo**, -ire, -īvī (or -īī), -ītum, v. intr., be wasted, perish.

**interest**, **interesse**, **interfuit**, intr., impersonal; it is of importance; **magni interest**, it is of great importance to me; **virī interest**, it is of importance to the man (p. 282, 14).

**inter-fīcī-o**, -fīcēre, -fēcī, -fec-tum, v. tr., kill, destroy, slay.

**intērīm**, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

**intērior**, comparative adj., from obsolete **intērus** (p. 59, 2), inner; **interiores**, those of the inland parts (c. v, 14); **pars interior**, the inland part (c. v, 12); **interiora consilia**, the private counsels (N. H. 2).

**intērīt-us**, -ūs, M., destruction, death.

**inter-mitto**, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mīsūm, v. tr., discontinue; **brevi tempore intermisso**, after the lapse of a short interval (c. iv, 34); **vento intermisso**, after the wind had died down (c. v, 8); **ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis**, not even the night time interrupting the exertions of the soldiers (c. v, 11); **intermisso spatio**, after a time (c. v, 15).

**inter-nēcī-o**, -ōnis, F., extermination, massacre.

**inter-pōno**, -pōnēre, -pōsūī, -pōsītum, v. tr., allege; **causam interponere**, to allege as an excuse (N. T. 7); **moram interponere**, to cause a delay (c. iv, 9); **fidem interponere**, to pledge his word (c. v, 6).

**inter-prēt-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., expound.



inter-rōg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask, inquire.

inter-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break down, break up.

inter-sum, -esse, -fūī, v. intr., be present, take part in (with dative, p. 279, 9).

inter-vall-um, -ī, N., an interval of space or time.

inter-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr., come between, come upon.

intrā, prep. (with acc.), between, within.

intrō-īt-us, -ūs, M., an entrance.

in-tūēor, -tūēri, -tūētus sum, v. tr. dep., behold, consider, regard.

in-ūsītāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., unusual.

in-ūtil-is, -ē, adj., useless, unserviceable.

in-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ventum, v. tr., come upon, find out, discover.

in-ven-tor, -tōris, M., discoverer, inventor.

in-vicem, adv., by turns, alternately.

in-vict-us, -ā, -um, adj., unconquered.

in-vīdī-a, -ae, F., envy, ill-will.

invit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., invite.

invit-us, -ā, -um, adj., unwilling; se invito, against his will (c. iv, 16).

in-vōc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call on or upon; invoke.

ipse, ipsā, ipsum, dem. pro. (see p. 122); self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; ipso terrore equorum, by mere terror caused by the horses (c. iv, 33).

ir-a, -ae, F., anger.

irācundī-a, -ae, F., anger, rage, passion.

irācund-us, -ā, -um, adj., irritable, passionate, angry.

irāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., angry, angered.

ir-ridēo, -ridēre, -risī, -risum, v. tr., ridicule.

ir-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. intr., break into, burst into; force one's way into.

is, eā, id, dem. pro. (p. 195, 4), this, that, he, she, it, they; before ut, is = talis, such; with comparatives eo (abl.) the: eo magis, all the more.

iste, ista, istud, dem. pro., that, that of yours (p. 118).

īta, adv., in this way, so, thus; in the following manner, therefore; non ita magnus, not very large.

Ītālī-a, -ae, F., Italy.

ītāque, conj, and so, therefore, accordingly.

ītem, adv., just, so, also, in like manner.

īter, ītinēris, N., journey, march; īter magnum, a forced march; ex itinere oppugnare, to storm by direct assault; ex itinere, on the march; īter facere, to make a march; īter conficere, to complete a march (c. iv, 4).

ītērum, adv., again, a second time.

Itī-us, -ī, M., Itius, a port on the northern coast of Gaul, opposite Britain. From it Caesar sailed to Britain. It is said to be *Boulogne*, or *Wissant*.

iūbēo, iūbēre, iussi, iussum, v. tr., order, command (p. 181, 3, note).

iūd-ex, -icis, M., judge.

iūdicī-um, -ī, M., judgment, trial, decree, opinion; in iudiciis versari, to be employed in trials (N. T. 1).

iūdic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., judge, decide; verissime iudicare, to form the most correct judgment (N. T. 1).

iūg-um, -ī, N., yoke.

iūment-um, -ī, N., beast of burden. In c. iv, 2, horses.

iunctūr-a, -ae, F., joining.

iungo, iungere, iunxī, iunctum, v. tr., join, unite.

iūnī-or, -ōris, comp. of iuvenis (p. 58, note), younger.

Iūpīter, Iōvis, M., Iupiter (see p. 237).

iūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. swear, take an oath.

iūs, iūris, N., right, authority, law; iura in hos, rights over these; ius commune, the common rights (N. T. 7).

iūs-iūrand-um, iūris-iūrandī, N., a civil oath, distinguished from sacramentum, the military oath.

iustī-tā, -ae, F., uprightness, justice.

iust-us, -ā, -um, adj., according to right, lawful, upright.

iūvenc-us, -ī, M., a steer.

iūven-is, -ē, adj., young; comp., iunior; sup., minimus natu (p. 58, note).

iūvent-us, -ūtis, F., youth, the period from 17 to 46, and so the military age; the youth of a country.

iūvo, iūvāre, iūvī, iūtum, v. tr., help, aid, assist (p. 278, foot note).

iuxta (prep., with acc.), close to, beside.

## K.

Kälend-ae, -ārum, F. pl., the Kalends, the first day of each month.

Karthago: see Carthago.

Karthaginiensis: see Carthaginiensis.

## L.

L.=Lucius, a Roman praenomen: see Domitius.

Läbē-o, -ōnis, M., Labeo: see Fabius.

Läbērī-us, -ī, M., Laberius; Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune in Caesar's army in Gaul.

Läbiēn-us, -ī, M., Titus Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. On the outbreak of the civil war he went over to Pompey and fell at Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.

läb-or, -ōris, M., toil, suffering, exertion.

läbor, läbī, lapsus sum, v. intr. dep., slip, go astray; propter imprudentiam labi, to fall away from allegiance on account of thoughtlessness (c. v, 3).

läbōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., toil, labor, suffer; cupide laborare, to be very anxious (N. A. 1).

labr-um, -ī, N., lip.

lac, lactis, N., milk; lacte et carne vivere, to live on milk and flesh (c. v, 14).

Läcēdaem-on, -ōnis, F., Lacedaemon or Sparta, a city of the Peloponnesus.

Läcēdaemōnī-us, -ā, -um, adj., Spartan.

läc-er, -ērā, -ērūm, adj., torn, mangled.

läc-esso, -essēre, -essīvi, -essitum, v. tr., provoke, assail, assault.

läc-rīma, -rīmae, F., a tear.

läcrīm-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., weep.

läc-us, -ūs, M., a lake.

laedo, laedēre, laesi, laesum, v. tr., harm, hurt, offend, injure.

laet-ītia, -ītiaē, F., joy, delight, pleasure.

laet-us, -ā, -um, adj., joyful, glad, pleasant.

Lampsāc-us, -ī, F., Lampsacus, a city of Mysia, on the Hellespont.

läp-is, -īdis, M., a stone.

largē, adv., bountifully.

larg-ior, -iri, -itus sum, v. tr. dep., bestow, give freely, bribe.

largīter, adv.; see largē.

largītī-o, -ōnis, F., distribution, bribery; largitio magistratum, the distribution made by the magistrates (N. T. 2).

larg-us, -a, -um, adj., bounteous.

Lartī-us, -ī, M., Titus Lartius, the first Roman dictator.

lassī-tūd-o, -īnis, F., weariness, fatigue.

lātē, adv., widely, broadly; longe lateque, far and wide (c. iv, 35); quam latissime, as widely as possible (c. iv, 3).

lātēo, lātēre, lātūi, no supine, v. tr., lie hid, be concealed.

lāt-ītūdo, -ītūdinis, F., width, breadth, extent.

Lātī-um, -ī, N., Latium, a district of Italy, in which Rome is situated.

lätr-o, -ōnis, M., a robber, freebooter.

lätrōcīnī-um, -ī, N., robbery, freebooting, piracy.

lätrōcīn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., be a brigand.

lāt-us, -ēris, N., side, flank; ab latere aperto, on the exposed flank, i.e. the right (c. iv, 26).

lāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., broad, wide.

laudābīl-is, -ē, adj., praiseworthy.

laud-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., praise.

laur-us, -ī, F., bay-tree.

lau-s, -dis, F., praise.

lävo, läväre, lävāvi (or lävi), lävātum (or lautum, lotum), v. tr., wash, bathe.

légātī-o, -ōnis, F., an embassy.

légā-tus, -ī, M., (1) an ambassador; (2) lieutenant-general in the army, officers of senatorial rank in command of different divisions in the field, under the imperator. They were appointed by the Senate and were usually three in number, but Caesar had ten in Gaul.

légī-o, -ōnis, F., a legion; a division of the Roman army consisting, when complete, of 6,000 infantry and 300 cavalry. The infantry was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two centuries. The cavalry consisted of ten squadrons (turmae); legione conferta, owing to the legion being in close order (c. iv, 32); legioni aliquem praeficere, to appoint one over a legion (c. v, 1); legiones expeditae, legions without

baggage, or in light marching order (c. v, 2).

lęģionārī-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to a legion; milites legionariī, common soldiers.

lęģitīm-us, -ā, -um, adj., lawful; poena legitima, the legal penalty.

lęgo, lęgēre, lęgi, lectum, v. tr., choose, select; read.

lęg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., do by law, appoint, despatch.

Lęmann-us, -ī, M., Leman, or lake of Geneva.

lęn-is, -ę, adj., mild, gentle.

lęnit-as, -ātis, F., smoothness.

lęnīter, adv., gently.

lę-o, -ōnis, M., a lion.

Lęōnīd-as, -ae, M., Leonidas, king of Sparta, who with his band of three hundred Spartans held the pass of Thermopylae for three days, B.C. 480.

Lęopontī-ī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Leopontii, a Gallic tribe dwelling near the sources of the Rhine among the Alps, between *St. Gothard* and *Lake Maggiore* (c. iv, 10).

lęp-us, -ōris, M., a hare.

lęv-is, -ę, adj., light; milites levis armaturae, light armed soldiers (p. 280, 4).

lęv-is, -ę, adj., smooth.

lęv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., relieve, lighten.

lex, lęgis, F., law, terms, conditions.

liben-s, -tis, adj., willing, cheerful.

libenter, adv., willingly, cheerfully.

lib-er, -ri, M., book.

lib-er, -ęrā, -ęrum, adj., free.

libērālīter, adv., courteously, generously.

libērē, adv., freely, without restraint; liberius vivere, to live too dissolutely, (N. T. 1).

libēr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., children (the singular is not found except in late writers); unus ex liberis, one child.

libēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., free, acquit; poenā liberare, to relieve from punishment.

libert-a, -ae, F., a freedwoman (p. 6, 2).

libert-as, -ātis, F., liberty, freedom.

libert-us, -ī, M., a freedman.

lib-et, -ēre, -ūit, -ītum, v. intr. impers., it pleases; mihi libet, I am pleased.

lib-et, -ēre, -ūit, -ītum, v. intr. impers., it is allowed; may, might (p. 163, 5).

licet, conj. (p. 196, 7), although, though, even if.

lic-tor, -tōris, M., a licitor; an attendant of the superior magistrates. The licitors served as a body-guard and also as a mark of official dignity.

lign-ęus, -ęā, -ęum, adj., of wood, wooden; lignea moenia, wooden walls, the term which the Pythian priests enigmatically used for the Athenian ships.

lign-um, -ī, N., wood.

Ligūr-es, -um, pl. M., the Ligures, a people inhabiting Liguria in North-Western Italy.

lilī-um, -ī, N., lily.

Lingōn-es, -um, pl. M., the Lingones, a people of Gaul whose territories lay about *Mons Vosęsus* (*Vosges Montains*), and the sources of the *Mosa* (*Meuse*) and *Matrona* (*Marne*). Their chief town was *Andematunnum* (now *Langres*).

lingu-a, -ae, F., tongue, language.

lint-er, -ris, F., boat, skiff.

liquen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of liqueo, used as an) adj., flowing.

lis, litis, F., a dispute, law suit; litem aestimare, to estimate the amount of damages (c. v, 1).

Lisc-us, -ī, M., Liscus, an Aeduan chief.

littēr-a (or litēr-a), -ae, F., a letter of the alphabet; pl. litter-ae, -arum, literature or a despatch, letter, epistle; litterae Persarum, Persian literature (N. T. 10); ex litteris, in accordance with the despatch (c. iv, 38).

lit-us, -ōris, N., sea shore, coast.

lōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., place, station; castra locare, to pitch a camp.

lōc-us, -ī, M., a place; pl. lōca or lōci (p. 242); obsidum loco, as hostages (c. v, 5); loca frigidissima, very cold parts (c. iv, 1); in loca superiora, up the country (c. v, 8); loca temperatiora, more temperate climate (c. v, 12).

lōcūt-us, -ā, -um, perf. part. of lōquor; which see.

longē, adv., far; with comparatives and superlatives, far, by far; longe melior, far better; longe optimus, by far the best; longius, too far (c. v, 7); longe lateque, far and wide (c. iv, 35).

longinqu-us, -ă, -um, adj., far removed, remote; distant, prolonged.

longitūd-o, -inis, F., length, extent.

long-us, -ă, -um, adj., long.

Longus, -ī, M.; see Sempronius (under Tiberius Sempronius Longus).

lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtus (or lōquūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., speak.

Lūcān-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Lucani, or people of Lucania, in South-Eastern Italy.

Lucc-a, -ae, F., Lucca, a town of Gallia Cisalpina.

lūc-ēo, -ēre, -luxī, no sup., v. intr., shine.

lūcēt, lūcēre, luxit, v. intr. imper., it is light.

Lūcī-us, -ī, M.; see Aemilius, Cotta, Furius.

lūcr-um-ī, N., profit, gain, advantage.

lūdo, lūdēre, lūsī, lūsum, v. intr., sport, play.

lūd-us, -ī, M., sport, play; pl., ludi, games.

lūgēo, lūgēre, luxī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., lament, mourn for.

Lugotōri-x, -īgis, M., Lugotorix, a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

lūm-en, -inis, N., light.

lūn-a, -ae, F., moon.

lūp-us, -ī, M., a wolf.

lūs-us, -ūs, M., sport, play.

lux, lūcis, F., light; prima luce, at daybreak; orta luce, at daybreak (c. v, 8).

luxūrī-a, -ae, F., luxury, extravagance.

Lysimāch-us, -ī, M., Lysimachus, an Athenian, father of Aristides (N. A. 1).

## M.

M. = Marcus, a Roman praenomen; see Baebius, Claudius, Minucius.

māchīnātī-o, -ōnis, F., a machine, an engine.

maer-ēo, -ēre, no perf., no sup., v. tr. and intr., grieve, lament.

māgis (comp. of adv., magnopere), more, rather (sup. maxime).

māgist-er, -rī, M., master; magister equitum, master of the horse, an officer next in rank to the dictator.

māgistrāt-us, -ūs, M., office, magistrature.

Magnēsī-a, -ae, F., Magnesia, a city of Caria, on the Maeander.

magnīfic-us, -ă, -um, adj., noble, grand.

magnītūd-o, -inis, F., greatness, size, bulk; animi magnitudo, nobility of spirit, magnanimity.

magnōpēre, adv. (often written magno opere), greatly; comp., magis; sup., maxime, especially (N. T. 2); magnopere orant, they earnestly ask (c. iv, 11).

magn-us, -ă, -um, adj., large, great (comp. maior; sup. maximus); magni, at a high price; pluris, at a greater price; maximi, at a very high price (p. 280, 5); maiores natu, elders (N. T. 2); maiores, ancestors; res maior, matter of more than usual importance (N. T. 1); maximam partem, for the most part (c. iv, 1); magni habere, to value highly (c. iv, 21); magni interesse, to be of great importance (c. v, 4).

Māg-o, -ōnis, M., Mago, a Carthaginian, brother of Hannibal; died 203 B.C.

maiōrēs: see magnus.

māle, adv., badly (comp., pēius; sup., pessimē); rem male gerere, to be unsuccessful (N. T. 5).

mālē-dico, -dicēre, -dixī, -dic-tum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 5), revile, slander, speak ill of.

mālē-dīc-us, -ă, -um, adj., slanderous (p. 57, 3).

mālēfīcī-um, -ī, N., evil deed, crime.

mālēfīc-us, -ă, -um, adj., evil doing, criminal (p. 57, 3).

mālo, malle, mālūi, no sup., v. irreg. (p. 147), wish rather, prefer.

māl-um, -ī, N., evil, misfortune, calamity; mala inferre, to cause misfortunes (N. T. 9).

māl-us, -ă, -um, adj., bad, evil, wicked (comp., pēior; sup., pessimus).

mandāt-um, -ī, N., order, command, charge.

mand-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note), entrust, bid; se fugae mandare, to betake themselves to flight (c. v, 18).

Mandūbrācī-us, -ī, M., Mandubracius, a chief of the Trinobantes, a British tribe.

mānē, adv., in the morning, early.

mān-ēo, -ēre, -mansī, -mansum, v. tr. and intr., remain, await, stay; in

**officio manere**, to remain in allegiance, to remain loyal (c. v, 4).

**mānifest-us, -ā, -um**, adj., clear, plain, evident.

**Manlī-us, -ī, M.**, Manlius; Cnēius Manlius Volso, consul 186 B.C., conquered the Galatians.

**mansuē-fācīo, -fācēre, -fēcī, -factum**, v. intr., tame.

**mān-us, -ūs, F.**, hand; band of men; **manum conserere**, to engage in battle (N. II. 4); **delecta manus**, a picked band.

**Mārāthōnī-us, -ā, -um**, adj., of or belonging to Marathon; **pugna Marathonica**, the battle of Marathon, fought 490 B. C. on the plain of Marathon, about 24 miles N. E. of Athens.

**Marcell-us, -ī, M.**, Marcellus; (1) Marcus Claudius Marcellus, a Roman consul who took Syracuse B.C. 212, and in his fifth consulship, 208 B.C., was slain in battle against Hannibal near Venusia, in Apulia. (2) Marcus Claudius Marcellus, in whose consulship, according to some, Hannibal died, 183 B.C.

**Marc-us, -ī, M.**, Marcus; a Roman praenomen; see **Crassus**, **Minucius**, **Marcellus** (2).

**Mardōnī-us, -ī, M.**, Mardonius, son-in-law of Darius, and general of the Persian army at Plataeae, where he was defeated, B.C. 479.

**mār-e, -is, N.**, the sea; **et mari et terra**, both by sea and land.

**margārit-a, -ae, F.**, a pearl.

**mārītīm-us, -ā, -um**, adj., of or belonging to the sea; maritime; **ora maritima**, the sea coast; **regiones maritimae**, the districts lying on the sea; **maritimi praedones**, pirates (N. T. 2).

**Mars, -tis, M.**, Mars, the Roman god of war.

**Martī-us, -ā, -um**, adj., of or belonging to Mars.

**mas, māris, adj.**, male.

**mā-ter, -tris, F.**, mother; **mater familiae** or **mater familias**, the mother of the house.

**mātērī-a, -ae, F.**, timber.

**mātrīmōnī-um, -ī, N.**, marriage; in **matrimonium ducere**, to marry; in **matrimonium dare**, to give in marriage.

**mātrōn-a, -ae, F.**, a married woman; matron.

**mātūrē, adv.**, early (comp., **ma-**

**turius**; sup., **maturrime** or **maturissime**).

**mātūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.** and intr., make ripe, ripen, hasten.

**mātūr-us, -ā, -um**, adj., ripe, early.

**maxīme, adv.**, superlative of **magnopere**, which see.

**maxīm-us, -ā, -um**, adj., superlative of **magnus**, which see.

**Maxīm-us, -ī, M.**, Maximus, a cognomen given to Quintus Fabius on account of his exploits: see **Fabius**.

**mecum**; with me (p. 105, 8).

**mēdēor, mēdērī, no perf., no sup., v. intr. dep.** (with dative), heal, provide against or for, remedy.

**mēdicīn-a, -ae, F.**, medicine.

**mēdic-us, -ī, M.**, healer, physician.

**mēdiōcr-is, -ē, adj.**, moderate; **non mediocris**, not ordinary, *i. e.*, very marked.

**Mēdiomātrīc-ī, -ōrum, pl. M.**, the Mediomatrici, a people of Gaul in the neighborhood of the modern city of *Metz*.

**mēditerrānē-us, -ā, -um**, adj., inland, central.

**mēdi-us, -ā, -um**, adj., middle; **medius mons**, the middle of the mountain; **mediā de nocte**, after midnight; **ad mediam noctem**, about midnight.

**Mēd-us, -ā, -um**, adj., Median or Persian; pl., **Mēdi, -orum, M.**, the Medes or Persians.

**Meld-ī, -ōrum** or **Meldae, -ārum, pl. M.**, the Meldi or Meldae, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the coast east of the Parisii, near the modern town of *Meaux*, which still preserve the name.

**membr-um, -ī, N.**, limb.

**mēmīn-ī, -isse, v. defec.** (see p. 145), remember (for construction, p. 146, 7).

**mēm-or, -ōris, adj.**, mindful.

**mēmōrī-a, -ae, F.**, memory, recollection; **memoriā tenere**, to recollect; **nostrā memoriā**, in our day (N. T. 10); **memoriā prodere**, to hand down by tradition (N. T. 10); **post hominum memoriam**, within the memory of man (N. T. 5); **duplex memoria**, a twofold account (N. II. 10).

**mēmōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, relate.

**Mēnāpī-ī, -ōrum, pl. M.**, the Menapii, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosa (*Meuse*), and the Scaldis (*Scheldt*); their chief town was Menapiorum Castellum (now *Kessel*).

mendācī-um, -ī, N., falsehood.  
 mendā-x, -cis, adj., lying, false.  
 men-s, -tis, F., mind.  
 men-sa, -sae, F., a table.  
 men-sis, -sis, M., month.  
 men-sūr-a, -ae, F., measure; *certae ex aqua mensurae*, accurate measurements by the water clock (c. v, 13).  
 men-tī-o, -ōnis, F., a mentioning or mention of anything.  
 men-tī-or, -tīrī, -tītus sum, v. dep., tr., lie, speak falsely.  
 mercā-tor, -tōris, M., trader; *mercatoribus est aditus*, traders go there (c. iv, 2).  
 mercātūr-a, -ae, F., trade, commerce.  
 mer-cēs, -cēdis, F., gain, profit, reward.  
 Mercūrī-us, -ī, M., Mercury, the god of gain and commerce.  
 mēr-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, -ītum, v. tr., gain.  
 mēr-ēor, -ērī, -ītus sum, v. tr. dep., gain, earn, deserve.  
 mergo, mergere, mersī, mersum, v. tr., sink, immerse, overwhelm, destroy.  
 mēridiān-us, -ā, -um, adj., mid-day; *meridiano fere tempore*, at about noon (c. v, 8).  
 mēridī-es, -ēī, M., mid-day (p. 238, foot note); *ad meridiem spectat*, it faces the South (*i. e.*, the sun at noon).  
 mērīt-um, -ī, N., service, kindness, benefit; *pro meritis*, for his kindness (N. T. 8); *merito eius a se fieri*, to be done by him according to the deserts of the latter (c. v, 4).  
 mērīt-us, -ā, -um: see *mereor*.  
 mētall-um, -ī, N., mine.  
 mēt-īor, -īrī, mensus sum, v. tr., dep., measure, measure out.  
 mēto, mētēre, messūī, messum, v. tr., reap.  
 mētū-o, -ēre, -ī, mētūtum, v. tr., fear.  
 mēt-us, -ūs, M., fear.  
 mē-us, -ā, -um, poss. adj. pro.; my, mine.  
 migr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., migrate, depart.  
 mil-es, -ītis, M., a soldier.  
 militār-is, -ē, adj., of or belonging to a soldier, military; *res militaris*, military science.  
 militī-a, -ae, F., military service;

*militiae* (p. 86), on military service, abroad.

mille, adj. or noun, indecl., a thousand (p. 68, 5); pl. *millia* or *milīa*.

*millia passuum*, miles; *mille passus*, a Roman mile, or 1,616 yards (see *passus*).

milliēs, adv., a thousand times.

Mil-o, -ōnis, M., Milo, a friend of Cicero.

Miltiād-es, -ae, M., Miltiades, a celebrated Athenian general, who commanded the Athenians at the battle of Marathon, 490 B.C.

Mīnerv-a, -ae, F., Minerva, a Roman goddess who presided over wisdom and war.

mīn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., threaten; *aliquem morte, or alicui mortem minari*, to threaten anyone with death.

mīn-or, -us, adj. (comp. of *parvus*; sup., *minimus*, p. 57, 4), less; as a noun, *minores* (with or without *natu*), descendants; *dimidio minor*, half the size (c. v, 13).

Mīnūcī-us, -ī, M., Minucius; (1) Marcus Minucius Rufus, master of the horse under the dictator Quintus Fabius Maximus, in 217 B.C., the year of the battle of Lake Trasimenus. He fell at Cannae, 216 B.C. (2) Quintus Minucius, consul 197 B.C., in the third year of Hannibal's banishment from Carthage.

mīnū-o, -ēre, -ūī, mīnūtum, v. tr., lessen, diminish.

mīnus, comp. adv. of *pārum* (which see), less; sup., *minime*; *si* or *sin minus*, if not (p. 77, 6); with adjs. = not: *minus probatus*, not acceptable (N. T. 1).

mīrābil-īs, -ē, adj., wonderful.

mīr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., admire, wonder at.

mīr-us, -ā, -um, adj., wonderful, strange, marvellous.

mīs-er, -ērā, -ērum, adj., wretched, unfortunate.

mīsēr-ēor, -ērī, -ītus sum, v. intr., dep. (with genitive, p. 146), feel pity for.

mīsēr-esco, -escēre, no perf., no sup., v. intr. (with genitive, p. 146), feel pity for.

mīsēr-et, -ēre, -ūīt, -ītum est, v. tr. impers., it distresses, it excites pity; *me tui miseret*, I pity you (p. 165).

mīsēricordi-a, -ae, F., pity, compassion; *captus miser cordia*, overcome with pity (N. T. 8).

**mīšēr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr.** dep. (with acc., p. 146), express pity for.

**mīt-is, -ē, adj., mild.**

**mitto, mittere, mīsī, missum, v. tr., send.**

**mōbilīt-as, -ātis, F., activity, speed.**

**mōbil-is, -ē, adj., easily moved.**

**mōdēr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr.** and intr., manage, regulate.

**mōdestī-a, -ae, F., modesty, self-control.**

**mōdī-us, -ī, M., a modius; a Roman dry measure nearly equal to the English peck.**

**mōdo, adv., only, merely, at all; modo... modo, now... now, at one moment... at another; non modo... sed etiam, not only... but also; with the subjunctive, modo = dummodo, if only, provided (p. 194, 3).**

**mōdō; see modus.**

**mōd-us, -ī, M., a measure, amount, manner, method; modo fluminis, like a river; nullo modo, by no means; modo oratoris, in the capacity of an ambassador (c. iv, 27).**

**moen-īa, -īum, pl. N., walls of a city, fortifications.**

**mōlestē, adv., with trouble, with annoyance; res multas moleste ferre, to be annoyed at many things.**

**mōlest-us, -ā, -um, adj., troublesome, annoying.**

**Moloss-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Molossi, a tribe of Epirus, in North-Western Greece.**

**moll-is, -ē, adj., smooth.**

**mōl-o, -ēre, -ūī, -ītum, v. tr., grind.**

**Mōn-a, -ae, F., Mona, the Isle of Man. Anglesey was also called Mona, but its position does not answer Caesar's description (c. v, 13).**

**mōn-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, -ītum, v. tr., advise, warn, remind.**

**mon-s, -tis, M., mountain; summus mons, the top of the mountain (p. 59, note).**

**monstr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., point out, show.**

**mōnūment-um, -ī, N., monument, tomb.**

**mōr-a, -ae, F., delay.**

**mōr-a, -ae, F., a mora, or division of the Spartan army, consisting of 600 foot and 100 horse in Xenophon's time.**

**morb-us, -ī, M., sickness, disease.**

**mordēo, mordere, mōmordī, morsum, v. tr., bite, hurt.**

**mōrīor, mōrī, mortūus sum, v. intr. dep., die.**

**Mōrīn-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Morini, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the north-eastern coast in the neighborhood of Calais. Their chief town was Gesoriacum, afterwards Bononia (now Boulogne).**

**mōr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr.** and tr. dep., delay.

**mor-s, -tis, F., death.**

**mos, mōris, M., custom, usage; pl., mores, customs, character, manners; gestus est ei mos, his wish was complied with (N. T. 7); more suo, according to his custom (c. iv, 19).**

**Mōs-a, -ae, F., the Mosa (now Meuse), a river of Gallia Belgica (described c. iv, 10).**

**mō-tus, -tūs, M., motion, evolution; Galliae motus, an uprising in Gaul (c. v, 5).**

**mōvēo, mōvēre, mōvī, mōtum, v. tr., move, set in motion; arma movere, to take up arms; bellum movere, to undertake a war; castra movere, to break up camp.**

**mox, adv., presently, soon; then, afterwards.**

**mūl-a, -ae, F., a she-mule (p. 6, 5).**

**mūlct-a, -ae, F. (also written multa, -ae), fine, penalty.**

**mulct-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fine, punish.**

**mūlī-er, -ēris, F., woman.**

**multitud-o, -īnis, F., crowd, multitude.**

**mult-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fine, punish (same as mulcto).**

**multo, adv. (used before comparatives), adv., much, by much, greatly; multo melior, much better (comp., plus; sup., plurimum).**

**multum, adv. (not used before comparative, otherwise same as multo); multum in iudiciis privatis versabatur, he was often employed in private suits (N. T. 1); multum sunt in venationibus, they are greatly addicted to hunting (c. iv, 1).**

**mult-us, -ā, -um, adj., much, many; comp., plus (p. 246); sup., plurimus (p. 77, 6).**

**mund-us, -ī, M., universe, world.**

**mūnīfīc-us, -ā, -um, adj., lavish (p. 57, 3).**

**muniment-um, -ī, N., defence, fortification.**

**mūn-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., protect, defend; iter munire, to build a road.**

mūnītī-o, -ōnis, F., defence.  
 mūn-us, -ēris, N., duty, service;  
 muneribus donatus, presented with  
 gifts (N. T. 10).

mur-mur, -mūris, N., murmur.  
 mūr-us, -ī, M., wall.  
 mūs, mūris, M., mouse.  
 musc-a, -ae, F., a fly.  
 mūsic-ā, -ae, F., or mūsic-a,  
 -ōrum, pl. N., music.  
 mūtil-us, -a, -um, adj., blunt,  
 broken.  
 mūt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,  
 change, exchange.

My-us, -ūntis (acc., Myunta), F.,  
 Myus, a town of Caria in Asia Minor.

## N.

nactus, -a, -um, perf. part. dep.  
 nanciscor, having obtained.

nam, conj., for; stands first in a  
 sentence and explains some previous  
 statement.

namque, conj., for indeed, for truly.  
 nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus (or  
 nactus) sum, v. tr. dep., obtain,  
 get, find.

Nantūāt-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Nan-  
 tuates, a people of South-eastern Gaul, in  
 the neighborhood of Geneva.

nar-ro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,  
 tell.

na-scor, -scī, -tus sum, v. intr.  
 dep., be born, be produced, be descended  
 from.

nātāl-is, -ē, adj., natal, birth; dies  
 natalis, birthday.

nā-tiō, -tīōnis, F., tribe, people,  
 nation.

nā-to, -tāre, -tāvi, -tātum, v.  
 intr., swim.

nā-tūr-a, -ae, F., nature, disposition,  
 form; naturā, by nature, naturally;  
 loci haec erat natura, the following  
 was the situation of the place (c. iv, 23);  
 naturā triquetra, triangular in form  
 (c. v, 13).

nā-tus, -tā, -tum, (perf. part. dep.,  
 used as an) adj., descended from, born  
 from; puer decem annos natus, a  
 boy ten years old (p. 69, 9); amplis-  
 simo genere natus, descended from  
 a most illustrious family (c. iv, 12).

nā-tus, -tūs, M., used only in the  
 abl., by birth; maiores natu, ances-  
 tors; minores natu, descendants.

nau-frāgī-um, -ī, N., shipwreck;  
 facere naufragium, to be ship-  
 wrecked (N. T. 7).

nau-ta, -tae, M., a sailor.

nau-tī-cus, -cā, -cum, adj., of or  
 belonging to ships, naval.

nāv-āl-is, -ē, adj., naval; pugna  
 navalis, a sea-fight.

nāvīgātī-o, -ōnis, F., a sailing;  
 navigation.

nāvīgī-um, -ī, N., a vessel, ship.

nāvīg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,  
 sail; insuetus navigandi, unaccus-  
 tomed to sailing (c. v, 6).

nāv-īs, -is, F., a ship; navis longa,  
 a ship of war; navis oneraria, a  
 ship of burden; navem tenere in  
 ancoris, to keep a ship at anchor (N. T.  
 8); in navem concurrere, to charge  
 a vessel (N. II. 10); navem ascendere,  
 to embark (N. II. 7); navem conscendere,  
 to embark (c. iv, 23 (else-  
 where in Caesar we find conscendere  
 in navem)); navem constituere, to  
 moor a ship (c. iv, 24).

Nax-us, -ī, F., Naxus, an island in the  
 Aegean Sea; the largest of the Cyclades.

nē, conj., (in final clauses) that not,  
 lest (p. 181, 3); (after verbs of fearing)  
 that, (p. 185, 3); (after verbs of beseech-  
 ing, ordering, commanding) not to (p.  
 183, 4).

nē, adv., not; ne...quidem, not...  
 even (the emphatic word between ne and  
 quidem, as ne unus quidem, not a  
 single one); also used in negative impera-  
 tive sentences, ne hoc feceris, don't  
 do this (p. 287, 2).

-nē, interrog. enclitic particle. In  
 single direct questions; -nē is not to be  
 translated except by laying stress on the  
 word to which it is joined (p. 28); in  
 double questions, -ne...an, whether  
 ... or (p. 287, 5).

nec: see neque.

necessāri-o, adv., necessarily, un-  
 avoidably.

necessāri-us, -ā, -um, adj., un-  
 avoidable, urgent, necessary.

necessē, indecl. adj. (used with est  
 +acc. and inf.), necessary, unavoidable,  
 inevitable, needful.

necessīt-as, -ātis, F., need, neces-  
 sity.

necnē, adv., used in alternative in-  
 direct questions; or not; annon, is used  
 in direct (p. 177, 5).

nēc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,  
 put to death, kill, destroy.



**nēfārī-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, wicked, atrocious.

**nēfas**, indecl. N., a crime (against divine law), impious deed; **nefas est dictu**, it is wrong to say (p. 175).

**neg-lēgo, -lēgēre, -lēxī, -lectum, v. tr.**, slight, neglect, be indifferent to, despise.

**nēg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, say no or not; deny, refuse; often = **dicit non**: **negat se esse aegrum**, he says that he is not sick.

**nēgōtī-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep.**, do, or carry on, business.

**nēgōtī-um, -ī, N.**, business, enterprise; **nihil negotiū or nec quidquam negotiū est**, it is no trouble.

**Nemēt-es, -um, pl. M.**, the Nemetes, a German tribe living west of the Rhine, near the modern *Spīres*.

**nēm-o, -inis** (only used in the sing.; the dat. and abl. are supplied by **nullus**; Caesar uses only **nemo, neminem**), indef. pro., no one (p. 132, 2); **non nemo, somebody**; **nemo non, everybody**.

**Neōcl-es, -is** and **-ī, M.**, Neocles, father of Themistocles.

**Nēpōs, Nēpōtis, M.**, Cornelius Nepos, a Roman historian who lived about 44 B. C.

**nēp-os, -ōtis, M.**, grandson, nephew; pl., **nepōtes, descendants**.

**nequāquam, adv.**, not at all, by no means.

**nēquē, or nec** (in Caesar **nec** is not found before vowels), conj., nor, and not; **neque...neque or nec...nec**, neither...nor; **nec quisquam, no one** (c. iv, 20); **neque quidquam, nothing** (c. iv, 20).

**nēquidquam, adv.**, in vain, to no purpose.

**ne-scīo, -scīre, -scīvī (or scīi), -scitum, v. tr.**, not to know.

**neu**; see **neve**.

**neu-ter, -trā, -trum** (gen. **neu-triūs**; dat. **neu-trī, p. 26**), adj., neither (of two).

**nēve, or neu, conj.**, nor; and...not; **neve...neve, or neu...neu, neither...nor** (p. 186, 6).

**nex, nēcis, F.**, death; generally a violent death.

**nīg-er, -ra, -rum, adj.**, black, dark.

**nīhil, indecl. N.**, nothing, nothing at all; **nihil est quod, there is no reason that**; **nihil habeo quod, I have no reason that** (p. 296, 5 (a)); **non nihil,**

something; **nihil non, everything**; **nihil agri, no land at all** (c. iv, 1).

**nīhilo** (abl. of degree of difference from **nihilum**), by nothing.

**nīhilo mīnus, or nihilominus, adv.**, none the less, nevertheless.

**nīhilo secius, adv.** (literally, otherwise, by nothing; **secius, comp. of secus, differently, otherwise**); same meaning as **nihilominus**.

**nīhil-um, -ī, N.**, nothing; **nihili aestimare, to value at nothing**.

**nīmīo, adv.**, too much, exceedingly.

**nīmīs, adv.**, too much, excessively.

**nīmīum, adv.** (neut. of adj. **nimius**); same meaning as **nīmīs**.

**nīmī-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, too much, excessive.

**ningit, ningēre, nīnxit, no sup., v. intr., impers.**, it snows (p. 161, 1).

**nīsi, conj.**, if not, unless (p. 300, 1).

**nītor, nītī, nīsus (or nīxus) sum, v. intr. dep.**, lean upon, strive, endeavor.

**nix, nīvis, F.**, snow.

**nō-bil-is, -ē, adj.**, noble, noted, famous.

**nō-bilit-as, -ātis, F.**, nobility.

**nō-cen-s, -tis, (pres. part. of noceo used as an) adj.**, guilty; used as a noun, a criminal.

**nōcēo, nōcēre, nōcūi, nōcītum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note), hurt, harm, injure**.

**noctu, (an old abl. of obsolete noct-us, -ūs; used as an) adv.**, by night, at night.

**nocturn-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, of or belonging to night, nocturnal.

**nōd-us, -ī, M.**, knot.

**nōlo, nolle, nōlūi, no sup.; v. irreg.**, be unwilling, not to wish (p. 147).

**nōm-en, -inis, N.**, name; **nomen Romanum, Roman people** (N. H. 7; see cognomen for praenomen, nomen, agnomen).

**nōmīnātīm, adv.**, by name; **nominatīm evocare, to summon expressly** (c. v, 4).

**nōmīn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, name.

**nōn, adv.**, not; usually preceding the word with which it should be construed. Before a negative word an indefinite affirmative is produced as, **non nemo, somebody**; **non nunquam, sometimes**; **non nihil, something**; after a negative, a general affirmative is formed, as **nemo**

**non**, everybody; **nunquam non**, every time; **nihil non**, everything.

**Non-ae, -ārum**, pl. F., the nones; the fifth day of each month in the year except March, May, July, October, in which it was the seventh. It was so called because it was the ninth (**nonus**) day from the Ides (**idus**), which fell on the thirteenth, except in the four months before named, when it fell on the fifteenth.

**nōnāginta**, num. adj., ninety.

**nondum**, adv., not yet.

**nonne**, adv., interrog. particle (p. 28, 3).

**nonnihil**, indecl. neuter pro., something; often used adverbially: to some extent, somewhat; **nonnihil temporis**, some time.

**nonnull-as, -ā, -um**, adj., some; generally in pl., **nonnull-ī, -ae, -ā**, several.

**nonnunquam**, adv., sometimes.

**nōn-us, -ā, -um**, num. ord. adj., ninth.

**nos**, pl. of **ego** (p. 101, 1).

**nosco, noscēre, nōvī, nōtum**, v. tr., become acquainted with, learn; pl. **nōvī**, I know (p. 145).

**nost-er, -rā, -rum**, poss. adj. pro., our, ours, our own; pl., **nostrī**, our troops, our men (**militēs** understood).

**nostrū** or **nostrī**, gen. pl. of **ego** (p. 104, 2, note).

**no-tīti-a, -ae**, F., fame, knowledge.

**nōt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., mark, disregard.

**nōt-us, -ā, -um**, (perf. part. pass. of **nosco** used as an) adj., known, well known.

**nōvem**, num. adj., nine.

**nōv-ī, -isse**, v. defect., act, know (p. 264).

**nōvīt-ās, -ātis**, F., novelty, strangeness.

**nōv-us, -ā, -um**, adj., new, fresh, recent, strange (no comp.; sup. **novissimus**); **agmen novissimum**, the rear; **agmen primum**, the van; **res novae**, a change in affairs, a revolution.

**nox, noctis**, F., night, darkness; **prima nocte**, at nightfall; **media nocte**, at midnight; **multa de nocte**, late at night; **obducta nocte**, under cover of night (N. II. 5); **adversa nocte**, in the face of night (c. iv, 28).

**nox-a, -ae**, F., crime, offence.

**noxī-a, -ae**, F., hurt, harm.

**noxī-us, -ā, -um**, adj., hurtful, harmful.

**nūb-es, -is**, F., a cloud.

**nūbo, nūbēre, nupsī, nuptum**, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note), properly to veil oneself for a husband, hence said of a woman, to marry; a man was said **uxorem ducere** or **uxorem in matrimonium ducere**.

**nūd-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., strip, expose.

**nūd-us, -ā, -um**, adj., bare, destitute of (with abl., p. 64, 4).

**null-us, -ā, -um**, adj. (for declension, p. 44, foot note), none, no one.

**num**, interrog. particle (p. 29).

**Nūm-a, -ae**, M., Numa, *i.e.*, Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

**nūm-en, -īnis**, N., will, power, divinity.

**nūmēr-us, -ī**, M., number.

**Nūmīd-ae, -ārum**, pl. M., the Numidians, a people inhabiting Numidia in Northern Africa, west of Carthage, corresponding to *Algeria*.

**numm-us, -ī**, M., money; **pro nummo uti**, to use as money (c. v, 12).

**nunquam**, adv., never.

**nunc**, adv., now.

**nuntī-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., announce, tell, narrate; **nuntiatum**, word is brought; **nuntiatum est**, word was brought.

**nuntī-us, -ī**, M., messenger, tidings.

**nūper**, adv., lately, recently.

**nuptī-ae, -ārum**, pl. F., wedding, marriage [p. 239, 2, (4)].

**nusquam**, adv., nowhere, in no place.

**nūt-us, -ūs**, M., nod, command; **ad nutum**, at a nod or signal (c. iv, 23).

## O.

**Ō**, interj., o! oh!

**ōb**, prep. (with acc.), on account of, for; **ob eam rem**, for this reason; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, accordingly.

**ob-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -ductum**, v. tr., cover over, cloud; **nocte obducta**, under cover of night (S. II. 5).

**ob-ēdīo, -ēdīre, -ēdīvī, -ēdītum**, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, foot note); obey, listen to.

**ōb-ēo, -īre, -īvī (or īī), -ītum**, v. tr., go towards; **mortem obire**, to meet

death; **officia obire**, to attend to one's duties.

**ob-icĭo**, -icĕre, -iĕcĭ, -iectum, v. tr., thrust or put in the way of, place in front of; **alicui se obicere**, to meet one (N. II. 5); **visus objecto**, the sight meeting their gaze (N. II. 5).

**ob-iectus**, -iectĕ, -iectum, (perf. part. pass. of **obicio** used as an) adj., opposite.

**ob-ĭtus**, -ĭtŭs, M., death.

**oblique**, adv., obliquely, in a slanting direction.

**oblit-us**, -a, -um, perf. part. of **deponet**, **obliviscor**.

**ob-liviscor**, -livĭsci, -litis sum, v. dep. (with genitive, p. 145); forget.

**ob-sĕcr-o**, -ĕre, -ĕvi, -ĕtum, v. tr., beseech, supplicate.

**ob-serv-o**, -ĕre, -ĕvi, -ĕtum, v. tr., watch, observe, regard, obey.

**ob-ses**, -sĭdis, M. or F. a hostage; **obsidum loco**, as hostages (c. v, 5).

**ob-sessi-o**, -ŏnis, F., siege, blockade.

**ob-sĭdĕo**, -sĭdĕre, -sĕdĭ, -sessum, v. tr., besiege, blockade.

**ob-sĭdĭ-o**, -ŏnis, F., siege, blockade.

**ob-sisto**, -sistĕre, -stitĭ, -stitum, v. intr., stand against, resist, oppose, withstand.

**ob-sŏnĭ-um**, -i, N., victuals, food.

**obstinĕtĕ**, adv., firmly, stubbornly.

**ob-sto**, -stĕre, -stitĭ, no sup. (with dat., p. 278, 7); stand against, resist, oppose.

**ob-tempĕr-o**, -ĕre, -ĕvi, -ĕtum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, 3), comply with, obey, conform to.

**ob-test-or**, -ĕri, -ĕtus sum, v. dep., implore, adjure.

**ob-tĭnĕo**, -tĭnĕre, -tĭnŭi, -tentum, v. tr., hold, possess, occupy.

**ob-trectĕti-o**, -ŏnis, F., detraction, disparagement.

**ob-trect-o**, -ĕre, -ĕvi, -ĕtum, v. tr., draw in different directions, oppose; **inter se ob-trectare**, to be opposed to each other (N. A. 1).

**obviam**, adv., in the way, towards; **obviam ire**, or **obviam venire ei**, to meet him (N. II. 4).

**occĕsi-o**, -ŏnis, F., an opportunity. **occĕs-us**, -ŭs, M., setting; **occasus solis**, sunset, west (c. iv, 28).

**oc-cĭdo**, -cĭdĕre, -cĭdĭ, -cĕsum, v.

intr., fall, be killed; **occĭdens sol**, sunset, west (c. v, 13').

**oc-cĭdo**, -cĭdĕre, -cĭdĭ, -cĭsum, v. tr., kill.

**oc-cult-o**, -ĕre, -ĕvi, -ĕtum, v. tr., cover, hide, conceal.

**oc-cult-us**, -ĕ, -um, adj., hidden, concealed.

**oc-cŭpĕt-us**, -ĕ, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **oc-cupo** used as an) adj., busied with; **occupatus in munitione castrorum**, busied with the fortifying of the camp (c. v, 15).

**oc-cŭpĕti-o**, -ŏnis, F., being busied with, business affairs; **occupationes reipublicae**, state affairs (c. iv, 16); **has tantularum rerum occupationes**, business consisting of such trifles (c. iv, 22).

**oc-cŭp-o**, -ĕre, -ĕvi, -ĕtum, v. tr., take, seize.

**oc-curro**, -currĕre, -curri, -cursum, v. tr. (with dat.), run to meet, meet, oppose.

**Ōcĕĕn-us**, -i, M., the ocean; the German Ocean (c. iv, 10).

**ocĭ-or**, -us, adj. (comparative without positive); sup. **ocĭssimus**, swifter.

**oc-tĕv-us**, -ĕ, -um, ord. num. adj., eighth.

**oc-tĭngentĭ**, -ĕ, -ae, -ĕ, card. num. adj., eight hundred.

**oc-tŏ**, card. num. adj., eight.

**oc-todĕcim**, card. num. adj., eighteen.

**oc-togĭnta**, card. num. adj., eighty.

**Ōcŭl-us**, -i, M., eye.

**ŏdĭ**, -isse, v. tr. defect., hate (p. 145).

**ŏdĭ-um**, -i, N., hatred; **odio** (dat. **esse homini**, to be hated by a man (p. 278, 12)).

**of-fĕndo**, -fĕdĕre, -fĕdĭ, -fĕsunĭ, v. tr., strike against, harm, hurt.

**of-fĕro**, -fĕrre, **obtŭli**, **oblĕtum**, v. tr., bring before, present, offer; **se obtulit hostibus**, he faced the enemy (c. iv, 12).

**of-fĭcĭ-um**, -i, N., duty, allegiance; **officium praestare**, to do one's duty; **in officio esse**, to be loyal (c. v, 3); **in officio manere**, to remain loyal (c. v, 4); **in officio continere**, to keep him loyal, or in service (c. v, 7).

**ŏlĕo**, **ŏlĕre**, **ŏlŭi**, no sup., v. tr., smack, smell of.

**ŏlim**, adv., at some time, hereafter, formerly.

**Ōlymp-us**, -i, M., Olympus, a mountain in Greece, the fabled home of the gods.

**ō-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -misum, v. tr.,** let go, throw away, neglect; **ut omittam Philippum,** not to mention Philip (N. H. 2).

**omnino, adv.,** in all, altogether, in general; after negatives, at all; **nihil omnino,** nothing at all; with numerals, in all; **decem omnino,** ten in all.

**omn-is, -ē, adj.,** all, the whole; **omnes ad unum,** all to a man; **maritima omnis,** wholly maritime, or on the sea (C. V, 14).

**ōnērārī-us, -ā, -um, adj.,** of burden; **navis oneraria,** a transport (C. IV, 22, 25).

**ōnēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,** load.

**ōn-us, -ēris, N.,** load, burden.

**ōpēr-a, -ae, F.,** toil, aid; **dare operam,** to take pains (N. T. 7; C. V, 7); **meā operā,** by my aid.

**ōpēr-īo, -īre, -ūi, -tum, v. tr.,** cover; **summas (amphoras) operit,** he covers the tops (of the jars) (N. H. 9).

**ōpīnī-o, -ōnis, F.,** belief, notion; **opinio timoris,** the impression of fear; **praeter opinionem,** contrary to expectation; **celerius omni opinione,** sooner than any expected; **opinio populi Romani,** the reputation of the Roman people (C. IV, 16); **ut fert opinio illorum,** according to their ideas (C. V, 13).

**oport-et, -ēre, -ūit, v. intr. impers.** (P. 162, 4); it is necessary, it behaves.

**oppidān-us, -ā, -um, adj.,** of a town; pl., **oppidān-ī, -ōrum,** town's people, inhabitants of a town.

**oppid-um, -ī, N.,** town.

**op-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsitum, v. tr.,** place against, oppose, withstand.

**opportūnē, adv.,** favorably, suitably.

**opportūnī-tas, -ātis, F.,** fitness, advantage.

**opportūn-us, -ā, -um, adj.,** fit, suitable, advantageous.

**op-prīmo, -primēre, -pressī, -pressum, v. tr.,** burden, crush, destroy.

**op-pugnātī-o, -ōnis, F.,** assault, attack.

**op-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,** storm, attack.

(ops), nom. wanting; gen., **ōpis** (P. 240, 1), F., might, power, help; pl., **opes,** wealth, resources; **domesticæ opes,** his own resources (N. H. 10).

**optīme:** see **bēne.**

**optīmus:** see **bonus.**

**ōp-us, -ēris, N.,** work, labor, **magno opere** or **magnopere,** greatly; **quanto opere,** how greatly; **tanto opere** or **tantopere,** so much, so greatly; **egregie et natura et opere munitus,** splendidly fortified by both its natural position and its defences (C. V, 9).

**ōpus, indecl. neut.,** found only in the expression **opus est, erat, etc.,** there is or was, etc., **neccd, it is or was necessary** (P. 283, 11).

**ōr-a, -ae, F.,** coast; **ora maritima,** sea coast (C. IV, 20).

**ōrātī-o, -ōnis, F.,** a speech; **orationem percipere,** to hear a speech (C. V, 1).

**ōrāt-or, -ōris, M.,** speaker; **modo oratoris,** as an ambassador (C. IV, 27).

**orb-is, -is, M.,** a circle; **orbis terrarum,** the circle of lands, *i. e.*, around the Mediterranean, the whole world to the early Romans; **orbe facto,** forming a circle; corresponding to our forming square to resist an attack (C. IV, 37).

**orb-us, -ā, -um, adj.,** bereft, deprived of.

**ordīor, ordīrī, orsus sum, v. intr. dep.,** begin; **ab initio ordiendum,** we must begin with the beginning of his life (N. T. 1).

**ord-o, -inis, M.,** an arrangement; rank, line; **ordines servare,** to keep the ranks (C. IV, 26).

**ōrest-es, -ae or -is, M.,** Orestes, son of Agamemnon, who avenged his father's death by killing his mother Clytemnestra.

**Orgētōr-ix, -īgis, M.,** Orgetorix, a Helvetian nobleman.

**ōriēn-s, -tis, (pres. part. of orior** used as an) **adj.,** rising; **sol oriens,** the rising sun, hence, the east (C. V, 13).

**ōr-ior, -īrī, -tus sum, v. intr. dep.,** rise, spring from; **orta luce,** at day-break (C. V, 8); **quibus orti ex civitatibus,** and sprung from these states (C. V, 12).

**ornāment-um, -ī, N.,** ornament.

**ornāt-us, -ā, -um, adj.,** equipped, adorned, ornamented.

**ornāt-us, -ūs, M.,** ornament.

**orn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,** adorn; **divitiis ornare,** to enrich (N. T. 2); **elephantus ornatus,** an elephant fully equipped (N. H. 3).

**ōr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,** pray

for, beseech; **magnopere orant**, they earnestly ask for (c. iv, 11).

**ōs, ōris**, N., mouth, face.

**ōs, ossis**, N., bone.

**os-tendo, -tendēre, -tendī, -ten-sum** (or **tum**), v. tr., show, display, declare.

**ōtīōs-us, -ā, -um**, adj., at leisure.

**ōtī-um, -ī, N.**, leisure, quiet.

**ōv-is, -is, F.**, a sheep.

**ōv-um, -ī, N.**, egg.

## P.

**P**=**Publius**, a Roman praenomen.

**pābūlātī-o, -ōnis, F.**, foraging, getting fodder.

**pābūlāt-or, -ōris, M.**, a forager.

**pābūl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum**, v. dep., forage, seek forage.

**pābūl-um, -ī, N.**, fodder, forage.

**pācā-tus, -tā, -tum**, (perf. part. pass. of **paco** used as an) adj., peaceful, quiet.

**pāc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., subdue, pacify.

**pac-tum, -tī, N.**, agreement, bargain.

**Pād-us, -ī, M.**, the Padus (now *Po*), the chief river of Italy.

**paene**, adv., almost, nearly.

**pāg-us, -ī, M.**, district, canton; the word still exists in the French *pays*, as *Pays de Calais*.

**pālam**, adv., openly, publicly; **pal-am facere**, to make it plain (N. H. II).

**pallid-us, -ā, -um**, adj., pale.

**palm-a, -ae, F.**, palm (of the hand), hand.

**pāl-ūs, -ūdis, F.**, marsh.

**pālus, -ī, M.**, stake.

**Pamphylī-us, -ā, -um**, adj., of or belonging to Pamphylia, a country of southern Asia Minor.

**pando, pandēre, pandī, pan-sum**, v. tr., stretch, spread out.

**pā-nis, -nis, F.**, bread.

**pār, pāris**, adj., equal; **par est**, it is fit, it is proper; **par proelium**, a drawn battle (N. T. 3); **pari spatīo**, of the same extent (c. v, 13).

**pārā-tus, -tā, -tum**, (perf. part. pass. of **paro** used as an) adj., prepared, ready.

**parcē**, adv., sparingly.

**parc-o, -ēre, -pēpercī** (or **parsī**), **parcītum** (or **parsum**), v. intr. (with dat., p. 105, 9), spare.

**parc-us, -ā, -um**, adj., sparing, thrifty, frugal.

**pāren-s, -tis, M. or F.**, a parent.

**pāren-s, -tis**, (pres. part. of **pareo** used as an) adj., obedient.

**pār-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, -ītum**, v. intr. (with dat., p. 105, 9), obey.

**pār-īo, -ēre, -pēpērī, partum** or **pārītum**, v. tr., bring forth, produce, obtain.

**pār-ies, -ētis, M.**, a partition wall of a house.

**pār-iter**, adv., equally, evenly.

**pār-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., prepare, get ready, equip, procure.

**par-s, -tis, F.**, part, district, region; **maximam partem**, for the most part (c. iv, 1); **unā ex parte**, on one side (c. iv, 3); **per omnes partes**, in every direction (c. iv, 33); **parte quadam ex Rheno recepta**, after receiving a certain tributary from the Rhine (c. iv, 10); **pars... pars**, some... others (c. iv, 27).

**partim**, adv., partly; **partim... partim**, partly... partly (c. v, 6).

**part-ior, -īri, -ītus sum**, v. tr. dep., divide.

**pār-um**, adv. (p. 77), too little, little; (comp., minus; sup., **minīme**).

**parvūl-us, -ā, -um**, adj., very little young; **ab parvulo**, from boyhood.

**parv-us, -ā, -um**, adj., small, trifling; (comp., minor; sup., **minīmus**).

**pass-er, -ēris, M.**, a sparrow.

**passim**, adv., in every direction.

**pass-us, -us, M.**, a step, pace. As a measure of distance two paces, reckoned from the heel to the same heel, like our two military steps, or = five Roman **pedes** (see **pes**), about 4 ft. 10½ in. English measure; **mille passus** = 1616 yards, or 144 yards short of the English mile.

**past-or, -ōris, M.**, shepherd.

**pātē-fācīo, -fācēre, -fēcī, -fac-tum**, v. tr., open; **pass., patefīo, fiērī, factus sum**.

**pāten-s, -tis**, adj., open.

**pāt-ēo, -ēre, -ūī**, no sup., v. intr., be open, stand open, extend.

**pāt-er, -ris, M.**, father; pl. **patres**, fathers, senate; **pater familiae** or **familiae**, father of a family.

**pāt-ienter**, adv., patiently.

**pāt-ientī-a, -ae, F.**, endurance, forbearance.

**pāt-ior, -pātī, -passus sum**, v. tr. dep., allow, suffer, bear; **longius bar-**

**baros progredi non pati**, to prevent the barbarians from advancing any farther (N. T. 3).

**pātrī-a**, -ae, F., fatherland, native land; **patriā pellere**, to banish (N. A. 1).

**pātrīcī-us**, -ā, -um, adj., patrician, noble.

**pātrī-us**, -ā, -um, adj., paternal.

**paucit-as**, -ātis, F., fewness, smallness.

**pauc-us**, ā, -um, adj., some, few (generally in pl.).

**paulātīm**, adj., gradually.

**paulisper**, adv., for a short time.

**paulo**, adv. (abl. of paulus), by a little, just a little.

**paulūm**, adv., a little, gradually.

**paulum**, adv., a little.

**paul-us**, -ā, -um, adj., little.

**Paulus**: see Aemilius.

**pau-per**, -pēris, adj., poor (comp. pauperior, sup. pauperrimus).

**paupert-as**, -ātis, F., poverty.

**Pausānī-as**, -ae, M., Pausanias, a Spartan general who commanded the Greeks at Plataeae, 479 B.C.

**pāv-or**, -ōris, M., fear.

**pax**, pācis, F., peace; **pace tuā**, with your permission; **pace uti**, to remain quiet.

**pecc-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., do wrong, sin.

**pect-us**, -ōris, N., breast.

**pēcūnī-a**, -ae, F., money, wealth.

**pēc-us**, -ōris, N., cattle (collectively).

**pēc-us**, -ūdis, F., cattle (singly).

**pēd-es**, -ītis, M., a foot-soldier; pl., pēdites, infantry.

**pēdest-er**, -ris, -re, adj., on foot, on land; **copiae pedestres**, land forces; **copiae navales**, naval forces.

**pēditāt-us**, -ūs, M., infantry (collectively).

**pēi or**, -us, adj. (comp. of malus; sup., pessimus), worse.

**pell is**, -is, F., skin, hide; **pellibus vestiri**, to clothe themselves with skins (c. v, 14).

**pello**, pellere, pēpūli, pulsum, v. tr., expel, drive out; **patria pellere**, to exile (N. A. 1).

**Pēlōponnēs-us**, -ī, F., the Peloponnesus (now the *Morea*), the part of Greece south of the Isthmus of Corinth.

**pēnāt-ēs**, -ium, pl. M., the Penates, or household gods, presiding over the house and all that it contained.

**pendēo**, pendere, pēpendī, no sup., v. intr., hang, be suspended.

**pendo**, pendere, pēpendī, pen-sum, v. tr., weigh out (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal, hence), pay.

**pēnes**, prep. (with acc.), in the power of, in the possession of.

**pēnitus**, adv., within, entirely, completely.

**per**, prep. (with acc.), through, by means of, by; in composition, through, thoroughly, very.

**pēr-āgo**, -āgere, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., accomplish, bring to an end; **conventus peragere**, to hold assizes (c. v, 2).

**per-cipio**, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-tum, v. tr., take in, learn, perceive; **percipere orationem**, to hear a speech (c. v, 1).

**per-contātī-o**, -ōnis, F., enquiry.

**per-curro**, -currere, -currī (or -cūcurrī), -cursum, v. intr., run through, run along.

**per-disco**, -discere, -dīdīcī, no sup., learn by heart.

**per-dūco**, -dūcere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., complete, bring to a destination; **naves perduxit**, he brought the ships to their destination (c. v, 23).

**pēr-ēo**, -ire, -ivī (or -iī), -itum, v. intr., perish, die.

**pēr-ēquit-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ride, ride through.

**pēr-exigū-us**, -ā, -um, adj., very small.

**per-fācīl-is**, -ē, adj., very easy.

**per-fēro**, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum, v. tr., carry, bring, report; endure; **perlatum est**, word was brought; **fama perlata est**, the report was spread (N. T. 2); **poenam perferre**, to endure a penalty (N. A. 1); **consilio perlato**, after their plan was reported (c. iv, 21).

**per-ficīo**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., execute, accomplish, finish, complete.

**per-fīdī-a**, -ae, F., faithlessness, treachery.

**per-fūg-a**, -ae, M., a deserter, runaway.

**per-fūgīo**, -fūgere, -fūgī, -fūgītum, v. tr., flee, escape from, desert.

**per-fūgī-um**, -ī, N., refuge.

per-fungor, -fungī, -functus sum, v. intr. (with abl. p. 233, 10, discharge fully, perform.

Pergāmēn-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to Pergamus, a city of Mysia.

pergo, pergēre, perrexī, perrectum, v. intr., go on, advance.

Pēricl-ēs, -is, M., Pericles, an Athenian statesman.

pēriculōs-us, -ā, -um, adj., dangerous.

pēricul-um, -ī, N., danger; facere periculum, to run the risk (c. iv, 21).

pērit-us, -ā, -um, adj., with gen., acquainted with; rei militaris peritus, skilled in military affairs.

per-lēgo, -lēgēre, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., read through.

per-lūo, -lūēre, -lūī, -lūtum, v. tr., wash thoroughly, bathe.

per-magn-us, -ā, -um, adj., very great.

per-mānēo, -mānēre, -mānsī, -mansum, v. intr., stay, remain, continue; in eā sententiā permanere, to adhere to that policy (c. iv, 21).

per-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -missum, v. intr., entrust; fortunās eius fidei permittere, to entrust their fortunes to his protection (c. v, 3).

per-mōvēo, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., rouse, disturb, alarm, induce.

per-mulceo, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, v. tr., calm thoroughly.

per-nīcī-es, -ēī, F., ruin, destruction.

per-pauc-ī, -ae, -ā, adj. pl., very few.

per-pētior, -pētī, -pessus sum, v. tr. dep., bear, endure.

per-pētūo, adv., continually, constantly.

per-pētū-us, -ā, -um, adj., constant, unbroken; in perpetuum, for ever (c. iv, 34).

per-rumpo, -rumpēre, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break through.

Pers-ae, -ārum, pl. M., the Persians.

per-saepe, adv., very often.

per-scribo, -scribēre, -scripsi, -scriptum, v. tr., write a report in full, give a full account of.

per-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus sum, v. tr. dep., follow up, pursue, avenge.

Pers-ēs, -ae, M., a Persian.

per-sēvēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., persist in, persevere.

Persīc-us, -a, -um, adj., Persian.

Pers-is, -idis, F., Persia.

per-solvo, -solvēre, -solvi, -sōlūtum, v. tr., pay in full.

per-spīcīo, -spīcēre, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., see, observe, reconnoitre; coram perspīcit, he sees in person (c. v, 11).

per-suādēo, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, foot note); persuade, convince, induce; mihi persuadetur, I am persuaded (p. 164, 1).

per-terr-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, -ītum, v. tr., greatly alarm, frighten, terrify.

per-tīnācī-a, -ae, F., obstinacy.

per-tīnēo, -tīnēre, -tīnūī, no sup. v. intr., tend, extend; ad irridendum eum pertinere, to tend to ridicule him (N. II. 11); eodem illo pertinere, to have that same object (c. iv, 11); hoc pertinet, this side extends (c. v, 13)

per-turbātīo, -ōnis, F., confusion.

per-turb-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., disturb greatly, agitate.

per-vēnīo, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ven-tum, v. intr., reach, arrive at.

per-vert-o, -vertēre, -vertī, -ver-sum, v. tr., overthrow.

pes, pēdis, M., foot; pedem referre, to retreat (c. iv, 25); as a measure of length=11.64 in.; 5 Roman pedes=passus. (See passus.)

pest-is, -is, F., destruction, pest.

pēto, pētēre, pētīvī, pētītum, v. tr., make for, aim at, attack, try to reach; ask, seek.

phālan-x, -gis, F., a band of soldiers in solid column.

Phālērīc-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to Phalērum, the oldest harbor of Athens, connected with the city by long walls.

Philipp-us, -ī, M., Philip, called Philip V, King of Macedon. He reigned 220 B.C. to 179 B.C. In 215 B.C. he formed an alliance with Hannibal, but the Romans did not prosecute the war against him till 200 B.C., i.e., two years after the battle of Zama. When they had conquered Carthage, they began a war with Philip, which lasted from 200 B.C. to 197 B.C., when he was defeated at Cynoscephalae by Flamininus.

philōsōphī-a, -ae, F., philosophy.

philōsōph-us, -ī, M., philosopher.

piēt-as, -ātis, F., duty to the gods, to one's country, or to one's parents; hence, piety, patriotism or filial affection.

pīget, pīgēre, pīgūt, pīgītum  
est, v. tr. impers. (p. 281, 13), it vexes,  
troubles; *me huius stultitiae piget*,  
I am vexed at this man's folly.

pil-um, -ī, N., pike, javelin.

pingu-is, -ē, adj., fat.

pinn-a, -ae, F., feather.

Pirae-us, -i, M., the Piraeus (now  
*Porto Dracone*, or *Porto Leone*), the port  
of Athens, about five miles from the city,  
with which it was connected by the "Long  
Walls."

Pirust-ae, -arum, M. pl., the Pirus-  
tae, a tribe of Macedonia, on the southern  
border of Illyricum, in what is now the  
modern *Herzegovina*.

Pis-o, -ōnis, M., Piso, an Aquitanian  
noble (c. v, 12).

pisc-is, -is, F., fish.

pix, picis, F., pitch.

plāc-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum, v. intr.,  
please; often used impers., *plācet*  
*mihi*, I am pleased, I vote yea; *non*  
*mihi placet*, I vote nay; *placebat*,  
supply eis, they decided (N. T. 3).

plācidē, adv., quietly, calmly.

plāc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,  
appease.

plāg-a, -ae, F., region, district; pl.,  
*plagae*, a net.

plānē, adv., clearly, entirely.

plānītī-ēs, -ēi, F., plain, level ground.

plān-us, -ā, -um, adj., flat, level.

Plātae-ae, -arum, pl. F., Plataeae  
(now *Palaeo Castro*), a city of Boeotia,  
near which the Greeks defeated the Per-  
sians in 479 B.C.

Plāt-o, -ōnis, M., one of the greatest  
of Greek philosophers (B.C. 429 to B.C. 347).

plēbi-scīt-um, -ī, N., a decree of the  
people; *scisco*, approve.

plebs, plēbis (plēbēi or plēbī),  
F., the common people, the commons.

plēnē, adv., fully, completely.

plēn-us, -ā, -um, adj., full (with  
genitive, p. 281, 9).

plērīque, plērāque, plērāque,  
pl. adj., most, several; *interiores*  
*plerique*, most of the inland people  
(c. v, 14).

plērūmque, adv., mostly, generally,  
usually.

plērūque, plērāque, plērū-  
que, adj., most; generally *plērīque*.

plumb-um, -ī, N., lead; album  
*plumbum*, tin (c. v, 12).

plūrēs: see *multus* (p. 57, 4).

plūrīmum, adv. (superl. of *mul-  
tum*, p. 77, 6); *longe plurimum*  
*valet*, is by far the most powerful  
(c. v, 3).

plūrīm-us, -ā, -um, adj., superl. of  
*multus* (p. 57, 4).

plus, adj., comp. of *multus* (p. 57, 4).

pōcūl-um, -ī, N., drinking cup.

poen-a, -ae, F., compensation, pun-  
ishment, penalty; *poenas dare*,  
*poenas pendere*, *poenas persol-  
vere*, to pay the penalty, to be pun-  
ished; *poenas sumere*, to exact a  
penalty, to punish; *poenam per-  
ferre*, to endure the penalty (N. A. 1).

Poen-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Poeni or  
Carthaginians,

poenīt-et, -ēre, -ūit, no sup., v. tr.  
impers., it repents; *me facti poenī-  
tet*, I repent of the deed (p. 165, 1).

pōēt-a, -ae, M., poet.

pollīc-ēor, -ēri, -ītus sum, v. tr.  
dep., promise (p. 110).

Pōlybi-us, -ī, M., Polybius, a Greek  
historian who lived 220 B.C. to 122 B.C.

Pompēi-us, -ī, M., Pompey; Cnēius  
Pompēius Magnus, a Roman general,  
born 106 B.C., consul 70 B.C., 55 and 52,  
defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, 48 B.C.,  
and afterwards assassinated in Egypt.

pōm-um, -ī, N., an apple.

pond-us, -ēris, N., weight.

pōno, pōnere, pōsūi, pōsītum,  
v. tr., place, put, lay down; *castra*  
*ponere*, to pitch a camp.

pon-s, pontis, M., a bridge; *pon-  
tem facere*, to build a bridge (N. T. 5);  
*pontem dissolvere* (N. T. 5) or *pon-  
tem rescindere* (c. iv, 19), to destroy  
a bridge

ponti-fex, -fīcīs, M., high priest,  
pontiff.

Pont-us, -ī, M., Pontus (on the Euxine  
or *Black Sea*) included Pontus Proper,  
Cappadocia and Bithynia.

pōpūlātī-o, -ōnis, F., devastation,  
ravaging.

pōpūl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr.  
dep., devastate, lay waste.

pōpūl-us, -ī, M., people; pl., *pop-  
ulī*, nations.

port-a, -ae, F., gate, door.

port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,  
carry.

portorī-um, -ī, N., toll, tax, duty.

port-us, -ūs, M., port, harbor.



**posco, poscere, pōscī, no sup.,** v. tr., beg, demand, ask.

**possessī-o, -ōnis, F.,** possession.

**possid-ēo, -ēre, possēdī, posses-**  
**sum, v. tr.,** hold, own.

**possid-o, -ēre, possēdī, posses-**  
**sum, v. tr.,** win, get possession of.

**possum, posse, pōtūi, no sup.;**  
v. irreg. (p. 146), be able, can; **multum**  
**posse, to have great power; pluri-**  
**um posse, to have very great power.**

**post, adv., after, later; (often with the**  
**abl. of measure) anno post, a year**  
**afterwards; paucis diebus post, a**  
**few days afterwards (p. 82, 3).**

**post, prep. (with acc.), after; post**  
**tergum, in the rear; post paucos**  
**annos, after a few years (p. 82, 3);**  
**post hominum memoriam, within**  
**the memory of man (N. T. 5).**

**postēā, adv., afterwards.**

**postēāquam, conj., after that, after.**

**postēr-us, -ā, -um, adj., the follow-**  
**ing, next; (comp., posterior; sup.,**  
**postremus); pl., poster-i, -ōrum,**  
**descendants.**

**posthāc, adv., after this, hereafter,**  
**henceforth.**

**post-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pō-**  
**situm, v. tr., put after, esteem less.**

**postquam, adv., after that, after,**  
**when (p. 298, 2).**

**postrēmo, adv., at last, finally.**

**postrēm-us, -ā, -um, adj. (see**  
**posterus), last.**

**postridīē, adv., the next day; post-**  
**ridie eius diei mane, early next**  
**day (c. v, 10).**

**postulāt-um, -i, N., demand.**

**postūl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,**  
**ask, demand, request (p. 276, foot note).**

**pōten-s, -tis, adj., powerful.**

**pōtentī-a, -ae, F., power, might, in-**  
**fluence.**

**pōtest-as, -ātis, F., power, might,**  
**opportunity.**

**pōt-ior, -irī, -itus sum, v. dep., get**  
**possession of, become master of, acquire**  
**(with abl. p. 283, 10, or with gen.).**

**pōtissimum, adv., superl., chiefly,**  
**principally, especially.**

**pōtius, adv., rather, preferably; su-**  
**perl. potissimum; no positive.**

**prae, prep. (with abl.), in comparison**  
**with, on account of.**

**prae-ācūt-us, -ā, -um, adj., sharp-**  
**ened at the end, pointed.**

**praeb-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -ītum, v. tr.,**  
**offer, show, furnish.**

**prae-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-**  
**sum, v. intr., go before, surpass.**

**prae-ceps, -cipītis, adj., head-**  
**long, steep, precipitous; praecipites**  
**hostes agere, to drive the enemy**  
**headlong (c. v, 17).**

**praecep-tor, -tōris, M., teacher.**

**praecep-tum, -ti, N., teaching, ad-**  
**vice, order, command.**

**prae-cīpio, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cept-**  
**um, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 3), order,**  
**direct.**

**prae-cīpit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.**  
**intr., rush headlong.**

**praecipūē, adv., especially, particu-**  
**larly.**

**prae-cīpū-us, -ā, -um, adj., especial.**

**prae-clār-us, -ā, -um, adj., dis-**  
**tinguished.**

**prae-clūdo, -clūdere, -clūsī,**  
**-clūsum, v. tr., close up.**

**prae-co, -cōnis, M., a herald, crier.**

**prae-curro, -currere, -cūcurri,**  
**(or -curri), -cursum, v. intr., run**  
**before, outstrip.**

**praed-a, -ae, F., booty, plunder.**

**prae-dīco, -dīcāre, -dīcāvī, -dī-**  
**cātum, v. tr., proclaim, boast.**

**prae-dico, -dicere, -dixī, -dic-**  
**tum, v. tr., foretell.**

**praedit-us, -ā, -um, adj. (with abl.,**  
**p. 64, 4), endowed with.**

**praed-o, -ōnis, M., a robber; mari-**  
**timi praedones, sea robbers, pirates**  
**(N. T. 2).**

**praed-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep.**  
**tr., plunder, pillage, obtain booty.**

**praefect-us, -ī, M., an officer, over-**  
**seer.**

**prae-fēro, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,**  
**v. tr., put before, prefer.**

**prae-fīcio, -fīcere, -fēcī, -fectum,**  
**v. tr., put over, put in command of**  
**(p. 278, 6).**

**prae-figo, -figere, -fixī, -fixum,**  
**v. tr., fix or place in front of; sudibus**  
**praefixis, by driving stakes in front**  
**(c. v, 18).**

**praefixus: see praefigo.**

**praelium: see proelium.**

prae-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send before, send forward.

praemī-um, -ī, N., reward.

praepār o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., prepare.

prae-pōno, -pōnĕre, -pōsūī, -pōsitum, v. tr., set over, place in command of.

prae-rupt-us, -ā, -um, adj., steep, precipitous.

prae-scribo, -scribĕre, -scripsī, -scriptum, v. tr., order, direct, command.

prae-script-um, -ī, M., order, instruction.

praesen-s, -tis, adj., at hand, present.

praesenti-a, -ae, F., presence; in praesentia, for the time being, for the present (N. T. 3); in praesentiarum (=in praesentia rerum), for the present (N. H. 6).

praesertim, adv., especially.

praesīdī-um, -ī, N., guard, defence, garrison; praesidio navibus esse, to guard the ships (c. v, 9).

prae-sto, -stāre, -stīti, -stītum, stand before, show; perform, make good a promise (N. T. 10); praestare ceteros imperatores, to surpass the other commanders (N. H. 1); officium praestare, to fulfil a duty (c. iv, 25).

prae-sum, -esse, -fūī, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 6), be over, have command of; summae imperii praeesse, to hold the supreme command (N. T. 4); tantis rebus praeesse, to have charge of such important matters (N. A. 3); uegotio praeesse, to have charge of the matter (c. v, 2).

praeter, prep. (with acc.), beyond, except, contrary to.

praetērĕ-ā, adv., besides.

praetēr-ĕo, -ire, -ivī (or -iī), -itum, v. tr., pass by, go by.

praetĕrī-tus, -tā, -tum, adj., past; tempus praeteritum, past time.

praeter-mitto, -mittĕre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., let pass, let slip.

praeterquam, adv., except, besides, beyond.

praeter-vĕhor. -vĕhī. -vectus sum, v. tr., be carried beyond, sail past, coast along.

prae-tor, -tōris, M., general, commander.

praetōrī-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to the praetor or commander; cohors praetoria, the general's body

guard; porta praetoria, the gate near the general's tent.

praetūr-a, -ae, F., the office of commander.

prae-vidĕo, -vidĕre, -vidī, -visum, v. tr., foresee; to take precautions against.

prāt-um, -ī, N., meadow.

prāv-us, -ā, -um, adj., crooked, ill-shaped (c. iv, 2).

prĕcī, prĕcem, prĕcĕ (no nom. or gen. sing.); pl. preces, precum, etc.; F., prayer, request (p. 240, (2)).

prĕ-hendo, -hendĕre, -hendī, -hensum, v. tr., seize, grasp, snatch.

prĕmo, prĕmĕre, pressī, press-um, v. tr., press, harass, crush.

prĕndo, prĕndĕre, prĕndī, prĕns-um, v. tr.; see prĕhendo.

prĕtī-um, -ī, N., price, value; impenso pretio, at an extravagant price (c. iv, 2).

(prex, prĕcis), F., supposed form; see prĕcī.

prīdĕ, adv., the day before.

prīmo, adv., at first.

prīmum, adv., firstly, in the first place; ubi prīmum, as soon as; quum prīmum, as soon as possible; cum (quum) prīmum, as soon as (p. 298, 2).

prīm-us, -ā, -um, adj., sup. of the comp., prior, no positive (p. 59, 2); prima luce, at daybreak; prima nocte, at nightfall; prīmum agmen, the vanguard; in prīmīs, especially.

prīn-ceps, -cīpis, M., chief man, chief, prince.

prīncīpāt-us, -ūs, M., chief authority, leadership.

prīncīpī-um, -ī, N., beginning.

prīor, prīus, adj., comp. (no positive; sup. primus; p. 59, 2); former, previous.

prīstīn-us, -ā, -um, adj., old, former.

prīus, adv., before, sooner, earlier; followed by quam, and often written with it as one word, priusquam, before, before that.

prīusquam, conj., before, sooner than (p. 299, 8).

prīvātīm, adv., privately, individually.

prīvāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., private.

prīv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., deprive.

prō, prep. (with abl.), in front of, before; for, in proportion to; pro

merito eius, as he deserved (c. v, 4); pro tempore et pro re, suited to the time and the conditions (c. v, 8); pro sano, as a sane man (c. v, 7); pro nummo, as money (c. v, 12); pro sua virtute, in consideration of his excellence.

prōbīt-as, -ātis, F., uprightness.

prōb-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., justify (something to another), approve of; minus probatus, less acceptable, i. e., than he ought to be; hence, displeasing (N. T. 1).

prōb-us, -ā, -um, adj., good.

prōcēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., advance, succeed.

prōcēr-us, -ā, -um, adj., tall, high.

prō-clām-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., shout aloud.

prō-consul, -consūlis, M., proconsul; one who having been consul has the government of a province entrusted to him.

prōcul, adv., afar, at a distance.

prō-cumbo, -cumbēre, -cūbūi, cūbitum, v. intr., fall, sink down.

prō-cūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., have charge of, attend to.

prō-curro, -currere, -cūcurri (or -curri), -cursum, v. intr., rush forward, hasten forward.

prō-dēo, -ire, -ivī (-iī), itum, v. intr., go forward, advance; in cōtionem populi prodire, to appear before the assembly of the people (N. T. 1).

prōdesse: see prōsum.

prōdītī-o, -ōnis, F., treachery, betraying.

prōdīt-or, -ōris, M., traitor, betrayer.

prō-do, -dēre, -dīdi, dītum, v. tr., betray, surrender; memoriae prodere, hand down to memory, hand down by tradition (N. T. 10); memoriā proditum, handed down by tradition (c. v. 12).

prō-dūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead forward, lead forth; productus ad proelium, enticed to battle (N. H. 5).

proeli-or, -ārī, ātus sum, v. intr., fight.

proeli-um, -ī, N., battle; proelium facere, to fight a battle (N. T. 9).

prō-fānus, -ā, -um, adj., not sacred, profane.

prō-fectī-o, ōnis, F., a departure, setting out.

prōfectō, adv., for a fact, indeed.

prō-fero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr., carry forward, bring forth.

prō-fīcīo, -fīcēre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., advance, effect, gain; satis profectum arbitratus, thinking that enough had been gained (c. iv, 19).

prō-fīciscor, -fīcisci, -fectus sum, v. intr. dep., set out, depart.

prō-fītēor, -fītērī, -fessus sum, v. tr. dep., profess, declare.

prō-flīg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., strike to the ground; vanquish, overthrow.

prō-flūo, -flūere, -fluxī, -fluxum, v. intr., flow forward.

prō-fūgīo, -fūgēre, -fūgī, -fūgītum, v. intr., flee forward, escape.

prō-fūg-us, -ī, M., deserter, exile.

prō-gnāt-us, -a, -um, adj., sprung from.

prō-grēdi-or, -grēdi, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., advance, go forward.

prō-hībēo, -hībēre, -hībūi, hībītum, v. tr., hold, restrain, prevent.

prō-icīo, -icēre, -icēcī, -iectum, v. tr., throw, throw away.

prō-inde, adv., henceforth, therefore.

prō-miss-us, -ā, -um, adj., long, flowing; capillo sunt promisso, they have long hair (c. v, 14).

prō-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., promise.

prō-mōvēo, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōvtum, v. tr., move forward.

prompt-us, -ā, -um, adj., ready.

prō-mulg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., announce, enact a law.

prō-nē, adv., headlong, leaning forward.

prō-nuntī-o, -āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr., tell, announce, declare.

prō-pāg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., extend.

prō-pāg-o, -īnis, F., offspring, race.

prō-pātūl-um, -ī, N., an open space in front of a temple or a house.

prōpe, adv., near, nearly, almost; comp., propius; sup., proxime.

prō-pello, -pellēre, -pūlī, -pulsūm, v. tr., drive away, put to flight.

prōpēre, adv., quickly, speedily, in haste.

prōpēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., hurry, hasten.

**prōpinquū-as, -ātis, F.**, nearness, vicinity, relationship.

**prōpinqu-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.** (with dative), come near, approach.

**prōpinqu-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, near, with dative (p. 277, 2); as a noun, **prōpinqu-us, -ī, M.**, relation.

**prōpī-or, -us, adj.**, comparative of obsolete **propis**; **sup. proximus**; **nocte proxima**, last night.

**prōpiūs**: see **prope**, and **propior**.

**prō-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsītum, v. tr.**, put forward, explain; **vexillum proponere**, to hoist the flag from the general's tent (**praetorium**) as a signal for beginning a battle.

**prō-prae-tor, -tōris, M.**, the praetor, a magistrate who having administered the praetorship for one year at Rome, was sent the following year to a province as a governor.

**prōpri-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, one's own, particular, peculiar.

**propter**, prep. (with acc.), on account of, in consequence of.

**proptērēā, adv.**, for this reason, therefore; **propterea quod**, because.

**prō-pugnācūl-um, -ī, N.**, defence, protection.

**prō-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, fight.

**prō-puls-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, drive off, ward off, repel.

**prōr-a, -ae, F.**, prow.

**prō-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus** (or **sēquūtus**) **sum, v. tr.**, dep., follow after, follow, attend.

**prō-spec-tus, -tūs, M.**, view, sight.

**prōspēr-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, fortunate.

**prō-spīcio, -spīcere, -spexī, -spec-tum, v. tr.**, look forward, take care.

**prō-sum, prō-d-esse, prō-fūi, v. intr.**, (p. 261), be of benefit to, benefit (with dative, p. 279, 9).

**prōtīnus, adv.**, at once, forthwith, immediately; **ex hac fuga protinus**, immediately after this defeat (c. v, 17).

**prō-vēho, -vēhēre, -vexī, -vec-tum, v. tr.**, carry forward; in pass., sail along, coast.

**prō-vidēo, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, v. tr.**, foresee, take care.

**prō-vid-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, foreseeing.

**prōvinci-a, -ae, F.**, province.

**prō-vōc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, challenge, summon.

**proxime**: see **prope**.

**proximus**: see **propior**.

**prūden-s, -tis, adj.**, prudent, foreseeing.

**prūdenti-a, -ae, F.**, foresight, shrewdness.

**Prūsī-as, -ae, M.**, Prusias, king of Bithynia, in Asia Minor, who hospitably received Hannibal in his exile, but afterwards betrayed him.

**publicē, adv.**, in the name of the state, as a state; **publice putant**, they, as a state, consider (c. iv, 3).

**public-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, confiscate; **bona publicare**, to confiscate goods (n. ii, 7).

**public-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, public, common; **res publica**, the commonwealth (p. 238); **publico consilio**, by a public plan.

**Publi-us, -ī, M.**, Publius; see **Rufus**, **Scipio**.

**pūd-et, -ēre, -ūit** (or **-itum est**), **v. imp.**, it causes shame (p. 165, 1).

**pūd-or, -ōris, M.**, shame.

**pūell-a, -ae, F.**, girl.

**pū-er, -ērī, M.**, child, boy; **puer a ianua**, the porter (n. ii, 12).

**pūerīl-is, -ēs, adj.**, of a child or boy; **aetas puerilis**, the age of childhood or boyhood.

**pūerū-lus, -lī, M.**, a mere boy.

**pug-na, -nae, F.**, fight, combat.

**pug-no, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātum, v. intr.**, fight; **acriter pugnatum est**, a fierce battle was fought (c. iv, 26; p. 164, 2, note 2).

**pul-cher, -chrā, -chrum, adj.**, beautiful.

**pulv-is, -ēris, M.**, dust.

**pūn-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr.**, punish.

**pupp-is, -is, F.**, stern of a vessel.

**purg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, clear, make clear, free from blame; **sui purgandi causā**, for the purpose of clearing themselves (c. iv, 13).

**pūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, think, fancy, consider.

**Pydn-a, -ae, F.**, Pydna, a town of Macedonia, near the Thermaic Gulf, where Aemilius Paulus defeated Perseus, the last king of Macedonia, 168 B.C.

**Pylād-ēs, -ae, M.**, Pylades, a Greek, friend of Orestes.

**Pyrēnae-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, usually in the pl.; **Pyrenaei montes**, the Pyrenees.

**Pyrrh-us, -i, M.**, Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, who invaded Italy, but was finally defeated by the Romans and driven from Italy, 275 B.C.

**Pýthi-a, -ae, F.**, the Pythia, or priestess of Delphi. The Homeric name for Delphi was Pytho.

## Q.

**Q. = Quintus** (which see).

**quā**, nom. sing. fem. or neut. pl. nom. or acc. of **quis** or **qui** (p. 129).

**quā** (abl. fem. of **qui**, supply **viā** or **parte**) adv., where, as far as.

**quācumque**, adv., in whatever way or direction, wherever.

**quadrāgintā**, num. card. adj., forty.

**quadrīngēn-i, -ae, -a**, distrib. num. adj., four hundred each.

**quadrīngēn-i, -ae, -ā**, card. num. adj., four hundred.

**quaero, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum, v. tr.**, seek, look for, ask, enquire.

**quaestī-o, -ōnis, F.**, enquiry. investigation.

**quaestor, -tōris, M.**, quaestor; the quaestors were officers who acted as government treasurers, received tribute and paid the soldiers.

**quaest-us, -ūs, M.**, gain, profit.

**quāl-is, -ē, adj.**, of what sort or kind.

**quam, conj.**, than (after comparatives, p. 55, 5); with superlatives, with or without **possum** = as possible; **quam primum**, as soon as possible; **quam plurimi**, as many as possible; **quam maximi**, as large as possible; often joined with **prius, post**, as **priusquam, postquam**.

**quamdiū, adv.**, as long as.

**quamobrem, adv.**, for which reason, wherefore, why.

**quamquam, conj.**, though, although, however, and yet (p. 196, 5).

**quamvis, adv.**, though, although (p. 196, 5); **quamvis pauci**, no matter how few (p. 303, 3).

**quando, interrog. adv.**, when?; rel. adv., when, whenever.

**quanto** (abl. of difference from **quantus**), adv., by how much; **quanto . . . tanto**, as . . . so; the . . . the (p. 195, 4).

**quantum** (acc. of **quantus**), adv., how much, how far, as far as.

**quant-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, interrog. or rel., how great, how much, how large, as large as.

**quantusvis, quantavis, quantumvis, adj.**, however great.

**quare, interrog. and rel. adv.**, wherefore, why.

**quart-us, -ta, -tum, ord. num. adj.**, fourth.

**quāsi, conj.**, as if.

**quattūor, card. num. adj.**, four.

**quattūordēcim, card. num. adj.**, fourteen.

**-que, conj. and**; always appended to the word, which in construction belongs to it; generally to the first word of the clause or to the word it couples.

**quemadmōdum, adv.**, in which way, how.

**quēror, quēri, questus sum, v. tr. dep.**, complain, lament.

**quī, quae, quod, rel. pro.**, who, which, what (p. 126); since he (p. 198, 4); so that he (p. 188, 4); **quī**, an old abl., wherewith (N. A. 3).

**quicquam**: see **quisquam** (p. 132, 3).

**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pro.**, whoever, whatever (p. 126, 2).

**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, indef. pro.**, a certain one; pl., some, certain.

**quīdem, adv.**, indeed, at least; **ne . . . quīdem, not . . . even**: the emphatic word is always placed between **ne** and **quīdem**.

**quī-es, -ētis, F.**, rest, repose, quiet.

**quī-libet, quae-libet, quod-libet, indef. rel.**, any one (p. 132).

**quīn** (old abl. **quī**, how and **ne**, not), conj., that not, but that, without; after words expressing doubt or suspicion, that (p. 188, 6); after words of preventing, etc., translated by *from* with verbals in **-ing** (p. 185, 2, note); **quīn etiam** (c. iv, 2), nay even.

**quī-nam, quae-nam, quod-nam, interrog. pro.**, who, pray?, who, then? (p. 129, 3, note).

**quīndēcim, card. num. adj.**, fifteen.

**quīngēn-i, -ae, -a, card. num. adj.**, five hundred.

**quīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.**, five each, five a piece.

**quīnquagīnta, card. num. adj.**, fifty.

**quīnque, card. num. adj.**, five.

**quīnt-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj.**, fifth.

**Quīnt-us, -i, M.**, Quintus; see **Attri-**

us, Fabius, Flaminius, Labeo, Laberius, Sabinus.

quippe, adv., surely, certainly; quippe qui, since he (p. 198, 4, note).

quis, quae or qua, quid or quod, indef. pro., anyone, any (p. 129, 1); interrog., who?

quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, interrog. pro., who, pray? (p. 129, 3, note).

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or quidpiam, indef. pro., some, some one (p. 132).

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quidquam, indef. pro., any one (p. 132); neque quisquam, no-one (c. iv, 20); neque quicquam, and nothing (c. iv, 20).

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pro., each, every, every one; with superlatives in sing., all: optimus quisque, all the best.

quisquis, quaequae or quaquae, quidquid, quicquid or quodquod, indef. rel. pro., whoever, whatever.

quivis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, indef. pro., any one you please, any.

quo, adv., (1) rel. and interrog., whither; (2), indef. rel. after si or ne, to any place, to any point, any where.

quo (abl. of qui), final conj., used with comparatives followed by subjunctive; in order that (p. 183, 5).

quoad, adv. (with indic. in Caesar), as long as, until, till; quoad subsidio confisi equites praecipites hostes egerunt, till the cavalry trusting in the reserves drove, as they did, the enemy headlong (c. v, 17).

quod, conj., because, inasmuch as (with indicative or subjunctive, p. 297, 3); propterea quod, because; quod si, but if, if (p. 192, 1, note); the fact that (with the indicative, p. 293, 2).

quominus, conj., that not; often best translated by *from* after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc., with an English verbal noun in *-ing* (p. 185, 2).

quondam, adv., once, formerly, some day.

quoniam, conj., since, seeing that, because (p. 198).

quoque, adv. (following the emphatic word of a clause), also, too.

quot, indecl. adj., how many? often correlative of tot; tot...quot, as many as.

quotannis, adv., yearly, every year.

quotidianus, -ă, -um, adj., daily, every day.

quotidie, adv., every day (see cotidie).

quoties, adv., how often?; often correlative of toties: toties...quoties, as often as.

quotiescumque, adv., how often soever, as often as.

quotus, -ă, -um, adj., what number?; quota hora est?, what hour is it?

quum: see cum (p. 203).

## R.

rād-ix, -icis, F., root; montis radices, the foot of a mountain.

rādo, rādēre, rāsī, rasum, v. tr., shave.

rā-mus, -mī, M., branch, bough.

rā-na, -nae, F., frog.

rāpīdīt-as, -ātis, F., swiftness, quickness.

rāpīd-us, -ă, -um, adj., swift, quick.

rāpīn-a, -ae, F., booty, plunder, robbery.

rāpīo, rāpēre, rāpūī, raptum, v. tr., snatch, seize, hurry off.

rār-us, -ă, -um, adj., few, scattered, in small parties.

rātī-o, -ōnis, F., reckoning, calculation, account; rationem inire, to form a plan (N. H. 10); ratio atque usus belli, the theory and practice of war = the systematic practice of war (c. iv, 1); equestris proelii ratio, the style of the cavalry battle (c. v, 16); ratio pontis, the plan of the bridge (c. iv, 17); rei militaris ratio, military science (c. iv, 23).

rāt-is, -is, F., raft.

rā-tus, perf. part. of dep. reor, which see.

Raurāc-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Rauraci, a people of the Upper Rhine (near the modern *Bâle*).

re, red, an inseparable particle used in composition, again, back.

rēbellī-o, -ōnis, F., renewal of war, uprising; rēbellione facta, by a renewal of the war (c. iv, 30).

rēbell-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., renew the war.

rē-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., go back, withdraw.

rēcēn-s, -tis, adj., fresh, late, recent.

rēcēp-tus, -tūs, M., retreat; ex-

**peditus receptus**, a convenient retreat (c. iv, 33).

**rē-cīpio**, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., take back, recover, win; in *fidem recipere*, to take under one's protection (N. T. 8), or to receive as a pledge of faith (c. iv, 22); *se recipere*, to retreat (c. iv, 2); *se a fuga recipere*, to recover from the flight (c. iv, 27); in *deditionem recipere*, to admit to a surrender.

**rē-cīt-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., read aloud.

**rē-clīno**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., make to lean.

**rē-cōrd-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., recall to mind.

**rectē**, adv., rightly.

**rect-us**, -a, -um, adj., straight, right.

**rē-cūs-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., refuse, decline, deny; often followed by *quin* or *quominus* (p. 294, 6, 7).

**rēd-a**, -ae, F., a waggon (with four wheels).

**red-do**, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, v. tr., give back, restore, render; *ferociorem reddere civitatem*, to render the state more warlike (N. T. 2).

**rēd-ēo**, -īre, -īvī (or -īi), -ītum, v. intr., go back, return; *pecunia quae ex metallis redibat*, the money which came in from the mines (N. T. 2).

**rēd-īgo**, -īgēre, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., reduce, render; *multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt*, they reduced them to a state of far less importance and strength (c. iv, 3).

**rēd-īmo**, -īmēre, -ēmī, -emptum, v. tr., buy back, purchase.

**rēd-integr-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., renew, revive.

**rēdī-tus**, -tūs, M., return.

**rē-dūco**, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead back.

**rē-fēro**, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, v. tr., bring, carry back; *gratias referre*, to return thanks; *gratiam referre*, to requite, to repay (N. T. 8); *ad suos referre*, to report to their people (c. iv, 9); *pedem referre*, to retreat (c. iv, 25).

**rē-fert**, *rēferre*, *rētūlit*, v. imper., it concerns, it is of importance (p. 166, 3).

**rē-fīcīo**, -fīcēre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., repair, refit.

**rē-fūgīo**, -fūgēre, -fūgī, -fūgītum, v. tr. and intr., flee back or away, retreat, escape.

**rēgīn-a**, -ae, F., queen.

**rēgī-o**, -ōnis, F., district, country;

*regio est maritima omnis*, the district is wholly maritime (c. v, 14).

**rēgī-us**, -ā, -um, adj., kingly, royal; *domus regia* (or *regia* alone), palace; *classiarii regii*, the marines of the king (i. e., Xerxes: N. T. 3).

**reg-no**, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātum, v. tr. and intr., be king, reign, rule; Xerxes *regnante*, in the reign of Xerxes (N. T. 9).

**reg-num**, -nī, N., kingdom.

**rēg-o**, *rēgēre*, *rexī*, *rectum*, v. tr., rule.

**rē-grēdīor**, -grēdī, -gressus sum, v. dep. intr., retreat, withdraw.

**rēgūl-a**, -ae, F., rule, line of conduct.

**rē-īcīo**, -īcēre, -īēcī, -iectum, v. tr., hurl back, drive back, repulse; *tempestate reici*, to be driven back by the storm (c. v, 5).

**rēlīgī-o**, -ōnis, F., religion, religious scruples; pl. *religiones*, rites of religion; *maiore religione*, with greater sanctity (N. T. 8); *religionibus impediti*, to be hampered by religious scruples (c. v, 6).

**rēlīquī-ae**, -ārum, pl. F., remainder.

**rē-līnquo**, -līnquēre, -līquī, -lictum, v. tr., leave, abandon, leave behind; *relinquebatur ut*, the only course left was that (c. v, 19).

**rēlīqu-us**, -ā, -um, adj., remaining; *nihil reliqui est*, there is nothing left; *in reliquum tempus*, for all time to come.

**rē-mānēo**, -mānēre, -mansī, *mansum*, v. intr., remain, await.

**rēm-ex**, -īgīs, M., a rower.

**rēm-īg-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., row.

**rēmīgr-o**, -āre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., depart, return.

**rē-mīniscor**, *mīniscī*, no perf., v. dep. (with gen., p. 146, 7), remember, recall.

**rē-miss-us**, -ā, -um, adj., relaxed; *remissioribus frigoribus*, since the cold is less intense (c. v, 12).

**rē-mitto**, -mittēre, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send back.

**rē-mollesco**, *mollescēre*, no perf., no sup., v. intr., become soft, become weak.

**rē-mōtus**, -mōtā, -mōtum, adj., remote, far off.

**rē-mōvēo**, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., remove, dismiss, get rid of.

**rē-mus**, -mī, M., oar.

**Rēm-i, -ōrum**, pl. M., the Remi, a powerful people of Gaul, whose capital was Durocortōrum (now *Rheims*).

**Rēm-us, -ī**, M., Remus, brother of Romulus.

**rē-nōv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., renew.

**rē-nuntī-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., bring back word, report.

**rēor, rēri, rātus sum**, v. dep., think.

**rē-pello, -pellēre, -pūli, -pulsum**, v. tr., drive back, repulse.

**rēpente**, adv., suddenly.

**rēpentino**, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.

**rēpentin-us, -ā, -um**, adj., sudden, unexpected, hasty.

**rēpēr-īo, -īre, -ī** (or *reppēri*), -tum, v. tr., discover, find, ascertain.

**rē-pēto, -pētēre, -pētivī** (or *pētī*), -pētītum, v. tr., seek again, demand.

**rēpo, rēpēre, repsi, reptum**, v. intr., creep.

**rē-pōno, -pōnēre, pōsūi, pōsitum**, v. tr., deposit; in *aerario* *reponere*, to deposit in the treasury (N. H. 7).

**rē-port-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., carry back.

**rē-prēhendo, -prēhendēre, -prēhendī, -prēhensum**, v. tr., blame, rebuke.

**rē-pūdi-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., reject.

**rē-pug-no, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātum**, v. tr., oppose, resist.

**rēs, rēi**, F., matter, affair (the meaning will depend on the context); *res militaris*, military science; *res novae*, a change in government, a revolution; *res publica*, the state, commonwealth, politics; *res divina*, a sacred rite (N. H. 2); *res frumentaria*, supply of corn (C. iv, 7); his rebus, on these terms (C. iv, 28).

**rē-scindo, -scindēre, -scīdī, -scisum**, v. tr., cut down, destroy.

**rē-scisco, -sciscēre, -scīvī** (or *scī*), -scītum, v. tr., learn.

**rēserv-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., keep, save, preserve.

**rē-sisto, -sistēre, -stītī**, no sup., v. intr., resist, oppose, withstand (with dative, p. 278, 3); *nullo resistente*, without opposition (N. H. 5); *in itinere resistere*, to halt on the march (C. v, 11).

**rē-spīcīo, -spīcēre, -spexī, -specum**, v. tr., look back, regard.

**rē-spondēo, -spondēre, -spondī, -sponsum**, v. tr., reply, answer.

**rē-spons-um, -ī**, N., answer, reply.

**rēs-publicā, rēi-publicae**, F. (for declension, p. 238), state, commonwealth: *republicanum capessere*, to take part in the administration of public affairs (N. T. 1).

**restat, restāre**, no perf., no sup., impers., it remains (p. 182, 4).

**rē-stītūo, -stītūere, -stītūi, -stītutum**, v. tr., rebuild, restore.

**rēte, rētis**, N., net.

**rē-tīnēo, -tīnēre, -tīnūi, -tentum**, v. tr., restrain, detain, keep back.

**rē-trāho, -trāhēre, -traxī, -trac-tum**, v. tr., draw back, save, preserve.

**retro**, adv., back, backwards.

**rē-us, -ī**, M., a party to an action; hence, defendant, prisoner.

**rē-vert-o, -vertēre, -vertī, -ver-sum**, v. tr., turn back, return.

**rēvertor, revertī, reversussum**, v. intr., return.

**rē-vōc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., call back, recall.

**rex, rēgis**, M., king. The term *rēges* was applied to the two highest magistrates of Carthage by the Romans. They were also called *Suffetes*, a word connected with the Hebrew *Shophetim*, "judges." According to Nepos, they were elected annually. In Hannibal's day, they seem to have held no military command, so his election to the office would withdraw him from the army (N. H. 7).

**rhēd-a**, same as *reda* (which see).

**Rhēn-us, -ī**, M., the Rhine.

**Rhō-dān-us, -ī**, M., the Rhine.

**Rhōdī-i, -ōrum**, pl. M., the Rhodians.

**Rhōd-us, -ī**, F., Rhodes, an island off the S. W. coast of Asia Minor.

**ridēo, -ridēre, -risī, -risum**, v. tr. and intr., laugh, laugh at.

**rip-a, -ae**, F., a bank.

**ris-us, -ūs**, M., laughter.

**rīv-us, -ī**, M., brook.

**rōb-ur, -ōris**, N., oak, strength.

**rōbust-us, -ā, -um**, adj., strong, robust.

**rōg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. tr., ask.

**Rōm-a, -ae**, F., Rome.

**Rōmān-us, -ā, -um**, adj., Roman.



**Römān-i, -ōrum**, M. pl., Romans,  
**Rōmūl-us, -ī**, M., Romulus, first  
 king of Rome, and founder of the city.

**rōs-a, -ae**, F., rose.

**ros-trum, -trī**, N., beak; the beak of  
 a vessel's prow, covered with bronze and  
 used as a ram; pl. **rostr-a, -ōrum**,  
 hustings.

**rōt-a, -ae**, F., wheel.

**rūb-er, -ra, -rum**, adj., red;  
**Mare Rubrum**, the Red Sea, which  
 included not only the Red Sea proper,  
 but also the Persian Gulf (N. H. 2).

**rūbīcund-us, -ā, -um**, adj., ruddy.

**Rūf-us, -ī**, M., Rufus, a Roman  
 agnomen; see **Minucius** (1).

**rūm-or, -ōris**, M., report; **rumori-**  
**bus servire**, to be the slave of idle tales  
 (C. iv, 5).

**rūo, rūere, rūi, rūtum**, v. intr.,  
 rush.

**rūp-es, -is**, F., rock, cliff.

**rursus**, adv., back again, anew.

**rursus**: see **rursum**.

**rūs, rūris**, N., country, as opposed  
 to the town or city (**oppidum** or **urbs**);  
 pl. **rura**, country places; **ruri** (locative),  
 in the country; **rure**, from the  
 country; **rūs** (acc.), to the country  
 (p. 85, 3).

## S.

**Sābīn-us, -ī**, M., Sabinus; **Quintus**  
**Titurius Sabinus**, one of Caesar's lieu-  
 tenants in Gaul. He was slain by the  
 treachery of **Ambiorix**, B. c. 54.

**sācell-um, -ī**, N., a small temple,  
 chapel, shrine.

**sāc-er, -ra, -rum**, adj., holy, sacred;  
 as a noun, **sacr-a, -ōrum**, sacred rites,  
 sacrifice.

**sācerdō-s, -tis**, M. or F., priest or  
 priestess.

**sacrāment-um, -ī**, N., the military  
 oath taken by a Roman soldier. The  
 chief obligations were obedience to  
 the commander, loyalty to the country,  
 etc.

**sacrārī-um, -ī**, N., chapel, shrine.

**sacrificī-um, -ī**, N., sacrifice.

**sacrific-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v.  
 tr., sacrifice.

**saepe**, adv. often; **minime saepe**,  
 very seldom; comp. **saeplus**; sup.,  
**saeplissime**.

**saeplēnūmērō**, adv., frequently.

**saev-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum**, v. intr.,  
 be cruel, rage, be furious.

**saev-us, -ā, -um**, adj., cruel, fierce.

**sāgitt-a, -ae**, F., arrow.

**sāgittārī-us, -ī**, M., archer.

**Saguntīn-ī, -ōrum**, pl. M., the  
 inhabitants of **Saguntum**.

**Sagunt-um, -ī**, N., or **Sagunt-us,**  
**-ī**, F., **Saguntum** or **Saguntus** (now *Mur-*  
*vedro*), a town on the east coast of Spain,  
 besieged by **Hannibal**, B. c. 220.

**Sālāmīnī-us, -ā, -um**, of or belong-  
 ing to **Salamis**.

**Sālām-is, -īnis** (Greek acc. **Sālā-**  
**mina**), F., **Salamis**, an island off the  
 coast of **Attica**.

**sal-tus, -tūs**, M., wood, forest,  
 wooded defile.

**sāl-um, -ī**, N., surf (of the sea).

**sāl-us, -ūtis**, F., safety, health.

**sālūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr.,  
 greet, salute.

**sal-vus, -vā, -vum**, adj., safe.

**Sām-us, or -os, -ī**, F., **Samus** or  
**Samos**, an island on the western coast of  
**Asia Minor**.

**sanc-īo, -īre, sanxī, sanctum**, v.  
 tr., render sacred, ratify, confirm.

**sanct-us, -ā, -um**, adj. sacred,  
 solemn.

**sānē**, adv., truly.

**sangu-is, -īnis**, M., blood.

**sānīt-as, -ātis**, F., soundness of  
 mind, good sense.

**sān-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr.,  
 make sound, cure, remedy.

**sān-us, -ā, -um**, adj., sound, healthy;  
**pro sano facere**, to act as a sane man  
 (C. v, 7).

**sāpien-s, -tis**, adj., wise, judicious.

**sāpiēnter**, adv., wisely.

**sāpiēntī-a, -ae**, F., wisdom.

**sāpio, sāpere, sāpivī** (or **sāpī**),  
 no sup., v. tr. and intr., taste, be sensible,  
 understand.

**sarcīn-a, -ae**, F., the kit of a soldier;  
 cf. **impedimenta**, the baggage of the  
 army.

**sarment-um, -ī**, N., twig.

**sātell-es, -ītis**, M. or F., attendant,  
 guard.

**sātis**, adv., enough; used as an indecl.  
 neut. noun: **satis militum**, enough  
 of soldiers (C. v, 2); or as adv. limiting  
 an adj.: **satis magnus**, very large  
 (C. v, 21).

sātis-fāciō, -fācēre, -fēcī, -fac-tum, v. intr. (with dative, p. 278, 5), satisfy; in pass., satisfio.

saucī-us, -ā, -um, adj., wounded.

sax-um, -ī, N., a rock, stone.

scāl-a, -ae, F., ladder.

scando, scandēre, scandī, scan-sum, v. tr., climb.

scāph-a, -ae, F., boat, skiff.

scēlērāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., wicked.

scēl-us, -ēris, N., wickedness, sin.

schōl-a, -ae, F., school.

sciēn-s, -tis, adj., knowing, skillful.

sciētī-a, -ae, F., knowledge, skill.

scīlicet, adv., evidently, certainly, forsooth.

scindo, scindēre, scīdī, scissum, v. tr., cut, tear, destroy.

scīo, scire, scīvī, scitum, v. tr., know.

Scīpī-o, -ōnis, M., Scipio, the *cognomen* of two remarkable men in Roman history: (1) Publius Cornelius Scipio, surnamed Africanus, who defeated Hannibal at Zama, 202 B.C. (2) Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus, called Africanus Minor, who took Carthage and razed it to the ground, B. C. 146.

scīt-um, -ī, N., an enactment, vote, decision.

scrib-a, -ae, M., a writer, clerk.

scribo, scribēre, scripsī, scrip-tum, v. tr., write, compose; *legem scribere*, draw up a law; *multimodis apud plerosque scriptum est*, various accounts have been given in several writers (N. T. 10).

scrip-tor, -tōris, M., writer.

scū-tum, -tī, N., a shield (of oblong shape, while the *clipeus* was round).

se: see *sui* (p. 105, 6).

sē-cerno, -cernēre, -crēvī, -crē-tum, v. tr., separate.

sēc-o, -āre, -ūī, -tum, v. tr., cut.

sēc-rētō, adv., apart, secretly.

sēc-rē-tus, -tā, -tum, adj., separate, secret, private.

sēc-undum, prep. (with acc.), along, next to, according to.

sēc-und-us, -a, -um, adj., following, second, favorable.

sēc-ūr-is, -is, F., axe.

sēc-ius, adv., (comp. of *secus*); *nihilō secius*, less by nothing, nevertheless.

sēc-us, adv., otherwise, differently.

sed, conj., but, yet.

sēdēcim, card. num. adj., sixteen.

sēdēo, sēdēre, sēdī, sessum, v. intr., sit, be encamped, settle.

sēd-es, -is, F., scat, abode, settlement.

sēd-ītī-o, -ōnis, F., dissension, discord.

sēg-es, -ētis, F., crop, harvest.

Segontiāc-ī, -ōrum, M., pl., the Segontiaci, a British tribe belonging to Hampshire.

Segōvā-x, -cis, M., Segovax, one of the petty princes of Kent (c. v, 22).

sēgrēg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., separate, remove.

sē-iungo, -iungēre, -iunxi, -iunc-tum, v. tr., divide, separate.

sell-a, -ae, F., seat, chair.

semel, num. adv., once, once for all; *non semel*, not once, *i.e.* several times; *semel atque iterum*, once and again, repeatedly.

sē-men, -mīnis, N., seed.

sēment-is, -is, F., a sowing.

sēmīt-a, -ae, F., a path.

semper, adv., always.

Semprōnī-us, -ī, M., Sempronius; (1) Tiberius Sempronius Longus, consul 218 B.C., along with Scipio; (2) Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul 215-213, killed in Lucania in 212 B.C.

sēnā-tor, -tōris, M., a senator.

sēnā-tus, -tūs, M., senate.

sēnex-tus, -tūtis, F., old age.

sēn-ex, -is, M., an old man (p. 46).

sēn-ī, -ae, -ā, distrib., num. adj., six each, six a piece.

sēnī-or, -ōris (comp. of *senex*, p. 58, note), older.

sen-sus, -sūs, M., feeling, disposition.

sentent-ia, -iae, F., opinion, decision.

sentīo, sentīre, sensī, sensum, v. tr., think, know, observe.

sē-pār-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., separate.

sēp-ēl-īo, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, bury.

sēp-es, -is, F., hedge.

sēp-īo, -īre, sepsī, septum, v. tr., enclose, surround, encircle.

septem, card. num. adj., seven.

septentrīōn-es, -um, the Seven Stars, the constellation of the Great Bear (Ursa Maior); hence, the North; *vergit*

ad septentriones, it faces the North, has a northern exposure (c. iv, 20).

septim-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., seventh.

septingent-ī, -ae, -ā, card. num. adj., seven hundred.

septuaginta, card. num. adj., seventy.

sēpulchr-um (or sepulcrum), -ī, N., tomb, sepulchre.

Sequān-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Sequani, a people of Gallia Celtica. Their chief town was Vesontio (*Besançon*).

sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtus (or sēcūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., follow, pursue; aestus commutationem secutus, following the turn of the tide (c. v, 8); Caesaris fidem sequī, to be loyal to Caesar (c. v, 20).

ser-mo, -mōnis, M., talk, language, speech, discourse; sermo Latinus, the Latin language.

sēro, sērēre, sēvī, sātum, v. tr., sow, plant.

sēro, sērēre, sērūī, sertum, v. tr., sew, stitch together.

sēro, adv., late, too late.

serpen-s, -tis, F., snake, serpent.

servil-is, -ē, adj., slavish, servile.

Servil-ius, -ī, M., Servilius; Cneius Servilius Geminus who was consul 217 B.C., and slain at Cannae 213 B.C.

serv-īo, -ire, -ivī, -i-um, v. intr., (with dat. p. 278, 3), be a slave to, advance; amicis famaēque serviens, advancing the interests of his friends and his own reputation (N. T. 1); rumoribus servire, to be the slave of idle reports (c. iv, 5).

servi-tus, -tūtis, F., slavery, servitude.

serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., keep, save, preserve; servare ordines to keep the ranks (c. iv, 26).

serv-us, -ī, M., slave.

sese, reduplicated form of se (see sui).

sesterī-us, -ī, M., a sestertius; a coin worth originally 2½ asses, or about five cents.

sēvōc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call aside.

seu : see sive.

sexāgintā, card. num. adj., sixty.

sexcent-ī, -ae, -ā, card. num. adj., six hundred.

sī, conj., if, whether.

sic, adv., thus, in this manner.

siccit-as, -ātis, F., dryness, drought.

sicc-us, -ā, -um, adj., dry.

Sicil-ī-a, -ae, F., Sicily.

sic-ut, adv., so as, just as, as, as if.

sīd-us, -ēris, N., star, constellation.

signific-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., mean.

sign-um, -ī, N., sign, mark; signa militaria, military standards (c. iv, 15).

silēnt-ium, -ī, N., silence.

Silēn-us, -ī, M., Silenus, a Greek historian who was in the camp of Hannibal and wrote a history of his wars.

silv-a, -ae, F., wood, forest.

silvestr-is, -ē, adj., wooded.

simil-is, -ē, adj., like, similar (with dat., p. 277, 2); comp. similior; sup., simillimus (p. 57, 2).

simul, adv., at the same time; simul atque (ac), as soon as (p. 298, 2).

simulacr-um, -ī, N., image, statue.

simulāt-ī-o, -ōnis, F., pretence, feint.

simul-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., pretend (pretend that a thing is what it is not, dissimulo, pretend that a thing is not what it is).

sin, conj., but if.

sine, prep. (with abl.), without.

singillāt-im, adv., one by one, singly.

singulār-is, -ē, adj., extraordinary.

singul-ī, -ae, -ā, num. distrib. adj., one by one, one each, one apiece.

sīnis-ter, -tra, -trum, adj., left; sub sinistra relictus, behind him on the left (c. v, 8).

sīno, sīnēre, sīvī, sītum, v. tr., allow, permit, let.

siquidem, conj., if only.

sisto, sistere, stitī, stātum, v. intr., place.

sive (seu), conj., or if; sive... sive, or seu... seu, whether... or (p. 191, 5).

sōc-er, -erī, M., father-in-law.

sōciēt-as, -ātis, F., fellowship, league; societatem facere, to form a league (N. T. 8).

sōci-us, -ī, M., companion, ally, associate.

Sōcrāt-ēs, -is, M., Socrates, the father of Greek philosophy, and the instructor of Plato, Xenophon, Alcibiades and other noted Athenians (469-399 B. C.).

sōl, sōlis, M., sun; sose oriente, solis ortu, at sunrise; sole occi-

dente, solis occasu, at sunset; ad solis occasum, to the West.

sōlēo, sōlēre, sōlītus sum, v. intr., semi-dep., to be accustomed, be wont.

sōlītūd-o, -īnis, F., solitude, desert, loneliness.

sollicit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., stir up, incite.

sōl-um, I, N., ground,

sōlum, adv., alone, only, merely.

sōl-us, -a, -um, adj. (for declension, p. 26, 1), alone, only, single.

solvo, solvēre, solvī, sōlūtum, v. tr., loose, unbind; solvere epistolam, to open a letter (N. H. 11); solvere navem, or naves, to set sail (c. iv, 22); naves solverunt, scil. funes, the ships set sail (c. iv, 28).

sōnīt-us, -ūs, M., a sound.

sōr-or, -ōris, F., a sister.

sor-s, -tis, F., lot, fate.

Sosīl-us, -ī, M., Sosilus, a Spartan who instructed Hannibal in Greek and also wrote a history of his campaigns.

spātī-um, -ī, N., space, time; longo spatio, for a long distance (c. iv, 10).

spēcī-es, -ēī, F. (gen. and dat. pl. not found), show, appearance, form, view.

spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., look, observe; ad orientem solem spectat, it faces the East (c. v, 13).

spēcūlā-tor, -tōris, M., scout, spy.

spēcūlātorī-us, -ā, -um, adj., scouting, spying; navigia speculatoria, despatch boats, rowed with a single bank of oars, generally ten in number, on each side, and employed for reconnoitering purposes.

spēcūl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., watch.

spēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. (with fut. inf., p. 110, 1), hope, expect.

spēs, spēī (gen. and dat. pl., rare), F., hope; in spem venire, to have hopes, to entertain hopes.

spīrīt-us, -ūs, M., breath, air, pride.

splend-ēo, -ēre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., shine.

spōlī-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., strip, spoil, plunder.

spōlī-um, -ī, N., spoil, booty.

sponte, of one's own accord; suā sponte, of one's own accord.

stābilit-as, -ātis, F., firmness, steadiness.

stag-num, -nī, N., pool, pond.

stātīm, adv., instantly, at once, immediately.

stātī-o, -ōnis, F., outpost, picket, guard; in statione esse, to be on guard (c. iv, 32) = in stationibus esse (c. v, 15); in stationem succedere, to take their place on guard (c. iv, 32).

stāt-ūo, -ūēre, -ūī, -ūtum, v. tr., place, determine, resolve.

stātūr-a, -ae, F., height, size.

stell-a, -ae, F., star.

stipendi-um, -ī, N., pay, tax, tribute.

sto, stāre, stētī, stātum, v. intr., stand; cost (p. 150).

strēpit-us, -ūs, M., noise, din.

strūo, strūēre, struxī, struct-um, v. tr., build.

stūd-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, no sup., v. intr. (with dat., p. 105, 9), be eager about, aim at; novis rebus studēre, to aim at a change in the government (c. iv, 15).

stūdīōsē, adv., eagerly, zealously.

stūdī-um, -ī, N., zeal, devotion.

stultē, adv., foolishly.

stultitī-a, -ae, F., foolishness.

stult-us, -ā, -um, adj., foolish.

suādēo, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, v. intr., recommend, advise (with dat., p. 105, 9).

sub, prep. (with acc. and abl., p. 222, 2), beneath, under, near, just before, at the foot of; sub sinistra, on the left (c. v, 8); sub bruma, at the time of the winter solstice (c. v, 13).

sub-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-tum, v. tr., draw up on shore; navem subducere, to beach a ship (c. v, 11).

subductī-o, -ōnis, F., drawing up on shore, beaching a vessel.

sūb-ēo, -īre, -ivī (or -īī), -ītum, v. tr., come up, approach, enter; suffer.

sub-fōdīo, -fōdēre, -fōdī, -fos-sum, v. tr., stab from beneath.

sub-īcīo, -īcēre, -īcī, -iectum, v. tr., place near, expose; hiemi navigationem subicere, to expose his voyage to the winter, i.e., to run the risk of sailing in winter (c. iv, 36).

sub-īect-us, -ā, -um (perf. part. pass. of subicere), adj., adjacent, near; insulae subiectae, islands lying near (c. v, 12).

sūb-īgo, -īgēre, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., subdue, conquer.

sūbītō, adv., suddenly, quickly.

sūbīt-us, -ā, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

sub-lēv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., relieve.

sub-mīnistr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., supply, provide.

sub-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mīs-sum, v. tr., send secretly.

sub-mōvēō, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mō-tum, v. tr., dislodge, draw off.

sūb-ōies, -ōlis, F., posterity, race.

sub-rūo, -rūere, -rūī, -rūtum, v. tr., undermine.

sub-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus (or -sēcūūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., follow closely, follow.

sub-sīdī-um, -ī, N., auxiliary troops; reserve, aid; ad omnes casus subsidia componere, to make provision for all emergencies (c. iv, 31).

sub-sisto, -sistēre, -stīti, no sup., v. intr., halt, make a stand; neque ancorae funēsque subsistunt, neither the anchors nor the cables hold out (c. v, 10).

sub-sum, -esse, -fūī, v. intr., be at the bottom; dolus subest, there is deceit at the bottom (N. T, 4); aequinoctium subest, the equinox is at hand (c. v, 23).

subter, prep. (with acc. and abl., p. 222, 2), below, beneath, underneath, close by.

sub-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ven-tum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, 3), come to one's aid, help.

suc-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -ces-sum, v. intr., approach, take the place of; ad alteram partem Ubii succedunt, the Ubii border on them on one side (c. iv, 3); ad stationem succedere, to take their place on guard (c. iv, 32).

suc-cendo, -cendēre, -cendī, -censum, v. tr., kindle.

suc-censēo, -censēre, -censūī, -censum, v. intr., be angry with (dat.).

suc-cido, -cidēre, -cidī, -cīsum, v. tr., cut down.

suc-cumbo, -cumbēre, -cūbūī, -cūbītum, v. intr. (with dat.), submit to, bow the knee to.

suc-curro, -currēre, -currī, -cur-sum, v. intr. (with dat., p. 278, 3), help, aid.

sūd-es, -is, F., stake.

sūd-or, -ōris, M., sweat.

Suēb-ī, -ōrum, M., pl., the Suebi, a populous tribe of Germany consisting of several smaller tribes. The name still exists in the modern Suabia.

suf-fēro, -ferre, sustūlī, sub-lātum, v. tr., bear, endure.

suf-fīcīo, -fīcēre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., to elect in place of one deceased; consul suffectus, one elected consul to serve out the unexpired time of a consul who had died in office.

suf-frāgī-um, -ī, N., vote; testularum suffragiis, by the votes of the tiles, *i.e.*, by ostracism (N. T. 8).

Sugambr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Sugambri, a German tribe in Caesar's time residing in the mountainous district of Westphalia.

sūī, reflex. pro., of himself, herself, itself (p. 105, 6).

Sull-a, -ae, M., Sulla; Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great dictator, supporter of the aristocracy, as his opponent Marius was of the democracy. He lived B.C. 138 to 78 B.C.

Sulm-o, -ōnis, M., Sulmo, a town N. E. of Rome, the birthplace of Ovid, the Latin poet.

Sulpīcī-us, -ī, M., Sulpicius: (1) Publius Sulpicius Galba, consul 211 B.C., 200 B.C. (2) Sulpicius Blitho, a Roman historian (N. H. 13). (3) Publius Sulpicius Rufus, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul (c. iv, 22).

sum, esse, fūī, v. intr., (p. 261), be.

summ-a, -ae, F., total, whole; general administration, control; summae imperii praesae, to hold the supreme command (N. T. 4); summam imperii ad eum deferre, to confer on him the supreme command (N. H. 3); de summa imperii dimicare, to fight for supremacy (N. H. 8); summā imperii bellique administrandi permissā, the supreme command in conducting the war being entrusted (c. v, 11).

summoveo: see submoveo.

sum-mus, -mā, -mum, adj., highest, greatest, very great, chief (superl. of superus); summus mons, the top of the mountain; summa amphora, the top of a jar (N. H. 9); summa res, a most important matter (c. iv, 5).

**sūmo, sūmēre, sumpsi, sump-  
tum, v. tr., take, assume; poenas  
sumere, to exact a penalty.**

**sumptuos-us, -ā, -um, adj., costly.**

**sump-tus, -tūs, M., expense.**

**super, prep. (with acc. and abl., p.  
222, 2), above.**

**sūperbē, adv., proudly, haughtily.**

**sūperb-us, -ā, -um, adj., proud,  
haughty.**

**sūpērīor, -is (comp. of superus),  
higher, previous; nocte superiore,  
on the previous night; superiore  
aestate, in the preceding summer (c.  
iv, 21); in loca superiora, up the  
country (c. v, 8); locus superior, a  
height (c. v, 9).**

**sūpēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,  
conquer, defeat, surpass; Euboeam  
superare, to sail round Euboea (N. T. 3).**

**superstīti-o, -ōnis, F., superstition.**

**sūper-sum, -esse, -fūi, v. intr.,  
remain, survive; neque multum  
aestatis superest, and not much of  
the summer is left (c. v, 22).**

**sūpēr-us, -ā, -um, adj., high,  
conquer, superior; sup., supremus,  
or summus); see superior.**

**suppell-ex, -ectilis, F., furniture.**

**sup-plex, -plicis, M. or F., sup-  
pliant.**

**supplicāti-o, -ōnis, F., thanks-  
giving.**

**suppliciter, adv., humbly, sup-  
pliantly.**

**supplicī-um, -ī, N., punishment,  
execution.**

**suprā, prep. (with acc.), and adv.,  
above, over.**

**sus, sūs, M. or F., pig.**

**sus cīpiō, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cep-  
tum, v. tr., undertake.**

**suspīci-o, -ōnis, F., distrust, sus-  
picion; in suspicionem venire, to  
be suspected; in suspicionem regi  
adducere, to bring under the sus-  
picion of the king (N. H. 2).**

**sus-pīciō, suspīcēre, suspexī,  
suspectum, v. tr., suspect.**

**suspīc-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr.  
dep., suspect, distrust.**

**sus-tīnēō, -tīnēre, -tīnūi, -ten-  
tum, v. t., bear, check, withstand.**

**sū-us, -ā, -um, adj. pro., his, her, its,  
their.**

**Syrācūs-ae, -ārum, pl. F., Syracuse,  
a city on the east coast of Sicily.**

**Syrācūsān-us, -ā, -um, adj., of or  
belonging to Syracuse, Syracusan.**

**Syrī-a, -ae, F., Syria.**

## T.

**T. = Titus, a Roman praenomen;  
see cognomen.**

**tābellārī-us, -ī, M., a letter carrier,  
messenger.**

**tābernācūl-um, -ī, N., tent.**

**tābūl-a, -ae, F., tablet.**

**tāc-ēō, -ēre, -ūi, -ītum, v. tr. and  
intr., be silent; pass over in silence.**

**tācīt-us, -ā, -um, adj., silent.**

**taed-et, -ēre, ūit (taesum est),  
impers., it disgusts, wearies; me libri  
taedet, I am disgusted with the book  
(p. 165).**

**tālē-a, -ae, F., bar; taleae ferreae,  
iron bars (c. v. 12).**

**tālent-um, -ī, N., talent; a Greek  
silver talent is variously estimated at  
£235 or £243 15s. sterling, from \$1,100 to  
\$1,200; a gold talent was ten times this  
value.**

**tāl-is, -ē, adj., such.**

**tam, adv., so (before adverbs and ad-  
jectives); tam...quam, as much...as  
(H. N. 10).**

**tamdīū, adv., so long.**

**tāmen, adv., yet, still, for all that,  
however, nevertheless.**

**Tāmēs-is, -is (acc. Tamesim), M.,  
the Thames.**

**tāmetsi, adv., although.**

**Tamphīlus, -ī, M., Tamphilus; see  
Baebius.**

**tandem, adv., at length, finally; in  
questions, pray? now? as quis tau-  
dem? who, pray?**

**tango, tangēre, tētēgī, tactum,  
v. tr., touch, border on.**

**tanto, adv. of comparison, by so  
much.**

**tantōpēre, adv., vehemently.**

**tantūl-us, -ā, -um, adj., so very  
small, so slight, so trifling; has tan-  
tularum rerum occupationes,  
this business consisting of such trifles  
(c. iv, 22).**

**tantum, adv., only, so much, so far,  
merely.**

**tant-us, -ā, -um, adj., so great, so  
large, such.**

**tardē, adv., slowly.**

tard-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., check, delay, impede, hinder.

tard-us, -ā, -um, adj., slow.

Tarquīnī-us, -ī, M., Tarquin, a name given to two of the Roman kings: (1) Tarquinius Priscus (Tarquin the First), who reigned 616 B.C. to 578 B.C.; (2) Tarquinius Superbus (Tarquin, the Proud), who reigned 534 B.C. to 510 B.C. Under the last king the Romans abolished kingly rule.

taur-us, -ī, M., bull.

Taximāgūl-us, -ī, M., Taximagulus, one of the petty kings of Kent (c. v, 22).

Tectōsāg-es, -um, M., the Tectosages, a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the Roman province of Gaul. Their capital was Tolōsa (now *Toulouse*).

tect-um, -ī, N., house.

tēgīment-um, -ī, N., covering.

tēgo, tēgēre, texī, tectum, v. tr., cover, protect.

tēl-um, -ī, N., weapon, dart.

tēmērārī-us, -ā, -um, adj., rash, indiscreet.

tēmēre, adv., at random, without a purpose (c. iv, 20).

tēmērīt-as, -ātis, F., rashness.

tēm-o, -ōnis, M., pole (of a chariot).

tempērāntī-a, -ae, F., self-control, moderation.

tempērāt-us, -ā, -um, adj., temperate, mild; *loca sunt temperatiora*, the climate is milder (c. v, 12).

tempēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., with acc., rule, manage; with dat., restrain.

tempe-tas, -tātis, F., weather, storm; *reici tempestate*, to be driven back by a storm (c. v, 5).

tem-plum, -plī, N., temple.

tempt-o (or tent-o), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., try, attempt, attack.

tem-pus, -pōris, N., time, season, occasion; in *reliquum tempus*, for the future; *omni tempore*, always; *tempus ducere*, to protract the time (N. T. 7); *annuum tempus*, a year's time (N. T. 9); *tempore dato*, at an appointed time (N. H. 2); *ad tempus*, at a moment's notice (c. iv, 23); *pro tempore et pro re*, suited to the time and conditions (c. v, 8).

tēn-ax, -ācis, adj., holding fast, tenacious.

Tenctēr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Tenceteri, a German tribe on the Rhine, who

crossed the river along with the Usipetes, and were defeated by the Romans. They occupied the districts of Utrecht and Guelderland of Holland.

tendo, tendēre, tētēndī, tētum (or tenisum), v. tr., stretch, extend.

tēn-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, -tum, v. tr., hold, possess; *navem tenere in ancoris*, to keep a ship at anchor (N. T. 8); *cursum tenere*, to hold on its course (c. iv, 28).

tēn-er, -ērā, -ērum, adj., tender.

tento: see *tempto*.

tēnū-is, -ē, adj., thin, weak.

tēnus, prep. (with abl. or gen.), up to, as far as; usually after the word it governs; *capite tenus*, up to the head; *ore tenus*, up to the lips.

ter, num. adv., thrice.

Tērētī-us, -ī, M., Terentius; Cajus Terentius Varro, consul along with Lucius Aemilius Paulus in 216 B.C., when the unfortunate battle of Cannae was fought against the wish of Paulus, who was slain. Varro escaped with a few horse.

tēr-es, -ētis, adj., smooth.

ter-gum, -gī, N., back; *a tergo*, in the rear; *post tergum*, behind the back; *terga vertere*, to flee.

ter-nī, -nae, -nā, distrib. num. adj., three each, three apiece.

tēro, tērēre, trīvī, trītum, v. tr., wear.

terr-a, -ae, F., land, earth, country.

terr-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, -itum, v. tr., frighten, terrify, alarm.

terrestr-is, -ē, adj., of or belonging to land; *exercitus terrestris*, land army, opposed to *exercitus navalis*, sea forces.

terrīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., terrify, frighten.

terr-or, -ōris, M., fear, dread.

tertīo, num. adv., in the third place.

tertīum, for the third time.

terti-us, -ā, -um, num. ord. adj., third.

test-a, -ae, F., shell; see note on Nepos, Them., Chap. 8.

testāment-um, -ī, N., will, testament.

testīmōnī-um, -ī, N., proof, testimony.

test-is, -is, M., witness.

test-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., witness, assert.

**testūd-o, -inis, F.**, a tortoise, a covering formed by the shields of the soldiers held above their heads so as to ward off the weapons hurled by the enemy; so called from the fancied resemblance to a tortoise shell. The term was also applied to the different kinds of sheds under which the soldiers worked when attacking a town.

**testūl-a, -ae, F.**, tile, piece of pottery; *suffragiis testularum*, by the votes of the tiles, *i.e.*, by ostracism (N. T. 8).

**Teutōn-es, -um and Teutōn-ī, -ōrum, pl. M.**, the Teutons, a people of Germany.

**Thēmístocł-es, -is or -ī, M.**, Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian statesman who lived 514 B.C. to 449 B.C.

**Thermōpýl-ae, -ārum, pl. F.**, Thermopylae, a celebrated pass in Greece near the Malia Gulf, between Thessaly and Locris. Here Leonidas and his Spartan band fell 480 B.C. It obtained the name "Hot Gates," from the warm sulphur springs near it.

**Thucýdíd-ēs, -is, M.**, Thucydides, a Greek historian who wrote an account of the Peloponnesian War down to 411 B.C. He lived 471 B.C. to 401 B.C.

**Tībēr-is, -is (acc., Tiberim; abl. Tiberi), M.**, the Tiber, the river of Rome.

**Tībērī-us, -ī, M.**, Tiberius: see *Sempronius*.

**tign-um, -ī, N.**, beam, log.

**tīm-ō, -ēre, -ūī, no sup., v. tr. and intr.**, fear, be afraid.

**timidē, adv.**, fearfully, timidly.

**timid-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, fearful, afraid, timid.

**tīm-or, -ōris, M.**, fear, dread.

**Titūrī-us, -ī, M.**, Titurius: see *Sabinus*.

**Tit-us, -ī, M.**, Titus: see *Labienus, Gracchus*.

**tōg-a, -ae, F.**, gown. The toga was the distinguishing dress of a Roman citizen.

**tōlēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, bear, support.

**tollo, tollere, sustūlī, sublātum, v. tr.**, lift, raise, carry away, destroy: *ancoram tollere*, to weigh anchor (c. iv, 23).

**torment-um, -ī, N.**, military engine for throwing missiles against the enemy.

**torrē-o, torrēre, torrūī, tostum, v. tr.**, scorch, burn.

**tot, indecl. adj.**, so many; *tot...quot*, as many as.

**tōtīdem, indecl. adj.**, just as many.

**tōt-us, -ā, -um (p. 26), adj.**, whole, all, entire; often with the adverbial force of wholly, entirely; *totum se dēdīdit republicae*, he devoted himself wholly to the interests of the state (N. T. 1).

**trab-s, trāb-is, F.**, beam, timber.

**trād-o, -ēre, -īdī, -ītum, v. tr.**, hand over, give over, deliver, surrender; hand down to posterity; *traditur*, it is said: *traditum est*, the tradition is.

**trā-dūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, v. tr.**, lead across, transport (p. 277, 8).

**trāho, trāhēre, traxī, tractum, v. tr.**, draw, drag.

**trā-īcīo, -īcere, -īcī, -iectum, v. tr.**, throw across, lead across, pierce (p. 277, 8).

**trā-īect-us, -ūs, M.**, passage, crossing over.

**tranquillī-tas, -ātis, F.**, calm weather; *summa tranquillitas*, a dead calm (c. v, 23).

**trans, prep. (with acc.)**, across, over, on the other side, beyond.

**transduco**: see *traduco*.

**trans-ēo, -īre, -īvī (īī), -ītum, v. tr.**, cross over, cross (p. 277, 7).

**trans-fēro, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum, v. tr.**, bear or carry across: *summam imperii transferre*, to transfer the supreme power (N. A. 2).

**trans-grēdīor, -grēdī, -gressus sum, v. tr.**, pass over, cross (p. 277, 7).

**trans-īgo, -īgere, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr.**, pass through; *tempus transigere*, to pass the time (N. T. 9).

**trans-ītus, -ītūs, M.**, a going or crossing over, passing, crossing.

**trans-mārīn-us, -ā, -um, adj.**, across, or beyond the sea.

**transmiss-us, -ūs, M.**, passage.

**trans-port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**, carry over, transport.

**Transrhēnān-ī, -ōrum, pl. M.**, those living across the Rhine (c. v, 2).

**Trāsīmēn-us, -ī, M.**, *Trasimenus* (now *Lago di Perugia*), a lake in Etruria, where the Romans were defeated by Hannibal, June 23, 217 B.C.

**Trebōnī-us, -ī, M.**, Trebonius; Caius Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

**Trebī-a, -ae, M. or F.**, Trebia, (now *Trebbia*), a river of Gallia Cisalpina. one



of the southern tributaries of the Padus (*Po*), where Hannibal defeated the Romans, 218 B. C.

trĕcent-ī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., three hundred.

trĕdĕcim, card. num. adj., thirteen.

trĕs, triā, card. num. adj., three.

Trĕvīr-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Treviri, a people of Gallia Belgica, who dwell between the Meuse and the Rhine; their capital was Augusta Trevirorum, now *Trèves*.

Tribrōc-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Tribroci, a German people of Gallia Belgica, between Mount Vosges and the Rhine (in modern *Alsace*).

trībūn-us, -ī, M., a commander of a tribe; hence, one of military officers, six in number, attached to each legion.

trībŭ-o, -ĕre, -ī, trībŭtum, v. tr., give, assign, ascribe.

trīb-us, -ūs, M., tribe.

trībŭt-um, -ī, N., tribute, tax.

trīdŭ-um, -ī, N., space of three days; trīduī via, a three days' march (c. iv, 4).

triēnnī-um, -ī, N., space of three years.

trīginta, card. num. adj., thirty.

Trīnobant-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Trinobantes, a people of Britain who occupied Essex and part of Suffolk.

trīpertit-o, adv., in three divisions.

trīplex, plīcis, adj., threefold, triple.

trīquetr-us, -ā, -um, adj., three-cornered, triangular.

trīrēm-is, -is, F., trireme, a vessel with three banks of oars.

tris, num. adv., thrice.

trist-is, -ĕ, adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

tristītī-a, -ae, F., sadness.

Troez-ĕn, -ĕnis (acc. Troezēna), F., Troezen (now *Dumala*), a city in the southern part of Argos in the Peloponnesus.

Trōi-a, -ae, F., Troy.

Trōiān-us, -ā, -um, adj., Trojan.

trōpae-um, -ī, N., trophy, *i. e.*, a memorial or monument of victory; hence victory.

trunc-us, -ī, N., trunk of a tree.

tŭ, tŭī, pl. vos, thou, you (p. 248).

tŭb-a, -ae, F., trumpet (with a straight tube).

tŭĕor, tŭĕrī, tŭtŭs sum, v. dep., preserve, defend, protect.

tum, adv., then.

tŭmult-us, -ūs, M., disturbance, disorder.

tŭmŭl-us, -ī, M., mound.

tunc, adv., then, at that time.

turm-a, -ae, F., a troop of 30 cavalry; the cavalry (*ala*) of the legion was divided into 10 turmae.

turp-is, -ĕ, adj., base, disgraceful.

turpītŭd-o, -īnis, F., baseness, disgrace, dishonor.

turr-is, -is, F., tower.

tŭte, adv., in safety, safely.

tŭt-us, -ā, -um, adj., safe, secure.

tŭ-us, -ā, -um, pro. adj., thy, your.

tŭyrann-is, -īdis, F., absolute power, tyranny.

tŭyrann-us, -ī, M., tyrant.

## U.

ŭb-er, -ĕris, N., teat, udder, breast.

ŭb-er, -ĕris, adj., rich, fruitful.

ŭbi, adv., where, when; *ubi prim-um*, as soon as (p. 298, 2).

ŭbī-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., the Ubii, a tribe of western Germany, on the right bank of the Rhine, in the neighborhood of the modern Cologne.

ŭbique, adv., everywhere.

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, v. tr. dep., avenge, punish.

ul-us, -a, -um (p. 132, 3), adj., any.

ultĕr-ior, -ius, comp. adj., further, beyond, more remote; sup., ultimus.

ultīm-us, -ā, -um, adj., farthest, most distant.

ultrā, adv., and prep. (with acc.), beyond, on the other side; *ultra fidem*, beyond belief.

ultrō, adv., of one's own accord; without provocation; *bellum ultro inferre*, to make war without provocation (c. iv, 13).

ult-tus, -tā, -tum, perf. part. of *ulciscor*, having avenged.

umb-ra, -rae, F., shade.

ŭmĕr-us, -ī, M., shoulder, arm.

umquam, adv., ever, at any time.

ŭnā, adv., along with; usually with *cum*; *una cum his legatis*, along with these envoys (c. iv, 26); *unā cum ceteris*, along with the others (c. v, 6).

unde, adv., from which place, whence.

undĕcim, card. num. adj., eleven.

undĕcĭm-us, -ă, -um, ord. num. adj., eleventh.

undiquē, adv., from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.

ūnĭvers-us, -ă, -um, adj., whole, all (in a body).

unquam : see umquam.

ūn-us, -ă, -um (p. 244), card. num. adj., one, alone ; uno tempore, at one and the same time ; omnes ad unum, all to a man ; unus omnino, only one (c. v, 18).

ūnusquisque, ūnăquaeque, ūn-um quidque, indef. adj. pro., each, every.

urbān-us, -ă, -um, adj., of or belonging to the city.

urb-s, -is, F., city ; the city, *i.e.*, Rome.

urgĕo, urgĕre, ursĭ, no sup., v. tr., press.

Usĭpĕt-ēs, -um, pl. M., the Usipetes, a German tribe near the Tencteri, on the lower Rhine, in Utrecht and Guelderland in Holland ; but originally found in Saxony, from which they were driven out by the Suebi. They crossed the Rhine into the borders of the Menapii, in Gaul, but were driven back by Caesar.

urs-us, -i, M., a bear.

usquam, adv., anywhere.

usque, adv., all the way, all the while, until ; usque ad urbem, up to the city ; usque ad meum tempus, up to my day.

ūs-us, -ūs, M., use, experience, practice, advantage ; usu venire, to come by occasion, *i.e.*, to happen (N. II. 12) ; ratio atque usus belli, theory and practice of war, *i.e.*, the systematic practice of war (c. iv, 1) ; magno usui sibi esse, to be of great advantage to him (c. iv, 20) ; ex usu, of advantage (c. v, 6).

ūsus, indecl. noun with est : there is need (p. 166, 2) ; usus est mihi cibo, I have need of food.

ūt (or ūti), conj., as, how, that, in order that (p. 293, 1) ; so that (p. 295, 1) ; though (p. 303, 1, (b)) ; ut...ita, as...so (p. 303, 1).

ut, as ; accidit ut (p. 293, 1).

ut-er, -ra, -rum (p. 27), interrog. pro., which of two ?

uterque, utrăque, utramque, adj. pro., each (of two), both : ex utraque parte, on both sides.

utervis, utrăvis, utrumvis, adj., pro., either of the two you wish.

uti : see ut.

ūtĭl-is, -ĕ, adj., useful, serviceable, fit, profitable.

ūtĭlĭt-as, -ātis, F., usefulness, advantage, service.

ūtĭnam, adv., O ! that (p. 288, 5).

ūtōr, ūtĭ, ūsus sum, v. intr. dep. (with abl. p. 116), use, employ, enjoy ; alacritate uti, to show dash (c. iv, 24).

utpōte, adv., inasmuch as, seeing that.

utrimque, adv., from or on both sides.

utrique, pl. of uterque.

utrobique, adv., on both sides, in each place ; utrobique=et mari et terra (N. H. 10).

utrum, conj., whether ; utrum...an, whether...or ; often not translated in direct questions (p. 287, 5).

ux-or, -ōris, F., wife.

## V.

Văcăl-us, -i, M., the Vacalus (now Waal or Wahal), a branch of the Rhine.

văcătĭ-o, -ōnis, F., freedom, exemption.

văc-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum, v. intr., be unoccupied, lie waste.

văcŭ-us, -ă, -um, adj., empty, vacant.

văd-um, -i, N., ford.

văg-ōr, -ārĭ, -ātus sum, v. intr. dep., wander.

vălen-s, -tis (pres. part. of valeo used as an) adj., powerful.

văl-ĕo, -ĕre, -ŭi, -itum, v. intr., be powerful, strong ; have power or influence ; quo valeret, what it implied (N. T. 2) ; hoc eo valebat, the purpose of this was (N. T. 4) ; longe plurimum valet, is by far the most powerful (c. v, 3) ; quam plurimum valere, to be as powerful as possible (c. v, 4).

vălĕtŭd-o, -ĭnis, F., state of health (good or bad according to context) ; valetudine premi, to be afflicted with bad health (N. H. 4).

văll-is, -is, F., valley.

văll-um, -i, N., rampart, breastwork of a camp.

văll-us, -i, M., stake, palisade.

vări-us, -ă, -um, adj., different, changing.

Varro : see Terentius.

văs, văsĭs (in the sing., 3rd decl. : in

the pl., *vāsa*, -ōrum of the 2nd), N., vessel; *vasa fictilia*, earthenware vessels (N. II. 10).

*vast-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., lay waste, devastate.

*vast-us*, -ā, -um, adj., vast.

*vā-tes*, -tis, M. or F., a soothsayer, prophet, prophetess.

-*vě*, enclitic conjunction, or; giving a choice between two or more things.

*vectig-al*, -ālis, N., tax, toll, revenue.

*vectigāl-is*, -ě, adj., tributary; as a noun; *vectigāl-es*, -ium, pl. M., tributary people.

*vectōrī-us*, -ā, -um, adj., adapted for carrying; *navigium vectorium*, a transport ship.

*věhēmen-s*, -tis, adj., angry, violent.

*věhēmenter*, adv., vigorously, resolutely.

*věhicūl-um*, -ī, N., a carriage.

*věho*, *věhēre*, *vexī*, *vectum*, v. tr., bear, carry, convey; in pass., *vehī*, to sail in a ship (scil. in nave, N. II. 10).

*věl*, conj., or; *vel . . . vel*, either . . . or; with sup., even, indeed; *vel optimus*, the very best.

*vělocit-as*, -ātis, F., swiftness, speed.

*věl-ox*, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid, active.

*věl-um*, -ī, N., sail; *dare vela ventis*, to set sail (N. II. 8).

*vělut*, adv., just as; *velut si*, just as if.

*věnāl-is*, -ě, adj., for sale.

*věnātī-o*, -ōnis, F., hunting; *multum sunt in venationibus*, they are much given to hunting (C. IV, 1).

*věnāt-or*, -ōris, M., hunter.

*ven-do*, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, v. tr., sell, offer for sale; pass., *věněo* (which see).

*věnēnāt-us*, -ā, -um, adj., venomous, poisonous.

*věnēn-um*, -ī, N., poison.

*věn-ēo*, -ire, -ivī (or īī), -itum, v. pass. (see *vendo*), be sold (p. 158, note).

*věnr-or*, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., adore, worship.

*Věnētīc-us*, -ā, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Veneti, a tribe on the west coast of France, north of the Loire, in the vicinity of the bay of Quiberon. Caesar subdued them 57 B.C.

*věnī-a*, -ae, F., favor, forgiveness.

*věniō*, *věnire*, *věnī*, *ventum*, v.

intr., come; in *suspicionem venire regi*, to be suspected by the king.

*ventit-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., visit, keep coming; *multum ad eos mercatores ventitant*, merchants frequently visit them (C. IV, 3).

*vent-us*, -ī, M., wind; *dare vela ventis*, to set sail (N. II. 8).

*Venusī-a*, -ae, F., Venusia (now *Venosa*), a town on the borders of Apulia and Lucania.

*vēr*, *vēris*, N., spring; *primo vere*, at the beginning of spring; *extremo vere*, at the end of spring.

(*ver-ber*), *verbēris* (nom. dat. acc. sing., not found), N., stroke, blow.

*ver-bum*, -bī, N., word; in pl., conversation; *dare verba*, to give empty words, hence, to deceive (N. II. 5); *his verbis*, on these terms (N. T. 10).

*vērē*, adv., truly, in truth (comp., *verius*; sup., *verissime*); *verissime iudicabat*, he formed the most correct judgment (N. T. 1).

*věrēcund-us*, -ā, -um, adj., modest.

*věr-ēor*, -ērī, -itus sum, v. tr., dep., fear, dread; *navibus veritus*, fearing for the safety of the ships (C. V, 9).

*vergo*, *vergēre*, no perf., no sup., v. intr., incline, slope; *ad septentriones vergit*, it has a northerly slope (C. IV, 20).

*věrō*, adv., in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, indeed.

*Verr-es*, -is, M., Verres, a notorious proconsul of Sicily, impeached by Cicero for plundering this province.

*vers-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., turn often, change.

*vers-or*, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr., dwell in, be occupied with, engaged in; *multis in privatis iudiciis versari*, to be often employed in private suits (N. T. 1); *tuto versari*, to dwell in safety (N. T. 8).

*vers-us*, -ūs, M., line, verse.

*verto*, *vertēre*, *verti*, *versum*, v. tr., turn, change; *terga vertere*, to turn their backs, flee.

*vertor*, *verti*, *versus sum*, v. intr. dep., turn, change.

*věr-us*, -ā, -um, adj., true.

*vescor*, *vescī*, no perf. or sup., intr. dep. (with abl., p. 116), feed, live upon.

*ves-per*, -pēris (or -perī), M., evening; *vespere*, or *vesperi*, in the evening.

*Vest-a*, -ae, F., Vesta, the Roman goddess of the hearth and home.

vest-er, -ra, -rum, adj. pro., your, yours.

vestigī-um, -ī, N., foot track, trace, mark; eodem vestigio, in the same spot, without moving (c. iv, 2); in vestigio, at once, promptly (c. iv, 5).

vestment-um, -ī, N., garment.

vest-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, v. tr., clothe, dress; pellibus vestiri, to clothe oneself in skins (c. v, 14).

vest-is, -is, F., dress.

vestit-us, -ūs, M., clothing, dress.

vētērān-us, -ā, -um, adj., old; as a noun, vētērān-ī, -ōrum, pl. M., veteran troops (scil. milites).

vēt-o, -āre, -ūī, -ītum, v. tr., forbid, prevent.

vēt-us, -ēris, adj., old, ancient; no comp.; sup., veterrimus.

vexill-um, -ī, N., flag, standard.

vex-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., harass, plunder, waste.

vī-a, -ae, F., way, road, journey; tridui via, a journey of three days (c. iv, 4).

vīā-tor, -tōris, M., traveller.

vīcēn-ī, -ae, -ā, distrib. num. adj., twenty each.

vīcēsīm-us, -ā, -um, ord. num. adj., twentieth.

vīcēs, num. adv., twenty times.

vicinī-t-as, -ātis, F., neighborhood.

vicin-us, -ī, M., neighbor.

vīcis (genitive), vīcem, vīcē, F. (no nom. sing.), change; in vicem, in turn (c. iv, 1).

victīm-a, -ae, F., sacrifice, victim.

vic-tor, -tōris, M., victor, conqueror; as an adj., victorious.

victōrī-a, ae, F., victory.

vic-tus, -tūs, M., living, food.

vīc-us, -ī, M., village, hamlet.

vidēlicet, adv., manifestly, of course, forsooth.

vidēo, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, v. tr.; see vidēor, vidērī, vīsus sum, intr. dep., seem, appear.

vīdū-a, -ae, F., widow.

vīgēo, vīgēre, no perf., no sup., be vigorous, thrive, flourish.

vīgīlī-a, -ae, F., watch, guard. The Romans had four night watches: prima vigilia, from 6 p.m. to 9 p.m.; secundā vigilia, from 9 p.m. to 12 p.m.; tertia vigilia, from 12 p.m. to 3 a.m.; quartā vigilia, from 3 a.m. to 6 a.m.; secundā

inita vigilia, at the beginning of the second watch (c. v, 23).

vīginti, card. num. adj., twenty.

vil-la, -lae, F., a country house, villa.

vī-men, -mīnis, N., twig, osier.

vinc-īo, -īre, vīxi, vīctum, v. tr., bind.

vinco, vincēre, vīcī, vīctum, v. tr., conquer.

vīncūl-um, -ī, N., chain; in vincula conicere, throw into prison.

vīdic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., claim, set free, punish.

vīnē-a, -ae, F., a shed; a movable shed with sloping roof of planks and sides of wickerwork and covered over with hides. It was usually 8 feet high and 16 feet long. Under it the soldiers advanced and worked the battering ram.

vīn-um, -ī, N., wine.

vīol-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., violate, injure, harm.

vīr, vīrī, M., man, husband.

virg-a, ae, F., twig.

virg-o, -īnis, F., maiden.

vīrīdīt-as, -ātis, F., greenness, vigor.

vīrīl-is, -ē, adj., manly.

vīr-tus, -tūtis, F., manliness, virtue.

vīs, vīs, F., strength, power (p. 45); vim facere, to offer violence; vi or per vim expugnare, to take by storm; vim sustinere, to withstand an attack (N. II. 11).

vīso, vīsere, vīsī, vīsum, v. tr., go to see, visit.

vī-ta, -tae, F., life.

vītī-um, -ī, N., fault, vice.

vīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., avoid, shun.

vīt-rum, -rī, N., woad; a plant known to botanists as *Isatis tinctoria*, which produced a blue dye. Till the introduction of indigo in the 17th century it was largely cultivated.

vītūpēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., abuse, revile.

vīvo, vīvère, vīxī, vīctum, v. intr., live; liberius vivere, to live a careless life (N. T. 1); lacte et carne vivunt, they live on milk and flesh (c. v, 14).

vīv-us, -ā, -um, adj., alive, living.

vīx, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.

vōc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call, summon.

vōl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fly, hasten.

vōlo, velle, vōlūi, no sup. (irregular verb, p. 147), intr., be willing, wish, desire.

vōlīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., fit about.

vōlū-cer, -cris, -cre, adj., winged.

vōluntāri-us, -ā, -um, adj., willing, voluntary.

vōluntāri-us, -ī, M., a volunteer.

vōlunt-as, ātis, F., willingness, good will; voluntate sua, of his own free will; ad voluntatem, to suit the wishes of (c. iv, 5).

vōlup-tas, -tātis, F., pleasure; animi voluptatisque causā, for recreation and pleasure (c. v, 12).

Vōlūsēn-us, -ī, M., Volusenus; Caius Volusenus Quadratus, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

vōvēo, vōvēre, vōvī, vōtum, v. tr., vow.

vos: see tu (p. 104).

Vōsēg-us, M., the modern *Vosges*, a mountain range in north-eastern France.

vox, vōcis, F., voice; magnā voce, in a loud voice (c. iv, 25).

Vulcān-us, -ī, M., Vulcan, the Fire-god of the Romans.

vulgo, (abl. of vulgus used as an adv., generally, commonly.

vulg-us, -ī, N. (rarely M.). common people, multitude.

vulnēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wound, hurt.

vuln-us, -ēris, N., wound; paucis vulneribus acceptis, with slight loss (c. v, 10).

vulp-es, -is, F., fox.

Vuls-o, -ōnis, M., Vulso; Cneius Manlius Vulso, a Roman consul who had charge of the province of Asia in 189 B.C.

vult-ur, -ūris, M., a vulture.

vult-us, -tūs, M., expression, countenance.

## X.

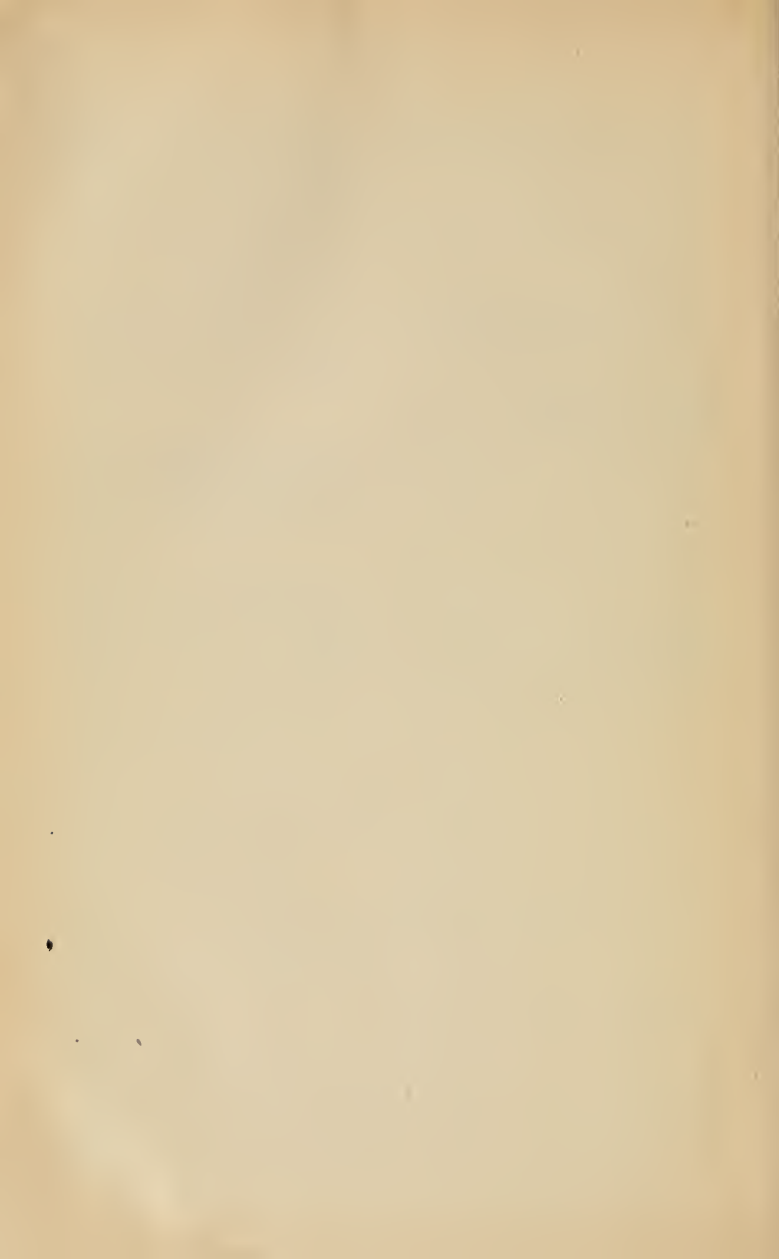
Xēnōph-ōn, -ontis, M., Xenophon, an Athenian, pupil of Socrates, and leader of the Greeks in the expedition of Cyrus.

Xerx-ēs, -is, M., Xerxes, a king of Persia who reigned from 485 B.C. to 465 B.C.

## Z.

Zācynth-us, -ī, F., Zacynthus (now *Zante*), an island in the Ionian Sea, west of Greece.

Zām-a, -ae, F., Zama, a town of Numidia, where Scipio defeated Hannibal, B.C. 202.



# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

## A.

**a**, generally untranslated; when **a** is equivalent to **a certain**, translated by *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*; by *aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* (p. 132), if = **some**; or, if meaning **one**, by *unus* (p. 27).

**abandon**, *mīt-o*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum* (p. 150, 1, note); *dēsēr-o*, *-ēre*, *-ūī*, *desertum*; *rēlinq-uo*, *-ēre*, *rēlinq-ūī*, *rēlictum*.

**abide by**, *I*, *sto* (with *abl.*); **I abide by the decision**, *indicio sto*.

**ability**, *ingēni-um*, *-i*, *N*.

**able**, *adj.*, *pōtens*; **I am able**, *possum*, *posse*, *pōtūī* (p. 261).

**abode**, *domicilium*, *-i*, *N*.

**about**, *prep.*, *circā*, *circiter*, *apud*; *adv.*, *circiter*, *ferē*, *paene*; **about** (in the neighborhood of) **Rome**, *circā Romam*; **about two hundred**, *circiter ducenti*; **about** (=almost), *ferē* with *adj.* and *adv.*, *paene* with *verb.*

**about** (concerning), *prep.*, *de* (p. 222).

**abroad**, *militiae* (p. 86); *foris* or *foras*.

**absence**, *absenti-a*, *-ae*, *F*.; **in my absence**, *me absente* (p. 100, 5).

**absent**, *adj.*, *absens*, *absentis*; **I am a.**, *absum*; *abesse*, *abfūī*; **I am absent from**, *absum ab*.

**abundance**, *cōpi-a*, *-ae*, *F*.

**abuse**, *v.*, *āb-ūtor*, *-ūti*, *-ūsus sum* (p. 283, 10); = **to speak ill of**, *mālē-dico*, *-dicēre*, *-dixī*, *-dictum* (p. 278, 5).

**abuse**, *maledict-um*, *-i*, *N*.

**accept**, *ac-cipio*, *-cipēre*, *-cepī*, *-ceptum*.

**acceptable to**, *grāt-us*, *-a*, *-um* (with *dat.*, p. 277, 2).

**accident**, *cās-us*, *-ūs*, *M*.; **by accident**, *cāsū*.

**accomplish**, *I*, *con-ficō*, *-ficēre*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*; *ef-ficio*, *-ficēre*, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*.

**account (on account of)**, *prep.*, *ob*, *propter* (with *acc.*).

**account, on no**, *nullo modo*.

**account** (=reckoning), *rāti-o*, *-ōnis*, *F*.

**accuse**, *accūs-o*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum* (p. 281, 12).

**accustomed**, *I am*, *sōlēo*, *sōlēre*, *sōlītus sum*.

**acquit**, *ab-solvo*, *-solvēre*, *-solvi*, *-sōlūtum* (p. 281, 12).

**across**, *prep.*, *trans* (with *acc.*); **go across**, *trans-eo*, *-ire*, *-ivī* (*-li*), *-itum* (*acc.*).

**act**, *v.*, *āgo*, *āgēre*, *ēgī*, *actum*; *fācio*, *fācēre*, *fēcī*, *factum*.

**active**, *adj.*, *ālācer*, *ālācris*, *ālācre*; *strenu-us*, *-a*, *-um* (*adj.*).

**address**, *ōrātī-o*, *-ōnis*, *F*.; *v.*, *verba facio*; **I address you**, *apud vos verba facio*.

**admire**, *admīr-or*, *-ārī*, *-ātus sum*.

**admit**, *all*, *inter omnes constat* (p. 162, 3); *conceditur*.

**admonish**, *ad-mōnēo*, *-mōnēre*, *-mōnūī*, *-mōnītum*.

**adorn**, *v.*, *orn-o*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*; *dēcōr-o*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*.

**Adrumētum**, *Adrumēt-um*, *-i*, *N*.

**advance**, *progrēdior*, *-grēdi*, *-gressus sum*; *pro-cēdo*, *-cēdēre*, *-cessī*, *-cessum*.

**advantage**, *commōd-um*, *-i*, *N*.

**advantage, it is of interest**, *rēfert* (p. 166, 3); *prodest* (*great*=*multum*).

**adverse**, *advers-us*, *-a*, *-um* (*adj.*).

**adversity**, *res adversae*.

**advice**, *consili-um*, *-i*, *N*.

**advise**, *mōn-ēo*, *-ēre*, *-ūī*, *-ītum*.

**Aedui**, *Aedū-i*, *-ōrum*, *M*., *pl*.

**Aegina**, *Aegīn-a*, *-ae*, *F*.

**affair**, *res*, *rēī*, *F*.

**afraid**, **be**, *tīm-ēo*, *-ēre*, *-ūī*, *no sup.*; *met-uo*, *-ēre*, *-ūī*, *no sup.*; *vērē-or*, *-ērī*, *-ītus sum*; with *ut* or *ne* and *subjunctive* (p. 185, 3).

**after**, *prep.*, *post* (with *acc.*; p. 222, 4); *adv.*, *post*, *postēā* (p. 82, 3).

**after** (with verbal nouns), *post*+*pf.* part.; **after the founding of the city**, *post urbem conditam*; or use *abl.* *abs.*, or **after that**.

**after that**, *postquam* (p. 201, 5).

**afterwards**, *adv.*, *postea*.

**again**, *adv.*, *rursus*; *iterum* (a second time); **again and again**, *saepe*, *saep-issime*.

against, *contrā* (acc.), *in* (acc.).  
**Agamemnon**, *Agāmēmnōn*, -is, M.  
**age** (time of life), *aet-as*, -ātis, F.  
**age** (old), *sēnect-us*, -ūtis, F.  
**age**, those of his own, *aequāles*  
 -ium, M.  
**age**, a boy two years of, *puer*  
*duos annos natus* (p. 285, 6).  
**agitate**, *perturb-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**ago**, *abhinc*; ten years ago, *ab-*  
*hinc decem annos or annis* (abl., p. 284, 5).  
**agree**, I, *consentio*; **agreed by all**,  
*it is*, *constat inter omnes* (p. 162, 3);  
*convēnit*.  
**aid**, *auxilli-um*, -i, N.; **come to a.**,  
 p. 134, 1; v., *ad-iūvo*, -iūvāre, -iūvi,  
 -iūtum (with acc.); *sub-vēnio*, -vēnire,  
 -vēni, -ventum (with dat.).  
**air**, *āer*, *āeris*, M.  
**alarm**, *pāv-or*, -ōris, M.  
**all**, *omn-is*, -e; *cunct-us*, -a, -um; *uni-*  
*vers-us*, -a, -um; *tot-us*, -a, -um<sup>1</sup>.  
**allow**, I, *sīno*, *sīnere*, *sīvi*, *sītum*; *con-*  
*cēdo*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; I **am**  
**allowed**, *mihī licet* (p. 163, 5).  
**ally**, *sōci-us*<sup>1</sup>, -i, M.  
**almost**, *fēre*, *paene*.  
**alone**, *sōl-us*, -a, -um.  
**along with**, *unā cum*.  
**Alps**, *Alp-ēs*, -ium, F.  
**already**, *iam*, adv.  
**also**, *ētiam* (adv.), *quōque* (adv.);  
*idem* (123, 5).  
**although**, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *licet*,  
*ut* (p. 196, 5-7).  
**always**, *semper*, adv.  
**ambassador**, *légāt-us*, -i, M.  
**ambition**, *ambiti-o*, -ōnis, F.  
**among**, *inter* (prep. with acc.); *apud*  
 (prep. with acc.); *in* (prep. with abl.).  
**amount**, *what*; use *quantum* + gen.  
**ambuscade**, *ambush*, *insidi-ae*,  
 -ārum, F. pl.  
**ancestors**, *maiōr-ēs*, -um.  
**ancient**, *antiqu-us*, -a, -um; *vētus*,  
 -eris; *priscus*<sup>2</sup>-a, -um (adj.).

<sup>1</sup> *Omnis*, all without exception, opposed to *nemo* or *unus*; *cunctus*, a stronger term than *omnis*, "all together"; *universus*, all in a body, opposed to *singuli*; *totus*, the whole, as opposed to a part.

<sup>2</sup> *Antiquus*, old and no longer existing; *vetus*, old and still existing; *priscus*, old-fashioned; *pristinus*, belonging to an earlier age.

**Ancus**, *Anc-us*, -i, M.  
**and**, *et*, -que, *atque*, *ac*.  
**anger**, *ir-a*, -ae, F.  
**angry** (be), *irascor*, *irasci*, *irātus sum*; *suc-censeo*, -censēre, -censūi, -censum (with dat.).  
**animal**, *ānim-al*, -ālis, N.  
**annihilate**, *dēl-ēo*, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum.  
**announce**, *nunti-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**another**, *āll-us*, -a, -ud (p. 26); **one**  
**another**, *inter se* (p. 223).  
**answer**, *respons-um*, -i, N.; v., *re-*  
*spond-ēo*, -ēre, *respondi*, *responsum*.  
**Antonius**, *Antonius*, -i, M.  
**anxious**, *be*, *cūpio*, *cūpēre*, *cupivi*  
 (ii), *cūpītum*.  
**any** (after negatives), *quisquam*, *quid-*  
*quam*; *ull-us*, -a, -um (132, 3); (affirma-  
 tive), *quivis*, *quaevis*, *quidvis*; *quilibet*,  
*quaelibet*, *quodlibet*; *quis*, after *si*, *nisi*,  
*ne*, *num*, *quo*, *quanto*, (p. 188, 6, note).  
**anyone**, p. 132, 3.  
**anywhere**, *usquam*, adv.  
**apiece**, distributive numeral [p. 69, 8,  
 (a)].  
**appeal to**, I, *obtest-or*, -ārī, -ātus  
*sum*; I **appeal to you not to do**  
**this**, *te obtestor ne hoc facias*.  
**appear**, I (seem), *vidēor*, *vidērī*, *vīsus*  
*sum* (p. 289, 6).  
**appear**, I (come in sight), *ap-pāreo*,  
 -pārēre, -pārūi, -pārītum (used as pass. of  
 video).  
**applaud**, I, *plaudo*, *plaudēre*, *plausi*,  
*plausum* (dat.).  
**apple**, *pōm-um*, -i, N.  
**appoint**, *dīco*, *dīcere*, *dixi*, *dictum*; *ap-*  
*point over*, *praeficio*, -ficēre, -fēci,  
 -fectum; I **appoint an officer over**  
**the camp**, *légātum castris* (dat.)  
*praeficio* (p. 278, 6).  
**apprehension**, *mēt-us*, -ūs, M.  
**approach**, *advent-us*, -ūs, M.; *ādīt-us*,  
 -ūs, M.; v., *apprōpinqu-o*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum  
 (with dat., or ad with acc.); *ag-grēdiōr*,  
 -grēdī, -gressus sum; *ād-ēo*, -ire, -ivī (or ii),  
 -itum.  
**approved**, *spectāt-us*, -a, -um; *prob-*  
*bāt-us*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**ardor**, *for*, *stūdī-um*, -i, N. (with  
 gen.).  
**aright**, *recte* (adv.).  
**Arivistus**, *Arivist-us*, -i, M.  
**aristocratic party**, *optīmā-tes*,  
 -tium, M. pl.  
**arise**, *ōriōr*, *ōrīrī*, *ortus sum*.



**arm**, bráchl-um, -i, N.; v., arm-o, -āre, etc.

**armed**, armāt-us, -a, -um; p.p. of **arm**; **light armed**: see next word.

**armor**, troops of light, milites levis armaturae.

**armor-bearer**, armīg-er, -ēri, M.

**arms**, arm-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

**army**, exercit-us, -ūs, M. (in training); agmen, agrīnis, N. (on the march); acies, cēi, F. (in line).

**around**, circā, circum (prep. + acc.).

**arouse**, incīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**arrival**, advent-us, -ūs, M.

**arrive**, ad-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum.

**arrive at**, per-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum (ad with acc.).

**arrow**, sāgitt-a, -ae, F.

**art**, ars, artis, F.

**as** (p. 127, 2); (in place of), pro; **as**.... **so**, ut with ita in the main clause; **as**.... **as**, tam....quam; **such**....**as**, tālis....quālis; **as if**, velut si (195, 3).

**as, as though, as if, tanquam**, quasi (p. 195, 3).

**as** (= while), dum (p. 261, 3).

**as many as**, tot quot.

**as many as possible**, quam plurimī.

**as much as**, tantum quantum.

**as often as**, quoties, cum (204, 4).

**as soon as**, simul ac (or atque), (p. 293, 2).

**ascertain**, cognosco, cognoscere, cognōvi, cognitum.

**ashamed**, be, pūdet, ēre, ūit (or -itum est); **I am ashamed of my folly**, me stultitiae meae pudet (p. 165, 1).

**Asia**, As-ia, -ae, F.

**ask**, **I (you a question)**, te rogo or interrogo; **ex or a te quaero** (quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum).

**ask**, **I (request, beg, you)**, te rogo, oro, (-āre, -āvi, -ātum); **abs te pēto** (pētere, pētivī, pētītum).

**ask for**, **I, posco, poscere, pōposci**.

**assault**, oppugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**assemble**, v.a., convoc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; v.n., con-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum (intr.).

**assembly**, contī-o, -ōnis, F.; convent-us, -ūs, M.; concili-um, -i, N.

**assert** (as a fact), affirmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**assist**, sublēv-ō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (acc.), sub-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum (dat.); ad-iūvo, -iūvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum (acc.).

**at**, ad (prep. with acc.); apud (prep. with acc.); or locative. See p. 85, 3. After verb of motion, say to (p. 85, 1): **come to me at Rome**, me Romam vēni; of time, use abl.

**Athenians**, Athēniens-es, -um, M.

**Athens**, Athēn-ae, -arum, F.

**attack**, v., ag-grēdi-or, -grēdi, -gressus sum; (suddenly), ād-ōrior, -ōri-ri, -ortus sum; (a city), oppugn-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; impet-us, -ūs (on = in + acc.) M.

**attain to**, per-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum (ad).

**attempt**, v., con-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; tempt-o or tent-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; nitor, nīti, nisus or nixus sum; incept-um, -i, N.; conāt-us, -ūs, M. or cōnāt-um, -i, N.

**attribute**, attrib-ūo, -ūere, -ūi, -ūtum; tribūo, tribūere, tribūi, tribūtum.

**authority**, pōtest-as, -ātis, F.; auctorit-as, -ātis, F.

**autumn**, autumn-us, -i, M.

**auxiliaries**, auxili-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

**avarice**, āvāritī-a, -ae, F.

**avenge**, ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum.

**avert from**, **I**, prōhib-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum.

**avoid**, **I**, dē-fūgi-o, -fūgere, -fūgi, -fūgitum (acc.).

**avoid**, **I (a danger)**, vit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**away from**, ā or āb, with abl.

## B.

**backs, to turn their backs in flight**, terga in fugam dare (do, dare, dēdi, dātum); terga ver-to, -tēre, -ti, -sum.

**bad**, māl-us, -a, -um (comp., pēior; sup., pessimus); imprōb-us, -a, -um.

**badly**, mālē; comp., pēius; sup., pessime.

**baggage**, impēdi-ment-a, -ōrum, N. pl.

**bane**, pernīci-es, -ēi, F.

**banish**, **I**, ex civitate pello or expello; in exilium pello (pellere, pēpūli, pulsum).

**banishment**, exili-um, -i, N.

**bank**, rip-a, -ae, F.

**banquet**, epul-um, -i, N. pl., epulae, F. (p. 242).

**barbarian**, barbār-us, -a, -um (adj. and n.).

**barbarous**, crudēl-is, -e (adj.).

**bark**, v., *latr-o*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (of a tree) *cortex, corticis, M., liber, librī, M.*

**base**, *turp-is, -e* (adj.).

**baseness**, *turpitud-o, -inis, F.*

**battle**, *proeli-um, -i, N.*; *pugn-a, -ae, F.*; to begin a battle, *proelium committere*; in battle, in b. array, in *acie*.

**be**, *sum, esse, fūi* (p. 24).

**beam**, *trabs, trābis, F.*

**bear**, *urs-us, -i, M.*; v., *fero, ferre, tūli, lātum*; *port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

**beautiful**, *pulch-er, -ra, -rum* (comp., *pulchrior*; sup., *pulcherrimus*); *amoenus, -a, -um* (of scenery).

**because**, *quod, quia, quoniam* (p. 198); often expressed by part. (p. 220, i).

**become**, *fiō, fiērī, factus sum*.

**becomes**, *it, dēcet, dēcērē, dēcūit* (acc.); est with gen. (p. 124, 1).

**beech**, *fāgus, -i, F.*

**before**, ante (prep. with acc.); conj., *antequam, priusquam* (p. 201, 5); adv., ante, *antēā, antehāc* (p. 82, 3).

**beg**, *I, rōg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*. See ask.

**begin**, *I, in-cipio, -cipere, -cepī, -cep-tum*; *coep-i, -isse*; **begin a battle**, *proelium committere*.

**beginning**, the, *inīti-um, -i, N.*; at the beginning of winter, *primā hieme, inītā hieme*.

**behalf of**, on, pro (prep. with abl.).

**behold**, *aspicio, aspīcere, aspexi aspectum*.

**behind**, post, prep. with acc.

**Belgae**, *Belg-ae, -arum, M. pl.*

**belief**, *opīni-o, -ōnis, F.*

**believe**, *I, crēd-o, -ere, -idī, -itum*, with dat. (p. 105, 9).

**belong**, *per-tīnēo, -tīnēre, -tīnūi, no sup.*; see p. 124, 1; **belonging**: say which belonged.

**beloved**, *cār-us, -a, -um* (with dat.; = dear to).

**beneficial**, *sālūtār-is, -e*; *ūtil-is, -e* (adj.).

**benefit you**, *I, tibi prōsum* (prodesse, *profūi*).

**besiege**, *I* (by blockade), *ob-sīdēo, -sīdēre, -sēdī, -sessum*; (by attack), *op-pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

**best**, p. 57, 4.

**bestow**, *larg-ior, -iri, -itus sum*.

**betake myself to**, *I, me confero ad*.

**betray**, *I, pro-do, -dēre, -didī, -ditum*.

**better**, *melior* (comp. of *bonus*); it would have been better, *satius* or *melius* *fruit*.

**between**, *inter* (acc.).

**beyond**, prep., *ultrā, trans, extrā* (with acc.).

**bid**, *iūbēo, iūbēre, iussī, iussum*.

**bill**, *rōgātī-o, -ōnis, F.*

**bird**, *āv-is, -is, M. or F.*

**bitter**, *acerb-us, -a, -um* (adj.).

**black**, *niger, nīgra, nīgrum*; *āter, ātra, ātrum* (adj.).

**blame**, *culp-a, -ae, F.*; v., *culp-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *vītūpēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

**blessing**, *bōn-um, -i, N.*

**blind**, *cacc-us, -a, -um* (adj.).

**blood**, *sangu-is, -inis, M.*; *crū-or, -ōris, M.*

**bloody**, *crūent-us, -a, -um* (adj.).

**blot out**, *dēl-ēo, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum*.

**boat**, *linter, lintris, F.*

**body**, *corp-us, -ōris, M.*

**body-guard**, *sātell-es, -itis, M.*

**bold**, *audax, audācis* (adj.).

**boldly**, *audāciter* or *audacter*, adv.

**bond**, *vincul-um, -i, N.*

**book**, *liber, librī, M.*

**booty**, *praed-a, -ae, F.*

**born**, *be, nascor, nascī, natus sum*.

**both**, *uterque, utraque, utrumque* (p. 132); *ambo, ambae, ambo* (like duo, 68, 4).

**both . . . and**, et . . . et, que . . . que.

**bound** (in a geographical sense), *contineo, -tīnēre, -tīnūi, -tentum*.

**boundaries**, *fin-es, -ium* (pl.), *M.*

**boy**, *pūer, M.*; from a boy, a *pūero*.

**bow**, *arc-us, -ūs, M.*

**branch**, *rām-us, -i, M.*

**brandish**, *iact-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

**brave**, *fort-is, -e*; **bravely**, *fortiter*.

**bravery**, *fortitūd-o, -inis, F.*

**break**, *frango, frangere, frēgi, fractum*; **b. through**, *per-fringo, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractum*; **b. one's word**, *fidem fallo* (*fallere, fefelli, falsum*).

**bridge**, *pons, pontis, M.*

**briefly**, *brēviter*; **as b. as possible**, *quam brevissime*.

**brigand**, *latr-o, -ōnis, M.*

bright, clār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

bring, I, dūco, dūcere, duxī, ductum (a person); affero, afferre, attūli, allatum (a thing); bring up, erūdīo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; bring back word, rēnuntī-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; bring a person before you, ad te aliquem adducere; bring forward a bill, rogationem fero (ferre, tūli, lātum).

Britain, Britanni-a, -ae, F.

Britons, Britanni-i, -ōrum, M. pl.

broad, lāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

brother, frāter, frātris, M.

Brundisium, Brundisi-um, -i, N.

Brutus, Brut-us, -i, M., one of the conspirators against Caesar.

build, aedific-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

building, aedifici-um, -i, N.

burden, ōnus, ōnūs, N.

burdensome, mōlest-us, -a, -um; grāv-is, -e (adj.).

burn, crēm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; incendio, incendere, incendi, incensum.

bushel, mōdi-us, -i, M.

business (the), rēs, rēi, F.; nēgōtium, -i, N.

but, sed; verum (emphatic); (only), tantum, mōdo; (unless), nisi; (except), praeter (prep. with acc.).

butcher, trūcid-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

buy, ēmo, ēmere, ēmī, emptum.

by (of a person after a passive verb), ā or āb (p. 71, 2); dat. of agent (173, 4); abl. of means (p. 71, 3); per (prep. with acc.), of indir. agent; by day, interdū; by night, noctū.

## C.

Caesar, Caes-ar, -āris, M.

calamity, cālāmīt-as, -ātis, F.

call, vōc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; call together, convōc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

calling (after forbid), use inf.

call out, ēvōc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; call by name, appell-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

calm, tranquill-us, -a, -um (adj.).

calmness, tranquillit-as, -ātis, F.

camp, castra, -ōrum (pl., N.).

can, possum, posse, pōtūi (p. 142); (=may), licet, impers. with a dat. (p. 162, 3; 163, 5); 139 (a), (in deliberative questions).

candid, lib-er, -ēra, -ērum (adj.).

candidate for, I am a, pēt-o, -ēre, -īvī, -ītum.

candidly, libēre, aperte, adv.

Cannae, Cann-ae, -ārum (pl.), F.

cannot, non possum; nēqu-ēo, -īre, -īvī (or II), -ītum.

capital, cāpit, cāpitis, N.

caprice, libid-o, -inis, F.

capture: use take.

care, cūr-a, -ae, F.

careful for, I am, cāveo (cāvēre, cāvī, cautum); I am careful for you, tibi caveo.

carefully, dīlīgenter, adv.

carry (=bear), fero, ferre, tūli, lātum; port-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; carry on war, bellum gēro (gerere, gessi, gestum); carry out, ex-sēquor, -sēqui, -sēcūtus sum; con-ficō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum; carry across, transport-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; carry out of the country, export-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Cassius, Cassi-us, -i, M.

cast, con-iciō, -icēre, -icēi, -iectum; cast away, ab-iciō, -icēre, -icēi, -iectum.

Casticus, Casti-cus, -i, M.

catch, cāpio, cāpēre, cēpi, captum.

cattle (in general), pēc-us, -ōris, N.; (of a single head), pēcus, pēcūdis, F.

cause, caus-a, -ae, F.; v., ef-ficō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum; with ut+subj. for Eng. to (p. 181, 3).

cavalry, ēquīt-es, -um, M. pl.; adj., equest-er, -ris, -re.

cave, antr-um, -i, N.; cāv-um, -i, N.

cease, I, dē-sino, -sīnēre, sivi (sīi), -sītum; de-sisto, -sistēre, -stītī, no sup. (with abl.; p. 158, 2).

Cecrops, Cecrops, Cecrōpis, M.

celebrated, clār-us, -a, -um; insign-is, -e (adj.); the celebrated Cicero, Cicero, vir clarissimus or ille C. (adjs. are not added to proper names).

central, mēdi-us, -a, -um (adj.); a central place, locus medius.

centurion, centūrī-o, -ōnis, M.

century, centūrī-a, -ae, F.

certain (sure), cert-us, -a, -um (adj.).

certain (one), a, quidam, quaedam, quoddam.

chain, catēn-a, -ae, F.; vincūl-um, -i, N.

chance, cās-us, -ūs, M.; fortūn-a, -ae, F.; by chance, forte, cāsū.

change, I, mūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; n., commūtātī-o, -ōnis, F.

character, turn by a dependent clause (p. 181, 1).

character (natural), ingēnī-um, -ī, N.; indōl-es, -is, F.

character (good), virt-us, -ūtis, F.

character (mode of life), mōr-ēs, -um, M., pl.; the highest character, mores optimi.

character, of the same c. as, talis . . . qualis.

characteristic of, it is: see p. 124, 1.

charge (accusation), crīmen, -inis, N.

charge (of troops), impēt-us, M.; make a charge, in-vādo, -vādēre, -vāsī, -vasum; impetum facere (on = in).

charged, I am (with), accūs-or, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 281, 12).

chariot, essūd-um, -ī, N.; curr-us, -ūs, M.

charioteer, essūdārī-us, -ī, M.

check, mōdēr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum (with dative); tempēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dative); coerc-eo, -ēre, -ēī, -itum.

cheer, clām-or, -ōris, M.

cheer, v. a., hort-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

cheerful, hilār-is, -e; ālac-er, -ris, -re (adj.).

cheerfully, fācile, adv.

cherish, tūcōr, tuērī, tūītus sum.

chief, princeps, principis, M. (n. and adj.).

child, pūer, pūērī, M.

children, pueri, M.; libēr-ī, -ōrum, M. pl.

choose, I (like), mihi libet (impers.).

choose, I, ēlīgo, ēlīgēre, ēlēgi, electum; crē-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Cicero, Cīcēr-o, -ōnis, M.

Cimon, Cim-on, -ōnis, M.

circumstances, res, rēi, F.; I yield to circumstances, tempōrī cedo.

citadel, arx, arcis, F.

citizen, civ-is, -is, M. and F.

city, urbs, urbis, F.

civil, civil-is, -ē (adj.).

civilization, hūmānit-as, -ātis, F.

civilized, hūmān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

clamor for, flāgīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.).

class, gēn-us, -ērīs, N.

clear, cert-us, -a, -um; mānifest-us, -a, -um (adj.).

clear, it is, appar-et, -ēre, -uit; manifestum est (p. 109, 1); I clear myself of the charge; me de crimine (or simply crimine) purgo.

clemency, clēmētī-a, -ae, F.

clerk, scrib-a, -ae, M.

client, my, hic (p. 118, 2).

cloak, tōg-a, -ae, F., the military cloak, pālūdāment-um, -ī, N.

close, I, claudo, claudēre, clausi, clausum; close up, inter-clūdo, -clūdēre, clūsi, -clūsus.

close to, prope ad (acc.).

close at hand, prope, iuxtā.

clothe, vesti-o, -ire, -ivī (fī), -itum.

clothing, vestit-us, -ūs, M.; vest-is, -is, F.

cloud, nūb-ēs, -is, F.

coast, ōr-a, -ae, F.; sea coast, ora maritima; lit-us, -ōris, N.

coast along, v., praeter-vēhor, -vēhi, -vectus sum (with acc.).

cohort, cōhor-s, -tis, F.

cold, frīgīd-us, -a, -um (adj.); frīg-us, -ōris, N.

colleague, collēg-a, -ae, M.

collect, compār-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

colony, cōlōnī-a, -ae, F.

column, cōlumn-a, -ae, F.

come, vēnio, vēnire, vēni, ventum; c. away, discēdo, -cēdēre, -cessi, -cessum.

command, n., impērī-um, -ī, N.; impērāt-um, -ī, N.

command, I, impēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dat.); (be at head of), praesum (with dat.).

commander, impērāt-or, -ōris, M.; praefect-us, -ī, M.; dux, dūcis, M.

commence, in-cīpio, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -ceptum; coep-ī, -isse.

commencement, inīti-um, -ī, M.

commit, I (a crime), facinus ad-mitto (-mittēre, -misi, -missum).

common, commūn-is, -e, adj.

commonwealth, respublica, reipublicae, F.

communicate, I (= impart to), comunico, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cum).

companion, sōcī-us, -ī, M.; sōdāl-is, -is, M.; cōm-es, -itīs, M.

company with, in, cum (prep. with abl.).

compare, con-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, col-lātum.

compassion, misēricordi-a, -ae, F.

compel, cōgo, cōgēre, cōgēgi, cōactum.

complain, quēror, quērī, questus sum.

complaint, p. 219, (g).

comrade, commilit-o, -ōnis, M.  
 conceal, cēl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (92, 3).  
 concerning, de (prep. with abl.).  
 concerns, it, pertinet ad (with acc.); p. 166, 3.  
 condemn, condemn-o, -āre, āvī, -ātum (for = gen.).  
 condition (lot), fortūna, -ae, F.; (terms), condici-o, -ōnis, F.  
 conference, I have a, collōquor, lōqui, -lōcūtus sum.  
 confess, fātōr, fātērī, fassus sum, confitēor, -fitērī, -fessus sum.  
 confidence, fidūcia, -ae, F.; fides, -ēī, F.  
 confidence in, I have, confido, -fidēs, -fisis sum; fidem alicui habeo.  
 congratulate, I c. you on this, hęc (acc.), ob hanc rem, de hac re, tibi gratūl-or (-ārī, -ātus sum).  
 conquer, vinco, vincēre, vicī, victum; sūp-er-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 conquered, victus, -a, -um (p.p. of vinco).  
 conqueror, vict-or, -ōris, M.  
 consciousness, sens-us, -ūs, M.; conscienti-a, -ae, F.  
 consent of Caesar, with the, Caesāre volente.  
 consequence, it is of c. to me, meā interest or rēfert (p. 166, 3).  
 consider, I, arbītr-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; (hold, think), habeo, duco.  
 consist of, consist-o, -ēre, -stiti (in + abl.).  
 consolation to me, it is a great, magno solātio mihi est (p. 134, 1).  
 conspiracy, coniūrātī-o, -ōnis, F.  
 conspire, coniūr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 consul, cons-ul, -ūlis, M.  
 consulship, consulāt-us, -ūs; in the c. of Caesar, Caesāre consūle.  
 consult, consūlo, consūlēre, consūlūi, consūltum (with acc.).  
 content(ed), content-us, -ā, -um (with abl.), (p. 233, 9).  
 continent, continēn-s, -tis (supply terra).  
 contrary to, contra, prep. with acc.  
 conversation, serm-ō, -ōnis, M.; I have a conversation with you, tecum collōquor.  
 convoke, convōco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 Corinth, Cōriinth-us, I, F.  
 corn, frument-um, -ī, N.

costs, it, stat (p. 150, 1).  
 cottage, cās-a, -ae, F.  
 council, concili-um, -ī, F.  
 could: see can (p. 163, 5, note).  
 count, I (= I number), nūmēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (= I hold), habeo, -ēre, -ūī, -itum; dūco, dūcere, duxī, ductum.  
 country, one's, pātri-a, -ae, F.  
 country, the (= the state), respubli-ca, reipublicae, F.; civit-as, -ātis, F.  
 country (as distinct from the town), rus, rūris, N.; from the country, rure (abl.); to the country, rus (acc.); in the country, rūri (locative; p. 86).  
 countryman, civ-īs, -is, M.  
 courage, virt-us, -ūtis, F.; fortītūd-o, -inis, F.  
 course, I take this, haec facio.  
 court, aul-a, -ae, F.; iūdicī-um, -ī, N.  
 cover, tēgo, tēgere, texi, tectum.  
 coward, cowardly, ignāv-us, -a, -um; timīd-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 cowardice, ignāvī-a, -ae, F.  
 crave for, I, dēsīdēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 credible, it is scarcely, vix credi potest.  
 credit, fām-a, -ae, F.  
 crime, faci-n-us, -ōris, N.; scēl-us, -ēris, N.  
 criminal, scēlērāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 crisis, discrim-en, -inis, N.; temp-us, -ōris, N.  
 cross, I, transēo, -ire, -ivi (or -īī), -itum (acc.).  
 crowd, multītūd-o, -inis, F.; turb-a, -ae, F.; v., circum-fundo, -fundere, -fūdi, -fusum (se).  
 crown, cōrōn-a, -ae, F.; (= a kingdom), regnum, -ī, N.  
 cruel, crūdēl-is, -e; saev-us, -a, -um, (adj.).  
 cruelly, crudēlīter; saeve, adv.  
 cruelty, crudēlīt-as, -ātis, F.; saevī-tia, -ae, F.  
 cry, n., clām-or, -ōris, M.; v., clām-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 cultivate, cōlo, cōlēre, cōlūi, cultum.  
 culture, cult-us, -ūs, M.; humānīt-as, -ātis, F.  
 Cures, Cūr-ēs, -ium, F.  
 Curius, Cūrī-us, -ī, M.  
 custom, mos, mōris, M.; consuētūd-o, -inis, F.  
 cut, sūco, sēcāre, sēcūi, sectum.

## D.

**dagger**, pŭgĭ-o, -ōnis, M.; sic-a, -ae, F.

**daily**, quotĭdie; with comparatives or words denoting increase or diminution, in dies.

**danger**, pĕricŭl-um, -ĭ, M.

**dangerous**, pĕricŭlōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**dare**, audĕo, audĕre, ausus sum.

**daring**, audax, audācis (adj.).

**dark** (metaphorically applied to crime), ātrox, ātrōcis (adj.).

**dark** (literally), ater, atra, atrum; obsŭr-us, -a, -um.

**dart**, tĕl-um, -ĭ, N.; iācŭl-um, -ĭ, N.

**daughter**, fili-a, -ae, F. (p. 6, 2).

**day** (opposed to night), dies, diĕi, M. or F.; (opposed to darkness), lux, lŭcis, F.; **daybreak**, prima lux; **day after day**, diem ex die; **the day before**, pridĕ; **for the day**, in diem.

**deadly**, mortĭ-fer, -fĕra, -fĕrum (adj.).

**dear**, cār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**death**, mors, mortis, F.

**debt**, aes ōlĭĕnum; gen., aeris alieni.

**deceive**, I, de-cĭpio, -cĭpĕre, -cĕpi, -ceptum.

**decide on**, I (resolve), constĭtŭo, -stitŭere, -stitŭi, -stitŭtŭm (inf.); statuo, stāthĕre, stātŭi, statŭtum; (pass judgment on), iŭdic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; de-cerno, -cernĕre, -crĕvi, -crĕtum (de).

**decision**, iŭdĭci-um, -ĭ, N.

**declare**, dĭco, dicere, dixi, dictum.

**declare (war)** I, indico, -dicere, dixi, -dictum.

**decree**, I, v., dĕ-cerno, -cernĕre, -crĕvi, -crĕtum; dĕcrĕtum, -ĭ, N.

**deed**, -fācĭn-us, -ōris, N.; fact-um, I, N.

**deep**, alt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**defeat**, n., clād-es, -is, F.

**defeat**, v., vinco, vincĕre, vicĭ, victum; sŭpĕr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**defend**, defendo, defendĕre, defendi, defensum.

**defile**, n., angustĭ-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.); salt-us, -ŭs, M.

**delay**, v., mŏr-or, -ārĭ, -ātus sum (tr. and intr.); cunct-or, -ārĭ, -ātus sum; mŏra, -ae, F.

**deliberate**, delibĕr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**deliberation**, there is need of, opus est consulto (p. 166, 2).

**delight**, I, delect-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (trans.); gaudĕo, gaudĕre, gavisus sum (intr.).

**delightful**, amoenus, -a, -um (of scenery); pulch-er, -ra, -rum.

**deliver** (hand down), trādo, trādĕre, trādĭdi, traditum; reddo, -dĕre, -didĭ, -ditum; (free), libĕr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; **deliver a speech**, orātionem habĕre; **after the speech was d.**, abl. abs. (220).

**Delphi**, Delph-ĭ, -ōrum, M. pl.

**demand**, postŭl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; flagĭto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; posco, poscĕre, pŏposcĭ, no sup. (p. 92, 3).

**Demosthenes**, Demosthĕnes, -is, M.

**dense**, dens-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**deny**, I, nĕg-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**depart**, I (=go away), ab-eo, -ĭre, -ĭvi (-ĭi), -itum; dis-cĕdo, -cedĕre, -cessi, -cessum.

**descend**, de-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendi, -scensum.

**desert**, desĕro, -sĕrĕre, -sĕrŭi, -sertum.

**deserter**, transfŭg-a, -ae, M.; per-fŭg-a, -ae, M.

**deserve**, I, mĕrĕor, mĕrĕrĭ, merĭtus sum; mĕrĕo, mĕrĕre, mĕrŭi, mĕrĭtum.

**deserving of**, dignus, -a -um (with abl.).

**design**, n., consilĭ-um, -ĭ, N.

**designedly**, consilto, adv.

**desire**, I, cŭpio, cŭpĕre, cŭpĭvi (ĭi), cŭpĭtum.

**desirous**, be d. of, cŭp-io, -ĕre, -ĭvi (-ĭi), -itum (+inf.).

**despair of**, I, despĕr-o, -āre, -āvi, -atum (acc.).

**despatch**, litter-ae, -ārum (pl. F.); v., mitto.

**despise**, con-temno, -temnĕre; -tempŭi, -temptum; de-spicio, -spicĕre, -spexĭ, -spectum.

**despoil**, spŏli-o, -āre, etc.

**despot**, dŏmĭn-us, -ĭ, M.

**despotism**, dŏmĭnāt-us, -ŭs, M.

**destined**, fātāl-is, -e (adj.).

**destiny**, fāt-um, -ĭ, N.

**destitution**, ĕgest-as, -ātis, F.

**destroy**, dĕl-ĕo, -ĕre, -ĕvi, -ĕtum; vast-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**destruction**, exitĭ-um, -ĭ, N.; per-nĭcĭ-es, -ĕi, F.

**detain**, rĕ-tĭnĕo, -tĭnĕre, -tĭnŭi, -ten-tum.

**deter**, deterr-ĕo, -ĕre, -tŭi, -ĭtum.

determine, con-stítũo, -stítũere, -stítũtũ, -stítũtum (+inf.).

devastate, vast-o, -ãre, -ãvi, -atum.

devote myself to, I, operam do (with dat.).

devour, dẽvõr-o, -ãre, -ãvi, -atum.

dictator, dietãt-or, -õris, M.

did : see do.

did the boy wound? Use perf. of wound.

die, mõriõr, mõri, mortũs sum.

differ, diffẽro, differre, distũli, no sup.; to differ from each other, inter se differre.

difference to us, it makes no, nihil nostrã interest (p. 166, 3).

differently from, aliter ac.

difficult, difficĩl-is, -e (adj.).

difficulty, difficĩl-as, -ãtis, F.

diligence, diligẽti-a, -ae, F.

diligent, diligen-s, -tis (adj.).

diligently, diligẽter.

din, strẽpĩt-us, -ũs, M.

dinner, cẽn-a, -ae, F.

direct, iũbõo, iũbẽre, iussĩ, iussum (acc.); impõr-o, -ãre, -ãvi, -ãtum (dat.).

directions, in both, utrimque; in different d., dĩverse; in all d., undique.

disagree, I, dis-sentĩo, -sentĩre, -sensĩ, -sensum.

disagreement, dissensĩ-o, -õnis, F.

disaster, cãs-us, -ũs, M.; cãlãmit-as, -ãtis, F.

discharge the duties of, I, fungõr, fungĩ, functus sum (p. 116).

discipline, disciplĩn-a, -ae, F.

discourse, serm-o, -õnis, M.

discover : see ascertain.

disease, morb-us, -ĩ, M.

disembark, I (act.), ex-põno, -põnẽre, -põsũi, -põsitum; neut., egrẽdiõr, egrẽdi, egressus sum.

disgrace, ignõmĩnĩ-a, -ae, F.; turpĩ-tũd-o, F., -ĩnis.

disgraceful, turp-is, -e (adj.).

dismay, pãv-or, -õris, M.

dismiss, di-mitto, -mittẽre, -mĩsi, -missum.

displease, dis-plĩcẽo, -plĩcẽre, -plĩcũi, -plĩcũtum.

disposition, ingẽni-um, -ĩ, N.; in-dõl-es, -is, F.

dissatisfied, I am d. with myself, mei me pocõitet (p. 165, 1).

dissemble, dissĩmũl-o, -ãre, -ãvi, -ãtum.

dissension, dissensĩ-o, -õnis, F.

distance, spãti-um, -ĩ, N.

distance from, I am at a, ab-sum, -esse, -fũi (ab).

distant, longĩnqu-us, -a, -um (adj.); be d., absum.

distinguished, clãr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

district, rẽgĩ-o, -õnis, F.; lõc-us, -ĩ, M.; pl. lõca, -õrum, N. (p. 242).

distrust, dif-fĩdo, -fĩdẽre, -fĩsus sum (with a dat.).

disturb, turb-o, -ãre, -ãvi, -ãtum.

ditch, foss-a, -ae, F.

Divico, Divĩc-o, -õnis, M.

divide, dĩ-vido, -vidẽre, -vĩsi, -vĩsum.

divine, divĩn-us, -a, -um (adj.).

Divitiacus, Divĩtĩãc-us, -ĩ, M.

do, fãcio, fãcẽre, fãci, factum (p. 216, 1).

dog, cãnis, -is, M. or F.

doom, fãt-um, -ĩ, N.

door, iãnũ-a, -ae, F.

doubt, v., dũbit-o, -ãre, -ãvi, -ãtum; there is no doubt that, non est dubium quin (p. 188, 6).

doubtful, dũbi-us, -a, -um (adj.).

drag, I, trãho, trãhẽre, traxĩ, tractum.

draw, I, trãho. See above.

draw up a law, I, legem scribo, (scribẽre, scripsi, scriptum).

draw up an army, I, aciem instruo (instrũdẽre, instruxĩ, instructum); after the army was drawn up, acie instructã (p. 100, 5).

dread, I, rẽformĩd-o, -ãre, -ãvi, -ãtum.

dreadful, ãtrox, ãtrõcis (adj.).

dress, vest-is, -is, F.; vestĩt-us, -ũs, M.

drink, bĩb-o, -ẽrẽ, bĩbi.

drinking, good for, utĩlis bibendo (p. 60, 2).

drive, pello, pellẽre, pẽpũli, pulsum; ãgo, ãgẽre, ãgi, actum.

due, use pass. of dẽb-ẽo, -ẽre, -ũi, -ĩtum.

during (=in), abl. (82, 1); (all through), acc., p. 82, 4; d. the reign, p. 100, 5.

dust, pulv-is, -ẽris, M.

duty, officĩ-um, -ĩ, N.; see p. 124.

dwell, hãbit-o, -ãre, -ãvi, -ãtum.

dwelling, aedificĩ-um, -ĩ, N.; tect-um, -ĩ, N.

## E.

**each (one)**, quisque (never first in sentence), quaeque, quodque (adj.) and quidque (subst.); unusquisque; **(Of two)**, uterque, utraque, utrumque (p. 132); inter se (p. 223).

**each other**, alius... alius; alter... alter (p. 26); inter se (p. 223).

**eager for**, avidus, -a, -um (with gen.).

**eagle**, aquil-a, -ae, F.

**eagle-bearer**, aquilif-er, -eri, M.

**early**, mātūr-us, -a, -um; **in early spring**, vēre novo.

**earth, the**, terr-a, -ae, F.

**easily**, fácil-e.

**east wind**, Eur-us, -i, M.

**easy**, fácil-is, -e (p. 57, 2).

**eat** (p. 160).

**educate**, educ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**effort**, cōnāt-us, -ūs, M.; cōnāt-um, -i, N.

**Egypt**, Aegypt-us, -i, F.

**eight**, octo.

**eighteen**, duodeviginti.

**either...or**, aut...aut<sup>1</sup>; vel...vel.<sup>2</sup>

**elect**, crē-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **be elected**, fio, fiēri, factus sum.

**elephant**, elēphant-us, -i, M.

**eloquence**, elōquenti-a, -ae, F.

**eloquent**, elō-quens (-quentior, -quentissimus).

**else, or, aut**.

**embark (trans.)**, in navem imponere; **(intr.)** navem conscendere.

**emergency**, temp-us, -ōris, N.

**empire**, impēri-um, -i, N.

**employ**, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (p. 283, 10).

**empty**, inān-is, -e; vācū-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**encamp**, castra pōno (pōnere, pōsūi, pōsitum); castra lōco (āre, āvi, ātum).

**enact (a law)**, promulg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; perfero.

**encourage**, adhort-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

**end**, fin-is, -is, M.; **at the e. of summer**, extremā aestāte; v., con-ficio,

<sup>1</sup> One alternative excluding the other: as, Aut scribit aut legit, he is either writing or reading.

<sup>2</sup> Giving a choice: as, Par erat vel mōribus vel fortunā, he was equal either in character or in fortune.

-ficere, -feci, -fectum (tr.); fin-io, -ire, -ivi, -itum (tr. and intr.).

**endeavor**, I, cōn-or, -āri, -ātus sum; nitor, niti, nisus or nixus sum (p. 216, 3).

**endowed with**, praedit-us, -a, -um (with abl.).

**endure**, tōlēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**enemy (private)**, inimic-us, -i, M.; **(public)**, host-is, -is, M.

**engage in battle**, proelium comitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum.

**engine (of war)**, torment-um, -i, N.

**enjoy**, frūor, frūi, fructus sum (with abl., p. 116); (= to have), habeo.

**enmity**, inimicitia, -ae, F.

**enough**, sātis, adv.

**enquire**: see inquire.

**enquiry**, gerund of enquire.

**enroll (soldiers)**, con-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum.

**enter**, in-ēo, -ire, -ivi, -itum (acc., p. 277, 1).

**enterprise**, res, rei, F.

**entirely**, tot-us, -a, -um (p. 26, 1).

**entrust**, per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum.

**enumerate**, enūmēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**envoy**, lēgāt-us, -i, M.

**envy**, n., invidi-a, -ae, F.; in-vidēo, -videre, -vidi, -visum (dat., p. 278, foot note).

**Ephesus**, Ephēs-us, -i, F.

**equal**, aequ-us, -a, -um; pār, pāris (= equal to); **I make e.**, aequ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**equally**, pārīter, aequē.

**err**, I, err-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**error**, err-or, -ōris, M.

**escape**, ef-fūgio, -fūgere, -fūgi, -fūgitum.

**establish**, confirm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; stātūo, stātūere, stātūi, stātūtum.

**estimate**, aestim-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**estimation**, aestimāti-o, -ōnis, F.

**eternal**, sempitern-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**even**, etiam; quōque (used after an emphatic word); before an adj., vel; **not...even**, ne...quidem (with the emphasized word put between); ne unus quidem, **not even one**.

**evening**, vesp-er, -ēris, M.; **in the e.**, vesp-eri (or -e).

**ever**, unquam.



every (=all), omn-is, -e; quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque (p. 132).

every day. See daily.

evident, mánifest-us, -a, -um (adj.); it is e., appár-et, -ère, -ñit.

exact (punishment), sūmo, sūmère, sumpsi, sumptum.

excellent, optím-us, -a, -um; excellen-s, -tis (adj.).

except, praeter (acc.).

except (to), nisi (ut).

excessive, nímí-us, -a, -um (adj.).

exchange for, I, mūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 150, 1, note).

excite, excito, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

execute, con-ficío, -ficère, -fēcī, -fectum.

exercise, v., exerc-ō, -ōre, -ūī, -ītum.

exhort, hort-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

exile, ex-ul, -ūlis, M.; exilí-um, -i, N. (of a condition).

exist, I, sum, esse, fūī.

expect, ex-spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; spē-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

expedient, util-is, -e (adj.); it is expedient (p. 163, 6).

expediency, utilit-as, -ātis, F.

expel, pello, -ōre, pepūli, pulsum.

experience, ūs-us, -ūs, M.; experi-ētí-a, -ae, F.

explain, ex-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsitum.

extent, p. 69, 9.

extortion, repetund-ae, -ārum, F. pl. [lit. of things that should be got back (repēto); supply rerum].

extreme, extrēm-us, -a, -um (adj.).

exult, exult-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

eye, ōcul-us, -i, M.; I saw it with my own eyes, ipse id vidi.

## F.

face, ōs, ōris, N.; faci-es, -ēī, F.; vult-us, -ūs, M.

fact, rēs, rēī, F. (p. 181, 2).

faction, facti-o, -ōnis, F.

fail, de-ficío, -ficère, -fēcī, -fectum (used with or without acc.); de-sum, -esse, -fūī (with dat.).

fair, pulch-er, -ra, -rum; āmoen-us, -a, -um (of scenery).

faith, fid-es, -ēī, F.; I put faith in you, tibi fidem habeo.

faithful, fidēl-is, -e (adj.).

faithfulness, fid-es, -ēī, F.

fall, cādo, cādere, cēcidi, cāsum; fall in battle, pēr-ō, -īre, -ivī (or ī), -itum; fall into, in-cido, -cidere, -cidi (with in and acc.); fall headlong, praecipit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; fall into ruin, corruo, corrūere, corribi.

false (of persons), mend-ax, -ācis; (of things), fals-us, -a, -um; fict-us, -a, -um.

falsehood, mendāci-um, -ī, N.; to tell a falsehood, mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum.

falsely, speak, ment-ior, -iri, -itus sum.

fame, fām-a, -ae, F.; glōri-a, F.

family, n., famili-a, -ae, F.

family, dōmestī-cus, -ca, -cum (adj.).

famine, fām-es, -is, F.

famous, praecīār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

far (=distant), longinqu-us, -a, -um (adj.).

far, by, multo.

far off, adv., prōcul, longe.

far and wide, latē.

farmer, agricōl-a, -ae, M.

farm-house, vill-a, -ae, F.

farther, ultērior, -is (from ultra).

fate, fortūna, -ae, F.; sor-s, -tis, F.

fatal, pernīciōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

father, pāter, patris, M.

father-in-law, sōcer, sōcēri, M.

fault, culp-a, -ae, F.; viti-um, -ī, N.

fault, I find f. with, culp-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

fault, I commit a, pecc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

favor (=kindness), bēnēfici-um, -ī, N.

favor, I, fāv-ō, fāv-ere, fāvī, fautum (with dat., p. 278, foot note).

fear, n., mēt-us, -ūs, M.; tim-or, -ōris, M.

fear, I, v., mēt-ō, mēt-ere, mēt-ī, no supine; tim-ēo, tim-ere, tim-ī, no sup.; vēr-ōr, vēr-eri, vēr-itus sum.

feast, cēn-a, -ae, F.; ēp-ūl-um, -ī, N.; pl., ēp-ūlae, -ārum, F. (p. 242).

feather, pinn-a, -ae, F.

features, vult-us, -ūs, M.

feel, sent-ō, sent-ire, sent-ī, sensum.

feeling, ānim-us, -ī, M.

fellow-citizen, civ-is, -is, M.

fertile, fertīl-is, -e (adj.).

fertility, cōpi-a, -ae, F.  
 fetters, cāten-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).  
 few, pauc-i, -ae, -a; very few, per-pauc-i, -ae, -a (adj.).  
 fidelity, fid-es, -ēi, F.  
 field, āger, agrī, M.  
 field of battle, ācies, āclēi, F.  
 field, in the (opposed to "at home"), militīae (p. 86).  
 fierce (spirited), fēr-ox, -ōcis; ātrox, atrōcis; saev-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 fiercely, ferōciter; atrōciter; saeve.  
 fifteen, quindēcim.  
 fifth, quin-tus, -a, -um (adj.).  
 fifty, quinquāginta.  
 fight, pugn-a, -ae, F.; proeli-um, -i, N.; v., pugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dimic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 fill, com-plēo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum; replēo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum.  
 find (after a search), rēpēriō, rēperīrē, rēpēri, repertum; (come on suddenly), in-vēniō, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ventum.  
 find fault with, culp-o, -āre, etc., vītūpēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 find out, reperio. See find.  
 fine, pulch-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).  
 finish, con-ficiō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum; fin-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.  
 fir, abies, abietis, F.  
 fire, ign-is, -is, M.  
 fire and sword, with, ferro et igni.  
 firm, firm-us, -a, -um; (of character), fort-is, -e (adj.).  
 first, prim-us, -a, -um; I was the first to do it, hoc primus feci.  
 fit for, apt-us, -a, -um (adj.), (with dat., p. 60, 2).  
 five, quinque.  
 flag, sign-um, -ī, N.  
 flank, lāt-us, -ēris, N.  
 flash, fulg-ūr, -ūris, N.  
 flee, vōl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; fūgiō, fūgēre, fūgī, fūgītum.  
 flee to, advōl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.).  
 fleet, class-is, -is, F.  
 flesh, cāro, carnis, F.  
 flight, fūg-a, -ae, F.  
 fling at, pro-icīo, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum; f. away, ab-icīo, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum.  
 flock, grex, grēgis, M.  
 flourishing in wealth, ōpūlent-us, -a, -um (adj.).

flow, flūo, flūēre, fluxī, fluxum; flow down, de-flūo, -flūēre, -flūxi, -fluxum.  
 flower, flos, flōris, M.  
 fly, vōl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; fūgiō, fūgēre, fūgī, fūgītum.  
 foe (public), host-is, -is, M. or F.; (private), inimic-us, -i, M.  
 follow, sēquor, sēquī, sēcūtus sum; it follows that, sequitur ut.  
 follower, use pres. part. of sequor.  
 following day, dies postērus; on the following day, die postero; postridīe.  
 folly, stultitī-a, -ae, F.  
 fond, āvidus, -a, -um (adj.).  
 food, vict-us, -ūs; cib-us, -i, M.  
 foolish, stult-us, -ū, -um (adj.).  
 foot, pes, pēdis, M.; on f., use abl. pl.; foot of hill, tree, etc., use inus (p. 59, 1, note).  
 foot-soldier, pēdes, pēditis, M.  
 for, prep., pro. (with abl.; p. 224); (on account of), prae (abl.); of time, p. 63, 9.  
 for gold, abl. (p. 150, 1).  
 for, conj., nam; enim (after first emphatic word).  
 for some time past, iamdūdum [p. 216, 2, (b.)].  
 forage, pābūl-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
 forbid, vēto, vētāre, vētūl, vētītum.  
 force, vis, F. (p. 45); (army), = forces; v., cōgo, cōgēre, cōegi, cōactum.  
 forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. pl.  
 forefathers, maiōr-es, -um, pl. M.  
 foreign, extern-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 foreigner, peregrin-us, -i, M.  
 foremost, prim-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 foresee, pro-spiciō, -spicēre, -spexī, -spectum.  
 forest, silv-a, -ae, F.  
 foretell, prae-dico, -dicēre, -dixī, -dictum.  
 forget, obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum (p. 146, 7).  
 form a plan, consilium in-eo [-ire, -īvī (or -īī), -itum].  
 form a league, foedus ferre.  
 form a line of battle, aciem instruo (-struēre, -struxī, -structum).  
 former, pri-or, pri-us; of former days, pristīn-us, -a, -um.  
 formerly, ōlim.  
 fort, castell-um, -i, N.  
 fortify, mūn-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

fortress, arx, arcis, F.; castell-um, -ī, N.

fortunate, fēlix, felicis; fortunāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

fortune, fortūn-a, -ae, F.

foul, foed-us, -a, -um, adj.

fouly, nēfārie.

found, con-do, -dēre, -didī, -ditum.

four, quattuor.

fourteen, quattuordēcim.

fourth, quart-us, -a, -um, adj.

free, adj., lib-er, -ēra, -ērūm; expers, expertis (with abl.); p. 64, 4); v., liber-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

freedom, libert-as, -ātis, F.

freedwoman, libert-a, -ae, F.

fresh, rēcens, rēcētis, adj.

friend, āmic-us, -i, M.

friendly, āmic-us, -a, -um (adj.).

friendship, āmicīti-a, -ae, F.

frequent, crēber, crebra, crebrum (adj.).

frog, rāna, rānae, F.

from, a or ab (with abl.); de (abl.); p. 158, 2.

front, frons, frontis, F.; on the (in) front, a frontē.

frost, frīg-us, -ōris, N.

fruit, fruct-us, -ūs, M.; frūg-es, -um, F., pl.

fugitive, fūgītiv-us, -i, M.

full, plēn-us, -a, -um (with gen. or abl.).

funeral, fūn-us, -ōris, N.

further, adj., ultēri-or, -ōris (adj.).

fury, ir-a, -ae, F.

future, the, futūr-a, -orum (N. pl.).

future, in, or for the, in futūrum; in postērūm.

## G.

gain, ēmōlūment-um, -i, N.; lucr-um, -i, N.

gain, possession of, pōtior, pōtiri, pōtitus sum (with abl.).

games, lūd-i, -ōrum, M.

garden, hort-us, -i, M.

Garonne, Garunn-a, -ae, M.

garrison, praesidi-um, -i, N.

gate, port-a, -ae, F.

gather together (trans.), compār-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (intr.), con-vēnio, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ventum.

Gaul, the country now called *France*, Galli-a, -ae, F.

Gaul, a, an inhabitant of Gallia, Gall-us, -i, M.

gaze at or on, spect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

general, dux, dūcis, M.; impērāt-or, -ōris, M.

Geneva, Gēnēv-a, -ae, F.

gentle, mit-is, -e; lēn-is, -e (adj.).

gently, lēniter.

German, Germān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

get, ac-quirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum; as-sēquor, -sēqui, -sēcūtus sum.

gift, dōn-um, -i, N.

girl, pūell-a, -ae, F.

give, dōn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; do, dāre, dēdi, dātum; g. notice, say "inform;" give up (=surrender), dē-do, -dēre, -didi, -dītum; (=hand down), trā-do, -dēre, -didi, -dītum.

glad, laet-us, -a, -um; liben-s, libentis (adj.); I am g. to do it, hoc libenter facio.

gladly, laete, libenter.

globe, orbis terrārum.

glorious, praeclār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

glory, glōri-a, -ae, F.

go, ēo, -ire, -ivī (-ī), -ītum; (be about to), p. 174, 1.

go away, āb-ēo, -ire, -ivī (-ī), -ītum.

go out, ex-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum; ex-ēo, -ire, -ivī (or -ī), -ītum.

God, Dēus, Dēi (p. 13, 2).

goddess, dē-a, -ae, F. (p. 6, 2).

gold, aur-um, -i; for g., p. 150, 1.

golden (gold), aurē-us, -ā, -um, adj.

good, bonus, -a, -um (p. 20); comp., melior; sup., optimus.

goods, merx, mercis, F.

govern, rēgo, rēgēre, rexī, rectum; gūbern-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

governor, praefect-us, -ī, M.

gradually, paulātīm.

grandfather, āvus, āvī, M.

Granicus, Grānic-us, -i, M.

grateful, grāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

grain, frūment-um, -i, N.

gratitude, grāti-a, -ae, F.; I show gratitude, gratiam refēro (referre, retūli, relatum); I feel g., gratiam hāb-ēo (-ēre, -ūi, -ītum).

great, magn-us, -a, -um; of great size, ingens, ingentis (adj.); so g., tantus.

greatly, magnopere (adv.); comp., māgis; sup., maxime.

Greece, Graeci-a, -ae, F.  
 greedy, avid-us, -a, -um; avār-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 Greek, Graec-us, -ā, -um, adj.  
 greenness, viridit-as, -ātis, F.  
 grief, dōl-or, -ōris, M.  
 groan, gēm-o, -ēre, -ūi, -itum.  
 ground, hūm-us, -i, F.; on the ground, hūmī.  
 grow, cresc-o, -ēre, crēvi, crētum; virēo, virēre, no perf., no sup.  
 guard, custōd-io, -ire, -ivi, -itum; n., see next word.  
 guardian, cust-os, -ōdis, M.  
 guide, dux, dūcis, M.; v., gubern-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 guilt, scēl-us, -ōris, N.  
 guilty, noxi-us, -a, -um; be g. of, in se admitto (acc.).

## H.

habit of, I am in the, solēo, solēre, solitus sum (+inf.).  
 hair, cōm-a, -ae, F.; cāpill-us, -i, M.  
 hall, aul-a, -ae, F.  
 halt, come to a halt, con-sisto, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum.  
 Hamilcar, Hamilc-ar, -āris, M.  
 hand, mān-us, -ūs, F.  
 hand, I am at, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.  
 hand over to, per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum; mand-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 hand-maid(en), ancill-a, -ae, F.  
 Hannibal, Hannib-al, -ālis, M.  
 happens, it, accidit, accidere, accidit, no sup.; contingit, contingere, contigit, no sup.; evenit, evenire, evenit, no sup.  
 happiness, beate vivere (p. 103, 4).  
 happy, bēāt-us, -a, -um; lucky, felix, felicitis (adj.).  
 harbor, port-us, -ūs, M.  
 hard, adj., dūr-us, -ā, -um (adj.).  
 hard, press, prēm-o, prēmēre, pressi, pressum.  
 hard to say, or tell, it is, difficile est dictu (p. 175).  
 hardly, vix (adv.).  
 hardship, lāb-or, -ōris, M.  
 harsh, asper, aspēra, aspērum (adj.).  
 harvest, messis, -is, F.  
 haste, celerit-as, -ātis, F.; there is need of h., opus est perperato (p. 166, 2).  
 hasten, prōpēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;

mātūr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; fest-ino, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 hate, odi-um, -i, N.  
 hate, I, odi, odisse; I am hated, odio sum (p. 196, 7, note).  
 haughty, superb-us, -a, -um, adj.  
 have, hāb-ēo, -ēre, -ui, -itum.  
 he, p. 163, 3.  
 he himself, ipse (p. 123, 6).  
 head, caput, capitis, N.; in the h., p. 33, 3.  
 head of, I am at the, prae-sum, -esse, -fui (with dat.).  
 headlong, prae-ceps, -cipitis (adj.).  
 heal, mēdēor, mēdēri, no perf., no sup.  
 health, I am in good, vālēo, vāl-ēre, vālūi, vālītum.  
 hear, aud-iō, -ire, -ivi, -itum.  
 heart, cor, cordis, N.; (feelings), ānimus.  
 heat, aestus, -ūs, M.  
 heaven, cael-um, -i, N.; pl. M., cael-i, -ōrum (p. 242).  
 heavy, grāv-is, -e (adj.).  
 heir, hērēs, -dis, M.  
 help, iūvo, iūvāre, iūvi, iūtum; adiūvo, -iūvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum; n., auxili-um, -i, N.  
 Helvetians (Helvetii), Helvēt-i, -ōrum, M.  
 hem in, con-tinēo, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum.  
 hence, henceforth, proinde, hinc.  
 herald, praec-o, -ōnis, M.  
 here, hic.  
 here, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fui.  
 hesitate, dūbit-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 hidden, occult-us, -ā, -um, adj.  
 hide, cēl-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 high, alt-us, -ā, -um (adj.).  
 highest, summ-us, -ā, -um; with interest, use magni (p. 166, 3); of price, p. 150, 2.  
 highly, I value, magni aestimo (p. 150, 2).  
 hill, coll-is, -is, M.; mons, montis, M.  
 him; p. 168, 3.  
 himself, se; ipse, ipsā, ipsum (p. 168, 3).  
 hinder, impēd-fo, -ire, -ivi, -itum; ob-sto, -stare, -stiti, -stātum (dat.).  
 his, eius, suus (p. 163, 3); often omitted; 169, 5, note 2.  
 historian, rerum script-or (-ōris, M.).

**hither**, cītēr-ior, -ioris (adj.).  
**hold**, hābēo, hābēre, hābūī, hābitum; tēnēo, tēnēre, tēnūī, tentum; cāpio, cāpēre, cāpī, captum (=contain).

**home**, dōm-us, -ūs, F.; **at home**, domi; **(to) home**, domum; **from home**, domo.

**Homer**, Hōmēr-us, -ī, M.

**honest**, prōb-us, -ā -um (adj.).

**honor**, fides, fidēī (good faith), F.; hōn-or, -ōris, M. (distinction).

**hope**, spes, spēs, F.

**hope, hope for**, I, spēr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**Horace**, Hōrātī-us, -ī, M.

**horse**, ēquus, equī, M.

**horseman**, ēques, equītis, M.

**host** (opposed to guest), hospes, hospitis, M.

**host** (a multitude), multītūd-o, -īnis, F.

**hostage**, obses, obsīdis, M.

**hot**, be, cālēo, cālēre.

**hour**, hōr-a, -ae, F.

**house**, dōm-us, -ūs, F. (p. 62, 6).

**how**, quam (p. 176, 3).

**however**, autem, vero; p. 196, 7, note.

**how many**, quot.

**how much**, quantum; with comparatives, quanto.

**how often**, quōtīes.

**human**, humān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**humble**, hūmil-is, -e (adj.).

**hundred**, a, centum.

**hunger**, fāmes, fāmīs, F.

**hurl**, con-icio, -icēre, -iēcī, -iectum (at = in + acc.).

**hurry to**, con-tendo, -tendēre, -tendī, -tentum (ad with acc.).

**husband**, vir, virī, M.

## I.

I, ēgo (p. 104).

if, si (p. 190); if . . . not, nisi, si . . . non (p. 190, 3); unless, nisi (p. 190, 3).

**ignorant of**, I am, ignōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; ne-scīo, -scīre, -scīvī, -scītum.

**ill**, I am, aegrōt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**illustrious**, praeclār-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**ill-will**, mālēvolentī-a, -ae, F.

**imitate**, Imīt-or, -ārī, -ātus sum.

**immediately** (adv.), stātīm, confestim.

**immediately after the battle**, confestim a proelio.

**immortal**, immortāl-is, -e (adj.).

**impart**, I, commūnic-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**impiety**, impiēt-as, -ātis, F.

**implore**, implōr-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**importance**, it is of: p. 166, 3.

**important to me**, it is, meā interest (p. 166, 3).

**important**, grāv-is, -e; magnus (adj.).

**impunity**, with, impūne.

**impute this to you as a fault**, I, hoc tibi vitio verto.

**in**, prep., in (with abl. or acc.; p. 222, 2); **in company with**, cum; **in the power of**, penes (with acc.); **in turn**, invicem; **in order that**, ut; **in order that not**, ne (p. 183, 2).

**inasmuch as**, quum (+subj.; p. 203, 1); qui (p. 199, 5).

**inclination**, vōlunt-as, -ātis, F.

**inconsistent with**, allēn-us, -a, -um (ab + abl.).

**increase** (trans.), augēo, augēre, auxī, auctum; (intrans.), cresco, crescēre, crēvī, crētum.

**incredible**, incredībilis, -e (p. 175).

**indecisive**, anceps, ancipitīs (adj.).

**inexperienced**, impērīt-us, -a, -um.

**infant**, infans, infantis, M. or F.

**infantry**, pēdīt-es, -um, M. pl.

**influence**, auctōrīt-as, -ātis, F.

**inform**, certiore facere (of = de).

**inform him about these matters**, I, ego eum certiore de his rebus facio.

**inhabitant**, incol-a, -ae, M.; **i. of a town**, oppidānus, -ī, M.

**injure**, nōcēo, nōcēre, nōcūī, -itum (with dat.).

**injury**, iniūrī-a, -ae, F.; damn-um, -ī, N.

**innocence**, innōcentī-a, -ae, F.

**innocent**, innōcens, innōcentis (adj.).

**inquire**, quaero, quaerēre, quaesivī, quaesitum; rōgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**insist on**, flāgīt-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**instantly**, continuo.

**institution**, instītūt-um, -ī, N.

**instruct**, ērūd-īo, -īre, -īvī, -itum.

**insult**, contūmēlī-a, -ae, F.

**intellect**, mens, mentis, F.

intend, p. 174, 1.

intentionally, consulto.

interest, it is of, inter-est, -esse, -fūl (p. 166, 3); (high = magni or multum).

interpreter, interpres, interpretis, M.

into, in (with acc.).

intrust, I, per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum; mand-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

invade, I, bellum infēro (inferre, intāli, illātum).

inventor, invent-or, -ōris, M.

invite, I, invit-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

irruption, an, incursi-o, -ōnis, F.

island, insul-a, -ae, F.

issue, event-us, -ūs, M.

it. See he.

Italy, Itāli-a, -ae, F.

its, eius; referring to subject, suus, sua, suum (p. 169, 5).

itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

## J.

January, Iānūārī-us, -a, -um (adj.; mensis being understood).

javelin, tēl-um, -i, N.; pil-um, -i, N.

jealous of you, I am, tibi in-vidēo (-vidēre, -vidi, -visum).

join, iungo, iungere, iunxī, iunctum.

joint, art-us, -ūs.

journey, iter, itinēris, N.

joy, gaudi-um, -i, N.; laetiti-a, -ae.

joyful, laet-us, -a, -um (adj.).

judge, iudex, iudicis, M.; v., iudic-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; arbitr-or, -āri, -ātus sum.

judgment, iudicī-um, -i, N.; arbitri-um, -i, N.

Jugurtha, Iugurth-a, -ae, M.

June (month of), Iūni-us, -a, -um.

Jupiter, Iūpīter, Iōvis, M.

jury, iudic-es, -um, M. pl.

just, aequ-us; iust-us, -a, -um (adj.).

just then, iam tum.

just as though: say as if.

justice, iustiti-a, -ae, F.

justly, iure [abl. of ius (iūris), used adverbially].

Jura, Iūr-a, -ae, F.

## K.

Karthage, Karthāg-o, -ōnis, F.

Karthaginians, Karthaginienses, -ium, M. pl.

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre (adj.).

keep, serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; k. promises, promissis (abl.) sto (stāre, stēti, stātum).

keep back, arc-eo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum.

keep back from, prohib-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum; arceo, arcēre, arcūi (+abl.).

keep my word, fidem serv-o (-āre, -āvī, -ātum); fidem prae-sto (-stare, -stiti).

keep off, defen-do, -dēre, -dī, -sum.

kill, inter-ficō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum; oc-cido, -cidēre, -cidī, -cisum.

kind, gēn-us, -ēris, N.

kind, adj., bēnēvol-us, -a, -um; comp., benevolentior; sup., bēnēvolentissimus.

kind deed, a, bēnēfici-um, -i, N.; officī-um, -i, N.

kind, of every, omn-is, -e (adj.); omnis gēnēris.

kind of man, the, use qualis (p. 181, 1).

kind, of this, hūiusmōdi; of that kind, eiusmōdi; talis.

kindness, bēnēfici-um, -i, N.

king, rex, rēgis; king's, rēgī-us, -a, -um.

knee, gēn-u, -ūs, N.

know, sciō, scīre, scīvi, scītum (a fact); nosc-o, -ēre, nōvi, nōtum (a person).

known, nōt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

knowledge, scēnti-a, -ae, F.; (learning), doctrin-a, -ae, F.

## L.

Labienus, Lābiēn-us, -i, M.

Lacedaemon, Lācēdaem-on, -ōnis, F.

Lacedaemonian, Lācēdaemōni-us, -a, -um (adj.).

lack, I, mihi deest.

lacking, expers, expert-is (with abl.; p. 64, 4; p. 281, 9).

lake, lac-us, -ūs, M.

lame, claud-us, -a, -um (adj.).

lament, lāment-or, -āri, -ātus sum; dōlēo, dōlēre, dōlūi, no sup.

land (the soil), āger, āgri, M.; (a country), terr-a, -ae, F.; native land, patri-a, -ae, F.; by sea and land, terrā mārīque.

land troops, milites in terram expōno (-pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsītum).

language (tongue), lingu-a, -ae, F.; (conversation), serm-o, -ōnis, M.

large, magn-us, -a, -um; ingen-s, -is; so l., tant-us, -a, -um (adj.).

last (of a number), ultĭm-us, -a, -um; (nearest: as, last night), proxĭm-us, -a, -um; most remote, extrĕm-us, -a, -um; at last, dĕmum (= then and not till then); tandem.

late (recent), rĕcens, recentis (adj.).

late, too, adv., sĕro.

lately, nŭper; sup., nŭperrĭme.

law, lex, lĕgis, F.

lay waste, vast-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum.

lead, dŭco, dŭcĕre, duxĭ, ductum; lead across or through, trans-dŭco, -dŭcĕre, -duxĭ, -ductum; lead back, rĕ-dŭco, -dŭcĕre, -duxĭ, -ductum; lead out, ĕdŭco, -dŭcĕre, -duxĭ, -ductum.

lead, plumb-um, -i, N.

leader, dux, dŭcis, M.

learn, disco, discĕre, dĭdĭcĭ, no sup., (ascertain), cognosc-o, ĕre, cognŏvĭ, cognĭtum.

learned, doctus (p. p. of dŏceo, teach).

learning, doctrĭn-a, -ae, F.

least, at, saltem; I at least, ego certe.

leave, rĕ-linquo, -linquĕre, -liquĭ, -lictum; (a place) ex-cĕdo, -cĕdĕre, -cessĭ, -cessum (with acc. or abl. or with ex.); discĕdo, -cĕdĕre, -cessĭ, -cessum (ex); prŏfiscor, proficisci, profectus sum.

left, sinist-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).

legion, lĕgĭ-o, -ŏnis, F.

leisure, ŏtĭ-um, -i, N.; at leisure, ŏtĭŏs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

less (adv.), mĭnus; less than two hundred fell, minus ducenti perĭerunt. Minus, with numerals (like plus and amplius, more) has no effect upon the construction.

less, adj., minor, minus (p. 57, 4).

lest, nĕ (p. 185, 3).

let, sĭno, sĭnĕre, sĭvĭ, situm; or use licet (163, 5).

letter, ĕpĭstŏl-a, also ĕpĭstŭl-a -ae, F., littĕr-ae, -ārum F. (pl.).

levy, n., delect-us, -ŭs, M.; I hold a levy, delectum habeo.

liar, mendax, mendācis, M. or adj.

liberality, liberalit-as, -ātis, F.

liberate, libĕr-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum.

liberty, libert-as, -ātis, F.

lie, iāc-ĕo, -ĕre, -ŭi, -ĭtum; (speak falsely) mentior, mentĭrĭ, mentĭtus sum.

lieutenant, lĕgāt-us, -i, M.

life, vit-a, -ae, F.

light, lux, lŭcis, F.; lŭmen, lŭmĭnis, N.

lightning fulgur, fulgŭris, N.

like, simĭl-is, -e; comp., simĭlior; sup., simillimus (dat.).

likely; use 174, 1.

line of battle, ācĭes, ācĭĕi, F.; line of march, ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, N.

lion, leo, leŏnis, M.

listen to, aud-ĭo, -ĭre, -ĭvĭ, -ĭtum (acc.).

little, parv-us, -a, -um (adj.).

live, vĭvo, vĭvĕre, vĭxĭ, victum; I live on milk, lacte vescor (vescĭ, no perf., no sup.).

living, be; say live.

load: ŏnus, ŏnĕris, N.

load, v., ŏnĕr-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum.

locality, lŏc-a, -ŏrum, N. pl. of locus (p. 242).

lofty, alt-us, -a, -um; excels-us, -a, -um (adj.).

long, long-us, -a, -um; for a long time, diu, iamprĭdem (216, 2, b).

look at, spect-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum.

look down on, de-spĭcĭo, -spĭcĕre, -spĕxĭ, -spĕctum.

look for, exspect-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum.

lord, domin-us, -i, M.

lose, ā-mitto, -mittĕre, -mĭsĭ, -missum; lose an opportunity, occasĭŏnem amitto.

loss, damn-um, -i, N.; cālāmĭt-as, -ātis, F.

lot, sors, sortis, F.; fortun-a, -ae, F.

lot, it falls to my, mihi accĭdit; mihi contingit.

loud, magn-us, -a, -um (adj.).

love, ām-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum; dilĭgo, dilĭgĕre, dilĕxi, dilectum.

lovely, pulcher, pulchrā, pulchrum (adj.).

lover, amans, amantis, M. or F.

low(ly), hŭmĭl-is, -e, adj.

lowest, ĭmus, -a, -um, adj. (59, 1).

loyal, fidĕl-is, -e, adj.

loyalty, fides, fidĕi, F.

Lucca, Lucc-a, -ae, F.

luxury, luxŭrĭ-a, -ae, F.

M.

mad, I am, fŭro, fŭrĕre, no perf., no sup.

made, I am being, fio, fiĕrĭ, factus sum.

magnitude, use quantus (see p. 181, 1).

maiden, puell-a, -ae, F.; virg-o, -inis, F.

maintain, sus-tínĕo, -tínĕre, -tínĭti, -tĕntum; vindĭc-o, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

make, fácto, fácĕre, féci, factum; (a magistrate), crĕ-o, (-āre, -āvi, -ātum); (war upon), bellum in-fero, [inferre, intŭli, illátum (dat.)]; (an attack), impetum fácto (fácĕre, féci, factum), or simply aggrĕdi-or, -grĕdi, -gressus sum (acc.)

Malta, Mĕlt-a, -ae, F.

man, vir, víri, M. (an adult male, opposed to mulier, woman); hŏmo, hŏmĭnis, M. or F. (a human being).

maniple, mĕnĭpŭl-us, -i, M.

manners, mŏres, mŏrum (pl.), M.

many, mult-i, -ae, -a (adj., pl.); many good men, multĭ et boni homĭnes.

marble, marm-or, -ŏris, N.

marble, marmŏreus, -a, -um (adj.).

march, iter, itĭnĕris, N.; to make a march, iter fácto (fácĕre, féci, factum).

Marcus, Marc-us, -i, M., a Roman name.

Marius, Mĕri-us, -i, M.

market-place, fór-um, -i, N.

Marseilles, Massĭlĭ-a, -ae, F.

marsh, pĕl-ŭs, -ŭdis, F.

master (of boys), mĕgist-er, -rĭ, M.; (of slaves), dŏmĭn-us, -i, M.

matter, res, rĕi, F.

matters little, it, parvi interest or rĕfert (p. 166, 3).

may, licet, licĕre, licĕit (or licĭtum est) (p. 163, 5); possum, posse, pŏtŭi (p. 142); in final clauses, ut+subj. (p. 123); of a wish (p. 138, 4, c).

May (month of), Mĕi-us, -a, -um, adj. (mensis being understood).

meal, cĕn-a, -ae, F.; epul-ae, -ĕrum, F. pl.

mean, v., sibi volo (velle, volui).

means of, by, abl. (p. 71, 3).

meanwhile, intĕrim.

measure, mĕtĭor, mĕtĭri, mensus sum.

Medes, Mĕd-i, -ŏrum (pl.), M.

meet an enemy, obvĭam hostibus (dat.) ire.

meet death, mortem ob-ĕo [ire, ivĭ (or ii), itum].

meeting, concilĭ-um, -i, N.; convent-us, -ŭs, M.

memory, mĕmŏri-a, -ae, F.

merchant, mercĕt-or, -ŏris, M.

merchantman, navis oneraria.

Mercury, Mercŭri-us, -i, M.

mercy, mĕsĕricordi-a, -ae, F.

mere, ipse, ipsa, ipsum (p. 123).

message, nuntĭ-us, -i, N.

messenger, nuntĭ-us, -i, M.

midday, mĕridĭ-es, -ĕi, M.; tempus mĕridĭĕnum.

middle of, mĕdi-us, -a, -um; in the middle of the plain, in mediĕ planĭtie; in the middle of the night, mediĕ nocte.

midst of, in the, inter (with acc.).

might, use licet (163, 5).

mild, mit-is, -e (adj.).

mile, mille passuum or mille passus; two miles, duo millia passuum (p. 69, 10).

milk, lac, -tis, N.

mind, ĕnim-us, -i, M.; mens, mentis, F.

miserable, mĭser, mĭsĕra, mĭsĕrum (adj.).

modesty, mŏdesti-a, -ae, F.

money, pĕcŭnĭ-a, -ae, F.

month, mens-is, -is, M.

moon, lŭna, lŭnae, F.

morals, mŏres, mŏrum, M.

more, plus (p. 57, 4), of amount; magis, of degree (p. 77, 6); more than, magis quam.

moreover, praetĕrĕĕ, adv.

morning, in the, mĕne, adv.

mortal (dying), mortĕlĭs, -e (adj.); (deadly), mortĭ-fer, -fĕra, -fĕrum (adj.).

most, plĕrĭque, plĕraeque, plĕrĕque (adj.).

most part, for the, maxime.

mound, ag-ger, -gĕris, M.

mount, v., a-scendo, -scendĕre, -scendi, -scensum.

mountain, mons, montis, M.

mourn over, lŭgeo, lŭgĕre, luxi, luctum.

mouth, os, ŏris, N.

move, mŏvĕo, mŏvĕre, mŏvi, mŏtum; move forward, pro-mŏvĕo.

much, mult-us, -a, -um (adj.); with comparative, multo; m. time, multum tempŏris.

multitude, multĭtŭd-o, -inis, F.

murder, caed-es, -is, F.; after the murder of Caesar, Caesĕre interfecto.

must: p. 172, 2; 173, 5.

my, mĕ-us, -ĕ, -um (adj.).

myself (emphatic), ipse.



## N.

name, nōm-en, -inis, N.  
 name, good, fām-a, -ae, F.  
 Naples, Nēāpōl-is, -is, F.  
 nation, pōpūl-us, -i, M.; civit-as, -ātis, F.; nātī-o, -ōnis, F. (of foreign nations).  
 native land or country, pātri-a, -ae, F.  
 nature, nātūr-a, -ae, F.  
 near, prōpe, ad, or āpud (with acc.); be near, adsum (dat.).  
 nearest, proxim-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 nearly, paene, fere (adv.).  
 necessary, nēcessārī-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 necessity, nēcessīt-as, -ātis, F.  
 need, opus est (p. 166, 2); I have need of food, opus est mihi cibo (abl.); ēgēo, ēgēre, ēgūi (+abl. or gen., p. 282, 1).  
 needy, ēgēnus (57, 3, note).  
 neglect, neg-lēgo, -lēgere, -lēxi, -lectum.  
 neighbor, vicīn-us, -i, M.; finitīmus, -i, M.  
 neighboring, finitīm-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 neither . . . nor; nēque . . . nēque; nec . . . nec.  
 neither (of two), neuter, neutra, neutrum (p. 26).  
 nest, nid-us, -i, M.  
 never, nunquam.  
 new, nōv-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 news of, there is, nuntiātūr (p. 164, 2, note 2).  
 next, the, proxim-us, -a, -um (adj.); next day, dies postērus; on the next day, die postero, postridiē eius diēi.  
 night, nox, noctis, F.  
 no: p. 29, 4, note.  
 noble, praeclār-us, -a, -um; nobīl-is, -e (adj.).  
 noon, noonday, mēridi-es, -ēi, M.  
 no one, nēmo (gen., nullius; p. 132, 2); null-us, -a, -um; and no one, nec quisquam (132, 3).  
 nor, neque, nec; owing to the Latin love of connectives, used instead of non to introduce a sentence; nor . . . any, p. 132, 3.  
 not, non; with imperat., p. 138, 4 (b).  
 not yet, nondum.  
 nothing, nihil.  
 nourish, nutr-īo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; ālo, ālēre, ālūi, ālitum (or altum).

now (of time up to the present), iam; (at the present moment), nunc; (=to-day), hodie.

nowhere, nusquam.

number, nūmēr-us, -i, M.; p. 181, 1.  
 Numidia, Numidī-a, -ae, F.

## O.

O, interjection, O; omitted usually with vocative; O! that, utinam; see p. 138, 4.

oak-tree, querc-us, -ūs, F.

obey, pār-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -ītum (dat.); ōb-ēdio, -ēdire, -ēdivī (ēdīfī), -ēditum (dat.; p. 164).

object, v., rēcūs-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

object, have an o. in view, āgo, āgēre, āgī, actum.

obscure, obscur-us, -a, -um (adj.).

obtain, I, ādīpiscor, ādīpisci, ādēptus sum; pōtīor, pōtīrī, pōtītus sum; (a request), impētr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

occupy, I (hold), tēn-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -tum.

ocean, ōcēān-us, -i, M.

Octavianus, Octāvīān-us, -i, M.

of, expressed by gen. or abl.; dē, prep. with abl.

offence, peccāt-um, -i, N.

offer, I, de-fēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum.

office, māgistrāt-us, -ūs, M.; I hold office, magistratum habeo or obtineo.

officers, the military, centuriones tribūnique militum.

often, saepe; so often, tōtīs.

old, antiqu-us, -a, -um; vētus, vētēris; oldest, maximus nātū; see ancient.

old age, sēnect-us, -ūtis, F.

old man, sēnex, sēnis, M.

Olympus, Olymp-us, -i, M.

on (of rest), in (abl.); (of motion), in (acc.), of time, abl.; on this side, citrā (prep. with acc.); on this account, quam ob causam; on the side of, ab (with abl.).

once, sēmel; more than once, semel ac saepius.

once (formerly), quondam; ōlim; at o., stātim.

one (numeral), ūn-us, -a, -um; one of the soldiers, unus e militibus.

one, some, āliquis, āliqua, āliquid or āliquod; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam (p. 132).

one, not, nemo, gen. nullius (p. 132, 2); ne unus quīdem.

one..the other, alius..alius; alter  
..alter (of two).

one and all, cunct-i, -ae, -a; omnēs,  
omnium.

one day, aliquando.

only, tantum; solum; modo (all  
placed after the words qualified); NOT  
only, non solum, non modo (but also = sed  
etiam).

onset, impēt-us, -us, M.

open (trans.), patē-facio, -facere, -feci,  
-factum; (intr.), patēo, patēre, patūi, no  
sup.; open ranks, ordines laxare.

openly, palam.

opinion, sententi-a, -ae, F.

opportunity, occās-io, -iōnis, F.

oppose, oc-curro, -currere, -curri,  
-cursum (with dative); ob-sto, -stāre,  
-stiti, no sup. (with dat.).

oppress, vex-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;  
op-primo, -primere, -pressi, -pressum.

or, aut; vel.

or not, annon in the second part of a  
principal alternative question (130, 6,  
note); necne, in a dependent alternative  
question (p. 177, 5).

oration, orāt-i-o, -ōnis, F.

orator, orāt-or, -ōris, M.

order, v., iūbēo, iūbēre, iussi, iussum  
(with acc.); impēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
(with dat.).

order, n., mandāt-um, -i, N.; prae-  
cept-um, -i, N.

order that, in, ut (p. 183, 2; p. 185, 5).

origin, gēn-us, -eris, N.; of humble  
origin, humili loco natus.

other, the (of two), alter; others,  
alii; other men (=the rest), ceteri.

ought, dēbēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum (of moral  
obligation); impers., oport-et, -ēre; ūit  
(p. 162, 4); p. 173, 5.

our, ours, nost-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).

ourselves, nos; p. 104, 5.

out of, ē, ex (with abl.); ex before  
vowels and consonants, ē before conso-  
nants only.

outward, extēr-us, -a, -um.

over, sūper (prep. with acc. and abl.,  
p. 222, 2); trans (acc.).

overcome, sūpēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;  
vinco, vincere, vici, victum.

overthrow, ēvert-o, -ēre, -i, -sum.

Ovid, Ovidi-us, -i, M.

owe, dēb-ēo, -ēre, -ūi, -itum.

own, gen. of ipse; my own book,  
meus ipsius liber (123, 6); v., p. 120, 3.

ox, bos, bōvis, M.

### P.

pacify, I, plāc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

pain, dōl-or, -ōris, M.

panic, pāvōr, pāvōris, M.

pardon, n., vēni-a, -ae, F.

pardon, v., ignosco, ignoscere, ignōvī,  
ignōtum (dat.).

parent, pārens, M. or F.

part, pars, partis, F.; it is the  
part of, p. 124.

pass (a law), promulg-o, -āre, -āvī,  
-ātum; fero.

pass by, praetēr-eo, -īre, -ivī, -itum.

pass over, trans-eo, -īre, -ivī, -itum.

pass the winter, hiēm-o, -āre, -āvī,  
-ātum.

passion (anger), ira, -ae, F.

passionate, irācund-us, -a, -um (adj.).

passionateness, irācundī-a, -ae, F.

past, praetēr-it-us, -a, -um (adj.); the  
past, tempus praeteritum.

patiently, pātienter.

pay, pendo, pendere, pependi, pensum.

pay, merces, mercēdis, F.

pearl, margarit-a, -ae, F.

peace, pax, pācis, F.

Peligni, Pelign-i, -ōrum, M. pl.

penalty, poen-a, -ae, F.; supplicī-  
um, -i, N.

people (a), pōpūl-us, -i, M.; (men),  
hōmīnes, (M. pl.); 164, 2.

perceive, intelligō, -lēgere, -lexi,  
-lectum; sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum.

perform, facio; con-ficio, -ficere,  
-feci, -fectum.

Pericles, Pēricl-es, -is, M.

perish, pēr-ēo, -īre, -ivī (or iī), -itum.

permit: see allow; you p. me,  
mihi per te licet (p. 163, 5).

permitted, I am, mihi licet (p. 163, 5).

Persian, Mēd-us, -i, M.

persuade, per suādēo, -suādere,  
-suāsi, -suāsum (dat.).

Philippi, Philipp-i, -ōrum, M. pl.

philosopher, philōsōph-us, -i, M.

philosophy, philōsōphī-a, -ae, F.

pick, pick out, lēgo, lēgere, lēgi,  
lectum.

pick, pīn-us, -ūs, F.

pirate, praed-o, -ōnis, M.  
 pitch a camp, castra pōnere or munire.  
 pity, mīserīcordī-a, -ae, F.  
 pity, v., mīserēor, mīserēri, mīserītus sum, with gen.; I pity you, me tui miseret (165, 1).  
 place, loc-us, -i, M.; pl., loci, M., and loca, N., p. 242.  
 place, v., loc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.); pōno, pōnere, pōsūi, pōsītum; place over; prae-ficō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.  
 plain, camp-us, -i, M.; plānitī-es, -ēi, F.  
 plain (evident), mānifest-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 plan, consill-um, -ī, N. (form=ineo).  
 play, lūd-us, -i, M.; lūs-us, -ūs, M.; v., lūd-o, -ēre, -sī, -um.  
 pleasant, iūcund-us, -a, -um (adj.); grātus, -a, -um (adj.).  
 please, delect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (acc.); plācō, plācēre, plācūi, plācītum (with dat.).  
 please, I (*i.e.*, choose), mihi libet; libūit, libītum est.  
 pleasing: see pleasant.  
 pleasure, vōlupt-as, -ātis, F.  
 plough, n., ārātr-um, -ī, N.  
 plough, v., ār-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 ploughed land, arum, arvi, N.  
 pluck, carpo, carpēre, carpsī, carptum.  
 plunder, praed-a, -ae, F.  
 poet, pōēt-a, -ae, M.  
 point out, monstr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; ostendo, ostendēre, ostendī, ostentum.  
 poison, vēnēn-um, -ī, N.  
 Pompey, Pompēl-us, -ī, M.  
 pool, stagnum, -ī, N.  
 poor, pauper, paupēris (adj.).  
 populace, plebs, plēbis, F.  
 possession, obtain or gain, pōtior, potīri, potītus sum (p. 116).  
 possible, use possum; all p., omnes quas potest; as many as p., quam plurimi (p. 143, note).  
 poverty, paupert-as, -ātis, F.  
 power, impēri-um, -ī, N.; pōtest-as, -ātis, F.; pōtentī-a, -ae, F. (undue power).  
 powerful, pōtens, pōtentis.  
 practice, usus, -ūs, M.  
 praise, n., laus, laudis, F.  
 praise, v., laud-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

praiseworthy, laudābil-is, -e (adj.).  
 pray for, or-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 prayers, prēc-es, -um, F.  
 prefer (wish rather), mālo, malle, mālūi, no sup.; ante-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsūi, -pōsītum (with acc. and dat.); prae-fero, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum.  
 prepare, pār-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 present, a, dōnum, -ī, N.  
 present, I am, ad-sum, -esse, -fūi; inter-sum, -esse, -fūi (at=dat.).  
 presently, mox, brevi.  
 preserve, conserv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 pretend, simūl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dissimūl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 prevent, ob-sto, -stāre, -stīti; prō-hībēo, -hībēre, -hībūi, -hībītum; prevent him from doing, I, prōhībēo eum quominus faciat (p. 185, 2).  
 previous, prior, prius.  
 price, prētī-um, -ī, N., p. 150.  
 pride, superb-ia, -ae, F.  
 prince, princeps, princīpis, M.  
 prison, carcer, carcēris, M.  
 prisoner (of war), captiv-us, -ī, M.  
 private person, privāt-us, -ī, M.  
 prize, praemi-um, -ī, N.  
 promise, pro-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -missum; pol-līcōr, -licēri, -licītus sum (with fut. inf.; 110, 1).  
 promise, promiss-um, -ī, N.  
 proof, indicī-um, -ī, N.  
 property, bōna, N. pl.; fortunae, F. pl.; res, rēi, F.  
 proud, sūperb-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 provide for, I, pro-vidēo, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum.  
 providence, providenti-a, -ae, F.  
 provided that, mōdo, dummodo (194, 3).  
 province, provinci-a, -ae, F.  
 provoke, lācesso, lācessēre, lācessīvī, lācessītum.  
 prudence, prudentī-a, -ae, F.  
 punish, pūnio, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.  
 punishment, poena, poenae, F.; supplicī-um, -ī, N.  
 pupil, discipūlus, -ī, M.  
 purpose, for the p. of, causā (171, 6).  
 purposely, consulto.  
 pursue, sēquor, sēqui, secūtus sum.  
 pursuit, stūdī-um, -ī, N.

put, pōno, pōnere, pōsūi, pōsitum.  
put to death, inter-ficō, -ficere,  
-fēcī, -fectum.

Pyrenees, Pŷrēnaei Montes.

## Q.

quaestor, quaest-or, -ōris, M.  
quantity, cōpl-a, -ae, F.; vis, F.  
queen, rēgin-a, -ae, F.  
question, I ask a, rō-go, -āre, -āvī,  
-ātum (92, 3); I ask you this ques-  
tion, hoc te rōgo.

quickly, celeriter.

quiet, quīet-us, -a, -um (adj.); quies,  
quētis, F.

## R.

race (kind), gēn-us, -ēris, N.; the  
human race, genus hūmānum; r. of  
men, genus hominūm.

rage, ir-a, -ae, F.; fūr-or, -ōris, M.

rain, plŷvī-a, -ae, F.; im-ber, -bris, M.

raise, tollo, tollere, sustŷlī, sublātum.

rank, ord-o, -inis, M. (military term).

rather, pōtius.

Ravenna, Ravenn-a, -ae, F.

reach, pērvēnio, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ven-  
tum (ad with acc.).

read, lēgo, lēgere, lēgī, lectum.

read aloud, rēcīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

ready, pārāt-us, -a, -um (with inf.,  
dat., or ad. and acc.).

really, vēro; rē verā (in truth).

rear, terg-um, -ī, N.; from or in  
the rear, a tergo.

reason, caus-a, -ae, F.; p. 181, 1 (use  
cur).

receive, accīpio, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cep-  
tum.

recent, rēcens, recentis (adj.).

recover (intr.), se recipio.

refrain, de-sisto, -sistēre, -stīti, -stī-  
tum (abl., or abl. with a).

refuse, nōlo, nolle, nōlŷi; recūs-o,  
-āre, -āvī, -ātum.

regard, habeo, hābēre, hābŷi, hābī-  
tum.

reign, v., regn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;  
impēri-um, -ī, N.; during the r., see  
p. 100, 5.

reject, rēpŷdī-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

rejoice, gaud-eo, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.

relate, narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; it is  
related, narrātur; it is related by  
tradition, traditum est.

relying on, frēt-us, -a, -um (adj.)  
(with abl.).

remain, mān-ēo, -ēre, -sī, -sum.

remarkable, insign-is, -e; exīmī-us,  
-a, -um (adj.).

remember, p. 145; 146, 7.

remind, admōn-eo, -ēre, -ŷi, -ŷtum;  
commone-facio, -facere, -fēcī, -factum  
(p. 167).

repent of my folly, I, me meae  
stultitiae poenitet (p. 165, 1).

reply, v., re-spondēo, -spondere,  
-spondī, -sponsum; respons-um, -ī, N.

report, nuntī-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;  
narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

republic, respŷblica, rēpŷblicaē, F.

resist, re-sisto, -sistēre, -stīti, -stītum,  
(dat.).

resolve, con-stītŷo, -stītŷere, -stītŷī,  
-stītŷitum.

rest, quī-es, -ētis, F.; the r., rēliqui,  
cētēri.

retake, re-cīpio, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -ceptum.

retreat, se recipere.

return (go back), rēd-ēo, -īre, -īvī (or  
-ī), -itum; (give back), red-do, -dēre, -didī,  
-ditum.

revile, mālē-dīco, -dīcere, -dixī, -dic-  
tum (dat.).

reward, praemī-um, -ī, N.

Rhine, Rhēn-us, -ī, M.

Rhone, Rhōdān-us, -ī, M.

rich, dīves, dīvītis; dīs, dītis; opu-  
lentus, -a, -um; cōpīōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).

right, iust-us, -a, -um; aequ-us, -a,  
-um (adj.).

right (=on the right hand), dex-ter,  
-tra, -trum; right hand, manus dextra.

right, n., ius, iŷris, N.; fas, N. (p. 239).

ripe, mātŷr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

rising, ōrien-s, -tis (adj.).

risk, pēricŷl-um, -ī, N.; discrīm-en,  
-inis, N.

river, flŷm-en, -inis, N.; flŷvī-us, -ī,  
M.; rīv-us, -ī, M.; amn-is, -is, M.

road, vī-a, -ae, F.; ŷter, ŷtērīs, N.

rock, sax-um, -ī, N.; rūp-es, -īs, F.,  
scōpŷl-us, -ī, M.

Roman, Rōmān-us, -a, -um (adj.).

Rome, Rōm-a, -ae, F.

Romulus, Rōmŷl-us, -ī, M.

root, rād-ix, -icis, F.

rose, rōs-a, -ae, F.

rough, asp-er, -era, -erum (adj.).  
 route, ví-a, -ae, F.; iter, itinérís, N.  
 ruin, exíti-um, -i, N.; pernící-es, -ēi, F.  
 rule, v., regn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;  
 gubern-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; n., reg-num,  
 -ī; impéri-um, -i, N.  
 run, curro, currere, cucurri, cursum;  
 (a wall), dūco, ducere, duxi, ductum.  
 run away, aufugio, -fugere, -fugī,  
 -fugitum.

## S.

sacred, sác-er, -ra, -rum; sanct-us,  
 -a, -um (adj.).  
 sad, maest-us, -a, -um; trist-is, -e  
 (adj.).  
 safe, tūt-us, -a, -um; salv-us, -a, -um  
 (adj.); incólum-ís, -e, (sécūrus = free from  
 care).  
 safety, sál-us, -ūtis, F.  
 said, it is, p. 164, 3.  
 sail, vélum, -i, N.  
 sail, v., nāvíg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 sailor, naut-a, -ae, M.  
 sake of, for the, causā (+gen.);  
 for my sake, meā causā; for the  
 sake of plundering, praedandi causā  
 (p. 171, 6).  
 sally, erupt-o, -ōnis; make a s.,  
 e-rumpo, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum.  
 salt, sal, sális, M.  
 salute, v., sálūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 same, ídem, eādem, ídem; same as,  
 127, 2.  
 satisfy, sātis-fácio, -fácere, -fécī, -fac-  
 tum (with dat.; p. 105, 9).  
 savage (wild), fér-us, -a, -um.  
 savage (cruel), saev-us, -a, -um; crū-  
 dēl-ís, -e (adj.).  
 save, serv-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 say, dico, dicere, dixi, dictum; s.  
 not, nēg-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 scholar, discípul-us, -i, M.  
 school, schól-a, -ae, F.  
 science, doctrin-a, -ae, F.; scienti-a,  
 -ae, F.  
 Scipio, Scípi-o, -ōnis, M.  
 scout, explōrāt-or, -ōris, M.; spēcūlát-  
 -or, -ōris, M.  
 sea, mǎre, mǎris, N.  
 sea, of the, mǎritim-us, -a, -um; the  
 sea coast, ora marítima, litus.  
 season, tempest-as, -ātis, F.; anni  
 tempus (tempóris).  
 seat, sēd-es, sēdis, F.; sella, sellae, F.

second, sēcund-us, -a, -um; alter, -a,  
 -um (adj.).  
 secret, occult-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 see, vídeo, vídere, vídi, visum; cerno,  
 cernere, crēvi, cretum; spect-o, -āre, -āvī,  
 -ātum.  
 seed, sēmen, sōmínis, N.  
 seek, quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitum.  
 seem, vídeor, víderi, visus sum; it  
 seems that he was good, ille vide-  
 tur bonus fuisse (p. 164, 3).  
 seize, occup-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (a  
 place); arripo, arripere, arripui, arrip-  
 tum (a person).  
 select, dellg-o, -llgere, -légī, -lectum.  
 sell, ven-do, -dēre, -dídī, -ditum; to be  
 sold, venēo, venire, venivi (-īi), venitum.  
 senate, sēnāt-us, -ūs, M.  
 send, mitto, mittere, misi, missum.  
 send forward, prae-mitto, -mittere,  
 -misi, -missum.  
 Sequani, Sēquānī, -ōrum, M. (pl.).  
 serpent, serpen-s, -tis, M.  
 servant, serv-us, -i, M.  
 service, útilit-as, -ātis, F.; be of s.,  
 prodesse; 143, (2 great=multum).  
 sesterce or sestertius, sesterti-us,  
 -i, M.  
 set (of sun), sōlis occāsus (-ūs, M.).  
 set out, prō-ficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus  
 sum (for=ad).  
 seventh, septim-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 severe, grāvís, -e (adj.).  
 severely, grāviter.  
 shade, umbr-a, -ae, F.  
 shall, sign of fut.; (in deliberative  
 question), 139 (a).  
 sharp, ácer, ácris, ácre; ácūt-us, -a,  
 -um (adj.).  
 ship, nāv-is, -is, F.; nāvígí-um, -i, M.;  
 s. of war, navis longa.  
 shore, ór-a, -ae, F.; lit-us, -ōris, N.  
 short, brēv-is, -e.  
 shortly, brevī.  
 should (ought), p. 173, 5.  
 shout, clam-or, -ōris, M.  
 shout, raise a s., v., clam-ō, -āre,  
 -āvī, -ātum; p. 164, 2, note.  
 shudder at, horr-eo, -ēre, -tū (acc.).  
 Sicily, Sicili-a, -ae, F.  
 sick, aeg-er, -ra, -rum (adj.).  
 sick, I am, aegrō-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 side, pars, partis, F.; látus, látēris,

N.; on all sides, undique; on both sides, utrimque; on this s. of, citra (acc.).

siege, obsĭdĭ-o, -ōnis, F.

sight, conspect-us, -ūs, M.

signal, sign-um, -i, N.

silence, silentium, -i, N.

silent, I am, tǎcĕo, tǎcĕre, tǎcūi, tǎcĭtum.

silent, tǎcĭt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

silver, argent-um, -i, N.

silver, of, argent-ūs, -ĕa, -ĕum.

since, adv., abhinc; ten years since, abhinc decem annos (or annis).

since, conj., quum, cum (p. 203); quoniam, quia (p. 198); p. 199, 5.

sing, cant-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum; cǎn-o, cǎnĕre, cǎcĭnĭ, cantum.

single, not a, ne unus quĭdem.

sister, sŏr-or, -ŏris, F.

sit, sĕdĕo, sĕdĕre, sĕdĭ, sĕssum.

six, sex.

six hundred, sexcentĭ, -ae, -a, num.

size, magnĭtūd-o, -ĭnis, F.; use quantum (p. 181, 1).

skilful, pĕrĭt-us, -a, -um with (genitive).

skill, scientĭ-a, -ae, F.

skilled, pĕrĭt-us (in=gen.).

skin, pell-is, -is, F.

sky cael-um, -i, N.

slave, serv-us, -i, F.

slavery, servĭt-us, -ūtis.

slay, inter-fĭcĭo, -fĭcĕre, -fĭcĭ, -fectum; trŭcĭd-o, -āre, -āvĭ, -ātum.

sleep, somn-us, -i, M.; v., dorm-ĭo, -ĭre, -ĭvĭ, -ĭtum.

slip, lābor, lābĭ, lapsus sum.

sloth, ignavi-a, -ae, F.

small, parv-us, -a, -um (p. 57, 4); exĭgŭ-us, -a, -um (adj.).

smile at, rĭdeo, rĭdĕre, rĭsĭ, rĭsum (acc.).

snow, nix, nivĭs, F.

so, adv., adĕō (with adjs.); ita, sic (in this way); so . . . as, ita . . . ut; so that, ut (p. 187); dum, dummodo (p. 194, 3); so much, tantum, tantopĕre; so great, tant-us, -a, -um; so long, tamdiŭ; so many, tot.

Socrates, Socrāt-es, -is, M.

soll, sŏl-um, -i, N.; āger, āgri, M.

solace, sŏlātĭ-um, -i, N.

sold, be, vĕn-ĕo, -ĭre, -ĭvĭ (-ĭi), -ĭtum.

soldier, mil-es, -ĭtis, M.

some, aliquis, -qua, aliquod (p. 132); quĭdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam (p. 132); some . . . others, alii . . . alii; sometimes, interdum.

some, there are: p. 188, 5, (a).

son, fil-ius, -ĭi, or -ĭ, M.

song, cant-us, -ūs, M.; carm-en, -ĭnis, N.

son-in-law, gĕn-er, -ĕri, M.

soon, stĕtim, confestim, mox, brĕvĭ.

sooner, mĕtŭrius (comp. of mĕtŭre, early).

Sophocles, Sophocl-es, -is, M.

sorrow, dŏl-ŏr, -ŏris, M.

soul, ānĭm-us, -i, M.; ānĭm-a, -ae, F.

sound, sŏnĭt-us, -ūs; v., sŏno, sŏnĕre, sŏnĭ, sŏnitum.

sovereignty, regn-um, -i, N.

sow, sĕro, sĕrĕre, sĕvĭ, sĕtum.

space, spĕtĭ-um, -i, N.; within the space of two days, bidŭo.

spare, parco, parcĕre, pĕperĭ, parĭtum or parsum (with dative; p. 105, 9).

sparrow, passer, pĕssĕris, M.

speak, loqŭor, dico.

speaking, dicere (inf. used as a noun; 108, 4); ars dicendi.

spear, hasta, -ae, F.

speech, ŏrĕtĭ-o, -ŏnis, F.

speed, cĕlĕrĭt-as, -ĕtis, F.

spend, consŭm-o, -ĕre, consumpsi, consumptŭm.

spit, ver-u, -ūs, N.

splendid, splendĭdus, -a, -um (adj.).

sport, n., lŭd-us, -i, M.; lŭs-us, -ūs, M.; v., lŭdo, lŭdĕre, lŭsĭ, lŭsum.

spot, lŏc-us, -i.

spread, spargo, spargĕre, sparsi, sparsum; sterno, sternĕre, strāvĭ, strĕtum.

spring, ver, vĕris, N.

spy, spĕcŭlĕt-or, -ŏris, M.; explŏrĕt-or, ŏris, M.

stand, sto, stĕre, stĕtĭ, stĕtum; s. for, pĕt-o, -ĕre, -ĭvĭ (-ĭi), -ĭtum; s. near, ad-sto, -stĕre, -stĭtĭ.

star, stell-a, -ae, F.

start: see set out.

state, civĭt-as, -ĕtis, F.

statue, stĕtŭ-a, -ae, F.

stay: see remain.

step, pass-us, -ūs, M.

**still**, tranquill-us, -a, -um (adj.); (nevertheless) tamen; (even now), adhuc.

**stone**, lapis, lapidis, M.

**stork**, ciconia, -ae, F.

**storm**, tempest-as, -atis, F.

**story**, fabul-a, -ae, F.

**stream**, riv-us, -i, M.; fluvius, -i, M.; amnis, -is, M.; flum-en, -inis, N.

**strength**, rob-ur, -oris, N.; virēs, virium, F. (pl. of vis; p. 45).

**strive**, cōn-or, -āri, -ātus sum; nitōr, niti, nisus or nixus sum.

**subdue**, stūpēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vinco, vincēre, vict, victum.

**such**, tālis, -e; **of such a kind**, eiusmodi (in contempt).

**sue**, p. 185, 5.

**suffer**, patiōr, pati, passus sum.

**suffering**, lāb-or, -ōris, M.; dōl-or, -ōris, M.

**suitable**, aptus, -a, -um (adj.); idone-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**Sulmo**, Sulm-o, -inis, M.

**summer**, aest-as, -atis, F.

**summon**, convoc-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, arcesso, -cessēre, -cessāvī, -cessātum.

**sun**, sol, solis, M.

**sunset**, solis occāsus (-ūs), M.

**sure**, certus, -a, -um (adj.).

**surpass**, supēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vinco, vincēre, vict, victum.

**surrender**, trad-o, -dēre, -didī, -ditum; dē-do, -dēre, -didī, -ditum (tr.).

**sway**, impēr-ium, -i, N.

**swift**, celer, celeris, celēre; rapidus, -a, -um; swifter, oclor, oclus.

**swim**, nat-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**swine**, sus, suis, M. or F.

**sword**, gladi-us, -i, M.; ferrum, -i, N.

## T.

**table**, mens-a, -ae, F.

**take**, capio, capere, -cepī, captum;

**take by storm**, expugn-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**talent**, ingeni-um, -i, N.; (a weight or a sum of money), talent-um, -i, N.

**tall**, altus, -a, -um; prōcēr-us, -a, -um; ingens, ingentis (adj.).

**teach**, doc-ēo, -ēre, -ūī, -tum.

**teacher**, magist-er, -rī, M.

**tear**, lacrim-a, -ae, F.

**tell**, narr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dico, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum.

**temple**, templ-um, -i, N.; aed-es, -is, F.

**ten**, decem.

**tenth**, decim-us, -a, -um.

**terrify**, terre-o, -ēre, -ūī, -itum.

**territory**, fin-es, -ium (pl. M.); āger, āgri, M.

**terror**, terr-or, -ōris, M.

**than** (after comparatives), quam (p. 56, 5).

**thank**, grātiās agere (dat.).

**that**, p. 109, 1; ut (183; 187).

**that**, ille, illa, illud.

**the**, p. 4, 11, note; (emphatic), p. 188, 4.

**theft**, furt-um, -i, N.

**their**, p. 169, 5; often omitted, p. 169, 5, note 2.

**them**, they, 168, 3.

**then**, tum.

**there**, ibi; **be t.**, adsum.

**thick**, dens-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**thing**, res, rei, F.

**think** (fancy), pūt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (reflect), cōgito, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (hold as an opinion), cens-eo, -ēre, -uī, -sum; (judge), arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum.

**this**, hic, haec, hoc (p. 117).

**thou**, tu, tui.

**though**, 196, 5.

**thousand**, mille, indecl. in sing; in the pl., millia, millium, millibus (p. 68, 5).

**three**, trēs, tria.

**three hundred**, tricēnt-i, -ae, -a.

**threshold**, lim-en, -inis, N.

**through**, per (acc.).

**throw**, v., iacō, -iacere, -ieci, -iactum;

**throw away**, ab-icō, -icere, -ieci, -iectum.

**throw**, iact-us, -ūs, M.

**thy**, thine, tui-us, -a, -um (adj.).

**till**, p. 201, 4.

**timber**, mātēri-a, -ae, F.

**time**, temp-us, -ōris, N.

**timid**, timidus, -a, -um (adj.).

**to**, prep., ad or in with acc.; (of purpose), 185, 5; **to no purpose**, frustrā, nequidquam.

**to-day**, hodie.

**to-morrow**, cras.

**tongue**, lingu-a, -ae, F.

**too**, (with compar.), p. 188, 5, (c); **too great to be told**, say **greater than which can be told**, 188, 5, (c).

top, culm-en, -inis, N.; fastġl-um, -i, N.; the top of the hill, collis summus; the top of the mountain, mons summus.

torn, lā-cer, -cēra, -cērum (adj.).  
 touch, tango, tangere, tētġl, tactum;  
 t. the heart, animum mōveo.  
 tower, turr-is, -is, F.; arx, arcis, F.  
 town, oppid-um, -i, N.  
 track, vestġl-um, -i, N.  
 traitor, prodt-or, -ōris, M.  
 treachery, perfīdī-a, -ae, F.; prō-  
 dtīl-o, -ōnis, F.  
 treaty, foed-us, -ēris, N.  
 tree, arbor, arbōris, F.  
 tribe, trib-us, -ūs, F.  
 troops, cōpl-ae, -ārum, F. (pl.).  
 Troy, Trōi-a, -ae, F.  
 Trojan, Trōiān-us, -a, -um.  
 true, vēr-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 trust, fido, fidere, fīsus sum; confīdo,  
 -fidere, -fīsus sum (with dat.; p. 105, 9).  
 truth, vērīt-as, -ātis, F.; vēra (n. pl.).  
 try, cōn-or, -ārī, -ātus sum; nītor,  
 nīti, nīsus or nīxus sum; p. 216, 3, note 1.  
 twelve, dūōdēcim.  
 twenty, vīgintī; twenty at a  
 time, vīcēni, -ae, -a; twenty times,  
 vīcies.  
 two, dūo, dūae, dūo (68, 4).  
 two hundred, dūcent-i, -ae, -a (adj.).

## U.

unable, I am, non possum (posse,  
 pōtūi); nēqu-ēo, -īre, -īvi (-īl), -ītum.  
 uncertain, incert-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 undertake, suscipio, -cīpēre, -cēpi,  
 -ceptum; I undertake to do this,  
 suscipio me hoc facturum esse (p. 110, 1).  
 undertaking, nēgōti-um, -i, N.  
 understand, intel-lego, -lēgēre, -lēxī,  
 -lectum (literally = pick up).  
 undying, immortal-is, -e (adj.).  
 unfortunate, in-fēlix, -fēlicis (adj.).  
 ungrateful, ingrāt-us, -a, -um.  
 unhappy, in-fēlix, -fēlicis (adj.).  
 unlike, dis-sīmilis, -sīmile (adj., dat.).  
 until, p. 201, 4.  
 unwilling, invīt-us, -a, -um (adj.);  
 I am u., nōlo, nolle, nōlūi (p. 147).  
 unworthy, indignus (64, 4).  
 upon, in (+abl., of rest; +acc., of  
 motion).

use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (116).  
 used, p. 216, 3, note 1.  
 useful, ūtil-is, -e (adj.).

## V.

valley, vall-is, -is, F.  
 valor, virt-us, -ūtis, F.  
 value, I, aestīm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 value, the, aestīmātī-o, -ōnis, F.  
 Verres, Verr-es, -is, M.  
 Vergil, Vergīl-īus, -īi, M.  
 very, expressed by superlative when  
 with an adj. or adv. (p. 53, 5); before a  
 noun, ipse: the very man, ipse vir.  
 Vesontio, Vesontī-o, -ōnis, F.  
 veteran, vētērān-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 vice, vītī-um, -i, N.; scēl-us, -ēris, N.  
 victory, victorī-a, -ae, F.  
 view, conspect-us, -ūs, M.; v. spect-o,  
 -āre, -āvī, -ātum; your v. of the  
 matter, say, what you think (sentio) of  
 (de) the matter (181, 1) (sentio, I hold  
 a view).  
 vigor, vīg-or, -ōris, M.  
 vigorously, vehementer.  
 village, vic-us, -i, M.  
 violation, use vīōlo (-āre, etc.); p. 219,  
 (b).  
 violent, vīolentus, -a, -um (adj.).  
 virtue, virt-us, -ūtis, F.  
 visit, ad-ēo, -īre, -īvi (-īl), -ītum (acc.).  
 voice, vox, vōcis, F.  
 vote, sententī-a, -ae, F.

## W.

wage, gēro; gerēre, gessi, gestum.  
 waggon, plaustr-um, -i, N.  
 wait, expect-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 walk, ambūl-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 wall, mūr-us, -i, M.; moeni-a, -um,  
 N. (defence); pāri-ēs, -ētis, F. (of a house).  
 wander, err-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 war, bell-um, -i, N.; carry on w.,  
 bellum gērere.  
 ward off: say keep off.  
 warlike, bellicōs-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 warm, calid-us, -a, -um (adj.).  
 warn, moneo (of = de).  
 waste, lay waste, vast-o, -āre, -āvī,  
 -ātum; w. time, tempus consumēre.  
 watch, v., observ-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum  
 custōd-īo, -īre, -īvi, -ītum.



watch, custō-s, -dls, M.; vīgill-a, ae, F.

water, āqu-a, -ae, F.

wave, fluct-us, -ūs, M.

waxen, cūrē-us, -a, -um (adj.).

way, vī-a, -ae, F.; iter, Itinēris, N.; in no w., nullo mōdo.

wealth, ōp-es, -um (pl.), F.; divitī-ae, -ārum (pl.), F.

wealthy, ōpulent-us, -a, -um; dives, divitīs (adj.).

weep, lācīm-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; flēo, flēre, flēvi, flētum.

weeping, flēt-us, -ūs, M.; adj., flens, flentīs.

weight, pond-us, -ēris, N.

welcome, grāt-us, -a, -um.

well, bēne; comp., melius; superl., optīme; be w., bēne esse.

well-known, nōtus, -a, -um (adj.).

what (interrog.), quid; (rel.), id quod.

when, quum (p. 203); often expressed by part. (p. 220, 2); as, when the news was reported, re nuntiata; interrog., quando (never, quum).

whenever, p. 204, 4.

where, ubi; w. from, unde.

whether, num; whether . . . or, utrum . . . an (p. 130, 6; 177, 5).

which, quis, quae, quid (interrog.); (of two), uter, utra, utrum; (rel.), see p. 126.

while, dum (p. 201); quum (p. 203, 2).

white, alb-us, -a, -um (adj.).

who, (rel.), qui (p. 126); (interrog.), quis (p. 129).

whoever, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.

why, cur, quāre.

wicked, scēlērāt-us, -a, -um (adj.); w. deed, say crime.

wide, lāt-us, -a, -um (adj.).

wife, uxor, uxōris, F.

wild, fēr-us, -a, -um (adj.).

will, sign of fut.; volo (of intention), or p. 174.

will, vōlunt-as, -ātis, F.; against my w., me invito.

willing, I am, vōlo, velle, vōlūt.

wind, vent-us, -i, M.

winding, curv-us, -a, -um (adj.).

wine, vin-um, -i, N.

wing, āl-a, -ae, F.; corn-u, -ūs, N

winged, vōlūc-er, -ris, -re (adj.).

winter, v., hīem-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

winter, hīem-s, -is, F.; that w., p. 82, 1; all w., acc.

wisdom, sāpientī-a, -ae, F.

wise, sāpīen-s, -tis (adj.).

wish, vōlunt-as, -ātis, F.; v., volo, velle, vōlūt.

with, cum, prep. with abl., written after personal and rel. pronouns: mecum, quibuscum (105, 8; 126, 3, note 2); of military accompaniment, p. 12, 3.

withdraw, se abdūco.

within, p. 82, 2; intrā (acc.).

without, extrā (prep. with acc.); p. 231, 1; be without, expers esse (abl.).

withstand, resisto, -sistere, -stītī, -stītum; ob-sto, -stāre, -stītī, -stītum (dat.).

wolf, lūp-us, -i, M.

woman, mūlier, -is, F.

wood, lign-um, -i, N.

wood, a, silv-a, -ae, F.

woody, silvest-er, -ris, -re (adj.).

word, verb-um, -i, N.; (promise), fides, ēī; keep one's w., fidem praesto (stāre, -stītī, -stītum).

work, ōp-us, -ēris, N.

workman, fāb-er, -bri, M.

workmen, opērae, M. (pl.), fābri.

world, mund-us, -i, M.

worse, peīor, peīus; dētēri-or, -us.

worst, p. 57, 4.

worthy, dign-us, -a, -um (adj.) (p. 64, 4).

wound, vuln-us, -ēris, N.

wound, v., vulnēr-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

would, see will; what you w. do, p. 174, 1.

would that, utīnam (with subj.; p. 138, 4).

wretched, miser, -a, -um; infēli-x, -icis.

write, scribo, scribēre, scripsī, scrip-tum.

writing, scribere.

wrong, iniūri-a, -ae, F.; nefas, N., Indec.

wrong doing, mālēfici-um, -i, N.

## X

Xenophon, Xēnōph-on, -ontis.

## Y.

year, ann-us, -I, M.

yearly, annu-us, -a, -um (adj.);  
(every year), quotannis.

yes: p. 29, 4.

yesterday, herī; dies hesternus.

yet, tāmen, vērum; as yet, adhuc;  
not yet, nondum.

yield, cēdo, cēdere, cessi, cessum;  
(surrender), sē dēdo, dēdere, dēdidi,  
dēditum.

yoke, iūg-um, -I, N.

yonder, ille, illa, illud (p. 118, 4).

you, tu (the Latins used the sing. to  
refer to one person, not, like us, the

plural: as, You are calling, boy, Tu, puer,  
vōcas); pl., vos (p. 104); you yourself,  
tu ipse.

young man, iūvenis, ādōlescens,  
ādōlescentis (also written adulescens).

younger, iūnior (p. 58, note).

your, yours, tu-us, -a, -um (referring  
to one); vest-er, -ra, -rum (adj.) (re-  
ferring to more than one); p. 118, 3.

youth, iūvent-us, -ūtis (body of);  
iūvent-a, -ae, F. (time of).

youthful, pūeril-is, -e (adj.).

## Z.

Zama, Zām-a, -ae, F.

# LATIN PRONUNCIATION.

## ROMAN METHOD.

### VOWELS.

<i>Letters.</i>	<i>Pronunciation.</i>
A long as in <i>cālo, mānāre,</i>	as Eng. <i>a</i> in psalm, salve.
short as in <i>cālor, māněo.</i>	the same sound shortened.
	Both <i>ǎ</i> and <i>ā</i> are found in <i>āhā!</i>
	N.B. <i>ā</i> in Latin was never pronounced as in mate, nor <i>ǎ</i> as in man, mat.
E long as in <i>nēdum,</i>	as Eng. <i>e</i> in grey and skein.
<i>sēcēdo, diē.</i>	
short as in <i>něfas, sēcō,</i>	as Eng. <i>e</i> in sped and met.
<i>arcě.</i>	
	N.B. Lat. <i>ē</i> was never pronounced as Eng. <i>ee</i> in <i>see</i> .
I long as in <i>sī, sīn, rīdēo.</i>	as <i>i</i> in machine, <i>ee</i> in feel.
	N.B. The Latin <i>ī</i> was never the <i>i</i> in <i>fine</i> .
short as in <i>sīne, sītīs,</i>	as <i>i</i> in fit, pin.
<i>rīgīdus.</i>	
O long as in <i>cōmīs, ōmēn.</i>	as <i>o</i> in bone, lone.
short as in <i>cōmēs, ōpūs.</i>	nearest representative Eng. is <i>o</i> in not, rock.
U long as in <i>ūnā, ūmōr.</i>	as <i>u</i> in ruin, rude.
	N.B. Lat. <i>ū</i> was never pronounced like <i>u</i> in acute, mule.
short as in <i>ūtēr, hūmūs.</i>	as <i>u</i> in full, <i>oo</i> in foot.
	N.B. Lat. <i>ū</i> never as Eng. <i>ū</i> in but, cut.
Y long as in <i>gŷrūs, Hŷdra.</i>	as I long.
short as in <i>cŷmbā, lŷrā.</i>	as <i>y</i> in beauty, lady.

### DIPHTHONGS.

Pronunciation of the diphthongs is best learnt by first sound-vowel separately and then running them together. Thus :

*ae* as ah-eh; *au* as ah-oo; *oe* as o-eh; *ei* as eh-ee; *eu* as eh-oo, and  
*ui* as oo-ee.

AE in <i>taedae</i>	either Eng. <i>a</i> in <i>fare</i> or as <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> .
AU in <i>laudo</i>	Eng. <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i> .
OE in <i>foedus</i>	N.B. Avoid the pronunciation "feed-us."
EI in <i>hei</i>	Eng. <i>ey</i> in <i>grey</i> , <i>ei</i> in <i>skein</i> .
EU in <i>seu, neuter</i>	} The general rule, as given above, is a
UI in <i>cui, huic</i>	

## CONSONANTS.

C as in <i>cāno, cēcīni, circā, condī- cio</i> .	always as Eng. <i>k</i> ; never as <i>s</i> nor as <i>c</i> before <i>e, i</i> .
Qu in <i>inquit</i> .	as Eng. <i>qu</i> in <i>quick</i> .
G in <i>gaudeo, gēnus, gīgās, agē</i> .	always as Eng. <i>g</i> in <i>got, get</i> . begin; never as <i>j</i> or <i>g</i> soft.
N before <i>c</i> ( <i>k, qu</i> ), <i>g</i> , as <i>incīpit, inquam, congero</i> .	as <i>ng</i> in <i>sing</i> . Thus: <i>ing' ipi ingquam congero</i> .
R in <i>ringi, rārus, dator</i> .	trilled <i>r</i> as in French or Sc.
S as in <i>sūs, accūso, tristes</i> .	always voiceless, as in <i>hiss</i> , never voiced as in <i>has</i> ( <i>h</i> ).
J or I consonant, as in <i>iūgum, iācio</i> .	as Eng. <i>y</i> . Thus: <i>yugum, y</i>
V or U consonant, as in <i>uānus, uīs, seruo</i> (i.e., <i>vanus, vis, servo</i> ).	as Eng. <i>w</i> . Thus: <i>wā wees, serwo</i> .

N.B. There is no ancient authority for spelling *i* consonant  
or *u* consonant as *v*. The Romans used one symbol for  
vowel and consonant.

B, D, F, H, L, M, P, T	as in Eng. N.B. T is always the Ediſio is not to be pro edishio.
X as in <i>saxum, exulto</i> .	as Eng. <i>ks</i> ( <i>x</i> ). Thus: <i>ea</i> . not <i>eggsulto</i> .
Z as in <i>gaza, Zephyrus</i> .	Probably as <i>dz</i> in <i>adze</i> .

Double consonants should be carefully separated in pronun-  
tiation, as *ag-ger, pos-sum, pin-na*.

£

.

1

,

,

1 2

1 3

1 4

1 5

1 6

1 7

.

8

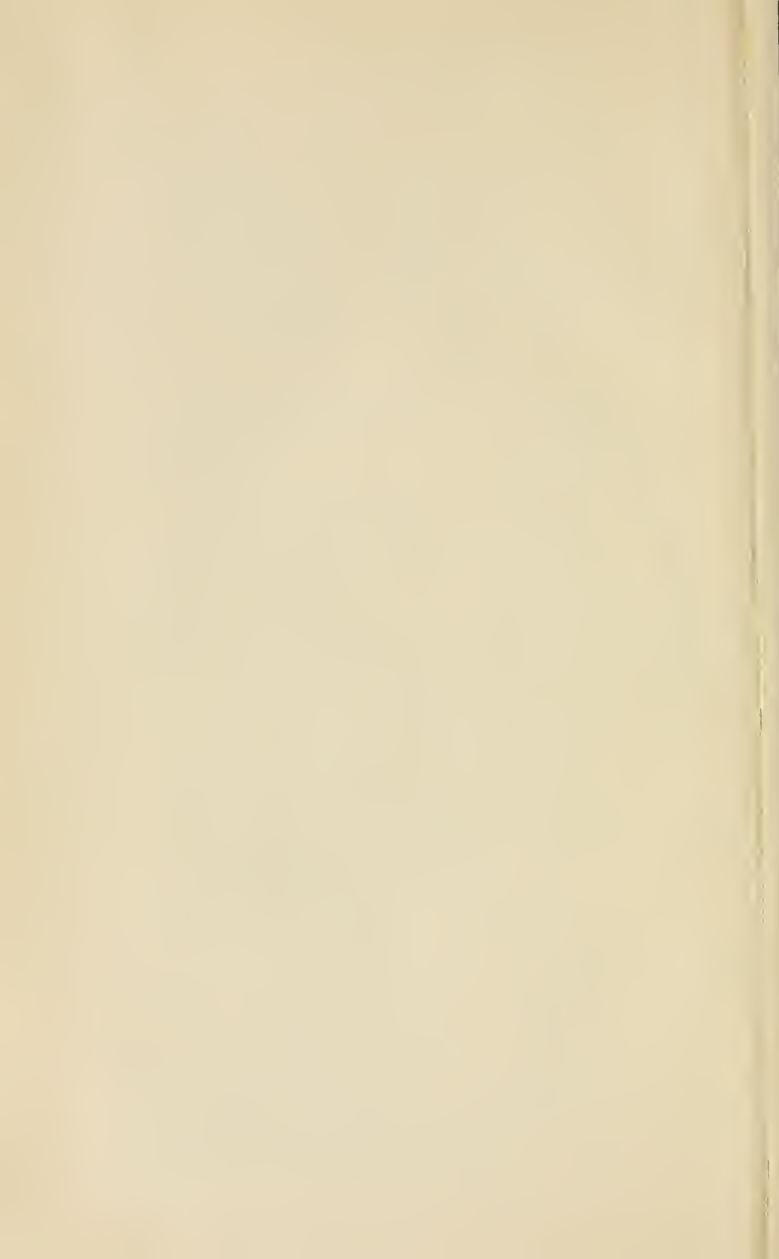
9

9

10

11

12





Handwritten text at the top of the page, possibly a title or header, which is mostly illegible due to fading.

Main body of handwritten text, consisting of several lines of cursive script. The text is very faint and difficult to decipher.

A small, distinct red mark or stamp, possibly a date or a signature, located in the upper middle section of the page.



BINDING 52-1-1 MAY 29 1968

PA Henderson, John  
2087 First Latin book and  
H46 reader

~~top 2~~

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

